

docomo PRIME series F-01A

ISSUE DATE:

'08.11

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

^{NTT}
docomo

Easy Search/Contents/Precautions

Before Using the Handset

Voice/Videophone Calls/PushTalk

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Security Settings

Mail

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel/i-concier

Full Browser

Camera

1Seg

Music

i-appli/i-Widget

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

Map/GPS Function

Data Management

Convenient Functions

Character Entry

Network Services

Overseas Use

PC Connection

Appendix/Troubleshooting

Index/Quick Manual

DOCOMO W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS System

Thank you for purchasing "docomo PRIME series F-01A" mobile terminal.

Before and during use of your FOMA terminal, be sure to thoroughly read this manual and instruction manuals that come with other optional devices to ensure you are able to correctly use your FOMA terminal. For more detailed information, contact "General Inquiries" using the phone number on the back of this manual. F-01A is your capable partner. Please treat it with care and enjoy using it for years.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- Because your FOMA terminal uses wireless transmission, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to penetrate, such as tunnels, underground passages and some buildings, in areas where radio waves are weak, or out of service area. Even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, your FOMA terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, communication may be interrupted even when the signal meter on your FOMA terminal indicates there are strong radio waves and you are not moving (traveling).
- Use your FOMA terminal in a way that does not disturb others in public spaces, crowded locations or quiet places.
- Because your FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, it is possible that a third party may attempt to tap your calls. However, the W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS system automatically applies a confidential communication function to all calls, so even if a third party could somehow tap a call, they only hear noise.
- Your FOMA terminal encodes voice communication as digital data. When you are operating your FOMA terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave conditions, the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- Maintain a separate record of the data (Phonebook, Schedule, Notepad, Recorded messages, Voice memos, Movie memo, etc.) you registered in your FOMA terminal. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data resulting from malfunction, repair, changing of the model or other handling of FOMA terminal.
- You are recommended to save important data to microSD card. Using DOCOMO keitai datalink, you can transfer and save phonebook, mail, schedule and other data to a PC.

- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL.
Neither DOCOMO nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. If the data should be erased, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
Certifier : VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd., Comodo CA Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DOCOMO and DOCOMO's roaming area.

Before using this manual

This FOMA terminal supports Kisekai Tool (→P102). When changing the design of the menu screen using Kisekai Tool, the structure of some menus may be changed according to the usage frequency depending on the menu type. Also, the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applicable to some menu items.

Latest information about this manual can be downloaded from NTT DOCOMO website.

- User's Manual Download

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>

* The URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

Viewing/Searching this manual

This manual provides the methods below for necessary function's easy search.

Searching from Easy Search

▶ P4

Search for frequently used or convenient functions by plain words.

Searching from Menu list

▶ P388

Search from menu displayed on the display of F-01A.

Searching from thumb indices

▶ Front cover

Search from the index on the front cover.

*See P2-3 for examples.

Searching from Contents

▶ P6

Search from Contents categorized into chapters by functions.

Searching by main functions

▶ P8

Search from featured functions or new functions of F-01A.

Searching from the Index

▶ P446

Search from the function name, item keyword or service name.

Using the Quick Manual

▶ P456

You can cut out Quick Manual from this manual and carry it with you anywhere.

Also refer to described "Quick Manual (Overseas Use)" when using FOMA terminal overseas.

- In this "Manual for F-01A", "F-01A" mobile terminal is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal". Please be forewarned.
- This manual explains functions performed with a microSD card. A microSD card is required separately.
microSD card→P300
- The images or illustration used in this manual are examples. They may differ from the actual displays.
- The icons and screens that appear on the display and sub-display have been initialized to the default settings selected from the combinations prepared in FOMA terminal depending on FOMA terminal color.
This manual mainly gives descriptions assuming that Kisekae Tool is set to "Rose".→P102
- In this manual, "i-appli compatible with Osaifu-Keitai which supports IC card function" is referred to as "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli".
- The description of "authenticate" indicates the operating procedure for entering the terminal security code (4-8 digits) or authenticating your fingerprint in this manual.
Terminal security code→P110 Fingerprint authentication→P112
- Unauthorized copying of parts of or this entire manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

Viewing/Searching this manual

Methods to search pages are described, taking "Answer machine" for example.

Searching from Easy Search

Functions frequently used and convenient functions are categorized by their purposes and with simple words.



When you cannot answer the call

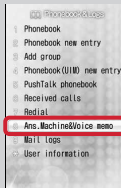
Putting the call on hold when you cannot answer it immediately

Respond and Hold 68

Recording the other party's voice or image Answer machine 70

Searching from Menu list

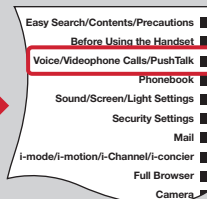
Functions can be searched from the words displayed on the FOMA terminal screen.



4 4	Phonebook(UIM) new entry		82
4 5	PushTalk phonebook		77
4 6	Received calls		61
4 7	Redial		61
4 8	Ans.Machine&Voice memo		
4 8 1	Answer machine	OFF	70
4 8 2	Recorded messages		71
			335

Searching from thumb indices

Functions can be searched by using indices in the order of the front cover, chapter top page and function description page. The chapter top page also gives the list of detailed contents.



Voice/Videophone Calls/PushTalk

When you can/could not answer a voice/videophone call

Putting a call on hold when you cannot answer immediately

Respond and Hold 68

Unlink mobile mode

Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call

Answer machine 70

Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call

Answer machine 70

Videophone call settings

Using Chara-den

71

Setting image during a videophone call

72

Changing videophone settings

Operation 73

Setting for switching a voice/videophone call during a call

Notify switchable mode 74

Setting actions for incoming calls during packet communication

Data/destination env. act 74

Access to external device

Function name
This name is listed in Index.

Outline and supplementary description of the function

Typical operating procedure

Answer machine

Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call

When Answer machine is activated, a greeting message is played and the caller can record message when you cannot answer the call.

- You can record up to 4 voice and videophone calls in total, approximately 30 seconds for each call.

◆ Activating Answer machine

- Normal style should be used.

(1 sec. or more) ► ► or

When "ON" is set, appears on the stand-by display.

■ When there is an incoming call with Answer machine active

1 A call is received

When the response time set in Greeting msg resp time elapses, the greeting message is played according to setting of Set greeting message.

2 The other party's message is recorded

- A beep announces the other party at the start and the end. And when approximately 25 seconds elapsed since the start, 2 short beeps are heard to warn that the end is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is terminated

❖ Responding with Quick answer machine <Quick answer machine>

Even if Answer machine is not active, you can activate it only once by pressing for 1 second or more while receiving a call. This operation does not set Answer machine to active.

✓ INFORMATION

- Even during the greeting message or recording to Answer machine, a call can be answered by pressing . You can also answer videophone call by pressing . In this case, message recorded before the call was answered is not recorded.
- Answer machine does not operate when FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned OFF. Use Voice Mail service.
- In Personalized silent mode, "Answer machine" setting for Personalized silent mode is applied.

Supplementary description of the operation

Detailed description and convenient information about the function

Voice/Videophone Calls/PushTalk

Index related to thumb index

* The page shown here represents an example. Images may differ from actual page in this manual.

- In this manual, operation by pressing keys is represented by graphic symbols.→P26 "Part names and functions"
- The representations and meanings of operating procedures are as shown below.

Representation example	Meaning
(1 sec. or more)	Press for 1 second or more.
[Settings & NW services] ► -	On the stand-by display, , move the cursor to [Settings & NW services] and press . Successively, press , then press any of - .

- In this manual, to select an item by placing the cursor with (Multi-cursor key) and pressing (Enter key) is referred to as "select". Regarding an operation to enter characters in the entry field, the final step of pressing [OK] is omitted.
- This manual uses the default settings to describe operations. If the settings are changed, the displays or operations of FOMA terminal may differ from the ones described in this manual. For the default settings, see Menu List.→P388

Easy Search

Functions which you want to know can be searched for using friendly words.



Convenient functions for calls

Showing/Hiding your phone number	Caller ID notification	56
Putting the call on hold	On hold	59
Changing the volume of the other party's voice	Listen volume	59
Switching from voice call to videophone call	Switching to videophone call	60



When you cannot answer the call

Putting the call on hold when you cannot answer it immediately	Respond and Hold	68
Notifying the caller that you have to refrain from talking	Public mode (Drive mode)	69
.....	Public mode (Power OFF)	69
Recording the other party's voice or image	Answer machine	70



Changing sound, lighting color and vibration

Setting different ring tone etc. for incoming calls from specific parties	Alert by contact	83
Changing ring alert	Ring alert	91
Changing loudness of ring tone	Adjust volume	92
Making vibration when there is an incoming call	Vibrate alert/effect	93

Muting keypad sound	Keypad sound	94
Setting silent mode	Silent mode	95
Changing the color of keypad light	Keypad light	100
Changing color such as light	Light alert	106



Changing displays

Meanings of icons on display	Viewing display	30
Switching the menu display	Selecting functions from menu	36
Changing stand-by display	Stand-by display	96
Displaying a calendar on stand-by display	Info/calendar layout	97
Changing font size	Font size	107



Safety and security

Hiding contents of phonebook	Secret attribute	87
Locking FOMA remotely in case of misplacement etc.	Omakase Lock*¹	115
Rejecting calls with no caller IDs	Anonymous caller	126
Rejecting calls from parties not saved in phonebook	Unregistered caller	128
Saving data such as phonebook in case of data loss	Data Security Service*²	128



Making full use of mail

Sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail	135
Sending images and/or melodies	Attachment	140
Automatically sorting mails	Sort method	155



Making full use of camera

Saving shot still images to microSD card	Save to	201
Changing image size	Still image settings/Recording settings	205
Viewing shot still images	Displaying image	288



Making full use of 1Seg

Watching 1Seg	Activate 1Seg	216
Recording 1Seg	1Seg recording	221
Reserving watching/recording 1Seg	Watching/Recording reservation	222
Changing settings of images and sounds	User setting	225

*1 A charged service.

*2 A charged service requiring subscription.

- For procedures to search for other functions, see "How to use this manual". → P1
- Quick Manual introduces you procedures for using convenient functions. → P456



Other convenient functions

Reading QR and/or bar code	Bar code reader	210
Listening to music	MUSIC Player	232
Using GPS function	GPS function	274
Using microSD card	microSD card	300
Sending or receiving data via infrared communication	Infrared communication	312
Using alarm clock	Alarm clock	325
Using calculator	Calculator	337
Using a mobile phone overseas	International Roaming	372
Updating software	Software update	429
Keeping security software updated	Scanning function	433

Contents

■ Before using your FOMA terminal	Inside front cover
■ Viewing/Searching this manual	1
■ Easy Search	4
■ Main functions of F-01A	8
■ Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)	10
■ Handling precautions	17
■ Waterproofness	20
■ Accessories and main options	24

■ Before Using the Handset 25

Part names and functions Available styles
Viewing display Selecting menu Touch panel
Pointing device Motion sensor Using UIM
(FOMA card) Attaching/Removing battery
pack Charging battery Battery level Power
ON/OFF Select language Date & time Caller
ID notification User information etc.

■ Voice/Videophone Calls/ PushTalk..... 57

Making a call Redial/Received calls Chaku-
moji 186/184 Tone signal (DTMF) Call option
WORLD CALL Receiving a call Any key
answer Close settings Respond and Hold
Public mode Recorded messages Using
Chara-den Videophone settings Notify of
switchable mode Making/Receiving a
PushTalk call PushTalk phonebook PushTalk
alert etc.

■ Phonebook 81

Phonebook new entry Alert by contact Group
settings Search/Edit/Delete phonebook
Secret attribute Quick dial etc.

■ Sound/Screen/Light Settings 89

Ring alerts & Sounds Adjust volume Vibrate
alert/effect Silent mode Timed theme Stand-
by display Call image Mail image Power
saving mode Select startup menu Display
Machi-chara Kisekae Tool Light alert Clock
display format etc.

■ Security Settings..... 109

Security code Terminal security code change
PIN code Fingerprint authentication All lock
Omakase Lock Self mode Personal data lock
Keypad dial lock Privacy mode Side key hold
Lock on close/Auto keypad lock Accept/Reject
call Data security service Reset Delete all data
Initializing remotely Remote customization
etc.

■ Mail 133

Creating/Sending i-mode mail Deco-mail
Decome-Anime Attachment Saving i-mode
mail Quick mail Receiving i-mode mail Check
new message Operating Inbox/Outbox Mail
settings MessageR/F Area Mail Creating/
Sending SMS etc.

■ i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel/i- concier 169

Site display Change i-mode password Go to
location Bookmark Screen memo
Downloading from site Uploading to site i-
mode settings Operating certificate i-motion
i-Channel i-Channel ticker i-concier etc.

■ Full Browser 191

Displaying web pages designed for PC Setting
Full Browser etc.

■ Camera..... 197

Still camera Movie camera Sound recorder
Advanced settings Setting for shooting Bar
code reader etc.

1Seg.....213

Setting channels 1Seg watching Program guide i-appli Data broadcasting TVlink Multi window Recording Reserving Remote controller with microphone etc.

Music 227

Setting program Operating Music&Video Channel Saving music data Playing/Managing music data BGM play Remote controller with microphone etc.

i-appli/i-Widget.....241

Downloading Starting i-appli i-appli To i-appli stand-by display i-appli call Managing i-appli i-Widget etc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa 263

iC transfer service Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli IC card lock Receiving ToruCa etc.

Map/GPS Function 273

Position location GPS compatible i-appli Location request Notify location Loc. history Loc. history Map setting Setting GPS etc.

Data Management 287

Displaying/Editing image Playing/Editing movies/i-motion Displaying Machi-chara Displaying Chara-den Playing melody microSD card Managing data Infrared communication/iC transmission Displaying PDF Displaying Word, Excel, PowerPoint files Displaying recorded data of 1Seg etc.

Convenient Functions 321

Multitask Multitask Quick search Auto power ON/OFF Countdown timer Alarm clock Scheduler Shortcut icons Custom menu Side key shortcut Fake call Voice memo/Movie memo Call duration/Call cost Calculator Notepad Dictionaries Pedometer Earphone/Microphone with switch Bluetooth® etc.

Character Entry 349

5-touch input method Save phrase Copying/Cutting characters KUTEN code input Save word Password manager DL dictionary 2-touch input Text input method Touch entry etc.

Network Services..... 361

Voice Mail Service Call Waiting Call Forwarding Service Nuisance Call Blocking Service Caller ID Request Service Dual Network Service English guidance Service numbers Arrival call act Remote control Multi Number 2in1 OFFICEED Additional service etc.

Overseas use..... 371

Overview of international roaming service (WORLD WING) Services available Preparing and checking for overseas use Making/Receiving a call Network search mode PLMN setting 3G/GSM setting Area service status Roaming guidance Bar calls at roaming Network services etc.

PC Connection 381

Data communication DOCOMO keitai datalink etc.

Appendix/Troubleshooting ... 387

Menu list Combination of Multitask/Multitask functions Services available Introduction of options and related devices Error messages Warranty and After-Sales Service Software update Scanning function SAR certification information Intellectual Property Right etc.

Index/Quick Manual 445

Index Quick Manual Quick Manual (Overseas Use)

Main functions of F-01A

i-concier

i-concier is a service to use FOMA terminal conveniently in which a character on the stand-by display (Machi-chara) notifies you of useful information like "Concierge" and you can download schedules/i-schedule from a site. With i-concier, downloaded schedule or ToruCa is automatically updated with the latest information, and address information etc. of stores and companies are automatically added to the phonebook. →P188

i-appli call

i-appli call is a function allows a third party or content providers to prompt predetermined i-appli to be activated and it is used for activating other party's applications to play a versus game etc. →P257

i-Widget

i-Widget is a function that allows you to easily access frequently-used contents (widget applications) such as calculator, clock, a TV program guide and stock price information. You can also check the latest information at a glance by activating i-Widget screen. →P261

1Seg

You can watch "1Seg" that is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting for mobile devices. You can also shoot a still image and record video while watching 1Seg. Dubbing+10 (→P303) is supported for recording video. →P214

International Roaming

While staying overseas, you can use the same FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address as those used in Japan (3G/GSM Areas are supported). →P372

And, Japanese-English/Japanese-Chinese version of "しゃべって翻訳 for F (Speech Translation for F)", an application that interprets your Japanese into English or Chinese and your English or Chinese into Japanese, is preinstalled. →P248

Waterproofness

Waterproof to IPX5 and IPX7 standards if the external connection jack cap is strictly closed as well as the back cover is mounted and locked. →P20
You can talk or send/receive mail in the rain, in a bath or at a poolside. You can hand wash a dirty handset with tap water.

Flip style and touch operations

Using the flip style, in which the display is rotated out, you can operate by touching the display or sliding your finger on the display. →P39

Pointing device

Pointing operation can be performed with fingerprint sensor. Since the cursor or pointer can be moved by moving a finger from side to side and up and down instead of using multi-cursor key, and items can be selected by double-tapping (tapping twice with a finger), i-appli or Full Browser can be operated more intuitively. →P44

Motion sensor

You can stop alarm sound by double-tapping FOMA terminal or enjoy watching light or Flash graphics change by tilting FOMA terminal. And the orientation of image display and display of sub-display changes according to the direction of the terminal. For Full Browser, you can also scroll the screen by tilting the terminal. →P45

Super Dual microphones and Super clear-voice 2

Super Dual microphones enable your voice to reach to a party clearly by reducing noise other than your voice in concert with 2 microphones. Also, Super clear-voice 2 (→P60) enables a party's voice to be heard clearly by adjusting a party's voice to optimum volume by speech range when detecting surrounding noise.

These two functions allow you to communicate by delivering each other's voice even in noisy places.

Automatic lighting of sub-display

Sub-display light can be automatically turned on only by picking up and tilting FOMA terminal. →P100

Rainbow key light

You can change the keypad light color to 7 colors. →P100

Machi-chara

You can display a character which moves around on the stand-by display etc. You can also download Machi-chara. →P102, 178, 297

Fingerprint authentication

Fingerprint authentication can be performed with FOMA terminal folded. Also, you can restrict the use of FOMA terminal more strictly by setting "Fingerprint access" that does not accept security code authentication. →P112

Auto keypad lock and Immobile sensor

In addition to Lock on close that locks each time FOMA terminal is folded, FOMA terminal is equipped with Auto keypad lock that locks key operations when no operation is made for the specified time. When Immobile sensor is set to "ON", Auto keypad lock is activated when no operations for the specified time and no movements of FOMA terminal are detected together. →P124

High-performance camera

FOMA terminal is equipped with a Approx. 520 million pixels camera that has functions such as a face detection to distinguish people's face, local contrast correction and high-sensitive shooting mode. Just touch the screen to focus in flip style. A still image is saved according to the orientation of camera when the image is shot. →P198

Quick search

On the stand-by display or while performing a function, search functions of i-mode, Full Browser, Map, dictionaries, phonebook or mail can be used by pressing the search key. →P232

Shortcut icons

Only by selecting the icon pasted on the stand-by display for function, file or mail being created, you can start the target operation quickly. And, icon on the stand-by display can be changed freely. →P331

Pedometer

FOMA terminal can be used as a pedometer, and walking distance, consumed calories or quantity of burnt fat can be calculated. →P339
Also, Pedometer widget application is installed so that you can easily check the number of steps or consumed calories measured with the pedometer by using i-Widget. →P253

Bluetooth

A wireless connection can be established between the FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device. You can talk with handsfree or listen to music while keeping the FOMA terminal in a bag etc. →P342

Other functions

- Videophone call →P58
- Chaku-moji →P62
- Kisekai Tool →P102
- Security Settings →P110
- i-mode mail/Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictogram →P134
- Chaku-uta full[®]/Uta-hodai/Music&Video Channel^{*}/MUSIC Player/Video clip →P228
- i-appli/Mega i-appli/Chokkan Game →P242
- Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa →P264
- Map/GPS Function →P274
- Network services →P362
- High-speed communication compatibility →P382
- * A charged service requiring subscription.
- * "Chaku-uta full" is registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

- Before using your FOMA terminal, or when necessary, read the precautions below to ensure safe use and handling. After reading this manual, keep it carefully.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the product or damage to property.
- The signs below differentiate between the levels of danger that can occur if the product is not used within the specified guidelines.

 DANGER	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may directly result from improper use.
 WARNING	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may result from improper use.
 CAUTION	This sign denotes that bodily injury or damage to property may result from improper use.

- The symbols below show specific directions.

 Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
 No disassembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the phone or its components is not allowed.
 No wet hands	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components with wet hands is not allowed.
 No liquids	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components in a bathroom or other highly humid area is not allowed.
 Do	This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.
 Unplug	This symbol denotes that the equipment should be unplugged.

■ Precautions contain the description below.

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) and UIM (common).....	11
Handling FOMA terminal	12
Handling battery pack.....	14
Handling optional devices (AC Adapter/DC Adapter/Desktop Holder/In-Car Holder)	15
Handling UIM	16
Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment	16

◆ **Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) and UIM (common)**

 DANGER



Don't

Do not use, store, or leave the equipment in hot areas such as near flames or in areas under strong direct sunlight such as inside a vehicle.

May cause the equipment to be deformed or malfunction, and battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the capability or life to be reduced or shortened. Overheating on parts of the case may cause burns or injuries.



No disassembly

Do not disassemble or remodel the equipment. Do not solder items onto the equipment.

May cause fire, injuries, electric shock, or malfunction. It may also cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



No liquids

Do not let the equipment get wet.

Contact with water or other liquids can cause heating, electric shock, fire, malfunctions or injuries. Take care of the place for use and treatment of the equipment.



Do

Use the battery pack and adapter (including battery charger) specified by NTT DOCOMO for your FOMA terminal.

Use of equipment not specified by DOCOMO can cause FOMA terminal, battery pack and other parts to leak, heat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack F10

Desktop Holder F27

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02

FOMA DC Adapter 01/02

FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02

FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use

* Contact a sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop for information on other compatible products.

 WARNING



Don't

Do not put the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter (including battery charger) or UIM in microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, FOMA terminal, adapter (including battery charger) or UIM to heat, smoke, ignite, or damage circuits.



Don't

Do not throw the equipment or give hard shock to it.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.



Don't

Keep conductive materials (metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) from coming in contact with the charging jack or external connection jack. Do not put those materials inside the terminal.

May be subject to electrical short and could cause fire or malfunction.



Do

Turn FOMA terminal OFF before entering a place such as a gas station where flammable gases are generated. Do not charge the battery. The gas may catch fire.

When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place as a gas station, turn OFF the terminal before using it. (When IC card lock is activated, deactivate it before turning OFF the terminal.)



Do

If the equipment starts giving off a strange smell, overheats, becomes discolored or deformed during use, charging or in storage, immediately perform the following operations.

1. Remove the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn FOMA terminal OFF.
3. Remove the battery pack from FOMA terminal.

May cause the equipment to heat, burst or ignite or the battery pack to leak if you keep using the equipment.

CAUTION



Don't

Do not leave the equipment on unstable or sloping surfaces.
May cause malfunction or injuries.



Don't

Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.
May cause malfunction.



Do

Children using the equipment should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Do not allow them to use the equipment without adult supervision.
May cause injuries.



Do

Store the equipment out of reach of small children.
May be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.



Do

Be careful especially when using FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including battery charger) continuously for a long time.

If you execute i-appli, use videophone call or watch 1Seg while charging the battery pack, FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (including battery charger) may become hot. Directly touching a hot part for a long time, you may have redness, itching or rash on your skin, or it may result in low-temperature burns depending on your constitution and/or health condition.

◆ Handling FOMA terminal

WARNING



Don't

Do not direct the infrared data port toward your eye and transmit signals.
May affect your eyes. Faulty operation could result from directing the infrared data port toward other infrared equipment and transmitting signals.



Don't

Do not turn on the light by getting the lighting part closer to other person's eyes.

May impair eyesight. And may cause accidents like injury etc., by dazzling or astounding other people.



Don't

Do not put FOMA terminal in the place such as the dashboard near the air-bag, where the influence of air-bag explosion is expected.

When the air-bag explodes, FOMA terminal may hit yourself or others and could cause injury, equipment malfunction or damage.



Don't

When you use electronic medical equipment, do not keep the terminal in your chest pocket or inside pocket.

Using your FOMA terminal near medical electronic equipment could cause equipment failure.



Don't

Do not put foreign objects such as liquid like water, metal pieces or burnable things into UIM or microSD card slot.

May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Don't

Do not turn on the light aiming directly at the driver of the car etc.

May disturb driving and cause an accident.



Do

Turn FOMA terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.

May cause electronic equipment or electronic medical equipment to fail or malfunction. If the function which automatically turns the power ON is set, cancel the setting before turning the power OFF.

When using the phone in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility. If you do prohibited act such as using the phone in an airplane, you may be punished according to law.



Do

When you talk by setting handsfree, always keep FOMA terminal away from your ear.

And, when connecting the earphone/microphone to FOMA terminal and play a game or music, adjust the volume moderately.

Too loud volume may cause a hearing loss. And, if you cannot hear the sound around you clearly, it may cause an accident.



Do

If you have weak heart, be careful when setting the Vibrate alert (vibration) or alert volume setting.
Could affect heart function.



Do

If it starts thunder while using the terminal outdoors, turn the power OFF immediately, and move to a safe location.

May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.



Do

Turn FOMA terminal OFF near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.

May cause the equipment to fail or malfunction.

* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid.

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control equipment.

Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electronic medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.



Do

When the display or camera lens is accidentally broken, be careful of broken glass or exposed internal parts of FOMA terminal.

Surfaces of display and camera lens are made of plastic panels and they are structured for the glass not to scatter, however, if you mistakenly touch broken or exposed parts, you may be injured.

CAUTION



Don't

Do not swing FOMA terminal by its strap.

May cause the terminal damage or failure, or injury to yourself or others.



Don't

When using the motion tracking or motion sensor, check the safety around you, hold FOMA terminal firmly, and do not shake it unnecessarily.

The motion tracking and motion sensor are functions to operate by tilting or shaking FOMA terminal. There is a risk that FOMA terminal hits people or objects around you by shaking it too much, causing a serious accident or damage.



Don't

If you put a metal strap or the like to FOMA terminal, be careful not to let the strap hit people or objects around you when performing motion tracking or using motion sensor.

Accidents such as injury, malfunction or damage may result.



Don't

Do not place magnetic disks or cards with magnetic stripes near FOMA terminal or place inside and fold the terminal.

Data stored on media such as cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks may be erased if the storage medium is placed near the phone.



Don't

Do not bring magnetized objects close to FOMA terminal.

Bringing strong magnetism close may cause a malfunction.



Don't

If the display part is accidentally broken and liquid crystal leaks out, do not put the liquid in your mouth, inhale, or make contact with your skin. If the liquid gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse it with clean water and see a doctor immediately.

And, if the liquid adheres to skin or clothing, use alcohol etc. to wipe it off, then wash with soap.

May cause loss of sight or skin problems.



Don't

Do not bring the speaker close to your ear when the ring alert is sounding or you are playing a melody with FOMA terminal.

May cause hearing loss.



Do

In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction or fail.

In this case, do not use the phone because it may hamper safe driving.



Mobile phones can give some users skin problems such as itching, allergic reactions or rashes. If you develop skin problems, stop using the phone immediately, and see a doctor.
FOMA terminal contains metal in the parts below.

Place of use	Material	Surface finishing
Inner lid of the battery pack, rear side of the back cover, the place that a product name plate is adhered to, screws	Stainless	None



When opening or closing FOMA terminal, take care not to have your fingers or strap caught by the terminal.
May cause injuries or damages.



When watching 1Seg, take a certain distance from the display in a fully bright place.
May cause your eyesight to be impaired.

◆ Handling battery pack

- **Check that the battery type matches the type displayed on the battery pack label.**

Display	Battery type
Li-ion 00	Li-ion battery

⚠ DANGER



Do not connect a wire or other metal objects to the jack. And, do not carry or store FOMA terminal with objects like a metal necklace.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Do not try to force the battery pack onto FOMA terminal if you are having trouble installing it. Always install it after checking that it is correctly oriented.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Do not throw the battery pack into the fire.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Do not nail the battery pack, hit with a hammer or step on it.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



If the battery pack's fluid contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.
May cause loss of sight.

⚠ WARNING



If the battery pack seems to have abnormalities such as deformation or scratches due to an external impact or falling, stop using it immediately.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.



If the battery pack does not have a full charge after being charged for the specified time, stop charging it.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



If the battery pack leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove it from the vicinity of open flames.
The vapors from leaking battery pack fluid may ignite or explode.



Be careful not to let your pet bite the battery pack.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.

CAUTION



Do not discard old battery packs together with other garbage.

May cause igniting or environmental destruction. Tape the terminals of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into a sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.



Do not charge a wet battery pack.

May cause heat generation, ignition or rupture of the battery pack.



If the battery pack's fluid contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area thoroughly with clean water.

May hurt the skin.

◆ Handling optional devices (AC Adapter/DC Adapter/Desktop Holder/In-Car Holder)

WARNING



Do not use the adapter (including battery charger) cord or power cord if it gets damaged.

May cause electric shock, heat or fire.



Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom or other highly humid area.

May cause electric shock.



Always use the DC adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Do not plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.

May cause fire.



When it starts to thunder, do not touch FOMA terminal and adapter (including battery charger).

May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.



Do not short the charging jack while it is connected to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the charging jack with a part of your body such as your hand or finger.

May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injuries.



Place battery charger and desktop holder in a stable location while charging. Do not cover or wrap battery charger and desktop holder with a cloth, blanket, etc.

May cause FOMA terminal to be removed or the optional devices to be heated, resulting in fire or troubles.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (including battery charger) cord or power cord.

May cause electric shock or fire.



No wet hands

Do not touch the adapter (including battery charger) cord or outlet with wet hands.

May cause electric shock.



Do

Only use with the specified power source and voltage.

If incorrect voltage is used, this may cause fire or failure. When using FOMA terminal overseas, use AC Adapter for global use.

AC adapter : AC100V

DC adapter : 12 or 24V DC (specific for negative ground vehicle)

AC adapter for global use : Between 100V and 240V AC (Connect to the AC outlet for internal household use)



Do

If the DC adapter's fuse blows, replace it only with the specified fuse.

Using other fuses may cause fire or equipment failure. For the specified fuse, see the instructions that come with the DC adapter.



Do

Wipe off any dust that accumulates on the power plug.

May cause fire.



Do

When you connect the AC adapter to an outlet, make sure not to touch with metal such as metal straps and firmly connect to the outlet.

May cause electric shock, electrical short or fire.



Do

When you disconnect the adapter (including battery charger) from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter (including battery charger) cord or power cord with excessive force; instead hold the plug to disconnect.

Pulling the cord could damage it, possibly leading to electric shock or fire.



Unplug

Always remove the power plug from the outlet when not using the adapter for an extended period.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Unplug

Immediately remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter.

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Unplug

Always remove the power plug from the cigarette lighter socket when cleaning the equipment.

May cause electric shock.

◆ Handling UIM

⚠ CAUTION



Do

Be careful of the cut surface when removing UIM (ICs).

May hurt hands or fingers.

◆ Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

- These precautions are based on the guidelines produced at the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.

⚠ WARNING



Do

Obey the following rules inside medical facilities.

- Do not bring FOMA terminal into operating rooms (ORs), intensive care units (ICUs) or coronary care units (CCUs).
- Turn FOMA terminal OFF in hospital wards.
- Turn FOMA terminal OFF in hospital lobbies and corridors if electronic medical equipment could be nearby.
- If the medical facility has specified zones where use or possession of mobile devices is prohibited, obey those instructions.
- If the function to automatically turn ON the power is set, cancel the setting before turning the power OFF.



Do

Turn FOMA terminal OFF in crowded trains or other public places where pacemaker or defibrillator wearers could be nearby.

FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.



Do

Wearers of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators must carry and use FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from the implanted device.

FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.



Do

When electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemakers or defibrillators are in use outside of medical facilities (such as in home care settings), check with the device manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by electrical signals.

FOMA terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

Handling precautions

◆ General

- F-01A is waterproof, however, do not allow water to seep into the handset and do not allow accessories or optional devices to get wet.
 - This FOMA terminal is waterproof to IPX5 and IPX7 standards if the external connection jack cap is strictly closed as well as the back cover is mounted and locked, however, it is not completely waterproof. In the rain or with the handset wet, do not remove/insert the battery pack or open/close the external connection jack cap or the back cover. Seeped water may cause corrosion inside the terminal. Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof. Malfunctions deemed to have been caused by water are not covered by the warranty. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, is charged.
- Clean FOMA terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
 - The display of FOMA terminal may have been applied special coating to improve clearness of the color LCD. When cleaning FOMA terminal, rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth can scratch the display. Take care when handling the unit, and clean it with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses). Drops of water or dirt left on the display can cause stains or remove the coating.
 - If FOMA terminal is wiped with alcohol, paint thinner, benzine or detergent, the printing may disappear or color may fade.
- Clean the jack occasionally with a dry cotton swab.
 - If the jack is dirty, the contact may become poor and the power may shut OFF. A dirty jack can result in poor charging, so clean it with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
- Do not place FOMA terminal near an air-conditioner outlet.
 - The rapid change in temperature may cause condensation, causing internal corrosion and malfunction.
- When using, be careful not to subject excessive force to FOMA terminal or the battery.
 - If FOMA terminal is crammed into a brimming bag or placed in a pocket and sat on, display, internal PCBs or battery pack may be damaged or malfunction. And, if external devices are plugged into the external connection jack (earphone/microphone jack), the breakage of the connector or malfunction may result.
- Carefully read the separate instructions that come with FOMA terminal, adapter (including battery charger) and desktop holder.
- Do not rub or scrape the display with a metal piece etc.
 - It may scratch the display, causing malfunction or damage.

- Do not press the surface of the touch panel strongly or operate it with sharp objects such as a nail, a ballpoint pen and a pin.
 - It may damage the touch panel.

◆ FOMA terminal

- Avoid extreme temperature.
 - Use the FOMA terminal where the ambient temperature ranges between 5 and 40°C (for temperatures of 36°C or higher, such as in a room with a bath, limit usage to a short period of time) and the ambient humidity ranges between 45 and 85%.
- FOMA terminal may affect land-line phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.
- Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in your FOMA terminal.
 - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- Do not plug external devices into the external connection jack (earphone/microphone jack) at a slant, or do not pull it forcibly while it is plugged.
 - May cause malfunction or damage.
- Do not fold FOMA terminal with the strap held inside.
 - May cause malfunction or damage.
- It is normal for FOMA terminal to become warm during use or charging. Continue to use it.
- Do not leave FOMA terminal with the camera in areas under strong direct sunlight.
 - May cause discoloring or burn-in of materials.
- The terminal should normally be used with the external connection jack cap closed.
 - Dust and/or water brought into FOMA terminal cause troubles.
- Do not use FOMA terminal with the back cover removed.
 - It may cause the battery to come off, or may cause a malfunction or damage.
- Do not put an extremely thick sticker etc. on the display or keypad.
 - May cause malfunction.
- Do not give a hard shock to the fingerprint sensor and take care not to scratch its surface.
 - May not only cause the fingerprint sensor to malfunction, but also disable authentication or pointing operation.

- Clean the fingerprint sensor by wiping with a dry soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cleaner).
 - Any soil or water attached to the surface of the fingerprint sensor may cause fingerprint scan failure, which may lead to reduction of the authentication performance, an error where the sensor operates as authenticating when the finger is not in contact or disability of pointing operation.
- Do not turn FOMA terminal OFF while using microSD card.
 - It may cause data loss or malfunction.

◆ Battery pack

- The battery pack is a consumable part.
 - Replace the battery pack if FOMA terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge, though it may vary by operating conditions. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35 ℃).
- Always charge before using it for the first time or after extended disuse.
- The operation time provided by the battery pack varies by the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.
- The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.
- Do not preserve or leave the battery pack as it is empty.
 - It may cause the battery pack performance to be degraded or its lifetime to be shortened.

◆ Adapter (including battery charger)

- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35 ℃).
- Do not charge the battery in the areas below.
 - In areas of excessive humidity, dust or vibrations
 - Near land-line phones or TVs/radios
- It is normal for the adapter (including battery charger) to become warm while charging. Continue to use it.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.
 - The vehicle's battery could become flat.
- When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.
- Do not give strong shock. Do not deform the charging jack.
 - May cause malfunction.

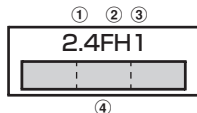
- When folding the desktop holder, take care to avoid catching your fingers or adapter cables (including the charger cord) in the holder.
 - May cause injuries or damage.

◆ UIM

- Do not use excessive force to install/remove UIM.
- It is normal for UIM to become warm during use. Continue to use it.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using a UIM with another IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep UIM ICs clean.
- Clean UIM with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
- Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in UIM.
 - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- To preserve the environment, bring the old UIM to a sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop.
- Avoid extreme temperature.
- Take care not to scratch, touch accidentally or short IC.
 - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop UIM or subject it to shocks.
 - May cause malfunction.
- Do not bend UIM or place heavy objects on it.
 - May cause malfunction.
- Do not install UIM into FOMA terminal with a label or sticker put on UIM.
 - May cause malfunction.

◆ Bluetooth devices

- This FOMA terminal is equipped with the security features, that are compliant with Bluetooth standards for communication via Bluetooth. However, depending on the settings, there may not be enough security. Be aware of security risks when using Bluetooth.
- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any information which may be leaked during communication via Bluetooth.
- With this FOMA handset, you can use a Bluetooth headset, handsfree, audio, dial-up connection and object push device. An audio/video remote control may be available with an audio device (for Bluetooth compatible devices).
- Frequency bands
Frequency bands used by FOMA terminal Bluetooth function are as below.



- ① 2.4 : Radio equipment that uses the 2400 MHz band.
- ② FH : The modulation is the FH-SS method.
- ③ 1 : The expected interference distance is 10 m or shorter.
- ④  : All bandwidths between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz are used, and the bandwidth used by mobile object identification devices cannot be avoided.

Cautions on using Bluetooth devices

In the bandwidth used by this handset, in addition to home electric appliances such as a microwave oven and industrial/scientific/medical devices, in-plant radio stations used to identify mobile objects used in production lines of a factory that require a license, specified low power radio stations, or amateur radio stations that do not require a license (hereafter "other radio stations") can be in operation.

1. Before using this terminal, check whether other radio stations are in operation in your neighborhood.
2. If radio wave interference occurs between the terminal and "other radio stations", use the terminal in a different location or "Turn the power OFF" to avoid the radio wave interference.
3. For more detailed information, contact "General Inquiries" using the phone number on the back of this manual.

◆ FeliCa reader/writer

- FeliCa reader/writer function of FOMA terminal uses weak waves requiring no licenses for radio stations.
- It uses 13.56 MHz frequency band. When using other reader/writers in your surroundings, keep FOMA terminal away sufficiently from them. Before using the FeliCa reader/writer, confirm that there are no radio stations using the same frequency band nearby.

◆ CAUTION

- Do not use a remodeled FOMA terminal. Using a remodeled terminal violates the Radio Law.
FOMA terminal is certified according to technical standard conformance of specified wireless equipment based on the Radio Law, and as a proof of it, the "Technical Compliance Mark" is depicted on the engraved sticker of FOMA terminal.
If you remodel FOMA terminal by removing its screws, your certification of technical standard conformance becomes invalid.
Do not use FOMA terminal with its certification of technical standard conformance invalid as it violates the Radio Law.
- Be careful when you use FOMA terminal while driving a car etc.
Using a mobile phone while driving is subject to penal regulations.
If you inevitably receive a call, tell the caller that you will "call back" by handsfree, then park in a safe place and call back.
- Use the Bluetooth function only in Japan.
The Bluetooth function of the FOMA terminal is compliant with wireless standards and is authorized for use only in Japan.
If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.
- Use FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.
FeliCa reader/writer function of FOMA terminal conforms to Japanese radio standards.
If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.

Waterproofness

F-01A is waterproof to IPX5 (former JIS protection code 5)*¹ and IPX7 (former JIS protection code 7)*² standards if the external connection jack cap is strictly closed as well as the back cover is mounted and locked.

- *¹ IPX5 means that F-01A phone keeps functioning after directly applying a jet flow of 12.5 L/min. for at least 3 minutes from a distance of 2.5-3 m on a rotating turntable.
- *² IPX7 means that F-01A phone keeps functioning after it is slowly submerged to depth of 1 m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for 30 minutes and then taken out.

Advantages in actual operation

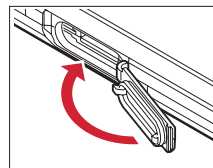
- You can talk or watch 1Seg programs without using an umbrella in the rain (for rainfall of 20 mm or less per hour).
 - * When your hands or FOMA terminal are wet, avoid installing/removing the back cover or opening/closing the external connection jack cap.
- You can wash the FOMA terminal by submerging and moving it forth and back in still water in a basin etc.
 - * When washing, use only your hands, not a brush or sponge, with FOMA terminal locked, the back cover installed and the external connection jack cap held in position.
- You can use the FOMA terminal in a poolside area. Do not put the terminal in the water of a swimming pool.
 - * If FOMA terminal gets wet with water from the swimming pool, wash it as described above.
 - * Do not use FOMA terminal underwater. May cause malfunction.
- You can use FOMA terminal in a bathroom. Do not put the terminal in the bathtub.
 - * Never put FOMA terminal in hot spring water or water containing soap, detergent or bath powder.
 - * Do not use FOMA terminal underwater. May cause malfunction.

Important precautions

To keep the FOMA terminal waterproof, be sure to observe the points below.

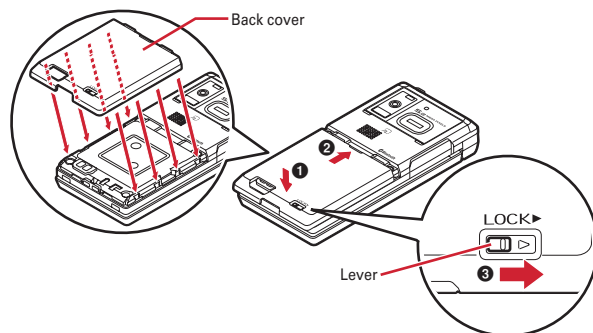
- Securely close the external connection jack cap and back cover.
- Make sure that the cap and back cover are completely closed without floating.
- Before using, make sure that the back cover lever is at the LOCK position.

Closing external connection jack cap



Installing back cover

Align 8 tabs of the back cover with concaves of FOMA terminal. While pressing the back cover in the direction of ① so that there is no gap between FOMA terminal and back cover, slide the back cover in the direction of ② to install, then slide the back cover lever in the direction of ③ to lock.



- Do not use FOMA terminal underwater (including opening/closing and keypad operations).

- Do not let FOMA terminal get wet with liquids other than water at room temperature.

<Example>



Soap/Detergent/Bath powder



Ocean water



Swimming pool



Hot spring



Sand/Mud

To keep the FOMA terminal waterproof, replacement of parts is required every 2 years regardless of whether FOMA terminal appears normal or abnormal. DOCOMO replaces the parts as a chargeable service. Bring FOMA terminal to a sales outlet such as a DOCOMO SHOP.

◆ Precautions

- Securely lock the back cover and firmly close the external connection jack cap. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand, tiny fiber, etc.) put between contact surfaces may allow water to enter.
- If FOMA terminal gets wet with water or other liquids with the external connection jack cap or back cover open, the liquid may get inside the terminal causing electric shocks or malfunction. Stop using FOMA terminal, turn the power OFF, remove the battery pack and contact a DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- The external connection jack cap and the rubber packing of the inner lid play an important role for keeping waterproof. Do not remove or scratch them. Also, prevent dust from adhering to them.
- Do not leave water on FOMA terminal. In a cold region, water may freeze causing malfunction.

- Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (e.g., such water flow that gives you pain when applied to your skin directly from a faucet or shower). May cause malfunction though F-01A provides waterproof performance of IPX5.
- Do not wash FOMA terminal in a washing machine etc.
- Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof.
When watching 1Seg etc. with FOMA terminal installed in the desktop holder, do not use it in a bath room, shower room, kitchen or lavatory even if it is not connected to the AC adapter.
- Do not put FOMA terminal in hot water, use it in a sauna or apply hot airflow (from a hair dryer etc.) to it.
- Never try to charge the battery pack when FOMA terminal is wet.
- Do not poke the microphone, earpiece or speaker with a swab or sharp object. May damage the waterproof performance.
- Do not leave FOMA terminal wet. May short-circuit the power jacks.
- FOMA terminal does not float on water.
- Do not let FOMA terminal fall. It may become scratched causing the waterproof performance to degrade.
- If the back cover is damaged, replace it. Water may enter inside from a damaged section causing troubles such as electric shocks or corrosion of the battery.
- Do not leave water on the microphone, earpiece or speaker. Such water may interfere with talking.

DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations under all states. Malfunctions deemed to be caused by inappropriate operation by the customer are not covered by the warranty.

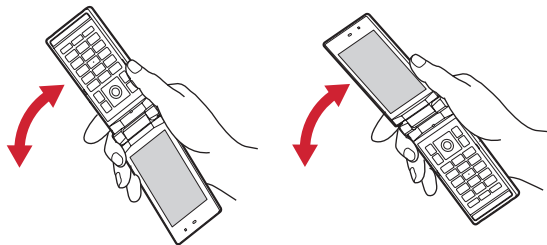
◆ Draining water when the FOMA terminal gets wet

When FOMA terminal is wet, water may flow out after wiping it off; drain the water following the steps below.

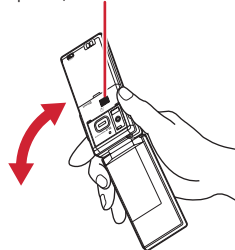
- ① Wipe FOMA terminal surface with dry, clean cloth etc.



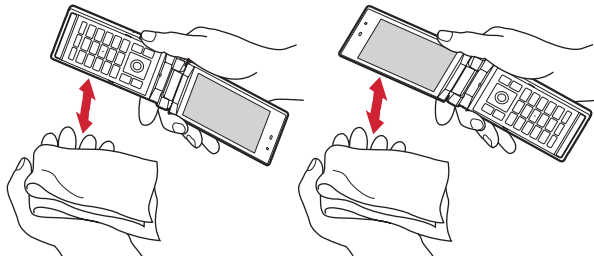
- ② Shake FOMA terminal approximately 20 times, firmly holding its hinge section, until there is no more water splattering.



To drain water off the speaker, shake FOMA terminal with the speaker upward



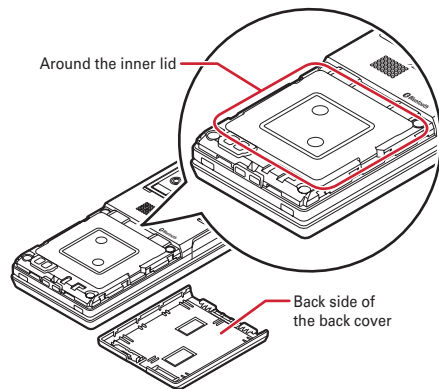
- ③ Softly press dry, clean cloth etc., against FOMA terminal to wipe off water remaining in the microphone, earpiece, speaker, keys or hinges.



- ④ Remove the back cover and wipe off any drops of water around the inner lid and the rear side of the back cover. After wiping off the water, install and lock the back cover.

Removing back cover→P49 ■Attaching ① in "Attaching/Removing battery pack"

* Never open the inner lid.



- ⑤ Wipe off water drained from FOMA terminal with dry, clean cloth etc.

* Water, if any, remaining in FOMA terminal may ooze up after wiping off.
* Do not wipe off water remaining in concaves directly with a cotton swab etc.

◆ Charging

Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof. Check the following before and after charging.

- Check that FOMA terminal is not wet. If wet, adequately drain FOMA terminal and wipe off water with dry, clean cloth etc. before connecting a desktop holder or opening the external connection jack cap.
- When charging the battery after FOMA terminal is wet, adequately drain it and wipe off water with a dry, clean cloth etc., before connecting a desktop holder or opening the external connection jack cap.
- When the external connection jack cap is opened for charging, close the cap firmly after charging.

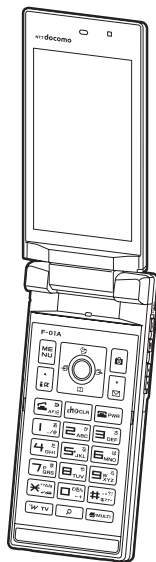
It is recommended that the desktop holder be used for charging to prevent water from seeping inside from the external connection jack.

- * Never try to charge the battery pack when FOMA terminal is wet.
- * Do not touch the AC adapter or desktop holder with wet hands. May cause electric shock.
- * Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a place subject to water. May cause fire or electric shock.
- * Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom, kitchen, lavatory or other highly humid area. May cause fire or electric shock.

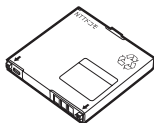
Accessories and main options

<Basic package>

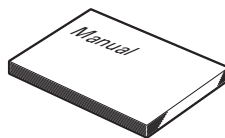
F-01A
(including Back Cover F33
and the written warranty)



Battery Pack F10

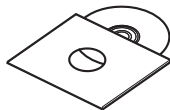


Instruction manual



* Quick Manual is appended
on P456.

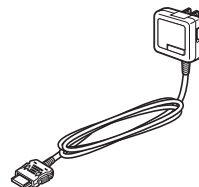
CD-ROM for F-01A



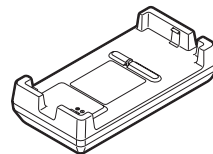
* The PDF version of "Manual for PC Connection" and
"Kuten Code List" are contained in the CD-ROM.

<Optional accessories>

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(including written warranty and
operation manual)



Desktop Holder F27
(including operation manual)

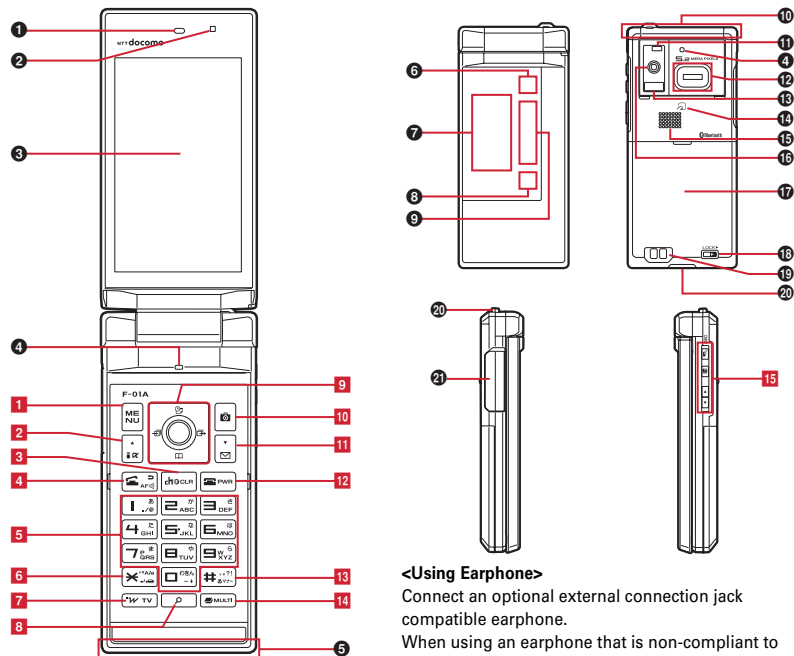


Other optional accessories → P417

Before Using the Handset

Part names and functions	26
Available FOMA terminal usage styles	29
Viewing display	30
Sub-display/Light overview	34
Selecting functions from menu	36
Selecting function in flip style	Touch panel 39
Pointing operation using fingerprint sensor	Pointing device 44
Using motion sensor	45
Using UIM (FOMA card)	46
Attaching/Removing battery pack	49
Charging	50
Checking battery level	Remaining battery level 53
Turning power ON/OFF	Power ON/OFF 54
Changing screen display to English	Select language 55
Setting date and time	Date & time 55
Notifying the other party of your phone number	Caller ID notification 56
Checking your own phone number	User information 56

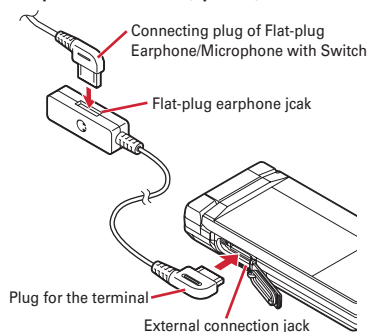
Part names and functions



<Using Earphone>

Connect an optional external connection jack compatible earphone.
When using an earphone that is non-compliant to external connection jack, connect an optional plug adapter to use it.

Example of connecting Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional)



<Functions of parts>

① Earpiece

Hear other party's voice from here.

② Light sensor

Sense the ambient luminance (automatic adjustment of the brightness of the display).

* Blocking the light sensor may disable correct adjustment of the brightness.

③ Display (touch panel) → P30, 39

④ Microphone

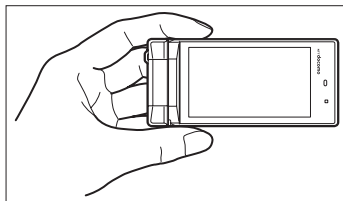
Send your voice from here.

* Do not cover with your finger while talking or recording sound.

* The rear microphone is used for reducing noise. It does not pick up your voice.

6 1Seg antenna → P215

- * The terminal has a built-in 1Seg antenna. For better signal reception, do not cover the antenna with your hand.
- * It is recommended to hold the opposite side of antenna part as follows when watching 1Seg in flip style.



6 Call light → P35

7 Sub-display → P34

8 Mail light → P35

9 Light → P106

Turn on or blink when activating Lock on close or Auto keypad lock, shooting an image, recording a movie, operating Music&Video Channel player or MUSIC Player, and it operates according to the settings of Indicator light or Light alert.

10 FOMA Built-in antenna

- * The terminal has a built-in FOMA antenna. For better voice quality, do not cover the antenna with your hand.

11 Light/Shooting indication light → P72, 205, 333

Camera light for videophone calls, still image shooting, movie recording, simple light, or it turns on or blinks for still image shooting or movie recording.

12 Fingerprint sensor → P44, 112

Operation of pointing device, register/authenticate fingerprint

- * The color of fingerprint sensor sheet varies by the products, but that does not affect the function or performance.

13 Infrared data port → P312, 315

Infrared communication, Infrared remote control.

14 FeliCa mark → P264, 312

Installation of IC card

- * You can use Osafu-Keitai by placing it over IC card reader or send/receive data by iC transmission. The IC card cannot be detached.

15 Speaker

Hear ring alert or voice of the caller using the speakerphone etc. from here.

16 Camera

Shoot still images or movies, send images over a videophone call.

17 Back cover

- * Remove the back cover to open the inner lid and the battery pack to access microSD card slot. → P300

18 Back cover lever → P49

19 Charging jack

20 Strap opening (2 openings)

- * Use the attachment opening at the bottom of FOMA terminal when attaching accessories such as a neck strap.

21 External connection jack

An integrated connection jack for charging or connecting earphone etc.

- * Available to connect an optional AC adapter, DC adapter, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function, Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal etc.

<Functions of keys>

The functions available by pressing keys are as below.

- : Press ■ : Press for 1 second or more

1 MENU key

- Display menus, perform the operation shown at the upper left of the guide area.
- Start/Cancel side key hold.

2 i-mode/i-appli/▲ (scroll)/Character

- Display i-mode Menu.
- Scroll upward the mail screen or site/website display by pages.

- Perform the operation shown in the lower-left corner of the guide area, switch character entry modes.

■ Display i-appli folder list.

3 ch/α/Clear key

- Display i-Channel list, switch i-appli stand-by display and i-appli activation.
- Delete characters or return to previous screen.
- Start/Cancel Self mode.

4 Start a voice call/↔/Speakerphone/AF key

- Make/Receive a voice call, return to the previous character while entering characters.
- Switching the speakerphone function, start/cancel auto-focus.
- Make a voice call using the speakerphone function.
- Restore the character string to its previous state.

5 Keypads

- Enter phone numbers (1-9) or characters, select menu/items.
- Perform the function registered in Custom menu.

- Enter phone number (0) or characters, select menu/items.
- Use Auto switch of Int'l call assist when making international calls.

6 * /A/a/Line feed/Public mode (Drive mode) key

- Enter " * ", " ^ ", " ° ", etc., switch upper/lower case.
- Line feed while entering characters, select menu/items.
- Switch display/hide of guide area when shooting a still image.
- Switch horizontal and vertical displays while playing movie/i-motion.
- Start/Cancel Public mode (Drive mode).

Available FOMA terminal usage styles

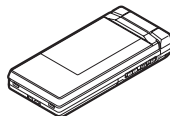
With this FOMA terminal, in addition to "Normal style" in which the terminal is open, you can use "Flip style" in which the display is rotated out.

- This guide uses "Normal style" to describe operations unless especially noted.

Folded

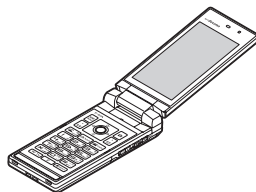
You can obtain information from the sub-display or the light.

- Carry FOMA terminal in this status.



Normal style

This basic style is suitable for all functions.



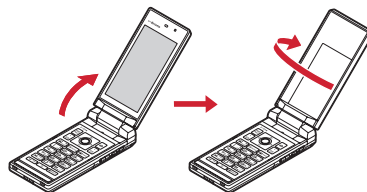
- * You can talk over a videophone call looking at the other party's image after rotating the display clockwise 180 degrees to face the camera toward you in normal style.→P72

Flip style

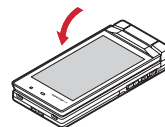
You can use FOMA terminal with the display rotated out.

- Operations in flip style→P39

- ① Open FOMA terminal and rotate the display clockwise 180 degrees until it stops



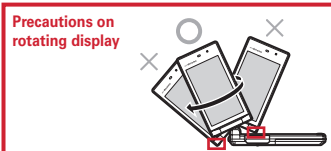
- ② Fold the display forward



- * To restore normal style, raise the display and rotate it counterclockwise 180 degrees until it stops.

✓INFORMATION

- To switch to flip style, do not rotate the display counterclockwise or rotate beyond 180 degrees. Also, do not allow a corner of the display to touch the terminal or keys. Doing so may scratch or damage them.



- Take care to avoid catching your fingers when switching to flip style.

Viewing display

The current state can be checked by the icon appearing on the screen.



Normal style (Stand-by display)



Flip style (Folder list screen)

- ① : Battery icon → P53
- ② : Signal level icon → P54
- ③ : Out of service area → P54
- SELF : Self mode ON → P116
- ④ : Data transfer mode ON*1 → P123, 300, 312, 345
- ⑤ : In i-mode (during i-mode connection)/(during packet communication) → P170
- ⑥ : In infrared communication → P312
- Infrared remote control in operation → P315
- ⑦ (blue)/ ⑧ (gray) : Bluetooth power ON/Power saving mode activated → P345
- ⑨ : The total calls cost exceeds the limit → P337
- *2 ⑩ : Bluetooth connection established → P344
- ⑪ : Communication using handsfree-compatible device in progress → P66
- ⑫ : Communication using a Bluetooth handsfree device in progress → P345
- ⑬ : Communication using a Bluetooth headset in progress → P345
- ⑭ : Speakerphone function in use → P59
- ⑮ (blue)/ ⑯ (red)/ ⑰ (gray) : Network in use → P374
- ⑱ : Power saving mode activated → P101
- *2 ⑲ : Positioning with GPS → P274
- ⑳ (blue)/ ㉑ (gray) : Location request setting with GPS/Out of permission period → P282
- ㉒ : A phonebook entry or schedule has secret attribute → P87, 330
- *2 ㉓ : Unread Area Mail, unread mail, i-concier information or MessageR/F state → P143, 160, 162, 165, 189
- ㉔ : Unread Area Mail

- ㉕ : Unread i-mode mail and SMS storage space is full on UIM
- ㉖ : Unread i-mode mail and SMS storage space is full
- ㉗ : SMS storage space is full on UIM
- ㉘ : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist
- ㉙ : Unread i-mode mail exists
- ㉚ : Unread SMS exists
- ㉛ : Arrival i-concier information exists
- ㉜ (red)/ ㉝ (blue) : Unread MessageR storage space is full or unread MessageR exists
- ㉞ : Unread mail and unread i-concier information exist
- ㉟ (red)/ ㊱ (green) : Unread MessageF storage space is full or unread MessageF exists
- *2 ㊲ : PushTalk state or storage state in i-mode Center → P75, 143, 160
- ㊳ : During PushTalk session
- ㊴ : Downloading phonebook page on the network
- ㊵ : i-mode mail and MessageR/F storage are full or one of these spaces is full and unreceived mails exist in Data Center
- ㊶ / ㊷ : i-mode mail or MessageR/F storage space is full in Data Center
- ㊸ : Unreceived i-mode mail and MessageR/F exist in Data Center
- ㊹ / ㊺ / ㊻ : Unreceived i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF exists in Data Center
- *2 ㊼ : Displaying SSL page/Executing SSL session with i-appli or using i-appli downloaded from SSL page → P171
- ㊽ : Displaying an SSL/TLS page → P192
- ㊾ : Mail failed to Auto-send exists → P142

- : Auto-send mail exists→P142
- : Music&Video Channel program obtaining reservation exists→P229
- ⑪ : i-appli/i-appliDX/i-appli call state→P243, 257, 258
- : During i-appli operation
- (gray) : i-appli stand-by display ON
- (orange) : i-appli is being started from the i-appli stand-by display
- : i-appliDX is running
- (gray) : i-appliDX stand-by display ON
- (orange) : i-appli is being started from the i-appliDX stand-by display
- : i-appli call received while i-appli is running
- (gray) : i-appli call received while displaying i-appli stand-by display
- (orange) : i-appli call received while i-appli is being started from i-appli stand-by display
- : i-appli call received
- ^{*3}
⑫ : Alarm clock ON→P325
- : 1Seg watching/recording reservation, schedule reminder ON→P222, 327
- : Schedule reminder or 1Seg watching/recording reservation and alarm clock are simultaneously ON→P222, 325, 327

*1 When data transfer mode is activated, the terminal is in the same state as out of service area and Multitask becomes unavailable.

*2 The current highest-priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in descending order of the priority from the top.

*3 Time appears on a screen other than the stand-by display.

- ^{*3}
⑬ : Inside OFFICEED area→P369
- ⑭ : Arrival information→P39
- : Shortcut icons→P331
- ⑮ : Silent mode ON→P95
- : Personalized silent mode ON→P95
- ⑯ : Call alert volume is Silent→P92
- : Vibrator for voice call ON→P93
- : Call alert volume is Silent and vibrator for voice call ON→P93
- ⑰ : In Public mode (Drive mode)→P69
- ⑱ : Answer machine ON/recorded messages full→P70
- ^{*2}
⑲ : Keypad dial lock ON→P118
- : Side key hold ON→P123
- ^{*2}
⑳ : Location request of GPS success/failure/end as unanswered→P281
- : Personal data lock ON→P117
- : Music&Video Channel obtaining failure/success→P229
- : 1Seg recording reservation completed/failed→P224

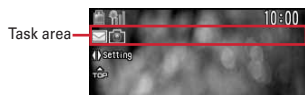
- ^{*2}
㉑ : Reading UIM→P46, 54
- (key is yellow) : IC card lock ON→P266
- : Individual IC card lock→P266
- ㉒ : Displaying available multi-cursor key in Focus mode→P39
- : Lock on close/Auto keypad lock ON→P124
- : Remote customization ON→P131
- ㉓ : Performing 1Seg recording reservation/1Seg recording (only watching stopped)→P222, 224
- : i-appli Auto start failed→P257
- ㉔ : State of USB mode settings and microSD card→P300, 307
- : microSD card installed during Communication mode
- (blue)/ (gray) : microSD card installed or not during microSD mode
- (blue)/ (gray) : microSD card installed or not during MTP mode
- ^{*2}
㉕ : Connected to external device using USB cable→P74, 307
- : Pedometer ON→P340
- ^{*2}
㉖ : Software update notice→P430
- : Software update pre-specified→P431
- : Update notification icon→P430
- : Auto-update of the latest pattern definition failed/succeeded→P433

✓INFORMATION

- Depending on the displayed function, an icon may be displayed at a different position, or some or all icons may not be displayed.

◆ Task area

The icon indicating the function (task) in progress appears in the task area. During Multiaccess or Multitasks, the icons show which functions are running.



❖ Icons indicated on the task area

- : Voice call
- : Received calls
- : Redial
- : Answer machine/Voice memo
- : Videophone call
- : Videophone using an external device
- : Call (switching)
- : Call (disconnecting)
- : PushTalk
- : FOMA terminal phonebook
- : Contact setting of Privacy mode
- : Kisekai Tool
- : Still camera
- : Movie camera
- : Bar code reader
- : i-mode
- : i-mode Bookmark/Go to location/Browser history/Screen memo/two-touch site
- : i-concier
- : Mail/MessageR/F
- : Area Mail
- : Receiving i-mode mail
- : Inquiring for i-mode mail/SMS
- : Sent msg log/Received msg log
- : Receiving SMS
- : i-appli
- : ToruCa
- : Position location of GPS
- : Location request of GPS

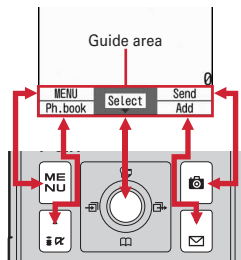
- : Notify location of GPS
- : Location history (GPS)
- : Full Browser
- : 1Seg
- : My Picture
- : Movie/i-motion
- : Chara-den
- : Melody
- : (blue)/ (gray) : Accessing microSD card/Standing by for accessing
- : Activating Music&Video Channel
- : Music&Video Channel program obtaining
- : MUSIC Player
- : Sound recorder
- : My Document (PDF data)
- : Other (Word, Excel, PowerPoint file)
- : Adjusting volume by Multitask
- : Countdown timer
- : Alarm clock
- : Scheduler/Schedule reminder ringing (including activation notification of 1Seg)
- : Fake call
- : User information
- : Calculator
- : Pedometer
- : Search engine
- : Notepad
- : Dictionaries
- : Bluetooth
- : Packet transmission or communication/Sending or receiving packets in progress via Bluetooth
- : 64K data communication via Bluetooth
- : Accessing Data Center
- : Displaying synchronization log
- : Network services set
- : Calling or communicating packets via USB/Sending or receiving packets via USB
- : 64K data communication
- : Accessing external data
- : Updating software/Software update notified

: Updating pattern definition/Displaying version

/ (gray) : Each function set or on hold

◆ Guide area

Operations that can be performed by pressing , , , and are displayed in the guide area. Displayed operations vary by the screen.



- on the guide area corresponds to multi-cursor keys (It may be different depending on the function you are using or how the site or website is made).

◆ List screen



- ① When a list extends to multiple pages, the currently displayed page number and the total number of pages appear.

- ② Pressing the keypads corresponding to the item number or pressing the keys below allows you to select an item.



- ③ indicates that there are items that can be selected above and below the cursor position. Press to move the cursor. When is pressed on the last item of the page, the next page appears, when is pressed on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.
 indicates that there are items that can be selected over the multiple pages. Press to change the page. Some screens such as an icon selection screen cannot be switched.

◆ i-Widget screen



e.g. : i-Widget screen

- While i-Widget is running, operations that correspond to , , , , and are displayed on the screen as in the guide area. Displayed operations differ depending on screens.
- Using i-Widget → P261

Sub-display/Light overview

With sub-display or light of FOMA terminal, various information or states can be checked.

◆ Displaying sub-display

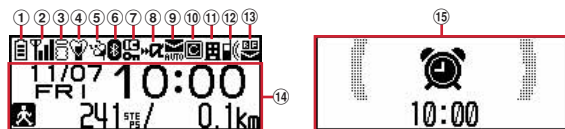
When FOMA terminal is folded, the sub-display shows icons or messages. Selecting a menu item or displaying detail information of a missed call or unread message is also available.

- Animation appears when FOMA terminal is folded. When a missed call, unread mail or information of i-concier exists, animation that notifies you of accumulated information appears. The clock appears after the animation stops or by pressing or while the animation is displayed.

With no accumulated information, design of animation differs according to the setting of "Clock style" of Clock & alert image.

- In All lock, Omakase Lock or Side key hold, pressing one of , or shows a message indicating the lock is set, and after a period of time, the display is switched to the clock display.
- When FOMA terminal is folded, sub-display light turns on. If no operation is performed for approximately 15 seconds, light turns off, but it turns on again if one of , or is pressed. When Auto light on of Sub-display is set to "ON", the light automatically turns on by picking up or tilting FOMA terminal.
- When opening FOMA terminal with information displayed on the sub-display, the display disappears.
- By pressing while watching/recording 1Seg, playing video or activating MUSIC Player or Music&Video Channel player, you can display clock.
- When Motion sensor is set to "ON", the display is reversed according to the orientation of FOMA terminal. → P45

◆ Displayed icon or state



Icon and date/time

State display (e.g. : While Alarm clock is emitting)

- : Battery icon
 - : Signal level icon
 - : Out of service area
 - : Self mode ON
 - : In data transfer mode
 - : In i-mode communication (connected to i-mode site)/(packet communication)
 - : Silent mode ON
 - : Personalized silent mode ON
 - : While playing MUSIC Player
 - : While watching 1Seg
 - : Location request setting with GPS/Out of permission period
 - : Bluetooth power ON (blinks during communication)
 - : Bluetooth power saving ON
 - : IC card lock ON
 - : i-appli call
 - : Auto-send mail exists/Failed auto-send mail exists
 - : Arrival i-concier information exists
 - : i-mode mail or MessageR/F exists in the Center/Storage space in full
 - : Missed calls/Recorded messages/Voice messages in Voice Mail service exist
 - : Unread Area Mail exists/Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist/Storage space is full
 - : Unread MessageR exists or unread MessageR storage space is full
 - : Unread MessageF exists or unread MessageF storage space is full
- Displayed in smaller size when unread i-mode mail or SMS exists.
- 14 The clock is displayed according to the settings of "Clock style" of Clock & alert image.
- When pedometer is activated, the number of steps and walked distance for the day appear.

⑮ The states below are notified by message or image.

- State display of voice call, videophone call (including Chaku-moji and voice messages in Voice Mail service), PushTalk, recorded message
- While i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F is being checked for or received, Area Mail or i-concier information is being received
- State display of Position location, Location request, Notify location function of GPS
- While watching /recording 1Seg, playing video, playing melody, activating Music&Video Channel player, activating MUSIC Player or using microSD card
- While alarm clock or schedule reminder (including activation notification of 1Seg) is sounding, Countdown timer is operating/sounding
- Status display of packet, 64K, USB, infrared or Bluetooth communication

✓INFORMATION

- Because of the characteristics of surface panel, sub-display may not be seen clearly at places in the sunlight. In this case, check the display in the shade, or make a shadow with your hand to check the display.

❖ Selecting functions from the menu of sub-display

You can select from 7 functions : Activate/End MUSIC Player, IC card Lock/Unlock, Silent mode ON/OFF, Check new msg, Quick light, Fake call and Bluetooth ON/OFF.

- While IC appli is activated, you cannot perform IC card Lock/Unlock.

<Example> Performing i-mode inquiry

1 While clock is displayed, Using , move the cursor to "Check new msg"



- While the menu is displayed, press to return to clock display or state display of running function.
- Authentication is required when "Unlock IC card" is selected.

❖ Displaying missed call or unread mail

When missed calls, recorded messages, unread messages, unread MessageR/F or voice messages in Voice Mail service exist, turn on the sub-display light and press to check the number of these items. Pressing [] while checking the number of items displays the detail information for approximately 5 seconds (except voice messages in Voice Mail service).

- Up to 10 detail information can be checked by pressing .

<Example> Switching to detail information of missed calls

1 while confirming the number of items

The number of items, total number of items, receive date/time, and the caller information are scroll-displayed.

❖ Displaying call light and mail light

Call light and mail light on sub-display blink in the cases below.

(Call light) : When unchecked missed call exists

(Mail light) : When unread mail (including SMS) exists

- Effective when Indicator light is set to "ON".
- Checking missed call or unread mail (including SMS) stops blinking.

❖ Displaying light

- Turn on or blink in the cases below.

- When receiving a call, mail/i-concier information, calling, obtaining ToruCa or accessing IC card
- When opening/closing FOMA terminal or GPS positioning (Position location, Notify location and Location request)
- When activating Lock on close or Auto keypad lock, shooting a still image, recording a movie, operating Music&Video Channel player or MUSIC Player
- When alarm clock, schedule reminder or countdown timer is sounding
- During iC transmission
- For some functions, operation is performed according to Light alert setting.

Selecting functions from menu

◆ Menu screen and switching method

◆ Menu screen

The menu screen below is available.

Kisekae menu : A menu that you can change the design using Kisekae tool.

In addition to menus compatible with movies, "拡大メニュー (enlarged menu)" that is easy to view with large font and "Simple Menu" are available. A Kisekae menu matched with the color of FOMA terminal is set by default.

- Some Kisekae menu changes the menu structure according to usage frequency. In the Kisekae Tool stored by default, "ダイレクトメニュー (Direct menu)" in the "Preinstalled" folder supports this function.
- Some Kisekae menu does not support English display when setting Select language to "English".

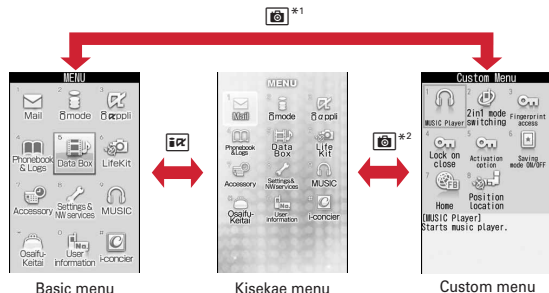
Basic menu : A basic menu that the menu structure and menu numbers are fixed.

- Menu icons or background design can be changed by customizing Kisekae Tool or menu.→P102, 105
- The font size of the menu changes synchronized with Kisekae Tool.

Custom menu : A menu that menu items can be freely registered.→P332

❖ To switch the menu screen temporarily

In each menu screen, you can temporarily switch to a different menu screen by the operations below. You can also set which menu to display when pressing **[MF]** on the stand-by display.→P102



- *1 Cannot be switched when Kisekae menu or Shortcut menu is set as Select startup menu.
- *2 Cannot be switched when Basic menu is set as Select startup menu.

✓INFORMATION

- Some types of Kisekae menus change the menu structure according to usage frequency. Also, the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applied.

◆ Selecting a function

Press **[MF]** in stand-by and select and perform the functions from the menu displayed.

There are 2 ways. One method involves using the keypad corresponding to the menu items (Shortcut operation). In the other method, the multi-cursor key is used to select from among the menu items.

- If any function is restricted by lock functions or no UIM is installed, **[lock]** icon appears or the font color changes indicating that the function is disabled. Note that the display does not change for Kisekae menu. When a function is selected, the reason that the function cannot be performed etc. is displayed.
- Function description about the menu item at the cursor position may appear for some types or levels of the menu. The current setting may also displayed in some menu items.

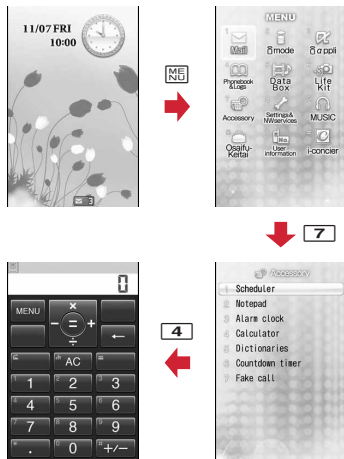
❖ Selecting menu items by keypad (Shortcut operations)

When numbers (item number) are assigned to menu items, a menu item can be selected by pressing the corresponding keypad ([1] [9], [0], [X], [H]).

- Press the item number displayed with the preferred menu item.
- Item numbers differ when "Simple Menu" is set by Kisekai Tool.
- Item number of the menu→P388

<Example> Selecting "Calculator"

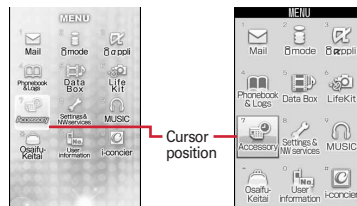
1 [ME] [NU] [7] [4]



❖ Selecting menu items by multi-cursor key

<Example> Selecting "Calculator"

1 [ME] [NU] ▶ Move the cursor to "Accessory" ▶ [OK]



- If you press [X] to move the cursor, the color and/or design of the cursor position change. Moving by [X] is unavailable for some menus.
- When setting "Simple Menu" for Kisekai menu, you can select menu (to the second layer) also by placing the cursor and pressing [OK].

2 Move the cursor to "Calculator" ▶ [OK]

❖ To return to stand-by display or previous menu

After selecting a menu item, you can return to the stand-by display or previous menu by pressing the keys below.

[ME] : Return to the stand-by display.

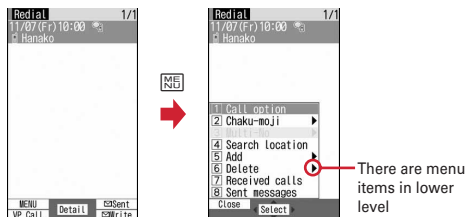
[CLR] : Return to the previous menu. Depending on the menu, you can return to the previous menu also by pressing [OK].

◆ Selecting method of submenu

When "MENU" is displayed at upper-left of the guide area, various operations can be performed with submenus.

<Example> Selecting the redial submenu

1 On the redial list screen, **[MENU]** ▶ Press a keypad for the submenu item number

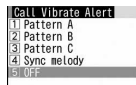


- You can also select an item by moving the cursor to it and pressing **[OK]** or **[CLR]**.
- Item numbers of the submenu with the same functions may vary by the operating screen.
- Pressing **[MENU]** or **[CLR]** closes the submenu.

◆ Operating procedure of each item

■ Selection of an item

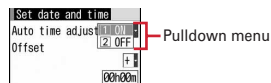
When numbers or **[X]** **[#]** **[F1]** **[F2]** **[F3]** is displayed, press the corresponding keys. You can also select an item by moving the cursor with **[Up]** and press **[OK]**. When moving the cursor, item at the cursor position may be framed or change in color.



- Depending on the function, you can check vibration pattern of the vibrator, color or lighting pattern of light alert, the color scheme of screen settings or brightness of the display by moving the cursor to an item.

■ Pulldown menu operation

Move the cursor to the item to set and press **[OK]**, and then press the keypads corresponding to the item number.



- You can also select an item by moving the cursor to it and pressing **[OK]**.

■ Check box operation

Press the keypads corresponding to the item number.



- You can also select an item by moving the cursor to it and pressing **[OK]**.
- Pressing keypad for the item number or pressing **[OK]** after placing the cursor, the check box switches ☒ (Select) and ☐ (Cancel).
- For some functions, you can select or cancel all items by pressing **[MENU]**.

■ Confirmation screen operation

If a confirmation screen for performing functions appears while deleting, setting data, etc., move the cursor to "Yes" or "No" and press **[OK]**.



- For some functions, items other than "Yes" or "No" may appear.

◆ Displaying information quickly <Focus mode>

When  is pressed on the stand-by display with arrival information icon or i-concier information displayed, or with Info/calendar layout or Shortcut icons set, the display is changed to Focus mode that allows you to quickly display the related information.

- i-concier information → P189
- Shortcut icons → P331
- When i-concier information is displayed with Info/calendar layout set, the cursor cannot be moved to Info/calendar layout.

1 ► Move the cursor to an icon ►



An icon at the cursor position is surrounded with a red frame.

The direction is indicated that it can be moved to by using multi-cursor key.

- A screen matched for the selected icon appears.

 2 (Missed calls) : Received call list appears. With 2in1 in Dual mode,  1 appears when there is a missed call only to Number B and  2 appears when there are missed calls to both Number A and B.

 1 (Recorded messages) : The recorded message list appears.

 1 (Voice messages in Voice Mail service) : A confirmation screen for playing message appears. With 2in1 in Dual mode,  1 appears when there is a message only to Number B and  2 appears when there are messages to both Number A and B.

 2 (Unread messages) : The folder list of Inbox appears.

 2 (Unread ToruCa) : The ToruCa list of the folder containing the latest unread ToruCa appears.

 (i-appli call) : i-appli call log appears.

- You can perform the same operations when the next icon appears.
 -  : Connect to external device using USB cable
 -  /  : Software update advance notice/notification
 -  /  : Auto-update of latest pattern definition success/failure
 -  /  /  : Location request success/failure/end as unanswered
 -  /  : Music&Video Channel program obtaining success/failure
 -  /  : 1Seg recording reservation completion/failure
 -  : Performing 1Seg recording reservation/1Seg recording (only watching stopped)
 -  : Pedometer

Canceling Focus mode :  or 

✓ INFORMATION - - - - -

- When moving the cursor to the icon for arrival information and press  for 1 second or more, the icon disappears temporarily. For a voice message icon of Voice Mail service, a confirmation screen appears asking you to delete the display. Select "Yes" to delete the display. It reappears when the number of items is changed by accumulating new information or viewing existing information.
- In Focus mode, you cannot display the menu by pressing .

Touch panel

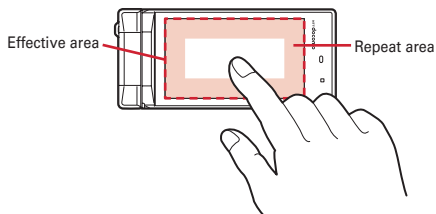
Selecting function in flip style

In flip style, the display is used as touch panel and you can select functions with touch operation and side key operation. You can activate Still camera, Movie camera, Full Browser, 1Seg image/video, Activate 1Seg, My Picture, i-motion, My Document (PDF data) and Other Document (other documents) from flip menu. You can also view mail, answer a call or PushTalk call, stop alarms, perform Location request or Notify location, etc.

- The display is used horizontally all the time.
- You can also operate functions or view mail that can be activated from flip menu after changing the style from normal to flip style during the operation.
- Images, movies/i-motion, PDF files and other files (Word, Excel or PowerPoint) are always displayed in full-screen display in flip style.
- If message indicating that function you attempted to use is not available in flip style appears, return the terminal to normal style.
- In flip style, the pointing device, Double-tap operation to stop alarms (motion sensor) and operations set by Side key shortcut are unavailable.

◆ Touch operation

- Touch operation is enabled in the range below. Touch the display with the ball of your finger.



- Types of touch operations are as described below. Required operation varies depending on functions or screens.
Touch : Touch the display lightly and release the finger.
Double-touch : Touch the display lightly twice and release the finger.
Slide : Keep touching the display, move your finger up, down, right or left and release the finger.
Slide quickly : Touch the display slightly and flick your finger up, down, right or left.
- When sliding your finger into the repeat area, you can continue the operation continuously until you release your finger. It is available on the full-screen display of Full Browser, My Document (PDF data), Other Document (other documents) for scrolling the message text screen or for rewinding/forwarding operation of movie/i-motion.
- Touch operation may be disabled except for MENU or selecting items depending on screens. On full-screen display, touch operation on some part of the screen may also be disabled depending on functions used.

◆ Notes for touch operations

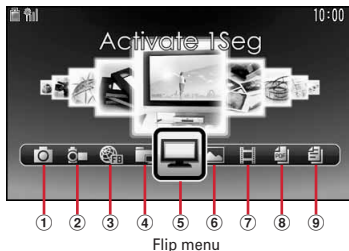
- Touch operations do not work in the cases below.
 - Operations with a glove, 2 or more fingers, finger nail, pen, ball-point pen or pencil
 - Operations with a foreign object placed on the display
- Note that the actions below may cause malfunction.
 - Hitting the display with a metal object or jewelry
 - Allowing water drops or dust to get on the display, allowing the display to get wet or dirty, or touching the display with a sweaty finger

- Moving a finger too quickly
- Attaching protect sheet or label on the display
- Do not use excessive force. It may cause injury or damage.
- Do not scrape with your finger or use a pointed object such as a pen on the display. Doing so may cause scratches on the display or malfunction.

◆ Flip menu

❖ Displaying flip menu

If changing style from normal to flip while stand-by display or a menu screen is displayed, flip menu appears. Flip menu also appears if the running function is terminated while in flip style.



- ① **Still camera** : Activate still image shooting
- ② **Movie camera** : Activate movie recording
- ③ **Full Browser** : Display Full Browser screen from "Home", "Bookmark" or "Browser history"
 - The menu has 2 levels.
- ④ **1Seg image/video** : Display "1Seg" in Data Box
- ⑤ **Activate 1Seg** : Activate 1Seg watching
- ⑥ **My Picture** : Display "My Picture" in Data Box
- ⑦ **i-motion** : Display "i-motion" in Data Box
- ⑧ **My Document** : Display "My Document" in Data Box
- ⑨ **Other Document** : Display "Other" in Data Box

Selecting function from flip menu

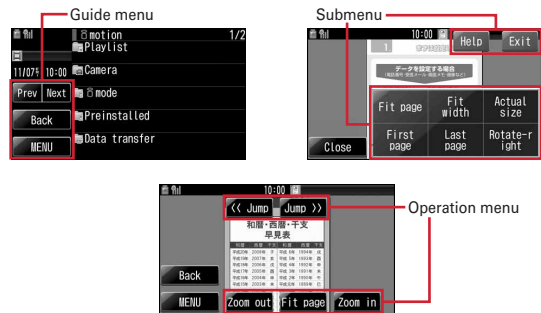
<Example> Displaying image from "My Picture" in Data Box

1 Touch on flip menu ▶ Touch the zoomed in menu again ▶ Touch a folder ▶ Touch an image file

- The menu already zoomed in can be started with touching once.

Basic operations

Guide menu/Submenu/Operation menu



- Common guide menu items are as below.
[Prev]/[Next] : Switch a page when a list has multiple pages or view previous or next mail from mail details screen
[Back] : Return to the previous screen
[MENU] : Display submenu
[Close] : Close submenu (also close by touching area other than guide menu or submenu)
- Common submenu items are as below.
[Help] : Display touch operation guide (only if double-touch, slide and slide quickly are available other than from guide menu or submenu)
[Exit] : Exit the function and return to flip menu
- When touching the menu with on submenu, the menu in the lower level is displayed.
- Menu items other than common menus differ depending on functions. →P42

Switch displaying/hiding menu

Pressing or touching the display (except MENU) switches displaying/hiding menu on full-screen display except in Still camera or Movie camera. If no operation is performed for approximately 10 seconds after the menu appears, the menu disappears automatically.

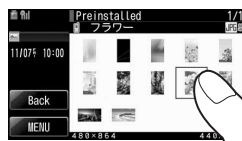
Operations to exit functions

To exit a function and return to flip menu, touch [MENU] on the guide menu and [Exit] on the submenu. When a confirmation screen for exiting appears, touch [Yes].

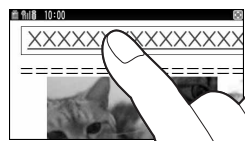
- You can also return to flip menu by touching [Back] repeatedly on guide menu.
- When the menu is not displayed, press to display and then operate.

Selection of an item

You can directly touch to select an item such as folder or file, or link on Full Browser screen.



Selection of data item



Selection of link item

Authentication

Perform authentication when the terminal security code entry screen or fingerprint authentication screen appears.

- If you switch to flip style in All lock or when Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is enabled on the stand-by display, or when Auto keypad lock is activated on flip menu, only "All locked." is displayed in All lock, only icons and clock are displayed in Lock on close/Auto keypad lock. When you touch the screen, the terminal security code entry screen or fingerprint authentication screen appears.
- Fingerprint authentication →P114
- Entering terminal security code with the touch entry →P359

■ Operations available on a confirmation screen

When a confirmation screen for performing the function appears, touch an item on the confirmation screen (such as "Yes").

- Touch [Close] in guide menu to close the confirmation screen.

■ Channel switch (while watching 1Seg)/volume adjustment (while watching 1Seg, playing video, playing movie/i-motion)

- When sliding right or left on the screen, the channel switch panels appear. Touch ◀ or ▶ to switch channels.
- When sliding up or down on the screen or touching [Volume] on operation menu, the volume adjustment panel appears. The sound volume can be changed with sliding up or down on the panel when the volume adjustment panel appears.
- Display disappears when you touch other than the panels or there is no operation for 3 seconds since the panel is displayed.



Channel switch screen



Adjust volume screen

■ Operations common to side keys

- On full-screen display, each time you press [F], guide menu or operation menu is displayed/hidden.
- Press [F] on the folder list or data list to return to the previous screen.
- Each time you press [F] (1 sec. or more), Multitask menu is displayed/hidden.
- When submenu lower than the second level is displayed, press [F] to return to the upper level.

❖ Operations available from each function

■ Still camera/Movie camera

Menu operations→P200, 203, 209

■ Activate 1Seg

Menu operations→P218, 222

■ Full Browser

- On submenu, [Home], [Add bookmark], [Display bookmark], [Browser history] and [Zoom] are available.

- On operation menu, [Reload], [◀] (Previous page) and [▶] (Next page) are available.
- The operations below are available in addition to menu.
 - Scroll : Slide (or slide quickly) on the display
 - Zoom Out/Zoom in (Zoom) : Double-touch on the display
 - Display linked pages (mail address not supported) : Touch link item
- While obtaining data, [Cancel all windows], [Cancel this window] are available on submenu.
- When Motion sensor is "ON", hold down [F] and tilt FOMA terminal front, back, right or left to scroll the screen.→P46
- Character entry on Full Browser screen→P358

■ Operations common to 1Seg image/video, My Picture, i-motion, My Document (PDF data), Other Document (other data)

- Operations below are available on the folder list or data list.
 - Select folder : Touch folder name
 - Switch to microSD list (except 1Seg image/video) : Touch [MENU] and [microSD] in order on the folder list
 - Select data : Touch a thumbnail item on the data list
 - Switch pages : Slide quickly on the display

■ My Picture folder list and while displaying images

- [Slideshow] is available from submenu on the data list.
- While displaying image, the operations below are available.
 - Zoom out/Same magnification/Zoom in : Double-touch on the display and touch [Zoom Out]/[QCIF]/[Zoom in] (touch once to zoom in or out by 20%)
 - Scroll : Slide on the display
 - Display previous or next screen : Slide quickly right or left on the display or [F]
- When Motion sensor is set to "ON", the length/width of the display or display size are switched according to the orientation of FOMA terminal.→P45

■ Playing movie/i-motion

- On operation menu, [PAUSE], [PLAY] and [VOLUME] are available.
- On submenu, [STOP] is available.
- While playing, the operations below are available in addition to menu.
 - Switch wide/full-screen : Double-touch on the display
 - Rewind/Fast forward play : Slide right or left on the display (during pause, slide to rewind/fast forward the movie by 5 minutes)
- Double-touch or sliding operation is available only when guide menu or operation menu is not displayed.

■ 1Seg video playing

- From operation menu, [◀◀]/[▶▶] (rewind/fast forward), [⏸] (pause), [▶] (play), [◀◀Search]/[>>Search] (back/forward by 1 frame during pause), [Subtitles], [ViewSW] and [Volume] are available.
- On submenu, [Stop playing], [Skip FF 30 sec], [Skip REW 15 sec], [Start beginning], [Previous video] and [Next video] are available.
- Operations below are available with side keys.
 - [⏸] : Pause/Play
 - [🔊] : Adjust volume
 - [⏮] (1 sec. or more)/[⏭] (1 sec. or more) : High-speed fast forward/High-speed rewind

■ While displaying My Document (PDF data)/Other Document (other data)

- From operation menu, [Zoom In], [Fit page], [Zoom Out] and [◀◀ Jump]/[Jump >>] (move by 10% of the whole page) are available.
- From submenu, [Fit page], [Fit width], [First page], [Last page] and [Rotate-right] are available.
- While displaying My Document (PDF data), [Actual size] is available on submenu.
- While displaying Other Document (other data), [Mobile mode] and [PC mode] are available on submenu.
- The operations below are available in addition to menu.
 - Scroll : Slide on the display
 - Zoom in : Double-touch on the display

✓ INFORMATION

- To download again the PDF data or i-motion that you failed to download or partially downloaded, perform the operation in normal style.

❖ Other functions

In addition to functions that can be started from flip menu, the functions below are available in flip style.

■ Receiving a call or PushTalk call

You can touch [Talk] to answer a call or PushTalk call on the incoming call screen. Hold FOMA terminal with the earpiece up to talk in flip style.

- On guide menu, [Talk], [On hold] (for calls only) and [Disconnect] are available. [On hold], [Cancel] and [Disconnect] are available during a call. [Disconnect] is available during a PushTalk session.
- When a call arrives, from submenu [Call rejection], [Voice mail] and [Call forwarding] are available.

- For only adjusting volume, [🔊] reduces and [🔊] increases the volume.
- You can also answer a call using Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch or Bluetooth device.

■ Making a voice call

You can make a voice call using Earphone/Microphone with Switch. During a call, [On hold], [Cancel] and [Disconnect] are available on guide menu.

■ Viewing mail

The reception result screen appears when receiving a mail. Touch "Mail" and the folder to display the received mail details screen. The same operation is available when the style is changed from normal to flip while mail folder list or mail list is displayed.

- The operations below are available on the received mail details screen. When the message text displayed on Messages, the operations of scrolling/zooming out/actual size/zooming in are available.
 - Scroll : Slide up or down
 - Switch to previous or next mail : Slide quickly right or left on the display
 - Stop attached melody : Double-touch the display
 - Zoom out/Same magnification/Zoom in : Touch the display then touch [Zoom Out]/[QCIF]/[Zoom In]
- For Decome-Anime, touch [Preview] to play Flash graphics. During playing, [Retry], [Stop] and [Skip] (return to the message text display) are available.
- [Zoom in/out] is available from submenu of mail list screen.

■ Viewing received i-concier information

When i-concier information is received, you can touch [View] on the confirmation screen of received information. Restore the style to normal and press [🔍] to view the information. When you touch [OK] or [Close] in flip style, the confirmation screen closes and the screen in operation reappears.

■ Stopping alarm clock sound, schedule reminder or countdown timer

Touch [Stop] or an image displayed while alarm is sounding to stop the sound. When you touch while Alarm clock is sounding, the sound stops or snooze is activated.

Press [🔊] on the inactive screen (disabled if stopped by snooze of Alarm clock) or touch [Close] to exit.

- Touch [Close] then [Yes] to exit while the countdown timer is activated.
- While alarm is sounding, side keys work in the same way as in normal style.

■ Location request, Notify location

If a confirmation screen appears, touch [OK] or [Yes] to start Location request or Notify location. Touch [Clear] to abort the process.

■ Canceling auto-update of pattern definition

When a screen for automatically updating pattern definition appears, touch [Cancel] then [Yes] to cancel the auto-update of pattern definition.

❖ When unavailable function is used in flip style

When selecting data that cannot be displayed or attempting to use the unavailable functions, the screen below appears.



- When you touch [Keep current operation], "Flip open and start operation." appears. When returning to normal style, the message disappears and operations can be performed again.
- When you touch [Display menu], "Exiting applications currently in use." appears and then flip menu is displayed.

❖ Using Multitask menu in flip style

In flip style, press  (1 sec. or more) to display menu. From the menu, you can select from 4 functions of Silent mode ON, IC card lock, Saving mode ON/OFF and Screen OFF.

- Some functions cannot be performed at the same time with the function in use.
- To cancel IC card lock, authentication is required.
- If you touch [Screen OFF], the screen light turns off and touch operations become unavailable. If you press , , or , restore normal style or receive a call or mail, the light turns back on.

When a voice or videophone call comes or Location request is issued while the light is off, press  to make touch operations available.

Pointing device

Pointing operation using fingerprint sensor

By operating fingerprint sensor, menu operation or display operation of i-appli (compatible i-appli only) or Full Browser can be performed in the same way as multi-cursor key (, , , , ). And, when displaying the menu on the sub-display, operations can be performed in the same way as  or .

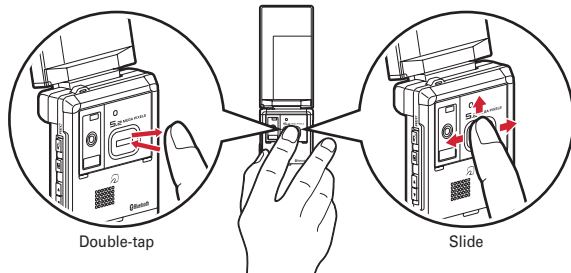
- Operations of pointing device are unavailable in the cases below.
 - Stand-by display (Except in Focus mode), calling screen, flip style
 - When the sub-display menu is not displayed with FOMA terminal folded
- Precautions on fingerprint sensor → P113 "Precautions for using fingerprint sensor"

❖ Pointing operation

Basic operations are as given below.

Double-tap : Tap the fingerprint sensor so that a ball of the finger hits the center of fingerprint sensor lightly 2 times (Touch the fingerprint sensor with a finger as parallel as possible)

Slide : While touching the fingerprint sensor lightly, move your finger up, down, right or left



- Operations of pointing device and those of multi-cursor key are supported as below.

Pointing device	Multi-cursor key	Side key on the sub-display menu
Slide (Only right or left sliding is available for side key operations)		
Continue touching after sliding	(1 sec. or more)	—
Double-tap		
Touch for 1 sec. or more*	(1 sec. or more)	—

* Available only for Full Browser

- When operating pointing device, do it with light touching. Scratching or giving excessive force may damage the fingerprint sensor.

◆ Setting the effective area or speed of pointing device <Pointing device>

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Set required items ▶

Use sensor for : Set the effective area for pointing device.

- When setting to "F-browser/i-appli", pointing device can be used only for Full Browser and i-appli.
- If setting to "Not use", fingerprint sensor is available only for fingerprint authentication.

Pointer speed : Set the moving speed for sliding operation.

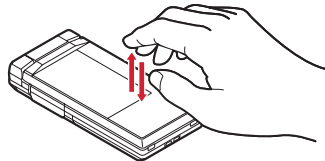
Double-tap speed : Set the speed for double-tapping.

Using motion sensor

Motion sensor allows you to perform various operations by double-tapping or tilting FOMA terminal.

■ Stopping alarm sound by double-tapping FOMA terminal

If double-tapping (tapping twice) while alarm clock, schedule reminder or countdown timer is sounding when FOMA terminal is folded, the sound stops. Alarm clock stops or performs snooze operation.



■ Flash graphics change

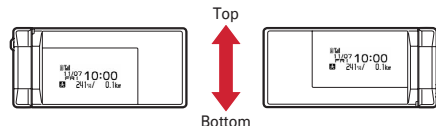
When setting Flash graphics compatible with motion sensor to stand-by display, image changes by moving FOMA terminal.

■ Changing orientation automatically when displaying an image

When displaying an image (JPEG format) in My Picture in flip style, vertical/horizontal position or display size of the image automatically changes according to the orientation of FOMA terminal.

■ Reversing the display on sub-display

When displaying sub-display with FOMA terminal folded, the orientation of FOMA terminal is detected and the display changes accordingly.



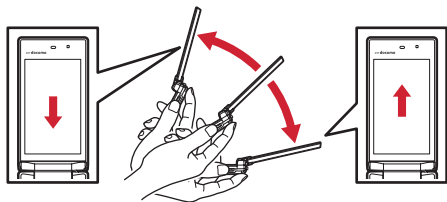
■ Changing vertical/horizontal position or orientation of an image automatically when shooting a still image

The orientation of still image to be saved changes automatically according to the orientation of FOMA terminal.→P206

■ Scrolling Full Browser screen by tilting the terminal

While holding down  on the Full Browser screen, tilt the FOMA terminal front, back, right or left to scroll the browser screen up, down, right or left. The more you tilt the terminal, the faster the scrolling speed becomes. For example, tilt the terminal forward to scroll down and backward to scroll up.

- The pointer does not move even after the screen scrolls.



■ Light changes

During a call or when FOMA terminal is folded, light changes by tilting FOMA terminal while light is on.

✓INFORMATION

- Depending on the spot or strength you tap, the alarm may not stop. And, note that tapping too strongly may cause malfunction.
- While walking or in the place with much vibration, operations to stop alarm sound by double-tapping or scroll Full Browser screen by tilting FOMA terminal do not work correctly. Also, do not walk while watching a screen. It is dangerous.
- It may operate as double-tapping when lifting FOMA terminal with your hand.

◆ Enabling Motion sensor <Motion sensor>

 [Settings & NW services]     or 

- Even if setting to "OFF", the Flash graphics compatible with motion sensor operate.

Using UIM (FOMA card)

UIM (FOMA card) is a card for storing user information such as phone numbers.

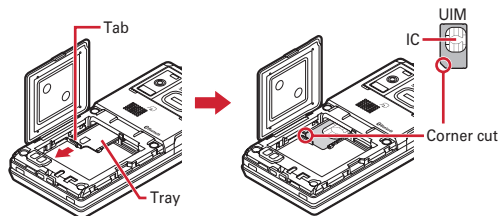
- If UIM is installed incorrectly or if there is a problem with UIM, you cannot make/receive a call or send/receive a mail.
- For details on handling UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

◆ Installing/Removing

- After turning the power OFF, fold FOMA terminal and hold it with your hand.
- Take care not to touch or scratch the IC part.
- Attaching/Removing back cover and battery pack→P49

■ Installing

- ① Pull the tab and pull out the tray until it clicks.
- ② Hold UIM with the IC side up, align the beveled corner with the tray and push into the tray until it stops.



■ Removing

- ① Perform ① of installing operation.
- ② Take out UIM.

✓INFORMATION

- Note that forcible installing or removing UIM, or installing battery pack with the tray inserted at a slant may break UIM or the tray.
- If the tray is removed, press it straight along the guide rail inside the UIM slot with UIM left detached.

◆ Security code

Two security codes, "PIN code" and "PIN2 code", are set for UIM.

- You can change the security codes yourself. →P112

◆ UIM operation restriction

FOMA terminal is provided with UIM operation restriction for protecting your data/files or data/files copyrighted by a third party.

- When files or data are downloaded from websites or data attached to mails are obtained to your FOMA terminal with UIM equipped, UIM operation restriction is automatically set to these data or files.
- The data types subject to UIM operation restriction are as follows.
 - Videophone call message, Movie memo, Screen memo
 - i-mode mail attachment files (except ToruCa), images inserted to Deco-mail or signature, Decome-Anime template, MessageR/F, Deco-mail template containing data subject to UIM operation restriction
 - i-appli (including i-appli stand-by display), ToruCa (Details) image
 - Images (including GIF animations, Flash graphics and images downloaded from Data Center), i-motion, data compatible with contents transfer, melodies, PDF data, Chara-den, Word/Excel/PowerPoint files, Machi-chara
 - Kisekae Tool, Chaku-uta[®]/Chaku-uta full[®], Music&Video Channel programs
- * "Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
- Data or files with UIM operation restriction set cannot be transferred over infrared communication/iC transmission or copied/moved to microSD card.
- With UIM replaced or no UIM installed, data or files with UIM operation restriction set cannot be displayed or played. For i-appli with UIM operation restriction set, no functions except deletion are available.

✓INFORMATION-----

- When data subject to UIM operation restriction is set as stand-by display, incoming/outgoing image, ring alert, etc., replacing UIM with another one or using FOMA terminal without UIM installed causes the sound and image settings to be reset to the default state. In this case, sound or image actually generated or displayed may be different from those set. If UIM used when downloading the data is installed, UIM operation restriction of the data is canceled and the original settings are restored (when data is used for Set random image on stand-by display, settings may be canceled).
- UIM operation restriction is not set to data obtained via infrared communication, iC transmission, microSD card or DOCOMO keitai datalink or still images/movies taken with the built-in camera.
- The settings below are saved to UIM.
 - My phone number
 - SMS settings (except "SMS report request")
 - DOCOMO Cert/User certificate of Manage certificate
 - Select language, UIM, PLMN setting

◆ Settings when replacing UIM

If replacing the currently installed UIM with another UIM, the settings below are changed.

Setting	Changed contents
My phone number , Select language, SMS settings (except "SMS report request"), "DOCOMO Cert"/"User certificate" of Manage certificate, PIN code and PIN2 code of UIM, PIN1 code ON/OFF, PLMN setting	Changed to the contents saved in the inserted UIM.
i-Channel setting, Reset call cost, i-Widget roaming set	Restored to the default settings.
Access setting of Full Browser	Set to "No" regardless of the setting before replacement.
Cookie set/delete of Full Browser	Set to "Invalid" regardless of the setting before replacement. Cookie information is retained, but if setting to "Valid" or "Valid(notify)" again, a confirmation screen for deleting Cookie information appears.
Set program of Music&Video Channel	The setting before replacement is canceled. Set the program again if necessary.

◆ UIM types

When using UIM (blue) in FOMA terminal, note that it differs in the items listed below from UIM (green/white).

Item	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Page
Number of savable digits of phone numbers in UIM phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P82
User certificate download to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available	P184
WORLD WING service	Unavailable	Available	P372
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available	P365

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is DOCOMO's international roaming service that you can make/receive calls with the same phone number overseas by UIM (green/white) and the terminals compatible with the service.

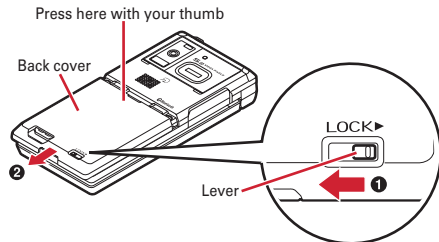
- * If you subscribed to FOMA service on or after September 1, 2005, separate subscription is not required to use WORLD WING. Note that, if you declined to use WORLD WING at subscription to FOMA service or canceled it, you need subscription.
- * If you subscribed to FOMA service on or before August 31, 2005, but not to WORLD WING, separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.
- * There are some charging plans unavailable.
- * If UIM (green/white) is misplaced or stolen overseas, immediately contact DOCOMO and request for suspension of usage. Please see "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for contact information. Be careful that you are charged also for calls and/or communications, if any, occurring after misplacement or stealage.

Attaching/Removing battery pack

- After turning power OFF, fold FOMA terminal and hold it in your hand.
- Removing battery pack may cause reservation of Software update to be canceled. When the date and time are set with Auto time adjust set to "OFF" in Date & time, removing battery pack may delete date and time.

■ Attaching

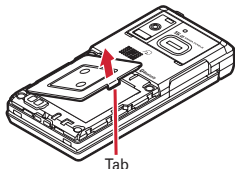
- ① After releasing the lock by sliding back cover lever in the direction of ❶, push back cover with your thumb while sliding back cover in the direction of ❷ approximately 2 mm to remove it.



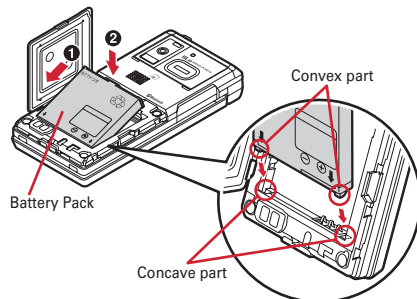
* When you cannot slide back cover smoothly, hold FOMA terminal and slide back cover with both of your thumbs.

- ② Pinch the tab of the inner lid, and pick it up in the direction of the arrow to open.

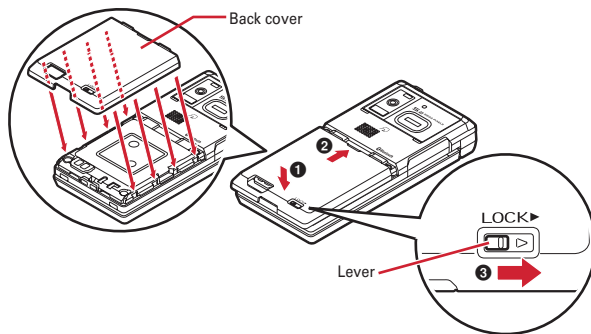
* The inner lid is structured to be closed tightly to maintain the waterproof performance. Note that, if you try to open it forcibly, your nail or finger may be injured.



- ③ With the label side of the battery pack upward, place the convex part of the battery pack to the concave part of FOMA terminal and plug in the direction of ❶, and fit it in by pressing in the direction of ❷ and close the inner lid.

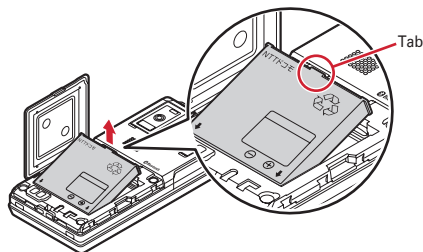


- ④ Place the 8 tabs of back cover to the notches, press back cover in the direction of ❶ to avoid forming any clearance between FOMA terminal and back cover, slide it in the direction of ❷ to install, and slide the back cover lever in the direction of ❸ to lock.



■ Removing

- ① Perform the procedure ①-② of Attaching.
- ② Pinch the tab of battery pack and pick it up in the direction of the arrow to remove.



✓ INFORMATION

- Attaching battery pack forcibly into FOMA terminal may damage FOMA terminal jack.
- FOMA terminal or back cover may be damaged if you install or remove battery pack by a method except the procedures above or if you press too hard.
- To prevent water seepage, install back cover firmly and lock it with the lever.
- The rubber packing of the inner lid has an important function to maintain waterproof performance. Do not remove or damage it. Also, prevent dust from adhering to it.

❖ For better battery pack performance

- **Do not charge the battery for an extended period (several days) with FOMA terminal turned ON.**

After charging has completed with FOMA terminal turned ON, the power is supplied to the terminal from the battery pack. If FOMA terminal is left in that state for a long time, the battery pack may run out causing the low battery alert to sound after using only a short period of time. In this case, remove FOMA terminal from the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter and then reconnect it and charge the battery again.

- **To promote environmental conservation, return your used battery pack to NTT DOCOMO sales outlets, our corporate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.**



Charging

The battery pack does not have a full charge at time of purchase. Use AC/DC adapter for FOMA terminal to charge the battery before using FOMA terminal.

- To get the maximum performance from F-01A, use battery pack F10.

❖ Charging times (approximate)

The times below are the times for charging an empty battery pack with F-01A's power switched OFF. Charging with the terminal ON or under low temperature requires longer time.

AC adapter	Approx. 150 min.
DC adapter	Approx. 150 min.

◆ Operation time on full charge (approximate)

The times below vary by the charging method and operating environment.

Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 620 H Moving (Auto) : Approx. 340 H Moving (3G static) : Approx. 360 H
	GSM	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 310 H
Continuous call time	FOMA/3G	Voice call : Approx. 230 min. Videophone call : Approx. 100 min. (using substitute image : Approx. 130 min.)
	GSM	Approx. 220 min.
1Seg watching time		Approx. 310 min.
		(1Seg ECO mode : Approx. 360 min.)

- Continuous stand-by time indicates the approximate time that the phone can receive radio waves normally with F-01A folded.
- Continuous call time indicates the approximate time that the phone can send or receive radio waves normally.
- 1Seg watching time indicates the approximate watching time with receiving radio waves normally and using Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01 (optional).
- Call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced to about half, or 1Seg watching time may be reduced due to battery pack charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, radio wave conditions in the area of use (the radio waves are weak or absent), etc.
- Call, communication or stand-by time is reduced by performing i-mode communication. Also, even with no voice calls or i-mode communications made, continuous call and continuous stand-by times are reduced by making PushTalk sessions, creating i-mode mail, activating downloaded i-appli, using i-appli stand-by display, performing data communication or multiaccess, using camera, playing movie/i-motion, obtaining or playing Music&Video Channel program, playing music with MUSIC Player, activating or recording of 1Seg, connecting via Bluetooth or doing other operations.

◆ Battery pack life

- The battery pack is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces.
- When a time available with each charging is reduced to about a half from that of a new battery, replacement of the battery is recommended because it is near the

end of life. The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.

- The battery pack's life may be reduced by using i-appli or videophone or watching 1Seg while charging.

◆ Battery charge

- For details, refer to the operation manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional) or FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 is applicable only to 100V AC. Though FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use is applicable to 100-240V AC.
- AC Adaptor has a plug dedicated to 100V AC (for domestic use). When using the AC adapter in the range of AC 100V and 240V overseas, a conversion plug adapter applicable to the country you are staying is required. Do not charge the battery using a transformer for overseas travel.

✓ INFORMATION

- Some i-appli remains operating even when FOMA terminal is folded, consuming power. In this case, the call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced.
- During a call or communications, charging may not finish. Charging may not complete if you start battery charging while watching/recording 1Seg, playing movie/i-motion, obtaining Music&Video Channel program, activating Music&Video Channel player or MUSIC Player, running i-appli. In this case, it is recommended to end the operation, and then charge the battery.
- Charging may not be completed depending on the settings of Display & Key light or in some charging methods, for example, charging FOMA terminal in a open state with "Always on" set to Normal use in Display light time of Display & Key light. To complete charging, it is recommended that charging be done with FOMA terminal folded.
- If you use the videophone or make packet communication or 64K data communication while charging, internal temperature of FOMA terminal may increase and the charging may not finish normally. In this case, wait until the temperature drops and try again.

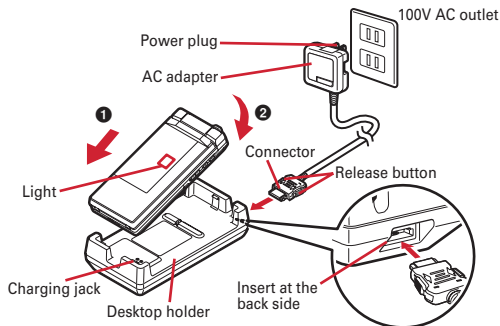
❖ Charging using AC adapter or Desktop holder

Read the respective instruction manual when using the optional FOMA AC adapter, DC adapter or Desktop Holder.

- It is recommended that Desktop Holder be used for charging to prevent water seepage through external connection jack.
- The battery pack cannot be charged without FOMA terminal. When charging the battery pack, install it to FOMA terminal.
- FOMA terminal can be charged under any usage style.

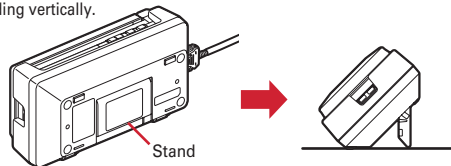
■ Using desktop holder and AC adapter in combination for charging

- ① Insert the AC adapter to the desktop holder, with the arrow on the AC adapter's connector upward.
- ② Unfold the AC adapter's power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
- ③ With FOMA terminal folded or in flip style, connect the charging terminal of FOMA terminal with the charging jack of Desktop Holder (①), and set FOMA terminal in the direction of the arrow (②) until it clicks.
- ④ After charging is completed, hold Desktop Holder and remove FOMA terminal.



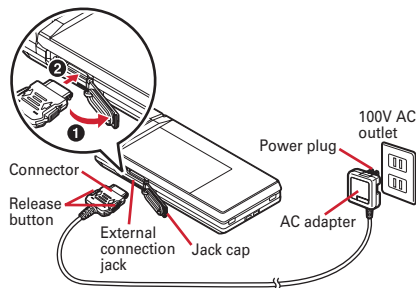
Using desktop holder standing vertically

When pulling out the stand at the back side of desktop holder, you can use desktop holder standing vertically.



■ Charging the battery using AC adapter only

- ① Open jack cap (①) of FOMA terminal, hold the connector horizontally with the arrow side upward and insert it to the jack. (②)
- ② Unfold the power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
- ③ When charging is over, pull out the power plug from the outlet, and pull out from FOMA terminal horizontally while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector.



❖ Charging in a car

By using FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional), charging is available in a car.

- For details, refer to the operation manual of DC adapter.
- When FOMA terminal is not used or you are leaving the car, disconnect the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket and disconnect the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal.
- The fuse (2A) of the DC adapter is a consumable part. Contact your nearest automotive supply store for a replacement.

✓ INFORMATION

- Insertion or removal of the AC and DC adapter connectors should be done slowly and carefully so that they are not given excessive force. When disconnecting the connector, pull it straight while pressing the release button. Applying an excessive force to disconnect the connector may give damage to it.

❖ Operations and precautions for charging

When charging starts, a charge start alert sounds, light turns on and the battery icon on the display or sub-display blinks. When charging is over, a charge completion alert sounds, the light turns off and the battery icon stops blinking.

- When starting the battery charging, the light turns on in red. In some environments, the light may not light immediately when charging starts; this is normal and not a malfunction. However, if the light does not turn on after a while, disconnect FOMA terminal from the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter then connect it again to start charging. Contact the sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop if the light does not turn on for a while after charging starts.
- If you receive a mail or shoot with the camera while charging, the light turns on temporarily in a different color, but it turns on in red after a while. When the light blinks while charging except for these reasons→P419 "Troubleshooting"
- When installing the fully charged battery pack to FOMA terminal and connecting it to the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter, the light may turn on for a moment and turn off. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- During a call, communication or PushTalk session, in Silent mode or Public mode or with Charge alert "OFF", the charge alert does not sound at start or completion of charge.
- If the battery icon is set with Kisekai Tool in other than "Preinstalled" folder, the battery icon set by default blinks.

Remaining battery level

Checking battery level

A battery icon appearing on the top of the display shows an approximate remaining battery level.

 (Battery level 3) : Ample charge.

 (Battery level 2) : Low charge.

 (Battery level 1) : Very low. Charge the battery.

- The battery icon set by default varies by the color of FOMA terminal.
- When FOMA terminal is folded, the remaining battery level can be checked on the sub-display.

❖ When battery is almost exhausted

A message indicating low battery appears. Pressing any one of , ,  keys deletes the message temporarily. After a period of time, a battery alarm sounds from the speaker and all icons on the top of the display start blinking. The power is turned off after approximately 1 minute. While these operations stop when charging starts, press  to immediately stop the battery alarm.

- During a call, the message remains displayed and the battery alarm keeps sounding from the earpiece. After approximately 20 seconds, the call ends, the battery alarm sounds from the speaker and all icons on the top of the display blink.
- To stop battery alarm in flip style, press any of ,  and .

◆ Checking battery level by sound and display <Battery level>

1  [Settings & NW services]   

The battery level is displayed and the keypad sound (→P94) is emitted according to the level. After a while, the screen returns to the menu list.
Battery level 3 : Three pips sound.
Battery level 2 : Two pips sound.
Battery level 1 : One pip sounds.

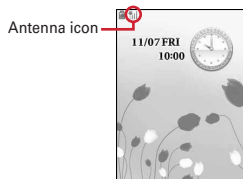
Turning power ON/OFF

❖ Turning power ON

1 [Power] (2 sec. or more)

The wake-up screen appears and the stand-by display appears. [Power] appears at the bottom of the display while reading UIM.

- An antenna icon appearing at the top of the display shows the approximate received signal level.



Stand-by display

Icon		圏外
Received signal level	Strong $\longleftrightarrow$ Weak	Out of service area or where radio waves do not reach

- The battery icon set by default varies by the color of FOMA terminal.
- With FOMA terminal folded, the reception level can be confirmed on the sub-display.

❖ Turning power OFF

1 [Power] (2 sec. or more)

❖ Operations to perform after turning the power ON at the first time

When turning the power ON for the first time, operate in the order of "拡大メニューの設定 (enlarged menu setting)"→"Initial setting". The settings made can be changed later.

- When initialization is finished, a confirmation screen of software update function appears. Press [Power] to display the stand-by screen.

❖ Enlarged menu setting

1 "Yes" or "No" on the confirmation screen

- When selecting "Yes", "拡大メニュー (enlarged menu)" of Kisekai Tool is set. If you cancel the confirmation screen by pressing [CLR] or [Power], the confirmation screen reappears when the power is turned ON the next time.

❖ Default setting

- Always set Password and Request permit/deny. When [Camera] or [CLR], [Power] is pressed before setting terminal security code or Request permit/deny, a confirmation screen appears asking you to exit. If you exit by selecting "Yes", this confirmation screen reappears when the power is turned ON the next time.
- On the stand-by display, initial setting screen is also displayed by pressing [MF] [Settings & NW services] [7] [5] [9].

1 Set required items on Initial setting screen ▶ [Camera]

Date & time : Set the date and time.→P55

Password : Change the terminal security code after performing authentication.→P111

Fingerprint : After performing authentication, register a fingerprint to be used for authentication.→P113

Keypad sound : Set a confirmation sound emitted when a key is pressed.→P94

Text size : Set size of characters for phonebook, mail, etc.→P107

Request permit/deny : After performing authentication, set if you provide location information. To permit the location request in a specified period, set the permission period in Request permit/deny.→P282

Pointing device : Set the effective area or speed.→P45

◆ Checking Welcome mail

Mails of "オススメ◆BEST (Recommendation)", "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Early warning "Area Mail" information)", "Welcome◆デコメアニメ (Decome-Anime) ㊟ ㊟" are saved by default. ㊟ ㊟ appears on the stand-by display, and when FOMA terminal is folded, the light (blinking) and mail light indicate that there is unread mail.



The next procedures→P148 Step 2 and the following steps in "Displaying mail in inbox/outbox/unsent mailbox"

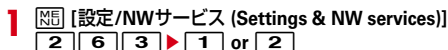
✓ INFORMATION

- When turning FOMA terminal ON, do not touch the fingerprint sensor with fingers before the stand-by display appears.
- When UIM is replaced, authentication is required after turning ON FOMA terminal. When authentication has succeeded, the stand-by display appears. If an incorrect terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively or if authentication has failed 5 times consecutively when Fingerprint access is "ON", the power is automatically turned OFF (the power can be turned ON again).
- If no operation is performed with something displayed on the screen, the display light is turned off automatically according to the settings in Light time-out or Power saving mode. It also applies while making a call. The display light turns on again if there is any operation or incoming call.

Select language

Changing screen display to English

You can select language from Japanese or English (Select language).



✓ INFORMATION

- This setting is also saved to UIM.
- Even if setting to "English", the displayed menu is not switched to English in some Kisekai Tool. Note that, when Kisekai Tool in "Preinstalled" folder is set, a menu dedicated to "English" is displayed.
- Even if changing this setting, the title of Shortcut icon is not changed from the language set when the shortcut icon was posted.

Date & time

Setting date and time

You can set so that the time or time difference is automatically corrected or directly enter the date and time. With automatic correction set, the time is corrected when receiving the time information from DOCOMO's network in Japan or the time difference correction information from the telecommunications carrier used overseas.



Auto time adjust : Set whether time is corrected automatically.

- When "ON", Offset can be set.
- When "OFF", set the date and time. Time zone and Summer time may also be set.

Offset : When "+", the displayed time is always set forward the specified period of time from the corrected time. When "-", the displayed time is always set back the specified period of time from the corrected time.

Date : The date can be entered up between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2050.

Time : Enter the time in the 24-hour format.

Time zone : When moving to a place with time difference, set the time zone without changing the date and time settings.

- Time difference from the previously set time zone is calculated and displayed.
- Set "GMT+09:00" in Japan.

Summer time : When "ON", the displayed time is set forward one hour from the specified time.

✓ INFORMATION

<When setting Auto time adjust to "ON">

- Time or time difference is corrected when FOMA terminal is turned ON. If not corrected for a while after turning FOMA terminal ON, once turn FOMA terminal OFF and then turn it ON again. Note that, when no UIM is installed or in some radio wave conditions, time is not corrected even if FOMA terminal is once turned OFF and turned ON again.
- When time difference is corrected, a message indicating it appears.
- After time or time difference is corrected overseas, the time displayed for call histories and sent mails is local time.
- Time difference is not corrected in some networks overseas.
- The corrected time or time difference may have an error of several seconds.

<When the correction has never been performed and date and time are displayed with "-." or "?">

- Flash graphics, Machi-chara, etc. that use clock or date/time are not displayed correctly. Also, functions requiring date/time information such as Auto start, Reserve, downloading or playing data with Replay Restriction, operating a user certificate, etc., cannot be activated.
- Date and time of each data are not recorded and displayed as "----/--/--" or "-----". A segmental number furthermore (number to segmentalize) may be appended.

<When setting date/time with Auto time adjust set to "OFF">

- When the date/time are deleted because of removing of the battery pack or leaving the battery for a long time after the battery exhausted, set the date/time again after charging the battery.

Caller ID notification

Notifying the other party of your phone number

You can set FOMA terminal to display your number (Caller ID) on the other party's terminal when making a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call.

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when making a call.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the phone of the other party is a digital mobile phone etc. enabled to display the caller ID.
- Setting operations for this function is disabled from a location out of service area.

1 [Settings & NW services] or

- Press [Settings & NW services] and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

❖ Priority of Caller ID notification

There are multiple methods to notify your phone number to the other party. If you set or perform these methods simultaneously, the caller ID operations are performed with the priorities below. The displayed setting and actual Notify/Not notify may differ.

- ① When setting a caller ID notification method in Call option for dialing→P64
- ② When "186" or "184" is prefixed to phone number to dial→P63
- ③ Caller ID settings of phonebook (for PushTalk, dialing 1 party)→P86
- ④ Activate/Deactivate of Caller ID notification

✓INFORMATION

- If an announcement of requesting caller ID is heard when making a call, make a call again after setting your caller ID to be notified.

User information

Checking your own phone number

You can check your phone number (My phone number), Name, Mail address, etc.

1 [User information]

Checking during a call etc. :

✓INFORMATION

- For details of how to check i-mode mail address, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, you can press to switch User information between Number A and B.
- With 2in1 ON, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF then set it to ON again to obtain the correct Number B, or obtain Number B from User information.→P334
Also, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 non-subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF to update to the correct user information.→P367

Voice/Videophone Calls/PushTalk

Making a call/videophone call

Videophone calls	58
Making a call/videophone call	58
Switching a voice/videophone call during a call	60
Making a call using redial/received calls	Redial/Received calls 61
Using Chaku-moji	Chaku-moji 62
Setting caller ID to send/not to send for each call	186/184 63
Sending tone signals (DTMF)	63
Making a call under set conditions	Call option 64
Making international calls	WORLD CALL 64
Registering prefix	Prefix dialing 66
Making a call specifying a sub-address	Sub address 66
Reducing surrounding noise to make voice clear	Noise reduction 66
Talking hands-free while driving	In-Car Hands-Free 66

Receiving a call/videophone call

Receiving a call/videophone call	67
When the other party switches voice/videophone call	67
Pressing a dial key to answer call	Any key answer 67
Ending/Holding/Continuing call by folding the FOMA terminal	Close settings 68
Setting the priority screen for an incoming call during another call	Priority comm mode 68

When you can/could not answer a voice/videophone call

Putting a call on hold when you cannot answer immediately	Respond and Hold 68
Using public mode	69
Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call	Answer machine 70
Playing/Deleting record messages/voice memos	71

Videophone call settings

Using Chara-den	71
Setting image during a videophone call	72
Changing videophone settings	Operation 73
Setting for switching a voice/videophone call during a call	Notify switchable mode 74
Setting actions for incoming calls during packet communication	DataSession arv. act 74
Using videophone call by interfacing to external device	External device 74

PushTalk

PushTalk	75
Making a PushTalk call	75
Receiving a PushTalk call	77
Using PushTalk phonebook entries	77
Setting for making and receiving a PushTalk call	78

Videophone calls

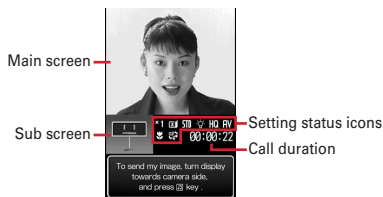
Videophone function is available between terminals that support DOCOMO videophone. You can send Chara-den or still image as your image, or switch to camera to send your own or an ambient image.

- The other party receives Substitute image set in Videophone image. You can switch to camera to send your image or change the substitute image. → P72
- Videophone calls are only available at 64 kbps.
- DOCOMO videophone specifications conform to "3G-324M"^{*2}, an international standard prepared by 3GPP^{*1}. The connection with the videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

^{*1} 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project) is an area standardization organization established to develop standard technology specifications for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

^{*2} 3G-324M is an international standard for 3rd generation mobile videophone

◆ Reading screen during a videophone call



• Icon definitions

- [X1] - [X6]: Zooming
- [Camera icon]: Sending camera image [Camera icon with slash]: Sending Camera-Off images
- [Chara-den icon]: Using Chara-den
- [Still image icon]: Sending still image [Phone icon]: On hold [Phone icon with slash]: Respond and Hold
- [Recording icon]: Recording message [Movie icon]: Recording movie memo
- [Action/Parts icon]: Action mode (Full motion/Semi-motion)
- [S10/Scene icon]: Scene mode (Standard/Backlight/Monotone/Sepia)
- [Light icon]: Light ON
- [HQ/Quality icon]: Sending image quality (Prefer motion speed/Prefer image quality)

- [Audio icon]: Sending/Receiving audio [Video icon]: Sending/Receiving video
- [Audio/Video icon]: Sending/Receiving audio/video
- [+1/-1 icon]: Adjusting Listen volume
- [Macro icon]: Macro shooting ON
- [Switch icon]: Videophone call switch available

- Guidance is displayed at the bottom of the display. Side key operations are displayed in the guidance after switching to "Camera". → P72

Making a call/videophone call

1 Enter a phone number (up to 80 digits)

- Always enter area code even when calling from the same city.

[CLR]: Delete 1 digit

2 Select a call type

Making a voice call: [Voice icon]

Making a videophone call: [Video icon]

Your own image is displayed while the videophone call is connected.

- The charging begins when "Connected to videophone." appears on the screen.

3 When ending the call, [End call icon]

✓INFORMATION

<For both voice and videophone calls>

- With 2in1 in Dual mode, the caller ID selection screen is displayed. Select "Number A" or "Number B".
- If an announcement requesting caller ID is heard, make a call again after setting your caller ID to be notified.

<Voice call>

- You can make a call by entering a phone number after pressing [End call icon]. In this case, a call is made approximately 5 seconds after the phone number is entered.

<Videophone call>

- The charges are based on the rate for digital communication not for voice calls even when substitute image is sent instead of the camera image.

- If videophone call was not connected, a message appears indicating the reason and stand-by display reappears. Displayed messages may not reflect the state of the other party correctly depending on the type of terminal and/or usage of the network service by the other party. Main messages are as below.
 - **Busy.** : The line of the other party is busy (may appear during packet communication on some types of the other party's terminal)
 - **Set Caller ID to ON** : Caller ID is not sent (such as when connecting to visualnet)
 - **Redial using voice call** : The other party is set for Call Forwarding Service but forwarding destination does not support videophone calls
 - **Busy with packet transmission.** : The other party is performing packet transmission
 - **Make call from i-mode web page** : You are not making videophone call after connecting to site provided by IP (Information Provider)
 - **Upper limit exceeded. Connection failed.** : Upper limit of a charging plan with a limiting function (Type Limit or Family Wide Limit) is exceeded
- If a videophone call accompanied with Chaku-moji is made when Auto redial as voice in Operation is set to "ON", Chaku-moji accompanies when redialing.
- Any videophone call from FOMA terminal to emergency call (110, 119 or 118) with Auto redial as voice in Operation set to "ON" is automatically switched to a voice call.

◆ On hold

- The caller is charged for time spent on hold.

1 During a call,

The call is put on hold, light blinks in green, and a melody is played. For a videophone call, the videophone on-hold image is displayed on the phone of the other party and yourself.

- To clear voice call on hold, press  or .
- To clear videophone call on hold, perform any of the operations below.
 -  : Redisplay the image sent before the call is put on hold
 -  : Camera image is sent
 -  /  : Substitute image is sent
- While on hold, FOMA terminal vibrates every 3 minutes, up to 5 times. However, it does not vibrate in Public mode (Drive mode) or while Vibrate alert in Personalized silent mode is set to "OFF".

◆ Using speakerphone function

1 Enter a phone number (1 sec. or more) or

 appears at the top of the display.

- For operating from phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages or Voice memos, press  (1sec. or more) or .
- Press  for 1 second or more to use speakerphone while Speakerphone in Operation is set to "OFF".
- While making a call, ringing or talking on the phone, you can switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF each time you press .
- If switching to flip style during a call using the speakerphone function, a message appears indicating that a call is not available. Restore the style to normal style.

✓INFORMATION-----

- If you switch to speakerphone, the volume may suddenly increase. Use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- Talk to FOMA terminal within approximately 50 cm. If a call is hard to hear from the speaker due to loud noise around you or the other party, turn the speakerphone function OFF.
- This function can be used in Silent mode.

◆ Adjusting Listen volume during a call

- This setting applies to Listen volume in Adjust volume.

1 During a voice call, or

- During a call in flip style,  decreases volume and  increases volume.

◆ Using Voice clear/Voice slowing

❖ Switching Voice clear ON/OFF

Measure the noise level during a voice call, and if the noise increases above the specified level, the other party's voice is automatically emphasized to be heard clearly. And, the volume is automatically increased also when your or other party's voice is low.

- This function does not operate while using speakerphone function or in overseas GSM/GPRS network.
- The settings are retained after a call.
- This function is not for adjusting Listen volume. Change the volume of the other party's voice with Listen volume.

1 During a voice call,

When setting to "ON",  appears. When this does not operate with ON, it is displayed in gray.

❖ Switching Voice slowing ON/OFF

During a voice call, adjust the other party's voice to be heard slowly by using the silence at intervals, to make it easier to be heard. When the other party speaks without intervals, the voice is heard at the normal speed.

- If you set Voice slowing to ON, the quality of the other party's voice, music or time tone may change. In this case, set Voice slowing to OFF.
- This function does not operate in overseas GSM/GPRS network.
- The settings are canceled after a call.

1 During a call,

When setting to "ON",  appears. When this does not operate with ON, it is displayed in gray.

Switching a voice/videophone call during a call

- Switchable only from the caller.
- This function is available among the models which support switching voice call and videophone call.
- To switch the call, the other party needs to set Notify switchable mode to ON.→P74

<Example> Switching to videophone call during a voice call

1 During a voice call, ▶ "Yes"

- During call switching, a message indicating to switch the call is played.
- When switched to videophone call, speakerphone is activated.

Switching to voice call during a videophone call : During a videophone call,

 1 ▶ "Yes"

- Speakerphone is deactivated when the call is switched to voice call.

✓INFORMATION-----

- It takes approximately 5 seconds to switch. It may take longer depending on radio wave conditions.
- Voice calls and videophone calls are charged individually depending on their respective times. The time for switching calls is not counted in the call duration thus not charged.
- Under some radio wave conditions, switching calls is unavailable, resulting in disconnection of the call.
- During voice call using Call Waiting, switching to videophone call is unavailable.
- When packet communications are made during a voice call, packet communications are disconnected before switching to a videophone call.
- While the other party is performing packet communication, switching to a videophone call is unavailable.
- Settings such as camera image sending etc., made during a videophone call are canceled each time you switch voice call and videophone call.→P72

Making a call using redial/received calls

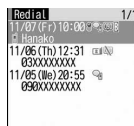
This function allows you to record call log (Redial) and received calls including PushTalk calls.

- Up to 30 items are recorded in each of Redial and Received calls. When exceeding the savable number, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When using 2in1, up to 30 items are recorded for Numbers A and B, respectively; a total of 60 items each can be recorded for Redial and Received calls.
- When calls are made to the same phone number, the latest call is recorded in Redial as "Unspecified", "Notify" or "Not notify" of Caller ID.

1 (Redial) or (Received calls) ▶ Move the cursor to a party

- Select the party to display details screen. Select making/receiving of PushTalk call to display all the members, and press  and select a member to display details screen.

<Example> Redial screen



Redial list screen



Redial details screen

- Icon definitions are as shown below.

 /  : Making/Receiving of voice call/international voice call*1

 /  : Making/Receiving of videophone call/international videophone call*1

 /  : Receiving of 64K data communications/international 64K data communications

 /  : Making/Receiving of PushTalk call to 1 person/multiple persons

 /  : Making/Receiving of PushTalk call to 1 person/multiple persons (PushTalk Plus)→P75

 /  : Missed call/Unchecked missed call

 /  : Recorded message/Unchecked recorded message*2

 : Received call with Chaku-moji

 /  : Missed call with Chaku-moji/ Unchecked missed call

 /  : Recorded message with Chaku-moji/Unchecked recorded message*2

 /  : Calling of show/hide of Caller ID set in Call option or Caller ID settings of phonebook

 : Making/Receiving call while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00)*3

 : Making/Receiving a call from/to Number B (with 2in1 in Dual mode)

 : Ringing time of missed call (Not displayed for receiving of PushTalk)

*1 If you directly enter "010" or dial from "010" saved in phonebook, the international call icon and "+" do not appear.

*2 If recorded message is deleted, this icon changes to missed call icon.

*3 May not appear when the call making/receiving date and time is not recorded etc.

2 or

- Pressing  on the details screen makes a call in the same way as the call type of the selected redial/received calls.
- Press   to make a call specifying conditions.→P64
- With 2in1 in Dual mode, a call is made from the number specified for incoming/outgoing calls.

✓INFORMATION-----

<Redial/Received calls common>

- If voice and videophone calls are switched during the call, the type (voice/videophone) at the time of making/receiving the call is recorded.
- For international call, "+" appears before phone number. It is not displayed when dialing with "010" prefixed.
- If you press  during a voice call, Redial/Received calls appear.
- When an image is saved to phonebook, details screen is displayed according to View preference.

<Redial>

- When you subscribe to Multi Number, name of a call dialed by specifying Multi Number from submenu is displayed on details screen.
- When PushTalk group call is made, the group name appears.
- When a PushTalk call is made to multiple members, the information of the first member in the member list appears on the list screen.

<Received calls>

- When caller ID of the other party is not shown, the reason for hiding caller ID appears.
- When you subscribe to Multi Number, name of Multi Number used for incoming call appears on details screen.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in an office etc. may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number (Dial-in service allows you to have multiple incoming phone numbers for one telephone line).
- Received Chaku-moji is recorded in received calls.

- To display all received call logs including missed calls within the delay time set in Ring alert delay, press **[ME] [9] [1]** on Received calls list. To return to original Received call list, press **[ME] [9] [2]**.
- To display the number of unchecked missed calls, press **[ME] [0]** on Received call list.

❖ Using Redial/Received calls

- Using PushTalk→P76

Check the location of the other party : Move the cursor to the other party ▶ **[ME] [4]** ▶ "Yes"

Accessed to "Imakodokantan search" using a phone number as the target.

- For details about Imakodokantan search, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- If PushTalk call is made/received to/from multiple members, move the cursor to a party in the details screen.

Adding to phonebook : Move the cursor to the other party ▶ **[ME] [5]** ▶ **[1]** or **[2]** ▶ **[1]** or **[2]**

Phonebook new entry→P82

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Creating i-mode mail : Move the cursor to the destination party ▶ **[ME]**

Creating SMS : Move the cursor to the destination party ▶ **[ME]** (1 sec. or more)

Switching Redial/Received calls : **[ME] [7]**

Displaying Sent msg log/Received msg log : **[ME]**

✓ INFORMATION

- When using 2in1, you cannot create i-mode mail or SMS from Redial/Received calls for Number B.

❖ Switching details screen display <View preference>

1 On details screen, **[ME] [9]** ▶ **[1]** - **[3]**

❖ When you missed calls <Missed calls>

[ME] [2] (The digit indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display. The incoming calls are recorded as missed calls in Received calls.

- When a missed call from an unknown phone number exists, the ring time enables you to check whether it is a malicious ("One-ring phone scam" etc.) call for the sole purpose of recording the phone number in the received call list.

❖ Deleting Redial/Received calls

- For a PushTalk call, a selected member cannot be deleted.

1 **[ME] (Redial) or [ME] (Received calls)** ▶ **Move the cursor to an entry** ▶ **[ME] [6]** ▶ **[1]** - **[3]** ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the redial/received calls.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ **[ME]**. To delete all items, authentication is required.

Chaku-moji

Using Chaku-moji

When making a voice or videophone call, a message can be sent in a ring time to inform the receiver of the purpose and urgency of the call.

- For details of Chaku-moji or supported models, refer to NTT DOCOMO website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- The sender is charged for communication fee, but the receiver is not.
- This function is unavailable for PushTalk.



◆ Editing or Setting Message

1 **[ME] [Settings & NW services]** **[8]** **[3]**

2 Operate Chaku-moji

Adding message : **[1]** ▶ "<New message>" ▶ Enter Chaku-moji (up to 10 characters) ▶ **[ME]**

- Up to 10 items can be saved.
- Select the existing Chaku-moji to edit it. In this case, a confirmation screen for adding appears.
- To quote Chaku-moji from Sent messages, press **[ME] [1]** and select Chaku-moji.
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a message and press **[ME] [2]**. To delete all items, press **[ME] [3]** and select "Yes".

Setting display for incoming message <Message display settings> :

- [2]** ▶ **[1]** - **[4]**
- If "Hide all" is set, no Chaku-moji is received.

◆ Making a call accompanied by message

Chaku-moji appears on the incoming call screen of the other party.

- Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji are saved to Sent messages. When exceeding the savable number, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When using 2in1, up to 10 sent Chaku-moji are saved to Sent messages for Numbers A and B, respectively; a total of 20 sent Chaku-moji are saved. Display differs depending on mode.

1 Enter a phone number ► **3** **1** ► Enter Chaku-moji (up to 10 characters) ► ► or

When the other party receives the message, "Transmission:success" appears on the calling screen and message transmission is charged.

- You can also select from saved or Sent messages.

✓ INFORMATION

- Message cannot be sent if the terminal of the other party is not compatible with this function, when Message display settings is set to "Hide all", or while the terminal is overseas. In these cases, "Transmission:failure" appears and no message transmission fee is charged. Also, if the terminal of other party is not turned on, is out of service area, in public mode (drive mode) or if Greeting msg resp time is set to "0 Sec.", a message cannot be sent and the transmission result is not displayed.
- Chaku-moji is sent even within the delay time in Ring alert delay set on the terminal of the other party, and transmission is charged.
- Depending on radio wave conditions, the transmission result may not appear even when Chaku-moji arrives to the terminal of the other party, and transmission is charged.
- Chaku-moji cannot be sent/received overseas.
- With 2in1 in Dual mode, appears in Sent messages of Number B.

186/184

Setting caller ID to send/not to send for each call

- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when making a call.
- This function is unavailable for PushTalk.
- Priority of the method to notify a caller ID → P56

Notifying your caller ID : **1** **8** **6** ► Enter a phone number ► or

Not notifying your caller ID : **1** **8** **4** ► Enter a phone number ► or

✓ INFORMATION

- In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on connecting phone companies even when "186" is prefixed.
- When making a call by prefixing "186" or "184", the phone number prefixed with that number is recorded in the redial list.

Sending tone signals (DTMF)

- Pause and timed pause are effective only for voice calls.

◆ Entering pause "P"

This function allows you to operate Voice mail at home, to reserve tickets or to check the balance of a bank account, etc.

1 Enter a phone number ► (1 sec. or more) ► Enter a number ►

When pressing after the call is connected, the digits after the pause ("P") are sent.

◆ Entering timed pause "T"

Timed pause ("T") is used to dial outside line number followed by an extension. When timed pause ("T") is entered between the phone and extension numbers, the extension number is dialed with a pause of the predetermined seconds after the phone number is dialed.

1 Enter a phone number ► (1 sec. or more) ► Enter an extension number ►

- Timed pauses ("T") can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause ("T") is followed by an interval of approximately 1 second.

◆ Sending tone signals (DTMF) during a videophone call

1 During a call, **9** ► Enter a number

The number you pressed is displayed and the tone signal is transmitted.

: Cancel sending

- While sending camera image or Camera off, a tone signal can be sent by only pressing numeric keys without pressing **9**.
- The image set as substitute image is canceled.

- During Chara-den call, actions by pressing numeric keys are not available.

✓INFORMATION

- Tone signals may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- You cannot make a call to another party, putting the current call on hold, by entering a pause ("P") or timed pause ("T").

Call option

Making a call under set conditions

You can set calling conditions each time you make a call or PushTalk call.

- Only Caller ID can be set for a PushTalk call.
- Priority of the method to notify a caller ID→P56

1 Enter a phone number ▶ 2 ▶ Set required items

Chaku-moji : Creating/selecting Chaku-moji→P62

Multi-No/Own number : Select a number from which a call is dialed

Call type of Multi Number→P366

- Own number is displayed when 2in1 is in Dual mode or B mode. Select "Number A" or "Number B" when in Dual mode→P366

Call type : Select call type

Caller ID : Set Notify/Not notify caller ID

- When "Unspecified" is set, it operates according to Activate/Deactivate setting.

Prefix : Select Prefix to be added at the beginning

Int'l call : Set Int'l call→P65

Int'l prefix : Select international prefix number when making an international call

Country code : Select country code to dial for international call

2 or

- If "V.phone" is selected for Call type, Chara-den to display during a call can be set by pressing .
- When operating from the received message/sent message details screen, or when using Phone To (AV Phone To) function, a confirmation screen for calling may appear. When "No, use original" is selected, a call is made with the settings other than Chaku-moji and Call type canceled.

✓INFORMATION

- "SMS" of Call type can be selected in cases like using SMS To function.
- Even when sending/receiving a call with Caller ID notification set, Caller ID may not be notified or incorrect Caller ID may be displayed depending on telecommunications carriers used. In this case, you cannot make a call from Received calls.

WORLD CALL

Making international calls

- Overseas use→P372
- "WORLD CALL" is the international call service available from DOCOMO mobile phones.
- You can call approximately 240 countries and regions in the world.
- "WORLD CALL" charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription charges apply. No monthly fee is required.
 - * You are subscribed to "WORLD CALL" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (Unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- There are some charging plans unavailable.
- Contact the numbers for General Inquiries on the back of this manual for details of "WORLD CALL".
 - * To use international call services except the DOCOMO service, contact the carrier for details.

"International videophone" calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described below and placing a call in the videophone mode.

- For countries and overseas telecommunications carriers available, refer to DOCOMO's "International service web page".
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the other party's terminal connected through the international videophone line.

1 **[0] [1] [0] ▶ Country code ▶ Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶**

- Omit "0" in area code (city code) starting with "0". The leading "0" is required for certain countries including Italy (land-line phones).
- The above phone number can be saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can also call by 009130 ▶ 010 ▶ Country code ▶ Area code (City code) ▶ phone number

❖ **Making international call entering "+"**

Entered "+" is converted to the international prefix number "009130010 (WORLD CALL)".

- When a call is made by entering Japanese country code "81" succeeding "+", international prefix number is not converted.

1 **[0] (1 sec. or more) ▶ Country code ▶ Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶** ▶ "Yes"

- Press **[0]** for 1 second or more to enter "+".
- Omit "0" in area code (city code) starting with "0". The leading "0" is required for certain countries including Italy (land-line phones).

❖ **Making international call by selecting international prefix number and country code**

You can select international prefix number or country code registered in Int'l call assist.

1 **Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶** **[2] ▶ Select Int'l call field ▶** **[2] ▶ Select Int'l prefix field ▶ Select the name of int'l prefix number ▶ Select Country code field ▶ Select Country code ▶** **or** ▶ "Yes"

- When "No, use original" is selected, a call is made with the settings other than Chaku-moji and Call type canceled.

❖ **Setting Int'l call assist**

❖ **Setting Auto switch**

You can set whether entered "+" is automatically converted to international prefix number. Also, you can set whether country code is added for a call made from overseas.

1 **[Settings & NW services] [9] [3] [1] ▶ Set required items ▶**

Country code : Select "ON" then country code

- These settings are useful when making a call overseas.

Int'l prefix : Select "ON" and select Intn'l prefix number

❖ **Editing country code <Country code setting>**

Up to 22 items required for making international calls from overseas can be saved.

1 **[Settings & NW services] [9] [3] [2]**

2 **Select a country code**

Setting auto conversion : Move the cursor to country code ▶ 

✓ is added to the selected number.

Deleting : Move the cursor to a country code ▶  **[3] ▶ "Yes"**

3 **Set required items ▶**

Country name : Enter up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters

Country code : Enter up to 5 digits

❖ **Setting Auto assist setting**

You can save up to 3 items to be prefixed to a phone number when making international calls.

1 **[Settings & NW services] [9] [3] [3]**

2 **"<Not recorded>"**

Setting auto conversion : Move the cursor to Int'l prefix No. ▶ 

✓ is added to the selected name.

Deleting : Move the cursor to Int'l prefix number ▶  **[3] ▶ "Yes"**

3 **Set required items ▶**

Name : Enter up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters

Int'l prefix No. : Enter up to 10 digits

Prefix dialing

Registering prefix

You can set a number (prefix) such as an international prefix number to be prefixed to a phone number.

- Up to 3 items can be set.
- Making a call with registered prefix→P64

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Enter the number in the entry field (up to 10 digits) ▶ 

- If you register a number (prefix) including a pause ("P") or timed pause ("T"), you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

Sub address

Making a call specifying a sub-address

You can set whether you can call a specific phone or communication device by specifying a sub address.

- A sub address is a number used to call a specific device out of multiple telephone sets and/or communication devices assigned the same phone number (e.g. when multiple devices with sub addresses are connected to an ISDN line). It is also used to select contents in a graphics download service "V live".

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  or 

❖ Making a call specifying a sub-address

1 Enter a phone number ▶  ▶ Enter a sub address ▶  or 

✓INFORMATION

- If "*" is entered after the pause ("P") or timed pause ("T") is entered, it is not recognized as the separator of sub address and is sent as tone signals containing "*" even if Sub address is "ON".

Noise reduction

Reducing surrounding noise to make voice clear

- It is recommended that this function be used set to "ON" normally.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  or 

In-Car Hands-Free

Talking hands-free while driving

When FOMA terminal is connected to a handsfree-compatible device such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system, voice calls can be made or received using the handsfree-compatible device.

- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the operation manual for the respective devices. FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

✓INFORMATION

- When a handsfree device is set to sound, the ring alert for incoming calls sounds from a handsfree device regardless of settings of Silent mode or ring alert setting on FOMA terminal.
- When a handsfree device is set to sound, a call continues even when FOMA terminal is folded, regardless of settings in Close settings.
- When Answer machine is set, incoming operation is made according to the settings of Answer machine.

Receiving a call/videophone call

- You cannot answer calls just by opening FOMA terminal.

1 A call is received

A ring alert sounds and the light turns on or blinks.

 : Ring alert volume  : Stop ring tone and vibration

Display while receiving a call

When caller ID is sent, the phone number appears, and when phone number is saved in phonebook, saved name appears. → P82

- When caller ID is not sent, the reason for hiding caller ID appears.
 - User Unset** : When the caller selected not to send caller ID
 - Payphone** : When the call was made from payphone etc.
 - Unavailable** : The call was made when sending the caller ID was not available; e.g. a call from overseas or land-line phone via forwarding services (caller ID may be sent depending on the carrier)

Operations from submenu while receiving a call

- You can operate the following from submenu while receiving a call.
 - Reject call** : Disconnect without receiving a call
 - Voice mail** : Connect voice call to Voice Mail service center
 - Call forwarding** : Forward a call to the specified phone number

2 Select call reception type

Receiving a voice call : 

Receiving videophone calls :  or 

Your own image is displayed while the videophone call is connected.

3 When ending the call,

✓INFORMATION

- If you subscribe to Voice Mail service, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, and set Arrival call act or PushTalk arv. act to "Answer", you hear beeps (the call waiting ring tone) when receiving another incoming voice call during voice call or PushTalk call. If you activate Voice Mail, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, the service starts.
- When Chaku-moji is received, Chaku-moji appears on the incoming screen. Chaku-moji disappears when you answer the call. → P62
- When a forwarded call from FOMA terminal arrives, name appears as a normal incoming call. However, a phone number or a name may not appear depending on forwarder.
- When sub address is notified, "*" and the sub address is displayed at the end of the caller ID.
- When receiving an international call, a plus sign "+" appears at the beginning of the sender's number.

When the other party switches voice/videophone call

- Switchable only from the caller.
- To accept switching, you need to set Notify switchable mode to ON in advance. → P74

1 Receiving a request for switching during videophone call

- During call switching, a message indicating to switch the call is played.
- When switched to videophone call, speakerphone is activated. When switched to voice call, speaker phone is deactivated.

Any key answer

Pressing a dial key to answer call

You can set whether you answer a call by pressing  - , , , ,  in addition to .

- Any key answer is useful for voice call and PushTalk call. Any key answer does not work for an incoming call during another call.

1  [Settings & NW services]     or 

Close settings

Ending/Holding/Continuing call by folding the FOMA terminal

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication, packet communication.
- Setting when folded → P79

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ -

✓ INFORMATION

- In the cases below, the call continues even if FOMA terminal is folded.
 - When Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected.
 - When a device that is connected to handsfree is set to sound
 - When message is being recorded by Answer machine.
- When a call is placed "On-hold", On-hold is deactivated when FOMA terminal is opened again.
- When setting to "Continue (mute)", if speakerphone is active, your voice is not heard by the other party but you hear the other party's voice from the speaker. When sending camera image during videophone call, substitute image is sent to the other party.
- Operations during voice call :

Priority comm mode

Setting the priority screen for an incoming call during another call

You can select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when data is received via packet communication from a connected PC during a voice call or when a voice call is received during i-mode communication.

- A screen change caused by this function does not suspend the call or packet communication.
- When i-mode mail or MessageR/F is received during voice call, voice call screen appears by priority.
- When a voice call is received while accessing data broadcasting site, Call alert image appears by priority. → P218 "Time shift function"

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ -

- When this is set to "No Set Up", the incoming screen for the newest call appears. However, voice call screen appears when packet transmission is received during voice call.

- When "Packet" is set, packet communication screen appears during voice call, and i-mode screen appears during i-mode session. You can switch to the call screen by pressing from Switch Task menu.

Respond and Hold

Putting a call on hold when you cannot answer immediately

- The caller is charged for time spent in Respond hold.

1 While receiving a call,

The call is put on hold, and the other party hears a status message. For videophone call, response hold image for videophone is displayed to you and the other party.

2 When you are ready to answer the call,

- You can also answer videophone call by pressing .
- If is pressed or the caller hangs up while on hold, the call ends.

◆ Setting Status message

- You can record a status message up to approximately 10 seconds in your own voice.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Select On-hold tone field ▶

- Press and go to Step 3 to restore preinstalled guidance.

2 "Record" in Edit message field ▶ Record the greeting message after the beep

Recording starts after a message appears.

- An end tone (beep) sounds approximately 10 seconds after the start of recording.
- Press to stop recording halfway.
- When a recorded status message is deleted, the preinstalled message is reset.
- Select "Play" to check a status message.

3

Using public mode

Public mode is an automatic answering service putting emphasis on manners in a highly public place. When a call is received with Public mode activated, a status message or a message indicating that you cannot answer the call is played, and the call is disconnected.

- With Public mode (Drive mode) activated, a status message indicating that you are driving or in a place requiring suppression of calling (in a train, bus, movie theater, etc.) is played.
- With Public mode (Power OFF) activated, a status message indicating that you are in a place where the terminal must be turned off (in a hospital, on an airplane, near priority seats in a train) is played.

■ Incoming operations while using network services in Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF)

- Voice Mail Service^{*1}, Call Forwarding Service^{*1}, and Caller ID Request Service^{*2} take precedence over Public mode.

^{*1} For voice call with ring time set to other than "0 second", a service starts after the status message for Public mode is played.

^{*2} When caller ID is sent, Public mode activates.

- When a call is sent from a caller whose calls are set to be rejected in Nuisance Call Blocking Service, Public mode does not activate.

◆ Using public mode (Drive mode)

- Public mode can be set or canceled only in stand-by. It is enabled also while "圏外" appears on the top of display.
- Even in Public mode, calls can be made normally.
- Public mode precedes even in Silent mode or Answer machine.
- Making an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode cancels Public mode.

1 (1 sec. or more)

Public mode is set and  appears on the stand-by display.

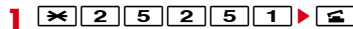
C canceling :  (1 sec. or more)

■ When public mode (Drive mode) is activated

Your FOMA terminal does not perform receiving actions, and  2 (the number of incoming calls) appears on stand-by display and the call is recorded as a missed call.

- When a call is received, an announcement "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later." is played.
- The sound below does not ring. Also, vibrator and/or light are not activated.
 - Ring alert of phone/PushTalk/mail/i-concier
 - Sound of countdown timer, alarm clock, schedule reminder
 - i-appli sounds, i-Widget sound effect
 - Call cost limit alert (even when Alert is set to "ON", no messages appear)
 - Sounds for starting/completing battery charge, battery alarm, GPS positioning
- When usage setting by services is "Check every time", no location information is sent even if Location request of GPS is issued.
- Even if Security indicator is set to "ON", the indicator does not notify Lock on close/Auto keypad lock status.
- Picking up FOMA terminal does not turn on the sub-display light automatically.
- i-Channel ticker does not appear.

◆ Using public mode (Power OFF)



Public mode (Power OFF) is set (No change on the stand-by display).

C canceling :  [2] [5] [2] [5] [0] [Right Arrow] [Public mode icon]

Checking the settings :  [2] [5] [2] [5] [9] [Right Arrow] [Public mode icon]

■ When public mode (Power OFF) is activated

- When a call is received in Public mode (Power OFF), a status message indicating "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later" is played.
- The settings continue until Public mode (Power OFF) is canceled by dialing " * 25250". The settings are not canceled by simply turning the power ON.
- The Public mode (Power OFF) announcement is played also when you are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

✓ INFORMATION

- When videophone call is received, Public mode status message image is displayed on the caller's terminal.
- When PushTalk call is received, message indicating that the call was not connected appears on the caller's terminal. When PushTalk group call arrives,  Driving (Drive mode)/  Disconnected (Power OFF) indicating your state appears on participants' screens.

Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call

When Answer machine is activated, a greeting message is played and the caller can record message when you cannot answer the call.

- You can record up to 4 voice and videophone calls in total, approximately 30 seconds for each call.
- When using 2in1, messages of up to 4 incoming calls to Numbers A and B can be recorded to Answer machine in total. Display differs depending on mode.
- This function is unavailable for PushTalk.

◆ Activating Answer machine

- Normal style should be used.

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ **1** ▶ **1** or **2**

When "ON" is set,  appears on the stand-by display.

■ When there is an incoming call with Answer machine active

1 A call is received

When the response time set in Greeting msg resp time elapses, the greeting message is played according to setting of Set greeting message.

2 The other party's message is recorded

- A beep announces the other party at the start and the end. And when approximately 25 seconds elapsed since the start, 2 short beeps are heard to warn that the end is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is terminated

◆ Responding with Quick answer machine <Quick answer machine>

Even if Answer machine is not active, you can activate it only once by pressing  for 1 second or more while receiving a call. This operation does not set Answer machine to active.

✓INFORMATION

- Even during the greeting message or recording to Answer machine, a call can be answered by pressing . You can also answer videophone call by pressing . In this case, message recorded before the call was answered is not recorded.
- Answer machine does not operate when FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned OFF. Use Voice Mail service.
- When 4 messages are recorded in Answer machine,  appears on stand-by display and Answer machine or Quick answer machine does not activate. Delete unnecessary recorded messages. If you activated Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, the services activate.
- In Personalized silent mode, "Answer machine" setting for Personalized silent mode is applied.

◆ Setting the time before the greeting message starts <Greeting msg resp time>

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ **1** **3** ▶ Enter the response time

◆ Setting the greeting message

- You can record a greeting message up to approximately 10 seconds in your own voice.

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ **1** **4** ▶ Select Greeting message field ▶ **2**

- Press **1** to restore preinstalled guidance and go to Step 3.

2 "Record" in Edit message field ▶ Record the greeting message after the beep

Recording starts after a message appears.

Supplementary description of recording message→P68 Step 2 in "Setting status message"

3 

Playing/Deleting record messages/voice memos

◆ Playing recorded message/voice memo

1 [1 sec. or more] ▶ 2 (Recorded messages) or 4 (Voice memos)

<Example> Recorded messages screen



• Icon definitions

- [Icon] / [Icon] : Recorded message/Played recorded message
- [Icon] / [Icon] : Recorded message of videophone call/Played recorded message
- [Icon] / No icon : Voice memo while talking/Voice memo in stand-by
- [Icon] : Making/Receiving call from/to Number B (with 2in1 in Dual mode)
- [Icon] : While staying overseas (except GMT+09:00)*
- [Icon] : Recorded message of international call or voice memo while talking

* May not appear when receiving or recording date/time is not recorded etc.

2 Select the recorded message/voice memo

- While playing, elapsed playing time appears in the bottom of the screen.
- While playing, the operations below are available.
 - [Icon], [Icon] : Adjust volume [Icon] : Stop
 - [Icon] : Switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF
- Videophone call message is always played with speakerphone activated. You cannot turn off the speakerphone.
- When videophone call message is played in Silent mode, a sound playing confirmation screen appears. Select "No" to play the message without sound.

Making calls : Move the cursor to message/memo ▶ [Icon] or [Icon]

• To make a call specifying conditions, press [Icon] 3. → P64

Adding to phonebook : Move the cursor to message/memo ▶ [Icon] ▶ 4 or 5 ▶ 1 or 2

Phonebook new entry→P82

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

3 Select whether to delete

✓INFORMATION-----

- When recording voice memo in stand-by, "Voice memos" is displayed.
- Received calls screen→P61

◆ Deleting recorded message/voice memo

1 [1 sec. or more] ▶ 2 (Recorded message) or 4 (Voice memo) ▶ Move the cursor to message/memo ▶ [Icon] 2 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the message/memo.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

Using Chara-den

You can change the character sent during a videophone call.

- Displaying Chara-den→P298

1 During a call, [Icon] 4 1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select Chara-den



- The operations below are available during a videophone call.

1 - 9, [Icon] : Action [Icon] : Stop the action

[Icon] : List actions

Setting image during a videophone call

- The following cannot be set as still image or substitute image to send.
 - A still image larger than 176×144
 - Animation, created animation
 - A still image except in JPEG or GIF format
 - Images that inhibited to output from FOMA terminal → P310 "File restriction" in "List of display items and changeability"

◆ Setting image to send

1 Perform necessary operations during a call

Switching camera image and substitute image :

Turning on/off the light*1 :

- Light may temporarily be turned off by setting operations etc. during a call.

Switching display magnifications <Zoom>*1 :

- Each time you press , the zoom scale switches in the order below, and each time you press , it switches in the reverse order.
Standard → ×2 → ×4 → ×6 → ×8 → ×10 → ×12 → ×16

Applying special effects to image <Scene mode/effect>*1 : ► -

Special effects can be used when you shoot a subject against backlighting, or shoot in monochrome or sepia mode.

Adjusting brightness of image*1, 2 : ► -

Adjusting flicker*1, 2 : ► -

The flicker may be reduced by selecting the settings that match the power supply frequency of your area.

- Reflected to the flicker adjustment settings of Camera and Bar code reader.

Sending Camera-Off image :

- A substitute image selected in Substitute image in Videophone image is sent.
- When Chara-den is set as substitute image, Default image is sent.

Sending a still image : ► Select a folder ► Select a still image
• Press to cancel.

Switching to macro shooting*1 :

You can adjust the focus when sending images of very close objects approximately 7-10 cm away.

- Press to cancel.

Setting quality of sending/receiving images : ► or ► -

- When "Prefer motion spd" is selected, motion becomes smoother in a lower-definition image. When "Prefer img qual" is selected, motion becomes slower in a higher-definition image.

- When Receive image is changed, it applies to the image quality sent from the other party.

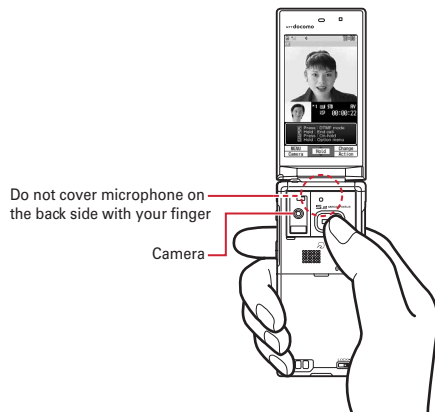
*1 Can be set only while sending camera image.

*2 The settings are retained after a call.

❖ Talking over videophone call while looking at the other party's image

1 Press during a call

You can talk while looking at the other party's image by switching to "Camera" and rotating the display clockwise 180 degrees to face Camera.



- Use side keys for operation following the guidance at the bottom of the display.

-  (1 sec. or more) to display the simple menu. Press  to move the cursor,  to select. Press  to return to the previous screen on the simple menu or confirmation screen.

2 Perform necessary operations

Switching camera image and substitute image : 

Disconnecting :  (1 sec. or more)

Holding a call : 

- When hold is canceled, press  to send the same image sent before hold, press  to send a camera image, and press  or  to send a substitute image.

Switching to voice call :  (1 sec. or more) ►  ► "Yes"

Adjusting brightness :  (1 sec. or more) ►  ►  - 

Changing image to send :  (1 sec. or more) ►  ►  - 

Turning the light on/off :  (1 sec. or more) ► 

- Do not look directly into Simple light.

Switching to Macro shooting :  (1 sec. or more) ► 

Setting image quality to send/receive :  (1 sec. or more) ►  ►  or  ►  - 

Setting screen display :  (1 sec. or more) ►  ► Set required items ►  (1 sec. or more)

Setting items→P73 "Changing videophone settings"

Entering DTMF signal :  (1 sec. or more) ►  Select a number with  , select "#" with  (1 sec. or more) ► 

- Pressing  or a numeric key during a call opens the DTMF entry screen.

Switching to Speakerphone :  (1 sec. or more) ► 

◆ Setting display during a call

- The settings are retained after a call.

1 Perform necessary operations during a call

Switching the main screen and the sub screen : 

Changing the main screen size :  (1 sec. or more)

- Each time you press, the display size switches in the order of Large→Standard→Small→Large.

Setting display :   ► Set required items ► 

Setting items→P73 "Changing videophone settings"

◆ Setting substitute or on-hold image <Image setting>

1  [Settings & NW services]    ►  -  ► Set required items ► 

Image : Set image type

List images : Select when Image is other than "Default image" or "Default Chara-den" (only for Substitute image)

✓INFORMATION-----

- If Chara-den set for the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to the default Chara-den. If the still image or Default Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to Default image.
- If the still image set as Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image or Movie memo image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to Default.

Operation

Changing videophone settings

You can set actions to be performed when videophone call fails, or set the screen to appear during a videophone call.

- Auto redial as voice is provided to ensure access to the other party. When this is set to "ON", the number is re-dialed as voice call if a call cannot be answered because the other party's terminal does not support videophone, or the other party is using the mova service via Dual Network Service. However, this option may not work properly if you dialed ISDN-sync 64K access point, ISDN videophone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of Oct, 2008), or a wrong number, etc. Note that you may be charged for these calls.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ► Set required items ► 

Auto redial as voice : Set whether to redial as voice call for unsuccessful videophone attempt

Display setting : Set the screen

Sub screen : Set Sub screen

- This setting is available when Display setting is "Both sides".

Screen size : Set the main screen view size

Visual preference : Set the incoming image quality of the other party

Display light : When "Terminal settings" is selected, this option depends on Brightness of Display & Key light

Speakerphone : Set whether to use speakerphone when connected

- When "ON" is set, a message appears indicate that the microphone is not available in flip style. Talk with FOMA terminal opened.

Flip mode answer image : Set image to be used when answering in flip style

✓INFORMATION

- During a voice call or 64K data communication, no videophone calls can be made even if Auto redial as voice is set to "ON". However, during packet communication connected to a PC, dialed videophone call is re-dialed as voice call.
- If you redial voice calls with Auto redial as voice set to "ON", the voice call rate is applied instead of digital communication rate.

Notify switchable mode

Setting for switching a voice/videophone call during a call

You can notify the network that your terminal is available for switching voice and videophone calls.

- During voice or videophone call, this option cannot be changed.
- You cannot set this option out of service area. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave conditions.
- Notify switchable mode is ON by default.

1 [Settings & NW services]

2 or ► "Yes"

- Press and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

DataSession arv. act

Setting actions for incoming calls during packet communication

You can set how to react to an incoming videophone call received during i-mode, data broadcasting site display or downloading Music&Video Channel program.

1 [Settings & NW services] ► -

- When "V.phone priority" is selected, displaying the incoming call screen has precedence, and packet communication is disconnected when a videophone call is answered. After videophone call is terminated, i-mode screen reappears and download of Music&Video Channel program resumes. While accessing data broadcasting site, Time shift of 1Seg is activated.
- When "Packet DL priority" is set, an incoming call is disconnected without incoming call screen being displayed, and the call is recorded in Received calls.
- When "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is selected, the service starts.

✓INFORMATION

- If you do not subscribe to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, actions for "Packet DL priority" are performed even with "V.phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding" set.
- If Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ring time is set to "0 sec.", each service starts. The call is not recorded in Received calls.

External device

Using videophone call by interfacing to external device

Videophone calls can be sent/received through external devices by connecting FOMA terminal to external devices such as PC using USB Cable.

If you want to use this function, prepare an approved external device or a PC, that videophone application is installed in, and devices (commercial) such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible Web camera.

- Refer to the instructions manual of external devices for hardware requirements, setting or operating instructions of videophone applications.
- * You can use "DOCOMO Videophone Software" as an application supporting this function. This software can be downloaded from DOCOMO Videophone Software website. (For details such as the usage environment of a PC, refer to the support website.)
<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

1 [Settings & NW services] ► or

- Videophone calls cannot be made through an external device during a voice call.
- If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, an incoming videophone call from an external device during voice call is recorded as a missed call. An incoming voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication during videophone call from external device is recorded as a missed call.

This is a service that you can communicate with multiple parties (up to 5 parties including yourself). Press PushTalk key (P) to take turns talking. Each time you press P (to speak), PushTalk communication fee is charged.

- For details of PushTalk or Supported models, refer to NTT DOCOMO website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

A service allowing you to make a PushTalk communication with 20 parties including yourself. You can use PushTalk more conveniently by using common phonebook on the network or confirming the state of the members. You must subscribe to PushTalk Plus to use this service.

- * For details of operating procedure, refer to the guidebook which you can get when subscribing to the service.

1 Hanako

2 Tennis Circle 1/1

3 Hanako

Haruko

1 Ichiro Do...

2 Natsuko

3 Connected

4 Disconnected

5 Connected

6 Connected

- ① **Speaker field**
No icon : Floor is open.
Phone number/name/"Anonymous"/ ? (When the speaker cannot be identified)
: A member takes the floor.
"Myself" : You are speaking.
- ② **Group icon. Group name**

Display only on the screen of the caller of the group call.

- ③ **Participants**
Phone number/name/"Anonymous"
- ④ **Participants status**
-  **Calling** * : Calling
 -  **Connected** : Answered the call and participating
 -  **Disconnected** : No response/Communication ended/The terminal is out of service area or turned OFF
 -  **Driving** * : In Public mode (Drive mode)
- * Displayed when the PushTalk call is made among 3 or more parties.

- It operates according to Activate/Deactivate or Caller ID settings of phonebook.
- Priority of the method to notify a caller ID→P56

- 1** Enter a phone number
- Using phonebook :  ▶ Search phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a member

- 2 

When the receiver answers the call, a connecting tone sounds and communication starts.

- To make a call using the speakerphone function regardless of Silent mode or P-Talk speakerphone setting, press  for 1 second or more.
- Caller ID notification can be set for each call. → P64

- ### 3 Talk over a PushTalk call

 : Switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF

 /   : Adjust Listen volume (apply to Listen volume of Adjust volume)

- You can also talk in flip style during a PushTalk call. Press  to decrease volume and  increases volume in flip style.
- With FOMA terminal folded, the speaker is used for answering regardless of settings of Silent mode or P-Talk speakerphone. Speaker's name is displayed on the sub-display.

Speaking :

① Check the blank of the speaker field, and press and hold .

When the floor is taken, the taking floor sound is heard and "Myself" is displayed in the speaker field.

- While the other party is speaking, pressing  causes floor taking failure sound to be emitted and you are not given the floor.
- For the speaker, the charging of PushTalk communication fee begins when the taking floor sound is heard.

② Speak with held down.

- Each time, Time to keep the floor is limited. When the limit is about to expire, the floor release notice sound beeps and the floor is released.

③ After speaking is over, release .

The releasing floor sound is heard.

4 When ending the session,

- If there are three or more in the party, a connecting tone sounds to other participants and  **Disconnected** appears on the screen.

✓INFORMATION

- When no participant takes the floor for a given length of time during a communication, the communication ends.
- You cannot make emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) using PushTalk.
- For Quick dial, PushTalk call is made to a phone number if saved in PushTalk phonebook, or to the first phone number of the phonebook entry if not saved in PushTalk phonebook.
- All participants' phone numbers are notified and displayed on all participants' terminals if the caller notifies its phone number. "Anonymous" is applied to all participants if the caller does not notify its phone number.
- If you make PushTalk call in i-mode communication, i-mode connection ends.
- When using 2in1, Number B is not available for PushTalk.
- When using 2in1, no call can be made from phonebook to members set as "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting.

❖ Using Redial/Received calls

1 ▶ Perform necessary operation

Making PushTalk call : Move the cursor to a member ▶

- PushTalk call is simultaneously made to multiple members when they are specified. → P78

Making a PushTalk call to a selected member from a group call : Select a group call ▶ ▶ Select members not to call ▶ or

Saving to FOMA terminal phonebook : Move the cursor to a member ▶ **5** ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ Set required items ▶

Phonebook new entry → P82

- To update a phonebook entry, select the entry.
- After adding, PushTalk phonebook registration confirmation screen appears.

Adding to PushTalk phonebook : Move the cursor to a member ▶ **5** **3** ▶ "Yes"

- Only members saved in FOMA terminal phonebook can be added.

Adding members as a group : Move the cursor to a group call ▶ **5** **4** ▶ Enter group name ▶

- Only members saved in PushTalk phonebook can be added.

✓INFORMATION

- You can re-join the call by making a call from Redial/Received calls as long as other members are still on PushTalk session, even if you did not answer a group call or hang up half way through. Note that, if the call has been terminated, a new call is made.

❖ Adding a member during PushTalk call

Only the caller can add members.

- You can add up to 4 members to be called in total. When there are already 4 members called, you can again call a member not participating, but cannot add new members.
- Members cannot be added in flip style.

1 ▶ During a session ▶ Select a method for adding ▶ Move the cursor to a member ▶

- Members can be added from PushTalk phonebook, FOMA terminal phonebook and Redial/Received calls. To add a member by entering the phone number, select "Direct input", enter phone number and press .

✓INFORMATION

- You can take/release the floor even during the selection of additional members.
- Even the user of a model that does not support member addition can participate and be displayed on other members' terminals. However, for models that do not support member addition, additional members do not appear on the screen and the connecting tone does not sound.
- Additional members are not recorded in Redial/Received calls.

Receiving a PushTalk call

- PushTalk call cannot be put on hold.

1 Receive a PushTalk call

Ring alert sounds and light turns on or blinks. The participant list appears and

Dialing appears for the caller.

: Adjust alert volume

2 or

A connecting tone sounds and communication starts.

- When is pressed or the call is not answered within the ring time, the call is disconnected.
- With FOMA terminal folded, the speaker is used for answering regardless of settings of Silent mode or P-Talk speakerphone.

3 Talk over a PushTalk call

Operating procedure→P75 Step 3 in "Making a PushTalk call"

4 When ending the session,

Using PushTalk phonebook entries

◆ Adding entries to PushTalk phonebook

- Normal style should be used.
- Up to 1,000 items can be added. (This number may be reduced depending on the added contents.)
- Before adding members to the PushTalk phonebook, adding the phone numbers to FOMA terminal phonebook is needed.
- When using 2in1, no phone numbers of phonebook entries set to "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting can be added to PushTalk phonebook.

1 ► ► "View phonebook"

- When not saved in FOMA terminal phonebook, select "Direct input" and save in phonebook.→P82

2 Search the phonebook ► Select a member ► "Yes"

❖ Adding entries from FOMA terminal phonebook

1 ► Search phonebook ► Move the cursor to a member ► ► "Yes"

❖ Adding entries to group

- Up to 30 groups can be saved.
- Up to 19 members can be saved per group. However, when 5 or more members are saved in a group, no group call can be made.

1 ►

- To add to existing group, go to Step 3.

2 ► Enter a group name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ►

Editing group name : Move the cursor to group ► ► Edit group name ►

3 Select the group ► ► Select a member ►

◆ Deleting PushTalk phonebook entries

- Even if group or group member is deleted, group or group member is not deleted from PushTalk phonebook or FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 ▶ Move the cursor to a member ▶ ▶ "Yes"

A deletion confirmation screen from FOMA terminal phonebook appears.

Deleting group : ▶ ▶ Move the cursor to group ▶ ▶ "Yes"

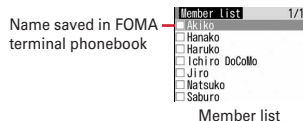
Deleting a member from group : ▶ ▶ Select group ▶ Move the cursor to a member ▶ ▶ "Yes"

◆ Dialing from PushTalk phonebook

- You can select up to 4 members to make a call.

<Example> Making a call from member list

1



2 Select a member

- To display only members to dial, press .

Making a call from group : ▶ Select group ▶ Select members not to dial

- After selecting a group, go to Step 3 to make a group call.

3 or

When at least 1 member answers the call, a connecting tone sounds and communication starts.

- Press to set Caller ID notification by each dialing. → P64

The next procedure → P75 Step 3 and subsequent steps in "Making a PushTalk call"

✓ INFORMATION

- You can use PushTalk Plus after connecting to network by pressing . → P75

Setting for making and receiving a PushTalk call

◆ Setting duration of ring tone <PushTalk ring time>

- If the call is not answered within the ring time, the call is recorded as a missed call.
- This option cannot be set when PushTalk auto answer is set to "ON".

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Enter ring time ▶

◆ Setting PushTalk auto answer

- When this is set to "ON", the connecting tone beeps and a PushTalk call is automatically answered. In this case, the speaker is used for the call regardless of the setting of P-Talk speakerphone.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ or

✓ INFORMATION

- When Silent mode is activated, PushTalk auto answer does not start even set to "ON".

◆ Setting actions for incoming calls <PushTalk arv. act>

- This setting is available only when receiving a voice call.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ -

- The incoming call screen appears when "Answer" is specified. To answer voice call, press and to continue displaying incoming call screen, press . In this case, PushTalk call is disconnected.
- When "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is selected, the service starts.

✓ INFORMATION

- Regardless of settings, calls are recorded as Received calls. However, when Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ring time is set to "0 sec.", each service starts and calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- If you do not subscribe to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, actions for "Answer" are performed even with "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" set.
- Operations during PushTalk call :

◆ Ending/Continuing a call by folding the FOMA terminal <Setting when folded>

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  or 

✓INFORMATION

- When Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) or In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) is connected, PushTalk session continues with FOMA terminal folded regardless of this setting.
- Operations during PushTalk call :  

◆ Setting i-mode arv. act:PT

You can set how to react to an incoming PushTalk call received during i-mode, data broadcasting site display or downloading Music&Video Channel program.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  or 

- When this is set to "PushTalk preferred", incoming call screen appears in priority. After PushTalk call is terminated, i-mode screen reappears and download of Music&Video Channel program resumes. While accessing data broadcasting site, Time shift of 1Seg is activated.
- When set to "i-mode preferred", incoming call screen does not appear and the call is terminated. The call is not recorded in Received calls.

◆ Using speakerphone <P-Talk speakerphone>

- Speakerphone is available for making or receiving calls in normal or flip style.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  or 

✓INFORMATION

- When Silent mode is activated, a voice comes from the earpiece.
- When Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) or In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) is connected, the connected device is used for calls. Use  to speak.

Phonebook available for the FOMA terminal		82
Adding to phonebook	Phonebook new entry	82
Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry	Alert by contact	83
Setting group	Group setting	84
Making a call from phonebook	Phonebook search	84
Editing phonebook entries	Edit phonebook	86
Copying phonebook entries		87
Deleting phonebook entries	Delete phonebook	87
Making phonebook entries secret	Secret attribute	87
Checking number of phonebook entries	No. of items	88
Making a call with a few key operations	Quick dial	88

Phonebook available for the FOMA terminal

F-01A supports FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

- In addition to this, there is PushTalk phonebook dedicated to PushTalk. → P77

○ : Supported X : Not supported

Item		FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries		Up to 1,000 entries ^{*1}	Up to 50 entries
Entry items	Phonebook No.	No.000 - 999	X
	Name	16 two-byte (32 one-byte) characters ^{*2}	10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters ^{*2}
	Reading	32 one-byte characters	12 two-byte (25 one-byte) characters ^{*3}
	Image, Movie	○	X
	Group	30 groups in addition to "グループなし (No group)"	10 groups in addition to "グループなし (No group)"
	Phone number	5 numbers per item, up to 3,005 numbers in total in phonebook ^{*1}	1 number per item
	Phone number icon	○	X
	Mail address	5 addresses per item, up to 3,005 addresses in total in phonebook ^{*1}	1 address per item
	Mail address icon	○	X
	Other items ^{*4}	○	X

*1 The number of savable items may be decreased depending on saved data.

*2 Up to 10 characters can be entered when one- and two-byte characters are both used or one-byte katakana is included.

*3 Up to 12 characters can be entered when both one- and two-byte characters are used.

*4 Items that can be set are Birthday, Note, PostalCode/Address, Location info, Company name, Job title and URL.
i-concier information (note, address, URL) is automatically updated (when subscribed to i-concier).

- Phonebook saved in your UIM is available even when the UIM is installed to another FOMA terminal.
- FOMA terminal phonebook can be stored in Data Center. Stored phonebook can be updated/restored to FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center. → P128

◆ Displaying name

■ Voice call/Videophone call

Name and phone number saved in the phonebook are displayed on the screen while dialing/receiving, calling or voice call talking.

■ i-mode mail/SMS

Name and phone number saved in the phonebook are displayed on the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list screens and mail details screen.

When a mail is received from a sender with mail address that completely matches with that saved in the phonebook including the domain name succeeding @, the name saved in the phonebook appears. However, for a sender with i-mode terminal, the name saved in the phonebook appears even when the domain name (@docomo.ne.jp) is omitted in the mail address and saved in the phonebook. If the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", add it to the phonebook omitting "@docomo.ne.jp".

✓ INFORMATION

- With 2in1 in A mode, a name of phonebook set to "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting and with 2in1 in B mode, the name set to "A" in Ph.book 2in1 setting are not displayed.
- When different names with the same phone number/mail address are saved in FOMA terminal phonebook, the name saved earlier is displayed.
- When different names with the same phone number/mail address are separately saved in FOMA terminal and UIM phonebooks, the name saved in FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- Saved names are also displayed in other functions using phonebook.

Phonebook new entry

Adding to phonebook

You can add to FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- Note that, when changing the models at a sales outlet such as DOCOMO shop, data saved in FOMA terminal may not be copied to a new model terminal due to its specifications.
- Priority of Call image → P98, 99
- Savable number → P82

1 (1 sec. or more)

Adding to UIM phonebook :  [Phonebook & Logs] 

2 Enter a name

3 Set required items ▶

Phonebook number : The smallest phonebook number available is assigned.

- When the phonebook number overlaps with an existing number, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears. Not to overwrite, select "New entry" and enter the other number.
- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook numbers can be omitted.

Reading : Reading of the entered name is entered.

- Even if you correct the name, the reading does not reflect the change.

Select/Shoot image : Set an image or movie/i-motion that is displayed when receiving/making a call or checking the phonebook.

Setting image :  ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image**

Reading folders and lists of images→P288

- If a still image that vertical to horizontal size (or vice versa) is larger than 864×480 dots is selected, the image shrinking confirmation screen appears. Also, created animation does not operate.

Shooting and setting a still image :  ▶ **Shoot a still image** ▶ 

- The still image is shot only in the size of QCIF (176×144).

Setting movie/i-motion :  ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a movie/i-motion**

Reading folders and lists of movie/i-motion→P292

- Movie/i-motion of only image can be set.→P294
- This function is not available when dialing.

Recording and setting a movie :  ▶ **Record a movie** ▶ 

- Sounds are not recorded.→P203

Returning to the initial screen : 

 **Group** : "グループなし (No group)" is set.

- For FOMA terminal phonebook, press  to add a group.→P84

 **Phone number** : Up to 26 digits can be entered.→P48

- When entering 1 item, an item for additional entry is displayed.
- Pause ("P"), Timed pause ("T"), "+", "# and sub-address delimiter (" * ") can be saved. Timed pause ("T") cannot be saved in UIM phonebook.
- If a phone number prefixed with "186" or "184" is added in phonebook, SMS cannot be sent even when the number is selected as the address.

 **Mail address** : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- When entering 1 item, an item for additional entry is displayed.
- Secret code→P86

 **Birthday** : Set Set birthday to "ON" and enter the birthday.

 **Note** : Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered.

 **PostalCode/Address** : Up to 7 digits for a postal code and up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters for an address can be entered.

 **Location info** : Add location information from the current location and/or location history.→P275

 **Company name** : Up to 50 two-byte (100 one-byte) characters can be entered.

 **Job title** : Up to 50 two-byte (100 one-byte) characters can be entered.

 **URL** : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

Alert by contact

Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry

You can set receiving actions for each phone number or mail address in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Priority of a receiving action→P92, 93, 99, 106

1  ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Move the cursor to a phonebook entry** ▶    ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

 : Switching Call/Mail screens.

- "Terminal setting" is applied to all items that are set to "グループなし (No group)", and "Group setting" is applied to the items that are set to a certain group ("Terminal setting" is applied only to Substitute image).

 /  **Ring alert** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Ring alerts & Sounds.

- Only when setting Ring alert of the detail information to "Available", movies/i-motion and Music can be set as ring alert.

Setting Music→P91

 /  **Vibrate alert** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Vibrate alert/effect.

 /  **Light alert** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Light alert.

- If setting Light pattern to "Light pattern 1", "Light pattern 2" or "Sync melody", the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set.

 /  **Light color** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Light alert.

 **Substitute image (Call alert only)** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Substitute image in Videophone image.

Setting group

- You cannot change a group name or set calling/receiving actions to "グループなし (No group)". When deleting the group, only the entries in the group are deleted.
- For UIM phonebook, only renaming group name is available.

1 [ME] [Phonebook & Logs] [1] [2]

2 Perform necessary operation

Adding a group : [ME] [2] ▶ Enter a group name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶ [OK]

Deleting a group : Move the cursor to the group ▶ [ME] [3] ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Yes"

The group and the phonebook entries in the group are deleted. The identical phonebook entries in PushTalk phonebook are also deleted.

- It is deleted even when secret attribute is set in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact").

Changing a group name : Move the cursor to a group ▶ [ME] [4] ▶ Enter a group name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶ [OK]

- For UIM phonebook, press [OK], move the cursor to the group and press [ME] [2].

Setting calling/receiving actions : Move the cursor to the group ▶ [ME] [5] ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [OK]

Setting Call image → P83 Step 3 in "Adding to phonebook"

Setting other items → P83 "Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry"

Changing the order : Move the cursor to the group ▶ [ME] [6] or [7]

✓ INFORMATION

- For UIM phonebook, 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters can be entered for the group name. Up to 10 characters can be entered when one- and two-byte characters are both used or one-byte katakana is included.

Making a call from phonebook

You can call up the phonebook entry from FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook for the party to call.

- When searching phonebook, the previously used phonebook (FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.
- In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the phonebook entries or groups with secret attribute cannot be searched. The same applies to Quick dial, Quick mail, Headset quick-dial and Search message.

1 [Q] ▶ Search the phonebook



Phonebook list (Show all names)

- With 2in1 in Dual mode, the icons below appear.
 [A] : Phonebook entries in A mode [B] : Phonebook entries in B mode
 [AB] : Phonebook entries in both A and B modes
- When i-concier information is registered, [i] appears.

2 Move the cursor to the party ▶ [F1] or [F2]

- To make a call specifying conditions by pressing [ME] [1] [1] → P64
- With 2in1 in Dual mode, Number A is used to make a call to a party set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting and Number B is used for a party set to "B".

✦ Using phonebook entries

Creating an i-mode mail : Move the cursor to a party ▶ [OK]

Creating SMS : Move the cursor to a party ▶ [OK] (1 sec. or more)

- When only the phone number for the party is saved, pressing [OK] can also create SMS.

Displaying a site : Move the cursor to a party ▶ [ME] [1] [5] ▶ "Yes"

- Press [OK] on the site connection confirmation screen to display using Full Browser.

Displaying a map from an address : Move the cursor to a party ▶ **1** **7**

- GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select Map in Map setting starts.

Using Location info : Move the cursor to a party ▶ **0** **1**

The next procedure→P275 "■ Location information usage menu"

Checking location of a party : Move the cursor to a party ▶ **0** **2** ▶ "Yes"

The phone number is targeted and you are connected to "imadocokantan search".

- For details of imadocokantan search, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Attaching a phonebook entry to i-mode mail : Move the cursor to a party ▶ **1** **3**

Searching a sent/received mail : Move the cursor to a party ▶ **1** **6** ▶ **1** or **2**

- For UIM phonebook, move the cursor to the party and press **1** **5**, and press **1** or **2**.

◆ Searching by specified method

- When a phonebook list extends to multiple pages, you can switch pages using . In a search method except Show all names, may also be used to switch pages.

1 **[Phonebook & Logs]** **1**

: Switch lists of FOMA terminal phonebook/UIM phonebook

2 Specify the search method

Show all names : **1** ▶ to select the line to show

- Each time you enter 1 character in reading, the phone number with the closest reading is searched (Name search).

Group search : **2** ▶ Select a group

- Entries in the same group are displayed in the order of the reading below.
Japanese syllabary order→Alphabetical order→Numbers→Reading starting with blanks→Symbols→No reading
- When one of the keypads of **0**-**9** is pressed, the line assigned to each keypad is displayed.→P402
- Entries are displayed in the order of alphabets→numbers→symbols by pressing or .

Search by freq* : **3** ▶ **1** or **2**

Displayed in the order of number of calls or number of mails.

- Counted up to 9,999 times. To reset the counting, move the cursor to a party, press **9** **3** and select "Yes".
- PushTalk is not counted.

Ph book No. search* : **4** ▶ Enter phonebook number ▶

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook numbers can be omitted.
- You can display the phonebook list in phonebook number order by pressing with no entry.

Number search : **5** ▶ Enter part of a phone number ▶

Search the phone numbers containing the entered numbers, and phonebook data list of FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed in the order of the phonebook number, and the phonebook data list of UIM phonebook is displayed in the order of reading.

- You can display the phonebook data list in the order of phonebook number or reading by pressing with no entry.

Secrecy search* : **6**

The phonebook entries with secret attribute are displayed in the order of phonebook number.

* Unavailable for UIM phonebook.

◆ Searching by Rocket search

Search from the characters assigned to keypads **0**-**9**.

<Example> Searching for "携帯花子"(Keitai Hanako)

1 **2** (か) (ka) line) ▶

The phonebook list of the Show all names is displayed.

◆ Setting preferred search method <Default search setting>

Set the search method displayed when pressing on the stand-by display.

1 **[Phonebook & Logs]** **1** ▶ Move the cursor to the search method ▶

- Check mark appears after the specified search method.

✓ INFORMATION - - - - -

- Even when Search by freq or Ph book No. search is set by priority, if the UIM phonebook is searched last time, the UIM phonebook list is displayed based on Show all names.

◆ Checking phonebook details

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry



FOMA terminal phonebook details screen (Phone number)

- ① **Phonebook No.**
- ② **Name and reading**
- ③ **Group icon, Group name**
- ④ **Icons set in Ph.book 2in1 setting (with 2in1 in Dual mode)**
A : Phonebook entries in A mode **B** : Phonebook entries in B mode
AB : Phonebook entries in both A and B modes
- ⑤ **Setting conditions of Accept/Reject call, Caller ID Settings and Secret code**
- ⑥ **Setting condition of Alert by contact (call/mail)**
 /  : Ring alert
 /  : Vibrate alert
 /  : Ring alert and Vibrate alert
 /  : Light alert
 /  : Light color
 /  : Light alert and Light color
 : Substitute image (call only)
- ⑦ **Image (displayed according to the settings of View preference)**
- ⑧ **Saved icon, Icon type**
 : Display details screen of the previous/next phonebook entry.
 : Display the set items.

Viewing history information : On the phone number or mail address details screen, .

- The cumulative number and the date and time of last call appear. Cumulative information of calls and mails can be reset at once by pressing .

Check User information :   

Name, reading, group name and the first phone number/mail address are displayed in full.

◆ Switching details screen display <View preference>

- View preference of phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Mail logs and User information apply to each of them.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ ▶ -

- When operating from UIM phonebook, press    and  - .

Edit phonebook

Editing phonebook entries

- The identical phonebook entries in PushTalk phonebook are also edited/deleted.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry

2 Perform necessary operations

Editing contents :    ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Set required items→P82 Step 2-3 in "Adding to phonebook"

- If overwritten, the previous phonebook entry is discarded.

Changing the phone number order :     ▶ Select a phone number to be set as the first one

Changing the mail address order :     ▶ Select a mail address to be set as the first one

Switching phonebook numbers :     ▶ Select a phonebook entry to switch the phonebook number

Setting Caller ID notification to each phone number <Caller ID settings> :

    ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select a phone number ▶  - 

- When "No setting" is set, it operates according to Activate/Deactivate.

Setting secret code to mail address <Secret code> :

    ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select a mail address ▶ Enter 4-digit secret code

- To cancel, delete all the secret codes entered and press .
- A secret code you set is displayed on this screen only.
- You cannot send a mail to the party whose address is saved as "mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp".

✓INFORMATION

- For UIM phonebook, **[ME] [3]** to edit the entry. The phone number may not be overwritten when it contains " * ".
- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved and the phone number or mail address in the first entry is deleted, the second or subsequent entry moves forward.

Copying phonebook entries

- FOMA terminal phonebook can also be copied to microSD card.→P303

◆ Copying between FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook

- When there is the same group in the copying destination, it is copied to the group.
- When copying from FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook, a part that exceeds savable character number and timed pause ("T") of phone number are deleted.
- Icons of phone number and mail address are replaced.

<Example> Copying from FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

- 1 **[Q]** ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ **[ME] [7] [1]** ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ **[a]**

- When copying from UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook, press **[ME] [7]** to select a phonebook entry, and press **[a]**.

◆ Copying each data

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF, and it can be pasted to anywhere any number of times.

- 1 **[Q]** ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry to copy ▶ **[ME] [6] [1] - [8]**

- The first phone number and mail address are copied.
- When copying the second or subsequent data, display the phone number or mail address to copy on the details screen, press **[ME] [6]** and press **[2]** or **[3]**.
- When operating from UIM phonebook, press **[ME] [6]** and **[1] - [3]**.

2 Display the character entry screen to paste ▶ Paste the characters

Pasting method of characters→P355

Delete phonebook

Deleting phonebook entries

- When deleting all, all of the created groups are deleted.
- The identical phonebook entries in PushTalk phonebook are also deleted.
- For entries in UIM phonebook, "All contacts" cannot be performed.

<Example> Deleting a phonebook entry in FOMA terminal phonebook

- 1 **[Q]** ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶ **[ME] [4] [1] or [2]** ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.
- When operating from UIM phonebook, press **[ME] [4]** and select "Yes".

Secret attribute

Making phonebook entries secret

In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the phonebook entries or groups with secret attribute are not displayed.

- This setting also applies to PushTalk phonebook.
- Setting for UIM phonebook is unavailable.
- If you change secrecy, a confirmation screen appears for performing Apply secret attribute when ending the phonebook and returning to the stand-by display.
- Operation setting of Privacy mode→P118

◆ Setting secret attribute to phonebook entry

- 1 **[Q]** ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶ **[ME] [3] [5] [1]**

- When secret attribute is set,  blinks.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

◆ Setting secret attribute to group

- Secret attribute is not set to each phonebook entry in the group.
- Secret attribute cannot be set for "グループなし (No group)".

1  [Phonebook & Logs]   ▶ Move the cursor to the group ▶  

- When secret attribute is set,  blinks.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

No. of items

Checking number of phonebook entries

- In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the number of phonebook entries in FOMA terminal phonebook with secret attribute is not displayed.

1  ▶ Search the phonebook ▶   

Quick dial

Making a call with a few key operations

You can make calls or PushTalk calls by a simple operation to parties with phonebook numbers 0-99 in FOMA terminal's phonebook.

- The phone number saved first is used for calling.

<Example> Making a voice call to the phone number saved as phonebook number 2

1 Enter phonebook number () ▶  or 

- When making a PushTalk call, press .

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Setting operations for incoming calls and mail/messages	90

Sounds settings

Changing sounds of ring alert, alarm sound, etc. .	Ring alerts & Sounds	91
Setting volume of ring alert, alarm sound, etc.	Adjust volume	92
Setting Stereo/3D sound or Surround	Stereo sound effect	93
Informing you of incoming calls and alarms by vibration	Vibrate alert/effect	93
Changing ring tone	Melody Call	93
Setting System sound		94
Setting confirmation tone for charging	Charge alert	94
Setting Call session		94
Muting ring tone from the FOMA terminal	Silent mode	95

Displays/Lights settings

Switching stand-by display, Silent mode, etc. by lifestyles	Timed theme	96
Changing stand-by display	Stand-by display	96
Changing image for outgoing voice/videophone call	Outgoing call image	98
Changing image for incoming voice/videophone call	Incoming call image	99
Decorating titles to display for incoming/outgoing calls or while talking	Identification mark	100
Setting Contact image display from phonebook at incoming/outgoing call	Contact image	100

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing messages and retrieving	Mail image	100
Setting sub-display	Sub-display	100
Setting display and key lighting	Display & Key light	100
Saving battery consumption	Power saving mode	101
Changing display colors	Color scheme	102
Changing startup menu	Select startup menu	102
Setting Machi-chara	Display Machi-chara	102
Using Kisekai Tool		102
Customizing the menu		104
Customizing FOMA terminal screen	Style theme	105
Changing battery/antenna icon	Battery icon/Antenna icon	105
Indicating arrival information such as missed calls and unread mails with lighting	Indicator light	106
Setting the lighting patterns and colors used for an incoming call/mail or while talking	Light alert	106
Changing font style	Font style	106
Changing font size	Font size	107
Setting clock display	Clock display format	107

Setting operations for incoming calls and mail/messages

- This setting also applies to Call ring alert, Mail/Msg ring alert, Incoming call/Videophone receiving in Call image, Vibrate alert/effect and Light alert.

◆ Call alert/Videophone alert

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ 5 or 6 ▶ 1 2 ▶ Set required items ▶

Ring alert : Set the ring alert.

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P91)", select the ring alert. When setting a movie/i-motion with sound and image for "Movie ringtone", Show image is "Sync ring alert".

Show image : Set an image to display.

- When "Select image" is selected, select an image from List images field. When "i-motion" is selected, select movie/i-motion from the movie list.

Vibrate alert : Set the operation pattern of vibrator.

- Even if setting to "Sync melody", some melodies are not synchronized.

Light alert : Set a lighting pattern and color of the light.

- If setting Light alert to "Light pattern 1", "Light pattern 2" or "Sync melody", the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set.
- Even if setting to "Sync melody", some melodies are not synchronized.

◆ PushTalk alert

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ 6 2 1 ▶ Set required items ▶

Ring alert : Set the ring alert.

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P91)", select the ring alert. For "Movie ringtone", movie/i-motion containing only sound can be set.

Vibrate alert/Light alert : Setting items→P90 "Call alert/Videophone alert"

◆ Mail alert

1 0 1 1 ▶ Set required items ▶

Ring alert : Set the ring alert.

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P91)", select the ring alert.

Light alert/Vibrate alert : Setting items→P90 "Call alert/Videophone alert"

Ring time (sec) : Set the duration of sounding of ring alert or operation of vibrator within the range of 1-30 seconds.

◆ MessageR alert/MessageF alert

1 0 1 ▶ 2 or 3 ▶ Set required items ▶

Setting items→P90 "Mail alert"

✓INFORMATION-----

- Setting created animation for Select image of Show image in Call alert (Incoming call) or Videophone alert (Videophone receiving) displays the first image.
- When music or movie/i-motion containing only sound is set as ring alert in Call alert or Videophone alert, if you set Show image to movie/i-motion containing only images or Flash graphics, the ring alert is reset to the default. The melody can be changed.
- Some movies/i-motion may not be set for Show image of Call alert (Incoming call) or Videophone alert (Videophone receiving). Also, movies/i-motion with sound cannot be set.

Ring alerts & Sounds

Changing sounds of ring alert, alarm sound, etc.

- When movie/i-motion is set as ring alert, a movie and/or sound is played when receiving a call or mail (Movie ringtone).
- This setting also applies to alert settings of voice/videophone calls, PushTalk, mail, MessageR/F.
- Melodies for ring alert stored by default → P401

◆ Call ring alert

- 1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  -  ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P91)", select the ring alert.

◆ Mail/Msg ring alert

- 1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  -  ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P91)", select the ring alert.
- Set Ring time (sec) in the range of 1-30 seconds.

◆ i-concier ring alert

- 1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P91)", select the ring alert.
- Set Ring time (sec) in the range of 1-30 seconds.

◆ GPS alert

- This setting also applies to Position settings, Notification setting and Positioning alert for Request setting.

- 1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  -  ▶ Select Ring alert field ▶  or 

- When "Melody" is selected, select ring alert.

2

◆ Alarm sound

<Example> Setting Alarm clock sound

- 1  [Settings & NW services]   

- 2  ▶ Select Alarm clock field ▶  - 

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P91)", select the alarm sound. When movie/i-motion containing sound and image is set for "i-motion", the image of the movie/i-motion is displayed.

Setting Schedule reminder :  ▶ Select Alarm on time field ▶  - 

3

◆ Setting music

You can select "Full song ring tone" to set whole music data as a ring alert or "Point ring tone" to set a part of it.

<Example> Setting Full song ring tone

- 1 Select "Music" at each setting ▶ Select a folder

- 2 Select music to set

- When music in microSD card is selected, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to move the music to the terminal and set to a ring alert.

Setting Point ring tone : Move the cursor to the music to set  Select the item

- When Chaku-uta full® in microSD card available to nonmember is selected, a confirmation screen for cutting out the part to set as the ring alert and saving it in the i-motion folder appears. Select "Yes", enter a display name and press . The cut out music is saved to "i-mode" folder of i-motion as i-motion compatible with contents transfer.

When exceeding the savable number/area→P312

Ring alert priority

When setting ring alerts for multiple functions, they sound in order of the priority below.

- ① Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Call ring alert/V.phone ring alert/Mail ring alert, Call alert (Incoming call)/ Videophone alert (Videophone receiving)/Mail alert, Incoming calls melody setting in Multi Number, Ring alert for No.B in 2in1 setting
- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the ring alert of voice call operates according to Anonymous caller. Ring alert for videophone call operates according to V.phone ring alert/Videophone alert/Ring alert for No.B in 2in1 setting.

INFORMATION

- The data below cannot be set as ring alert.
 - WMA files
 - Movie/i-motion containing only images
 - Movie/i-motion for which Ring alert in Detail info (→P309) is "Unavailable"
 - Music which is "No" to set as Full song ring tone or Point ring tone in detail information (→P239).
- In the cases below, the image for incoming call is used as the standard image in the settings of Call ring alert and V.phone ring alert. Note that the image can be changed in Call alert (Incoming call) or Videophone alert (Videophone receiving).
 - When changing ring alert from movie/i-motion containing images to music, movie/i-motion containing only sound, or melody
 - When setting movie/i-motion containing only sound to ring alert after setting movie/i-motion containing only images or Flash graphics to the incoming image
- When movie/i-motion is set to ring alert, it may operate according to the default setting if there is an incoming call when activating camera.

Adjust volume

Setting volume of ring alert, alarm sound, etc.

1  [Settings & NW services]     - 

- When Alert/Call volume is selected, additionally select  or .
- When Alarm volume is selected, additionally select  - .
- "Silent" and "Steptone" cannot be set for Listen volume. "Steptone" cannot be set for i-appli effect sound, ToruCa receive alert, Operation sound, Melody effect sound or 1Seg alarm sound.

Alert/Call volume : Set alert volume or listen volume for a voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call.

- Call alert volume also applies to alarm volume for Call cost limit.
- Listen volume also applies to the volume of play sound for Answer machine or voice memos and sound effect for pasting stamp or text to an image.

Mail/Msg alert vol. : Set alert volume for mail and MessageR/F.

GPS alert volume : Set volume of GPS alert sound (Position location, Notify location, Location request).

i-concier ring alert : Set volume when receiving information.

Alarm volume : Set volume for alarm clock (when Volume is set to "Phone setting" from the Set sound screen), 1Seg alarm (when 1Seg volume is set to "Phone setting") and schedule reminder.

- The volume of Countdown timer applies to Alarm clock sound, and the alarm volume of 1Seg watching reservation applies to Schedule reminder.

i-appli effect sound : Set volume of the sound emitted from i-appli.

ToruCa receive alert : Set the volume of the alert activated when receiving ToruCa has completed. This setting also applies to Receive alert volume of ToruCa alert.

Operation sound : Set volume for Keypad sound and Open/Close sound.

- When "Silent" is set, the confirmation sound is not emitted when reading a code.

Melody effect sound : Set the volume for playing melody (including melody attached to mail or MessageR/F). This setting also applies to the volume of Settings of Melody.

2  or   

- If setting Call alert volume to "Silent",  appears on the stand-by display.  appears when a vibrator for Call vibrate alert is also set.

Stereo sound effect

Setting Stereo/3D sound or Surround

- It is effective when using Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) etc.
- This setting also applies to Surround of Settings for movie/i-motion and MUSIC Player, and Stereo/3D sound of Settings for Melody.

1 [Settings & NW services] **1** **6** ▶ **1** - **3** ▶ **1** or **2**

✓INFORMATION

- The 3D sound function is a function to create sound that seems to have 3-dimensional spread or move spatially. Using the 3D sound function, you can enjoy realistic i-appli games, ring tone, i-motion, etc.
- There are differences in how the 3D sound effect is felt among individuals.

Vibrate alert/effect

Informing you of incoming calls and alarms by vibration

- The vibrator for receiving 64K data communication operates according to the setting of incoming voice call.
- This setting also applies to alert settings of voice/videophone calls, PushTalk, mail, MessageR/F, Positioning alert of GPS and Vibrate effect of i-appli settings.
- If FOMA terminal is on the desk etc. when the vibrator operates, it may fall off because of the vibration.

<Example> Setting vibrator for incoming voice, videophone and PushTalk calls

1 [Settings & NW services] **1** **3**
2 **1** ▶ **1** - **3**

Setting vibrator when receiving mail and MessageR/F : **2** ▶ **1** - **3**

Setting vibrator for GPS positioning : **3** ▶ **1** - **4**

Setting vibrator when receiving i-concier : **4**

Setting vibrator when Alarm clock or the schedule reminder sounds :

5 ▶ **1** or **2**

Setting vibrator when using i-appli : **6** ▶ **1** or **2**

- Omit Step 3.

3 **1** - **5**

- If you move the cursor to "Pattern A", "Pattern B" or "Pattern C", it vibrates in the pattern at the cursor position.
- When setting to "Sync melody", the vibrator operates along with the melody set for ring alert etc. Note that some melodies are not synchronized.
- If the vibrator for incoming calls is set, appears on the stand-by display if the Call alert volume is more than "Level 1". appears when Call alert volume is set to "Silent".

❖Vibrate alert priority

When setting vibrator for receiving in multiple functions, it operates in order of the priority below.

- Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook
- Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
- Vibrate alert/effect/Call alert/Videophone alert/Mail alert

✓INFORMATION

- It does not vibrate when receiving a call/mail during a call.
- Even with "OFF", the vibrator may operate when Flash graphics operate.

Melody Call

Changing ring tone

This is a service to let the caller to FOMA terminal hear melody instead of ring alert.

- A communication fee is free for connecting to the setting site. Note that packet communication fees are charged for connecting to IP site, i-mode menu site or Free Melody Corner.
- Melody Call is valid only when a voice call is received.

1 [Settings & NW services] **1** **1** **9** ▶ "Yes"

The melody call site is connected.

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Setting System sound

Keypad sound : Set a sound to be emitted when pressing keys (except , , , operating pointing device or operating in flip style.

- When the sound of Battery level and End alert of Data exchange settings are set to "ON", sounds are emitted according to these settings.
- When setting to "OFF", the confirmation sound is not emitted when reading a code.
- Keypad sound is not emitted in the cases below even if it is set to ON.
 - When i-αppli is activated (except )
 - When Full Browser is activated, or when the pointer is moved by sliding the pointing device
 - When sliding or quickly sliding in flip style
- When setting to "Sol-fa", the dedicated sound is emitted by double-tapping the pointing device, "Key sound 2" is emitted by sliding the pointing device or touching or double-touching in flip style.

Open/Close sound : Set a sound to be emitted when opening/closing FOMA terminal.

Shutter sound : Set a shutter sound when shooting a still image.

- This setting also applies to Shutter sound of Image settings.

Movie camera sound : Set a shutter sound when recording a movie (including recording a sound with Sound recorder).

- This setting also applies to Shutter sound of Recording settings.

1  [Settings & NW services] **1** **1** **6**

2 Perform necessary operation

Setting Keypad sound : **1** ▶ **1** - **5**

Setting Open/Close sound : **2** ▶ **1** - **4**

Setting Shutter sound : **3** ▶ **1** - **5**

Setting Movie camera sound : **4** ▶ **1** - **5**

Charge alert

Setting confirmation tone for charging

You can set if you activate the battery charging sound at the start and end of charging.

1  [Settings & NW services] **1** **1** **7** ▶ **1** or **2**

✓ INFORMATION -----

- Even when "ON" is set, the charge alert does not sound in the cases below.
 - In Silent mode, Public mode (Drive mode), during a voice/videophone call, PushTalk session, 64K data communication, i-mode communication, packet communication

Setting Call session

On-hold tone : Set On-hold tone.

Quality alarm : Set alarm sound when the call is about to be interrupted.

- The call may be interrupted without sounding the alarm depending on the call conditions or radio wave conditions.

Reconnect alarm : Set alarm for reconnecting interrupted call.

- While the call is interrupted, the other party hears no sound.
- The time required for reconnection differs depending on the call conditions or radio wave conditions. It normally takes 10 seconds at most.
- You are charged for the time used for reconnection (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be interrupted without sounding the alarm depending on the call conditions or radio wave conditions.

Low Battery alert : Set if you activate the alarm when the battery is about to be exhausted.

- When the battery becomes low during a call, the alert is emitted from the earpiece even with "OFF" set.

1  [Settings & NW services] **1** **1** **8**

2 Perform necessary operation

Setting On-hold tone : **2** ▶ **1** - **3**

Setting Quality alarm : **3** ▶ **1** - **3**

• Operation during a voice call :  **5**

Setting Reconnect alarm : **4** ▶ **1** - **3**

• Operation during a voice call :  **4**

- Operation during a PushTalk session :  **1**

Setting Low battery alert : **5** ▶ **1** or **2**

Silent mode

Muting ring tone from the FOMA terminal

You can set FOMA terminal not to emit a sound by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

◆ Starting/Canceling Silent mode

1 (1 sec. or more)

Silent mode is started/canceled. When started,  (in General silent mode) or  (in Personalized silent mode) appears on the stand-by display.

- Silent mode can also be started/canceled by folding FOMA terminal and pressing  for 1 second or more by default.
- You can start/cancel it from the menu on the sub-display.→P35

❖ When General silent mode is activated

An incoming call is notified with vibration, muting all sounds emitted from FOMA terminal such as ring alert, Keypad sound, Open/Close sound, alarm, buzzer or the sound for reading a code. Also, microphone is sensitized, and you can call in a small voice.

- In the cases below, the operation of vibrate alert is "Pattern A".
 - When receiving voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call, mail, during 64K data communication or when receiving i-concier
 - While positioning with melody set to GPS alert
 - When the time specified in Countdown timer elapses
 - When the date and time specified in schedule come
- The vibrator operation for receiving Area Mail of emergency earthquake flash report is "Sync melody".
- When the time specified in Alarm clock comes, vibrate operates according to the setting of Alarm clock.
- Melody is not played automatically even when sent/received mail or Message/R/F is displayed with "Auto play" set for Attachment auto-play.
- When playing movie/i-motion with sound or program recorded from 1Seg, a confirmation screen for playing a sound appears. Select "No" to play movie only.

- When activating 1Seg, a sound emission confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to adjust the volume. Select "No" not to emit a sound. Note that a sound is emitted if 1Seg activation is set to "Auto start" in Set notify alarm of watching reservation.
- When playing Music or Melody or Music&Video Channel program, a confirmation screen for playing appears. Select "Yes" to play.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Shutter sound is emitted even in Silent mode.
- The alarm sound of Call cost limit is emitted in General silent mode. In Personalized silent mode, it operates according to the settings of "Call alert volume" of Personalized silent mode.

◆ Silent mode

<Example> Setting Personalized silent mode

1 [Settings & NW services] **1** **4**

2 **2**

Setting General silent mode : **1**

- Omit Step 3.

3 Set required items ▶

- When Vibrate alert is set to "ON", it operates according to Vibrate alert/effect. Items set to "OFF" in Vibrate alert/effect vibrate in "Pattern A".
- When Vibrate alert is set to "Contact setting", it operates according to Vibrate alert/effect.
- Regardless of the setting of Vibrate alert, when receiving Area Mail of emergency earthquake flash report, the vibrator operates in "Sync melody".
- You can set the alert volume for voice, videophone and PushTalk calls in Call alert volume.
- Even if "Silent" is set to Mail alert volume, if any other setting item is set to emit sound, the buzzer alarm sounds when receiving Area Mail of emergency earthquake flash report.
- When Alarm sound, Schedule reminder or i-appli sound is set to "ON", the sound is emitted according to each setting.
- When setting Alarm sound to "ON", the Countdown timer sound is also emitted.
- For Answer machine, it operates according to this setting regardless of the setting of Answer machine.

Switching stand-by display, Silent mode, etc. by lifestyles

This function allows you to change the stand-by display or activate Silent or Privacy mode at the specified time. Timed theme can be added up to 18 items.

1 [Settings & NW services] 3 3

2 Select a title ▶ Set required items ▶

Time : Enter the time to switch the theme in the 24-hour format.

Repeat : Set repetitive operation.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press .

Title : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Style theme : Set if you change style theme.

- When "Change" is selected, select a style theme.

Silent mode : Set if you start/cancel Silent mode.

- When "ON" is set, Silent mode set from Silent mode starts.

Privacy mode : Set if you start Privacy mode.

- When "ON" is set, Privacy mode set from Privacy mode setting starts.

Setting/Canceling : Move the cursor to the title ▶

- is displayed at the left of the title for Timed theme set to ON.

✓INFORMATION

- When Style theme is set to "Change", the image or movie/i-motion set to the stand-by display is canceled at the specified time. Note that Show ticker of i-Channel is not canceled.
- When i-appli stand-by display is set, this function is unavailable.
- If multiple items are set and the operating time for them are the same, the item on the top of the list of Timed theme operates.
- When Repeat is set to "Day of week", the setting remains even after the specified day. To change the setting, register multiple time themes.
- When Timed theme and alarm are set to start at the same time, Timed theme starts after the alarm operates.
- This function does not operate if FOMA terminal is turned OFF, All lock or Omakase Lock is ON or other function is operating at the specified time. If you turn FOMA terminal ON, cancel the lock or display the stand-by display, Timed theme that passed the specified time operates in order.

Changing stand-by display

- For some images, movie/i-motion or i-appli, stand-by display settings are disabled if UIM used for downloading them is not installed (UIM operation restriction).

◆ Setting image or movie/i-motion to stand-by display

- Movie/i-motion that can be set for stand-by display → P294

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 1 1

2 Select any of 1, 3, 5

- When you select "Same as Kisekai Tool", no more operation is required.

Switching still images in a folder to display <Set random image> : 2 ▶ Set required items ▶

- Go to Step 4.

- Set Change image: to "Every 30 mins" to change images at minutes 00 and 30 every hour. Set it to "Every 60 mins" to change images at minutes 00 every hour.

3 Select a folder ▶ Select an image or movie/i-motion

4 "Yes"

- In some sizes of images or movie/i-motion, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)". Select "Yes (Large size)" to enlarge them to fit the screen size.
- If i-appli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking if you terminate the i-appli stand-by display. When selecting "Yes", the i-appli stand-by display is canceled.
- Show ticker of i-Channel ticker in i-Channel and Information display is set to "No" and "Not display", respectively. When movie/i-motion is canceled with i-appli stand-by display not set, Show ticker is set to "Yes", and Information display restores the previous setting.

◆ Playing movie/i-motion or animation set to the stand-by display

- The operations below are available for movie/i-motion.

/ Opening FOMA terminal : Play

: Stop

: Adjust volume

- The operations below are available for GIF animation, created animation or Flash graphics.

Opening FOMA terminal/Returning to the stand-by display/Turning power ON :
Play

: Pause/Play

- It is not played during All lock etc.

✓ INFORMATION

- When the stand-by display is displayed, Flash graphics and/or GIF animation plays for a predetermined period of time and stops. If a clock is stopped when Flash graphics with clock function is specified, you can restart it by playing Flash graphics.
- By some Machi-chara on stand-by display, playing speed of Flash graphics is reduced.
- When setting GIF animation to be enlarged, the display may be distorted.
- When setting Flash graphics in "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture, displayed images may change according to time or season. Also, some images change by tilting or shaking FOMA terminal.
- When setting "ウォーキング×フラワー (Walking×Flower)" in "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture with Pedometer settings set to "Use", you can check the number of steps on the stand-by display. Also, some images change according to the number of steps.
- When there is no image to be displayed since the folder selected in Set random image is deleted, still images in the folder are moved or deleted or animation is created, the default setting is restored. Note that, right after the still image displayed on the stand-by display is moved or animation is created, the image is temporarily displayed until the next image appears.

◆ Setting i-appli stand-by display

- Only i-appli compatible with the i-appli stand-by display can be set.
- The i-appli stand-by display precedes other stand-by display settings.
- Operating i-appli stand-by display→P258

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 1 1 4

2 Select i-appli ▶ "Yes"

or is displayed when the i-appli stand-by display is set.

- Show ticker of i-Channel ticker in i-Channel and Information display is set to "No" and "Not display", respectively. When i-appli stand-by display is canceled with movie/i-motion not set, Show ticker is set to "Yes", and Information display restores the previous setting.

◆ Info/calendar layout

You can divide the stand-by display to several and make settings to display arrival information such as unread mail or missed call, schedule, calendar, list of notes or contents of a note in individual areas.

- When an image is set to the stand-by display, the set information is displayed over the image. It is not displayed if movie/i-motion or i-appli stand-by display is set to the stand-by display.

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 1 5

2 1

Canceling : 2

- No more operation is required.

3 to switch patterns ▶ Select an area

4 1, 3, 5

- Press and select "Yes" to cancel all area settings.

Setting arrival information : 2 ▶ Select information ▶

- "When selecting " Unread messages", reception date/time and titles of unread mails appear.
- When selecting " MessageR"/" MessageF", reception date/time and titles of MessageR/F appear.
- When selecting " Missed call", reception date/time and the phone number of the caller (or name if saved in phonebook) appear.
- When selecting " Recorded messages", recording date/time and the phone number of the caller (or name if saved in phonebook) appear.

Setting Calendar : 4 ▶ 1 - 4

- The number of months that calendar can be displayed varies by the area size.

Setting Note content : 6 ▶ Select a note

5 ▶ "Yes"

❖ Checking information on the stand-by display

1 

- When no information is shown, press  to display an area and press .

2 Move the cursor with    

■ INFORMATION

- Each time you press  on the stand-by display, information is displayed/hidden in turn.
- When animation or created animation is set to the stand-by display, after the playing is stopped or paused, press  to display information.
- While information is displayed, the area set in Info/calendar layout cannot be selected.

❖ Displayed contents of various information

- Since the numbers of information entries and lines displayed differ by the area size, some part of the information may not be displayed.
- For each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for others.
- In Personal data lock, only the setting of Missed calls for New arrival can be changed. Schedule, List of notes or Note cannot be selected.

■ New arrival

The information is displayed from the latest one. Select an area to check the top information.

 : Unread mail  /  : MessageR/MessageF

 : Missed call  : Recorded message

■ Schedule

Icon, Start time, contents/program name appear in the order of the date and time of schedule or watching reservation/recording reservation of 1Seg that start date/time have not come yet. If an area is selected, the schedule or watching reservation/recording reservation of the first item can be checked.

-  appears on the schedule that has different Start date and time and End date and time.
- If the schedule with All day set to ON is the current day, "AllDay" is displayed.

■ Calendar

The calendar for 1 month/2 months/4 months/6 months are displayed. Select an area to display the Calendar of Scheduler.

- The current day is displayed in yellow, days off and holidays in red and Saturdays in blue. The color changes by Days off, Day off of week and Holiday settings of Scheduler.
- When a schedule or 1Seg watching reservation/recording reservation is set, a red mark appears on the upper-right side of the date.

■ List of notes

The list of notes saved in Notepad is displayed. Select an area to display the list of notes.

■ Note

The beginning of a note set in Notepad is displayed. Select an area to display the details of a note.

Outgoing call image

Changing image for outgoing voice/videophone call

1  [Settings & NW services]      or 
▶ Select Display image field ▶  - 

- When "Select image" is selected, select List image field to select an image.
- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.

2 

❖ Outgoing call image priority

When setting outgoing images in multiple functions, they are displayed in order of the priority below.

- ① Image saved in FOMA terminal phonebook*
- ② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Outgoing call/Videophone dialing (V.phone dialing img.)

* Effective when Contact image is set to "ON".

Changing image for incoming voice/videophone call

- This setting also applies to Call alert of Call & Answer or Videophone alert of Videophone.

1  [Settings & NW services]     or 
 ▶ Select Show image field ▶  - 

- When "Select image" is selected, select an image from List images field.
- When "i-motion" is selected, select movie/i-motion from the movie list.
- When movie/i-motion containing sound and images is set for Call ring alert or V.phone ring alert, "Sync ring alert" is set.

2 

✓ INFORMATION

- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.
- When movie/i-motion containing only sound is set as the ring alert, if you reset Show image to movie/i-motion containing only images or Flash graphics, "着信音1 (Tone1)" (voice call) or "ハーブ (Harp)" (videophone call) is set as the ring alert. The melody can be changed.
- Some movies/i-motion may not be set to Show image. Also, movies/i-motion with sound cannot be set.

❖ Incoming call image priority

When setting incoming images in multiple functions, they are displayed in order of the priority below.

- ① Image saved in FOMA terminal phonebook*1
- ② Alert/Image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Call ring alert*2/V.phone ring alert*2/Call alert (Incoming call)/Videophone alert (Videophone receiving)/Incoming calls melody setting for Multi Number/Ring alert for No.B in 2in1 setting*2

*1 Effective when Contact image is set to "ON".

*2 Effective when setting to "Movie ringtone" and movie/i-motion containing a sound and image.

- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the incoming image of voice call operates according to Anonymous caller. An incoming image for videophone call operates according to the settings of Videophone alert.
- When setting movie/i-motion (including the case of setting to "Terminal setting" and setting movie/i-motion for Incoming call) for the ring alert of Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook, the image or movie/i-motion set in phonebook does not appear, and the movie/i-motion set for the ring alert appears. Note that, when setting movie/i-motion containing only sound for the ring alert of Alert by contact etc., it operates as below.
 - When setting a still image to phonebook, the still image is displayed.
 - When Flash graphics or movie/i-motion is set to phonebook, the image of the phonebook does not appear, but the image set for Alert/Image by group or Call alert appears.
- When setting ring alert to "Terminal setting" in Alert/image by group of phonebook and setting movie/i-motion in Call alert etc., the image or movie/i-motion set in phonebook by group does not appear, and the movie/i-motion set for Ring alert appears. Note that, when setting movie/i-motion containing only sound in Call alert etc., it operates as below.
 - When a still image is set for Alert/Image by group, the still image appears.
 - When Flash graphics or movie/i-motion is set for Alert/Image by group, the image set for Call alert etc. appears.

Identification mark

Decorating titles to display for incoming/outgoing calls or while talking

- This setting also applies to Number A of Identification mark of 2in1.
- Identification symbol is not displayed when using Multi Number.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Set required items ▶

- When setting Identify No. to "ON", Mark can be set.

Contact image

Setting Contact image display from phonebook at incoming/outgoing call

You can set if you display the image saved in FOMA terminal phonebook for incoming/outgoing voice calls/videophone calls.

- The image saved in phonebook is displayed when the caller notifies the phone number.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ or

Mail image

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing messages and retrieving

You can set images to appear when sending mails, receiving mails (including MessageR/F) or received mails, or checking new messages.

1 [Settings & NW services]
2 , , ▶ Select Display image field ▶ -

- When "Select image" is selected, select Image list field to select an image.

Setting Image message alert : ▶ Select Display image field ▶ -

- When "i-motion" is selected, select a movie/i-motion from the movie list.
- When movie/i-motion containing sound and images is set for Mail ring alert, it operates according to Sync ring alert.

3

Sub-display

Setting sub-display

◆ Clock & alert image

An image is set on the sub-display for incoming calls or incoming mail. Display of the clock can be set.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Set required items ▶

◆ Auto light on of Sub-display

You can set whether to turn on the sub-display light automatically when you pick up and tilt FOMA terminal.

- When FOMA terminal is tilted while walking or in the place with much vibration, the sub-display light may turn on automatically.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ or

Display & Key light

Setting display and key lighting

◆ Display light time

- This setting also applies to i-mode settings, Display light time of i-appli settings, Image settings, Recording settings and Settings for i-motion. Also, i-motion setting also applies to Display light time of Music&Video Channel.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ -
2 or

- When "Normal use" is selected, select - .
- When setting to "Terminal setting", the light turns on according to the lighting time set in Normal use.
- When setting to "Always on", the light always turns on with brightness set in Brightness and the power saving mode does not operate. Note that, when an AC/DC adapter is connected, the light turns on in "Brightness 5" regardless of the settings in Brightness.

- When setting to "Software" for i-αpli, the light turns on according to the i-αpli settings. The power saving mode does not operate for i-αpli set to Always on.

◆ Light time-out

You can set the duration to show display.

- This setting is unavailable for the function to which Display light time is set to "Always on".
- Display remains shown while receiving a call or mail, making a videophone call, operating camera, watching 1Seg, playing 1Seg video, alarm is sounding, etc. Display disappears when specified time elapses after those operations.
- Display light turns on by opening/closing FOMA terminal or operating keypads when nothing is displayed on the display.

1  [Settings & NW services] 2 4 2 ▶ 1 - 7

◆ Brightness

1  [Settings & NW services] 2 4 3 ▶ 1 - 6

- When setting to "Auto adjust", the brightness of the display lights is automatically adjusted according to the ambient light. In a well-lighted area, Keypad light does not turn on.

◆ Keypad light

1  [Settings & NW services] 2 4 4 ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Keypad light : When setting to "ON", Keypad light turns on when opening FOMA terminal or pressing a key.

Light color : When setting to "Rainbow (Key press)", the light color changes each time you press a key. When setting to "Rainbow (Open/Close)", the light color changes each time FOMA terminal is opened.

Call/Mail light alert : When setting to "ON", Keypad light for an incoming call operates according to Light alert. When setting to "OFF", Keypad light for an incoming call operates according to the setting of Keypad light color.

- When Light pattern of Light alert is "Light pattern 1", it operates in "Kiwi". When it is "Light pattern 2" or "Sync melody", it operates in "Rainbow (Key press)". When "OFF" is set, it operates according to Light color.
- When Light color of Light alert is "Rainbow", it operates in "Rainbow (Key press)".

Power saving mode

Saving battery consumption

◆ Saving mode ON/OFF

1  [Settings & NW services] 2 9 1

◆ Saving mode options

1  [Settings & NW services] 2 9 2 ▶ 1 or 2

❖ When power saving mode is set

- When setting to Standard saving, it operates as below.
 - Keypad light, Call session light of Light alert, GPS light alert, IC card light, Open/Close light and Indicator light are set to "OFF"
 - Brightness is set to "Brightness 1". Light time-out is set to "15 sec"
 - 1Seg ECO mode is set to ON
 - "0 sec" is set to Normal use of Display light time, and "Terminal setting" is set to others.
- When setting to Full saving, it operates with the operation of Standard saving as below.
 - Motion sensor, Auto light on of Sub-display, Immobile sensor of Auto keypad lock are set to "OFF"
 - "Not use" is set to Pedometer settings

✓ INFORMATION -----

- In the cases below, power saving mode is set to "OFF" and Power saving mode is restored to default.
 - When an item set in Power saving mode is separately changed
 - When "Always on" is set to Display light time of Image settings or Recording settings
 - When Kisekai Tool that applies brightness other than "Brightness 1" is set
 - When Style theme is set
 - When Timed theme for which Style theme is set to "Change" operates

Color scheme

Changing display colors

- 1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Select the color scheme

Select startup menu

Changing startup menu

Set the menu displayed when pressing  on the stand-by display.

- 1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  - 

Display Machi-chara

Setting Machi-chara

You can display a character on the stand-by display, menu screen, etc.

- 1  [Settings & NW services]   ▶ Select Display field ▶  or 

- When "ON" is set, you can select Machi-chara.

2

✓ INFORMATION

- Machi-chara does not appear when movie/i-motion or i-appli is set to the stand-by display or in flip style.
- Machi-chara may appear when there is no communication and no keypad operations for 30 seconds or more while displaying a site.
- Some Machi-chara change its actions according to time, arrival information, call duration, etc.

Using Kisekai Tool

Use of Kisekai Tool allows to collectively set stand-by display image, menu icons, incoming/outgoing call images, ring alerts, etc.

- Kisekai Tool in "Preinstalled" folder cannot be moved or deleted. Also, the file name cannot be changed.
- Using Kisekai Tool, the items below can be set (combinations of items that can be set vary by Kisekai Tool).
 - Stand-by display, Kisekai menu^{*1}, Basic menu, Basic menu (Background), Mail menu BG, i-mode menu BG, Battery icon, Antenna icon, Outgoing call image, Call alert image, Videophone call image, Videophone alert image, Outgoing msg img., Mail alert image, Image msg alert, Message retrieving^{*2}, Call ring alert, V.phone ring alert, P-Talk ring alert, Mail ring alert, MessageR ring alert, MessageF ring alert, Alarm clock sound, i-concier ring alert, Color theme, Font, Brightness, Keypad light color, Clock style, Time format, Clock layout, Date format, S-disp:Clock style, S-disp:Alert image, S-disp:Mail image
- *1 Some Kisekai Tool does not support English display when setting Select language to "English". Also, operation by pressing  or  on the stand-by display may cause different actions from ordinary ones or short-cut operations may be unavailable.
- *2 Set the image to display when setting Check new message/SMS.
- Some types of Kisekai menus change the menu structure according to usage frequency. Also, the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applied.
- With 2in1 ON, no Kisekai Tool items are set on the stand-by display in Dual and B modes, and for Call/V.phone/Mail ring alert of Number B.

◆ Changing Kisekai Tool

1 [ME] [Data Box] [7]

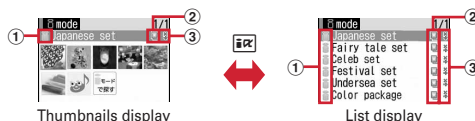
- i-mode** : Kisekai Tool downloaded from sites
- Preinstalled** : Preinstalled Kisekai Tool
- My folder** : Kisekai Tool moved from other folders

• Appears if a folder is added. →P308

Search by i-mode : Searching Kisekai Tool on i-mode site →P178

2 Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to Kisekai Tool

The display name of the file at the cursor position and an icon indicating details are shown.



① Originated

- i-mode**
- / i-mode** : i-mode (compatible with Standard font)/(compatible with Large font)
- / i-mode** : Preinstalled (compatible with Standard font)/(compatible with Large font)
- i-mode** : Searching Kisekai Tool on i-mode site →P178

② File types

- [Icon]** : The last setting **[Icon]** : The current setting
- [Icon]** (the back card is gray) : Not set
- [Icon]** (upper half is gray) : Partially saved
- [Icon]** : i-appli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.

③ File restriction

- [Icon]** : File restricted
- For thumbnail screen, the display name of the Kisekai Tool at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appear at the bottom of the display. Also, when thumbnail display is unavailable, it is displayed as below.
 - [Icon]** (the back card is pink) : No preview image
 - [Icon]** : i-appli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.
 - [Icon]** (upper half is gray) : Partially downloaded

Resetting : [ME] [6] ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Reset all" or "Reset menu"

- Selecting "Reset all" resets Kisekai Tool settings to the default state.
- Selecting "Reset menu" resets settings of "Kisekai menu", "Basic menu", "Basic menu BG", "Mail menu BG" and "i-mode menu BG" to the default state.

Setting list screen operations : **Select a folder** ▶ [ME] [7] ▶ [1] or [2]

- Set to "Yes" for thumbnail display.

Checking memory : [ME] [4] ▶ **Move the cursor to a data type**

3 [ME] ▶ "Yes"

Data of Kisekai Tool is collectively set.

- When a large font setting is included in Kisekai Tool, a confirmation screen for changing the font of mail, phonebook, call logs, etc. appears. And, when changing to a Kisekai Tool not containing large font while setting in a large font, a confirmation screen for changing the font of mail, phonebook, call logs, etc. appears. Follow the instruction of this screen and set.
- Move the cursor to Kisekai Tool partially downloaded ▶ Press one of [OK], [Cancel], [Yes], then a confirmation screen for downloading the remaining data appears. Select "Yes" to start downloading. When downloading is unavailable, Kisekai Tool partially saved may be deleted.

Viewing/Changing detail information : [ME] [2] ▶ [1] or [2]

Detail information →P309

Canceling the setting : [ME] [3] ▶ [1] - [3]

- When "Selected items" is selected, select the Kisekai Tools to cancel and press [OK], and select "Yes".
- When "One item" or "All items" is selected, select "Yes".

Moving/Restoring : [ME] [4] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ [1] - [3]

Moving/Restoring →P308

Deleting : [ME] [5] ▶ [1] - [3]

Deleting →P311

Sorting : [ME] [6] ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [OK]

Sorting →P311

❖ Using Special mode

If you set to Special mode, "アクア (Aqua)" is added to "Preinstalled" folder, and automatically set to Kisekai Tool.

1  ▶  ▶  1 3 ▶ Enter "アクア (Aqua)" in the group name field ▶ 

- The items below are set.
 - Stand-by display, Kisekai menu, Battery icon, Antenna icon, Outgoing call img., Call alert image, V.phone call image, V.phone alert img., Outgoing msg img., Mail alert image, Image msg alert, Message retrieving, Color theme, Clock style, Time format, Clock layout, Date format, S-disp:Clock style, S-disp:Alert image, S-disp:Mail image
- If you perform the same operations as the setting procedure, "アクア (Aqua)" is deleted from "Preinstalled" folder, and the set items are restored to the default state.
- "リーフロボット (スペシャル) (Leaf robot (Special))" is also added in "Preinstalled" folder of Machi-chara. If you delete "リーフロボット (スペシャル) (Leaf robot (Special))", it never appears even if you set Special mode again. Download it from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" website. → P311
- For information on Special mode, refer to "裏技紹介 (Tricks)" of "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" website. → P311

◆ Checking Kisekai Tool content

1  [Data Box] 7 ▶ Select a folder
2 Move the cursor to Kisekai Tool ▶ 

- For the item currently set, a red check mark is added on the icon on the left of item name.
- For some items, the icon indicating file format appears on the right of item name. Icon definitions
 : Image in JPEG format  : Image in GIF format
 : SWF (Flash graphics)  : Kisekai menu
 : Movie in MP4 format  : Melody in MFi format
 : Melody in SMF format

Displaying an image : Select Kisekai Tool

Displaying images or setting for each item : Move the cursor to Kisekai Tool ▶  ▶ Select an item

✓ INFORMATION

- Select language cannot be set when using "Simple Menu (→P400)".
- For items set to "Kisekai Tool" in each setting screen, when selecting other than "Kisekai Tool", a confirmation screen for canceling Kisekai Tool appears. If you select "Yes", only corresponding items are canceled. To restore the setting of Kisekai Tool, set Kisekai Tool again.
- When Kisekai Tool contains data that cannot be displayed or played, only that data is not set.

Customizing the menu

You can change menu items of Kisekai menu or change icons of Basic menu. The items that can be operated vary by the set contents.

◆ Customizing menu items for Kisekai menu

- This operation is available when Kisekai Tool that can change or replace menu items is downloaded and set.
- When "アクア (Aqua)" of Special mode (→P104) is set, you can replace menu items.

❖ Changing menu item

1  ▶ Move the cursor to a menu item ▶  2 ▶ Move the cursor to a function to register ▶ 

- You can select till second level.

❖ Replacing menu items

1  ▶ Move the cursor to a menu item ▶  3 ▶ Select the destination item to replace

◆ Resetting menu operation history

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 2 3 1 ▶ "Yes"

◆ Changing icon and background of Basic menu

1 ▶

- When the display menu is Basic menu, you do not need to press .

2 2

3 Select a function ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Menu icons of other functions can be set successively in the same way.

Canceling 1 item : Move the cursor to an icon ▶ 1 ▶ "Yes"

Canceling all items : 2 ▶ "Yes"

4 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Background is set.

Canceling background : 4 ▶ "Yes"

5 ▶ "Yes"

- When the display menu is Basic menu, a confirmation screen for changing does not appear.

✓ INFORMATION

- Created animations, Flash graphics or images in "Item" folder cannot be selected. If a GIF animation is selected, first image is displayed.
- Depending on the image size to set, the icon is displayed by 192×192, and the background image is enlarged/shrunk to 480×704.
- The icon and background of Basic menu cannot be changed while using Kisekai Tool including "Basic menu", "Basic menu (Background)" or during Personal data lock.

◆ Resetting Menu preference

- Custom menu is also reset to default state.

1 [Settings & NW services]
2 2 3 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

Style theme

Customizing FOMA terminal screen

You can make 3 types of original coordinates by changing the screen designs such as stand-by display, menu, Clock, battery icon, antenna icon or Sub-display pattern.

- If setting Style theme, Brightness of Display light, i-mode of Font size, Mail view, Text input, Accessory, Font style, power saving mode and Subtitle size of User setting of 1Seg are restored to default settings. Also, when Normal use of Display light time in Display & Key light is set to "0 sec", the previous setting is restored.

1 [Settings & NW services] 3 2

2 1 - 3 ▶ Set required items ▶

Title : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Menu design : Select a preinstalled Kisekai Tool.

Color scheme : Select the display color scheme.

Stand-by image : Select an image to be displayed on the stand-by display from a still image, GIF animation, created animation or Flash graphics.

Clock display format/Time format/Clock layout/Day : Select if you display a clock on the stand-by display, clock design to be displayed, time format, clock layout, and display type of the day of the week.

Items of Clock display format→P107 "Setting clock display"

Battery icon : Select the battery icon type.

Antenna icon : Select the antenna icon type.

Sub-display Clock style : Set clock style for sub-display.

Sub-display Incoming call image : Select incoming call image for sub-display.

Sub-display Incoming msg. image : Select an image pattern to appear for sub-display when receiving mail.

Keypad light color : Select the color of Keypad light.

Battery icon/Antenna icon

Changing battery/antenna icon

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 1 ▶ 3 or 4 ▶ 1 -
6

- When setting Special mode, select from among 1 - 7.

Indicator light

Indicating arrival information such as missed calls and unread mails with lighting

You can set whether to blink the light (including call light, mail light) for a missed call, unread mail (including SMS) or arrival information when FOMA terminal is folded.

1 [Settings & NW services] or

- When "ON" is set, it operates as below.
 - Call light and upper light for missed call, middle light for arrival information, mail light and lower light for unread mail (including SMS) blink at intervals of approximately 6 seconds.
 - Colors of light (except call light and mail light) applies to Light alert in Light alert. When there is arrival information indicating an incoming call or mail from a phone number or mail address saved in phonebook, it operates according to Light color of Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook.
 - When approximately 6 hours elapse since the last information was received or you delete (the number indicates the number of items) from the stand-by display, the light stops blinking even if you do not check the information.

Light alert

Setting the lighting patterns and colors used for an incoming call/mail or while talking

- This setting also applies to Light alert of Call alert, Videophone alert, PushTalk alert, Mail alert, MessageR/F alert, Light alert and Light color of ToruCa alert, Light alert of Positioning alert in GPS.
- Brightness and color of light→P421

1 [Settings & NW services] - Set required items

- When setting Light pattern to "Light pattern 1", "Light pattern 2" or "Sync melody", the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set.
- When setting Light pattern of Light alert to "Sync melody" and Indicator light to "ON", Light color for arrival information operates according to Light color set for Call or Mail.

- To set light for receiving ToruCa, Call session light, IC card light, Open/Close light, set Light to "ON" and select a light color.
- For GPS light alert, Light pattern cannot be set to "Sync melody". Also, "OFF" cannot be set for Loc. request-accept or Loc. request-verify.
- Even if setting Light pattern to "Sync melody", some melodies are not synchronized.

❖ Light alert priority

When Light pattern and Light color of Light alert is set for multiple functions, light turns on in order of the priority below.

- Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook
- Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
- Light alert/Call alert/Videophone alert/Mail alert

Font style

Changing font style

You can change the font type to be used for i-mode site, Full Browser, character entry screen, etc.

- In addition to "フリティー桃" stored by default, you can use other kana fonts downloaded.
- This setting does not apply to some functions such as camera, i-appli or i-motion.

1 [Settings & NW services] Select Kanji/Alphanumeric field -

2 Select Hiragana/Katakana field Select a font

Deleting downloaded fonts: Select Hiragana/Katakana field Move the cursor to a font "Yes"

- Preinstalled fonts or fonts currently used cannot be deleted.

3

Changing font size

You can change the font size etc. used for full-screen entry of notepad, message text or for displaying screen memo, i-mode site, Full Browser or mail etc.

<Example> When setting with All listed

1  [Settings & NW services] 2 6 1

2 1 ▶ 1 - 6

Setting i-mode view : 2 ▶ 1 - 5

Setting Full Browser : 3 ▶ 1 - 4

Setting Mail view : 4 ▶ 1 - 5

Setting Text input : 5 ▶ 1 - 6

Setting Font size:Ph.book/Logs : 6 ▶ 1 or 2

- You can set the font size for Phonebook & Logs, notepad list screen, alarm clock list screen and dictionaries.

✓INFORMATION

- When the font size that cannot be set for i-mode view, Full Browser, Mail view or Font size:Ph.book/Logs is selected in All listed setting, the closest size is set.
- For some font sizes selected in All listed, a confirmation screen for changing the font size for menu appears. When selecting "Yes", Kisekai Tool applicable to the selected font size can be selected.
- The font size can also be changed from the mail details screen.→P159

Setting clock display

Whether to display clock, the design, size or layout of clock display on the stand-by display can be set. The language to use to display the day of the week or the display format can also be set.

1  [Settings & NW services] 7 1 4 ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Style : Set if you display clock. When setting to "ON", select a clock style.

- When setting to "World time clock", Japan time appears on the left side and the time/name of the specified time zone appears on the right side, respectively.

Time format : Set the clock display format to either "24 hour" or "12 hour".

Clock layout : Set the position to display the clock.

- In All lock or Omakase Lock, the clock is displayed at the "Top" regardless of this setting.

Day : Set if you use Japanese or English to display the day of the week.

- When setting to "Terminal settings", the display depends on the bilingual setting.

World time clock : Set the time zone to be displayed or set if you enable summer time when "World time clock" is selected in Style.

- When Summer time is "ON", the displayed time is set forward one hour from the time of the specified time zone.

✓INFORMATION

- On a screen other than the stand-by display, the clock appears in the upper-right corner of the display. This display depends on Time format ("24 hour" or "12 hour").
- When movie/i-motion or i-appli is set to the stand-by display, a clock is displayed with Style set to "Digital 1", Clock layout set to "Top" regardless of this setting.
- Two time zone clocks are used when using FOMA terminal overseas.→P378

Security Settings

Security code

Security code used on the FOMA terminal	110
Changing terminal security code	Terminal security code change 111
Setting PIN code	111
Unlocking PIN/PIN2 code	112
Using fingerprint authentication	112

Restricting mobile phone operations or functions

Restricting others from using	All lock 114
Using Omakase Lock	Omakase Lock 115
Restricting making/receiving calls	Self mode 116
Disabling to use personal information	Personal data lock 117
Prohibiting keypad dial	Keypad dial lock 118
Setting operations for using or displaying personal information	Privacy mode 118
Setting display contents for receiving call/mail	Receive display option 123
Preventing inadvertent operation of side keys	Side key hold 123
Locking keys	Lock on close/Auto keypad lock 124

Restricting calls/mail/data transfer

Accepting/Rejecting calls from specified phone numbers	126
Setting operations for incoming calls not to notify caller ID	Anonymous caller 126
Setting not to answer calls from the party not saved in phonebook	Ring alert delay 127
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not saved in phonebook	Unregistered caller 128

Other security settings

Using Data Security Service	128
Resetting various functions	Reset 130
Deleting saved data all at once	Delete all data 130
Resetting data by remote control	Initializing remotely 130
Restricting each function by remote control	Remote customization 131
Other security settings	132

Security code used on the FOMA terminal

Some of the convenient FOMA terminal functions require entry of security code. In addition to the terminal security code for using some terminal functions, there are several types of security codes such as network security code for network services and i-mode password. Use these codes appropriately for FOMA terminal.

- The terminal security code, network security code or i-mode password entered is masked with "*".

Precautions related to security codes

- When setting a security code, do not use a number that can be easily known to others, such as "birthday", "a part of a phone number", "street address or room number", "1111" or "1234". Keep a separate note of the set security code.
- Be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If a security code is known to and misused by others, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for damages resulted from it.
- If you forgot your security codes, or fingerprint authentication for all of the fingers registered is unavailable when Fingerprint access is "ON", you need to bring a document (such as a driver's license) for identifying that you are a subscriber, FOMA terminal and UIM to a DOCOMO Shop.
For details, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

❖ Terminal security code

The default security code is "0000", which you can change by yourself.→P111

- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned OFF.
- For the setting using Verify fingerprint, the fingerprint authentication screen appears instead of the terminal security code entry screen. Press **[F5]** to switch the terminal security code entry screen. The terminal security code cannot be entered when Fingerprint access is "ON".

❖ Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number used when DOCOMO identifies the subscriber to accept orders at DOCOMO Shop, docomo Information Center or "各種お申込・お手続き (Application/Procedures)" or when you use a variety of Network Services. You can set any number at subscription and optionally change it later. If you have "docomo ID/Password" for "My docomo" that is a total support site for a PC, you can change your network security code from a PC.

From i-mode, you can change the code by yourself accessing "各種お申込・お手続き (Application/Procedures)" in お客様サポート (Support).

- For "My docomo" and "各種お申込・お手続き (Application/Procedures)", see the inside of the back of this manual.

❖ i-mode password

The 4-digit "i-mode password" is required to save to/delete from マイメニュー (My Menu) or subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode charged services. The password is set to "0000" by default, however, you can change it by yourself.→P174
There may be passwords required by individual IPs (Information Providers).

❖ PIN code/PIN2 code

2 security codes which are the PIN code and PIN2 code can be set for UIM. Their security codes are set to "0000" by default, which you can change by yourself.→P112

PIN code is a number (code) to be entered each time UIM is installed or FOMA terminal is powered ON to confirm the user and to prevent unauthorized use of FOMA terminal. Making/Receiving calls and terminal operations are enabled by entering PIN code.

The PIN2 code is the security code to be used when requesting the issuance of a user certificate, resetting Total calls cost or changing settings of Reset call cost.

- When installing UIM that has been used with another FOMA terminal, the PIN code and PIN2 code should be the same ones set previously. If no changes have been made to PIN code and PIN2 code, your codes are "0000".

❖ PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)

PUK is a number of 8-digit code used to unblock PIN or PIN2 lock. You cannot change PUK by yourself.

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, UIM is locked.



✓INFORMATION

- When using Password manager with the fingerprint authentication and a terminal security code access available, change the terminal security code. For the new terminal security code, avoid use of an easily-guessed number such as the low-order 4 digits of the phone number and take care not to let others know the terminal security code. Keep a separate note of the set security codes.

* Note that DOCOMO is not liable for any damages caused through incorrect use of the data by a third party.

Terminal security code change

Changing terminal security code

- 1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter the new terminal security code
- 2 Enter the new terminal security code in New security code-check field ▶

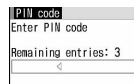
Setting PIN code

❖ Setting whether to require entry of PIN code when turning power ON <PIN1 code ON/OFF>

If a wrong PIN code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked. Press and enter PUK.

- The PIN code entry screen is displayed only when the current setting is changed.

- 1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ or ▶ Enter PIN code



❖ When PIN1 code ON/OFF is set to "ON"

When FOMA terminal is powered on, the PIN code entry screen is displayed. The stand-by display appears when correct PIN code is entered, but all operations are unavailable when not.

✓INFORMATION

- When the date/time specified in Alarm clock or schedule has come with Alarm auto power ON is "ON", the power is turned ON and the alarm starts sounding before the PIN code entry screen is displayed. When is pressed to stop the alarm, the PIN code entry screen is displayed. Even if a downloaded melody, i-motion or music is set as an alarm, operations are carried out as specified in the default settings.

◆ Changing PIN/PIN2 code

- To change the PIN code, you need to set PIN1 code ON/OFF to "ON".

1  [Settings & NW services] **4** **5** ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ Authenticate

2 Enter the current PIN/PIN2 code ▶ Enter a new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code entry field ▶ Enter the new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code - check field ▶ 

- If the PIN/PIN2 code was not correctly entered, a screen indicating the failure of authentication appears. Press  and enter the correct PIN/PIN2 code. If a wrong code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked. Press  and enter the PUK.

✓ INFORMATION

- Even if PIN2 code is locked by entering incorrect PIN2 code 3 times consecutively, making/receiving calls, PushTalk calls or sending/receiving mail is available; if PIN code is locked by entering incorrect PIN code 3 times consecutively, these operations are unavailable.

Unblocking PIN/PIN2 code

If a wrong PIN/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, lock is set. If this happens, unblock and enter a new PIN code.

1 On the confirmation screen of the PUK, "OK" ▶ Enter the PUK
2 Enter a new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code field ▶ Enter the new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code - check field ▶ 

Using fingerprint authentication

Use of the fingerprint authentication allows you to skip the operation of entering the terminal security code with keypads by sliding your fingertip on the fingerprint sensor.

- Even with fingerprint authentication set, pressing  on the fingerprint authentication screen displays the terminal security code entry screen, allowing you to enter terminal security code for authentication. The terminal security code cannot be entered when Fingerprint access is "ON".
- Simultaneous use of the fingerprint authentication and terminal security code access → P111 INFORMATION in "Security code used on the FOMA terminal"

◆ Precautions for using fingerprint authentication

- This function is used to authenticate the information on the characteristics of fingerprint image. For this reason, user with fingerprint that does not provide enough characteristics information may not be able to use the fingerprint authentication.
- The 3 readings with the same finger are needed to register your fingerprint. Do not register the different finger.
- Authentication performance (the probability of successful fingerprint authentication for correct sliding of the finger) depends on the condition of use. The finger conditions below may make fingerprint registration difficult or reduce the authentication performance. Taking measures according to the condition of your finger including washing hands, wiping hands, using a different finger for fingertip authentication and applying cream if the hand is rough or dry may improve the authentication performance.
 - Fingers are wrinkled, wet or sweaty after taking a bath, etc.
 - Fingers are sweaty or oily enough to obscure ridges of fingertip, or fingers are soiled with dirt or oil
 - Rough or damaged (cut, inflamed, etc.)
 - Extremely dry or having tendency to get dry
 - Became fat or thin to cause the fingerprint to change
 - Fingerprint unclear by wearing away
 - Surface in a condition extremely different from that at the time of fingerprint registration

- For registration/authentication of your fingerprint, align the first joint of one of your fingers to the center of the sensor, press your finger parallel to the sensor and slide it downward until it passes the fingerprint sensor area. To prevent authentication failure due to difference in finger positions at registration and authentication, keep your finger parallel to the terminal as you slide it.
- If the sliding movement is too fast or too slow, the fingerprint may not be correctly recognized.
- Registration/Authentication of fingerprint may be difficult with your thumb as the center of the whorl of the fingerprint may be displaced or distorted. Try as much as possible to slide your finger so that the center of the whorl of the fingerprint passes the center of the fingerprint sensor.
- If the fingerprint was not correctly read, a warning message appears. If the fingerprint was not authenticated within a certain period of time, a confirmation message appears and the previous screen reappears.
- If fingerprint registration or authentication is started with the finger put on the fingerprint sensor, activation may be unavailable. Put the finger off from the fingerprint sensor and retry the operation.
- When connecting FOMA terminal using a USB cable to a device which requires grounding such as a desktop PC, make sure that the device is grounded in advance. If the connected device is not grounded, fingerprint authentication may be unavailable. In this case, perform fingerprint authentication while touching a metallic part (frame, external connector, etc.) of the connected device or after disconnecting FOMA terminal from the device.
- Fingerprint authentication technology does not guarantee complete identity authentication or verification. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any damage caused by use of this product or unavailability of this product.

◆ Usage precautions for fingerprint sensor

- The sheet on the fingerprint sensor is a protective film to maintain waterproofing. Do not remove or poke the film with a pointed object such as a pen.
- The surface of the fingerprint sensor is waterproof, however, a wet or dirty sensor or finger, or a wrinkled finger may cause malfunction. Wipe any water or dust off with a soft cloth before use.
- The conditions below may cause failure or damage.
 - Strike or give a hard shock
 - Scratch or pick with a pointed object
 - Rub hard with a fingernail or hard object (such as metal piece of strap) and scratch the surface of the fingerprint sensor
 - Scratch or stain the surface of the fingerprint sensor with soil etc.

- Cover with a sticker or paint with ink etc.
- The conditions below may make fingerprint scanning difficult or reduce the authentication performance. Clean the surface of the fingerprint sensor from time to time.
 - Dirt of dust, sebum, etc., attachment or condensation of moisture of sweat etc.
- If any of the phenomena below occurs, clean the surface of the fingerprint sensor. The phenomena may be improved.
 - "Clean surface of sensor." appears
 - Fingerprint registration or authentication fails often
- To clean the fingerprint sensor, wipe its surface with a dry, soft and static-free cloth. Long-term use may cause the fingerprint sensor to get dusty, but do not try to remove the dust with a pointed object even in such a case.
- Static electricity may cause malfunction. Before placing the finger on the fingerprint sensor, eliminate static electricity by touching a metal object with the hand etc. Take particular care in dry seasons such as winter.

◆ Registering fingerprint to be used for authentication <Register fingerprint>

- Up to 10 items can be registered.

1  [Settings & NW services] **4** **6** **2** ▶ **Authenticate**

2 "OK" ▶ **Press the sensor with your finger and slide slowly downwards by following the instruction message**

- Fingerprint registration is canceled when there is an incoming voice/PushTalk call or a previously specified date/time for Alarm clock or schedule has come during the fingerprint scan.

3 **Enter the name to register (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters)** ▶ 

-  appears for the fingerprint set to be used.

◆ Setting whether to use only fingerprint authentication for authentication <Fingerprint access>

- When setting Fingerprint access to "ON", 2 or more registrations of different fingers and use for authorize are required.
- When setting Fingerprint access to "ON", authentication using terminal security code is unavailable. If authentication is disabled for any registered fingers due to FOMA terminal operating conditions, finger conditions, failure of the fingerprint sensor or other reasons, you need to bring a document (such as a driver's license) for identifying that you are a subscriber, FOMA terminal and UIM to a DOCOMO Shop.

1 [Settings & NW services] 4 6 4 ▶ Authenticate

2 1 ▶ "OK" ▶

Canceling : 2

- If 2 or more fingerprint items registration and Use for authorize are not made, setting cannot be completed.

The next procedure → P113 Step 2 in "Registering fingerprint to be used for authentication"

Setting authentication → P114 "Setting/Canceling use for authorize" in "Managing fingerprint"

◆ Authenticating fingerprint

1 When the fingerprint authentication screen appears, slide your finger on the fingerprint sensor

- For fingerprint authentication, press the finger set for use against the fingerprint sensor.
- If the authentication is failed, remove the finger from the fingerprint sensor and retry authentication. When authentication performance is low, retry the fingerprint registration.
- Pressing or a keypad (touch [ScrtYCd] in flip style) displays the terminal security code entry screen, except when Fingerprint access is "ON".

✓INFORMATION

- If fingerprint authentication failed 5 times consecutively, the terminal security code entry screen appears. If authentication failed 5 times consecutively when Fingerprint access is "ON", the power is turned OFF. The cumulative number of authentication failure is cleared by correct authentication or redisplaying of fingerprint authentication screen.

◆ Managing fingerprint

You can display or delete fingerprint set for authentication, change the registered name, etc.

- If all fingerprints set for authentication are canceled or deleted, the fingerprint authentication becomes unavailable.
- When setting Fingerprint access to "ON", and there are 3 or more registered fingerprints set for authentication, the fingerprints can be deleted after canceling authorize. Note that if there are 2 or less fingerprints, they cannot be canceled authorize or deleted.

<Example> Deleting the fingerprint

1 [Settings & NW services] 4 6 3 ▶ Authenticate

- To check the registered fingerprint, press .

Setting/Canceling use for authorize: Select a fingerprint to set/cancel use for authorize

✓ appears with the finger print set for use.

Renaming data : 4 ▶ Edit the name ▶

Changing the order : Move the cursor to a fingerprint ▶ 5 or 6

2 Move the cursor to a fingerprint to delete ▶ 3 ▶ 1 -
 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a fingerprint.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ .

All lock

Restricting others from using

When All lock is activated, menu operations are disabled to prevent unauthorized use by third parties.

To make an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in All lock, enter the emergency call number on the stand-by display and press .

* The emergency call number entered on the terminal security code entry screen is marked with "E".

■ For Verify fingerprint

Press on the stand-by display, enter the emergency call number on the fingerprint authentication screen and press .

■ When Fingerprint access is "ON"

Press  on the stand-by display, enter the emergency call number and press .

- To start both IC card lock and All lock, start IC card lock→All lock in sequence.→P266
- The microSD card and UIM remain unlocked.

  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Authenticate

"All locked." appears on the stand-by display.

Canceling : Enter the terminal security code

- If fingerprint authentication is set, press  and perform authentication.
- Unlocking in flip style→P41 "■Authentication"

✓INFORMATION

- PushTalk calls received in All lock are rejected and the callers hear the busy tone. It appears in Received calls when All lock is canceled.
- A call is received regardless of the settings of Specified caller.
- Even if a stand-by display or Machi-chara is set, only the image set by default is displayed.
- All lock precedes even when Lock on close or Auto keypad lock is set to "ON".
- The alarm clock and schedule reminder do not operate even when the specified date and time arrive. Activation by watching reservation or recording reservation of 1Seg does not occur.
- Even when the specified date/time comes, Timed theme is not switched. When canceling All lock, Timed theme not in operation start in order.
- Bluetooth ON/OFF becomes "OFF" even if it is set to "ON". The previous setting is restored after All lock is canceled.
- The functions below are available.
 - Receiving voice/videophone calls^{*1}, making emergency call (110, 119, 118)
 - Automatic update of Data Center
 - Receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F, SMS^{*2}
 - Receiving Area Mail, activating Omakase Lock
 - Receiving i-oppli call^{*3} or obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader
 - Operations for location request of GPS^{*4}
 - Updating software, auto-updating pattern definitions.

^{*1} Only a phone number is displayed, but the other party's name or image saved in phonebook does not. The incoming image, ring alert and other settings are reset to default settings, and the default image is displayed as videophone substitute image. Chaku-moji can be received, but it is not displayed on the incoming call screen. It is displayed in Received calls when All lock is canceled.

^{*2} No receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are taken.

^{*3} Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken.

^{*4} Even when the requester ID of Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed.

Omakase Lock

Using Omakase Lock

This service allows you to lock the personal information of phonebook etc. or IC card function of Osaifu-Keitai only by contacting DOCOMO in case FOMA terminal is misplaced etc. You can protect your important privacy and Osaifu-Keitai with this service. And, when Omakase Lock is unavailable at your application and communication becomes available within one year, Omakase Lock is activated automatically. Note that, when you cancel/suspend the line, change the phone number, or change your current subscription to mova within one year, Omakase Lock is not activated automatically.

FOMA terminal can be unlocked upon your request, etc.

- * Omakase Lock is a charged service. If you subscribe to this service at the same time as service interruption or during interruption, or if you are the member of docomo Premier Club, no charges occur. And, if you subscribe to Keitai Anshin Pack, you can use the service within the fixed charge of Keitai Anshin Pack. Even in Omakase Lock, if Request permit/deny is "Always permit", FOMA terminal responds to location request of GPS function.

Setting/Canceling Omakase Lock

 0120-524-360 Office hours : 24hours

- * Omakase Lock can be set/canceled from My docomo site using a PC etc.

- For details of Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

❖When Omakase Lock is activated

"Omakase Lock active." appears on the stand-by display.

- Operations except turning power ON/OFF, receiving voice/videophone calls, or reactions to Location request are unavailable and the IC card functions are also unavailable. Note, however that the microSD card and UIM remain unlocked.

✓INFORMATION

- Voice calls or videophone calls are received, displaying the callers phone number instead of the name or image saved in the phonebook. The incoming image, ring alert and other settings are reset to default settings, and the default image is displayed as videophone substitute image. The setting you made is restored when Omakase lock is canceled.
- PushTalk calls received are rejected and the callers hear the busy tone, but the calls are recorded as missed calls.
- Chaku-moji can be received, but it does not appear on the incoming call screen. The Chaku-moji appears in Received calls after Omakase Lock is canceled.
- i-appli call can be received automatically, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken. It is displayed in i-appli call log after Omakase Lock is canceled.
- Even when the requester ID of GPS Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed.
- Bluetooth ON/OFF becomes "OFF" even if it is set to "ON". The previous setting is restored after Omakase Lock is canceled.
- The received mails are stored in i-mode Center.
- When Omakase Lock is activated while other functions are active, those functions are terminated (data being edited, if any, may not be saved before the termination).
- Even with various lock functions set, Omakase Lock precedes them.
- Omakase Lock is unavailable when FOMA terminal is misplaced with its power OFF, put out of service area or in Self mode. Besides, FOMA terminal may not be locked depending on your usage etc.
- You can turn ON/OFF the power, however, lock is not canceled even if you turn OFF the power.
- If you are a subscriber to Dual Network Service and use mova service, Omakase Lock is unavailable.
- Even when the holder of FOMA terminal is different from the subscriber, Omakase Lock is activated on the request from the subscriber.
- Omakase Lock can be canceled only when UIM with the same phone number as the one used when activating Omakase Lock is installed. If the lock cannot be canceled, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Self mode

Restricting making/receiving calls

You can make all functions requiring communication unavailable.

- Self mode is canceled after an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) is dialed.

1 **[CLR] (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"**

SELF appears at the top of the display.

Canceled : **[CLR] (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"**

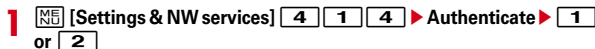
✓INFORMATION

- The functions below are not available.
 - Making/receiving a call or PushTalk call
 - i-mode, sending or receiving mail
 - Receiving i-appli call or obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader
 - GPS (including registering, editing and deleting service clients in LCS clients list)
 - Infrared communication/iC transmission or infrared remote control, Bluetooth
 - Packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC
- When a call is received, a message is played for the caller indicating that the terminal is out of service area or turned OFF. Voice Mail service and Call Forwarding Service are available. When PushTalk call arrives, the call is rejected and the callers hear the busy tone.
- i-mode mail and MessageR/F are stored in i-mode Center and SMS in SMS Center when they are received. To receive messages, perform i-mode/SMS inquiry after canceling Self mode.

Disabling to use personal information

You can temporarily restrict use of i-mode, mail, personal information, etc.

- This function cannot be activated when Unregistered caller is "ON".
- Calls made or received in Personal data lock are recorded. Making calls from Redial or Received calls is available



When "ON" is set,  appears on the stand-by display.

❖ When Personal data lock is ON

All or a part of the settings in the functions below are restricted. The microSD card and UIM remain unlocked.

- Mail^{*1}, Check new message, SMS^{*1}
- i-mode, MessageR/F^{*1}, i-Channel, Full Browser
- i-appli, receiving i-appli call^{*2}, i-Widget settings
- Phonebook, PushTalk phonebook, Ans.Machine & Voice memo (Movie memo), Mail logs^{*3}
- Data Box (All functions)
- Bar code reader, Ir/iC/PC connection^{*4}, microSD, Camera, Sound recorder, Data Center, GPS^{*5}, Pedometer, 1Seg (except a part of User setting), Bluetooth communication (OPP)
- Quick search^{*6}, Scheduler^{*7}, Notepad, Alarm clock, Alert&Time settings
- Call ring alert, Mail/Msg ring alert, i-concier ring alert, GPS alert, Alarm sound, Image/i-appli, i-Channel ticker, Shortcut icons, resetting Menu preference, Call image (excluding Contact image), Mail image, Kisekæ Tool, Display Machi-chara, Kisekæ/Themes, Sound & Image, Anonymous caller, Headset key control (Headset quick-dial), Reject/Accept call, V.phone dialing img., Videophone alert, Image setting^{*8}, PushTalk alert, Call cost limit, Reset, Delete all data, Tone/Vibration message notification, Chaku-moji^{*9}, 2in1 setting, Melody Call, Number Setting/Incoming calls melody setting of Multi Number
- MUSIC Player, Music&Video Channel^{*10}
- IC card content, DCMX, ToruCa, Search by i-mode
- User information
- i-concier

^{*1} Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are not taken. Mail creation from mail logs is also unavailable.

^{*2} Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken.

- ^{*3} Only a mail address is displayed, but the other party's name or image saved in phonebook does not.
- ^{*4} Data transfer in infrared communication/iC transmission or using USB connection is unavailable.
- ^{*5} Reactions to a Location request are available.
- ^{*6} Search by function with restriction is unavailable with Personal data lock ON.
- ^{*7} The information of the Scheduler is not displayed on the calendar set for stand-by display.
- ^{*8} The default image is displayed as videophone substitute image.
- ^{*9} Chaku-moji can be received, but it does not appear on an incoming call screen. It appears in Received calls when Personal data lock is canceled.
- ^{*10} When program downloading starts, the program downloading screen appears, but the downloading result screen does not appear.

✓INFORMATION-----

- When making/receiving a call to/from the party saved in phonebook or PushTalk phonebook, neither name nor image saved is displayed and only the phone number is displayed.
-  does not appear on the stand-by display even when Answer machine is activated, and an icon for a recorded message which has not been played is also not displayed.
- When data to which Personal data lock applies is set as the stand-by display or ring alert, the default setting becomes active in Personal data lock (when menu is a Kisekæ menu except the one set by default, Basic menu is displayed). The setting you made is restored when canceled. When data saved in "Preinstalled" folder is set, however, the setting does not change even in Personal data lock.
- Even when the requester ID of GPS Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed.
- On Basic menu or Custom menu, icons of functions and parties with activation restricted are changed to  and person names appear as " * * * ". For Kisekæ menu, the font color is displayed in gray or the reason is displayed why activation cannot be performed.
- Calls cannot be made even when FOMA terminal is connected with a Bluetooth device using a headset.

Prohibiting keypad dial

You can set so that calls or PushTalk calls cannot be made without using phonebook.

- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even if Keypad dial lock is activated..

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] **4** **1** **6** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **1**
or **2**

When "ON" is set,  appears on the stand-by display.

◆ When Keypad dial lock is ON

The operations below cannot be performed.

- Making call from Redial or Received calls^{*1}
- Editing, adding, deleting entries, setting group, adding group or adding phonebook group of phonebook or PushTalk phonebook
- Editing and resetting recorded user information data
- Phone To (AV Phone To), SMS To and Mail To functions
- Exchanging phonebook data or user information transfer with external devices
- Sending Mail/SMS^{*1}, sending from mail logs^{*1}
- Reading template on the mail creation screen, creating mail from the mail template list screen or the mail template details screen^{*2}
- Notify location of GPS^{*3}
- Dial-up communication service for Bluetooth^{*1}
- Saving a phonebook entry temporarily stored in INBOX, User information and LCS client
- Using network services by the dial up operation
- Packet communication^{*1} or 64K data communication^{*1} with a PC

^{*1} Calls/Messages can be made or sent to parties saved in phonebook.

^{*2} A mail can be created from a template that a mail address saved in the phonebook is entered as the destination.

^{*3} Though notification to notification destinations is available, adding, editing and deleting notification destinations to LCS clients are unavailable.

Setting operations for using or displaying personal information

Set operations for using or displaying personal information and reflect secret attributes.

◆ Flow of Privacy mode operation setting

- Set the operation in the order below.

① Operation setting of Privacy mode→P119

- You can set so that authentication is required each time you use personal information, select the data to hide, or select the reception operation to the call from a party that secret attribute is set.

② Setting secret attribute

- Reflecting the setting contents of each item of Privacy mode, "Hide set contact", "Hide secrecy fldrs", "Hide secrecy album", "Hide set schedule" to each data requires the setting of secret attribute.

Phonebook→P87, Bookmark→P175, Mail→P151, My Picture, i-motion, My Document, Other→P308, Schedule→P330

③ Activating Privacy mode→P120

■ When there is an incoming call.

- You can select various incoming methods such as hiding the name saved in phonebook or answering by recorded messages or voice mail without performing incoming operations.

■ Operation in Privacy mode

Temporary cancellation of Privacy mode→P122

Contact setting→P122

✓INFORMATION-----

- To enable Privacy mode settings, you need to start Privacy mode. You can also set automatic activation.
- If Contact setting is not performed after changing a phonebook entry secret attribute or editing a phonebook entry, activating Privacy mode does not hide mail or SMS of the changed/edited phonebook entry. Perform Contact setting to hide it.→P122

◆ Setting Privacy mode operation

- If selecting "Authorized access", authentication is performed when using a set function.
- If selecting "Hide set contact", "Hide secrecy fldrs", "Hide secrecy albums", "Hide set schedule", data or folder that secret attribute is set is not displayed. And, also when setting Shortcut icons on stand-by display, data or folders with secret attribute are hidden.

◆ Setting operation of phonebook or mail

1 [Settings & NW services] 4 2 1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ ▶

Call & Logs :

- If setting to "Authorized access", authentication is performed when using phonebook, PushTalk phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages, Voice memos or quick search to search mail.
- With "Hide set contact" set, phonebook entries or groups (including phonebook entries in those groups) with secret attribute, redial, received calls, mail or SMS for parties with secret attribute are not displayed. Also, reception operation is made according to the setting of Private call act.

Mail & Logs :

- If setting to "Authorized access", authentication is required when using mail or mail logs.
- With "Hide secrecy fldrs" set, folders with secret attribute are not displayed. The reception operation when a mail is received from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute is made according to the setting of Private mail act.

Private call act. : Set incoming actions for an incoming call from a party with secret attribute set in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is set to "Hide set contact").

- If setting to "Alert+Show No.", it is treated as a call from a party not registered in phonebook.
- If setting to "Silent receive", it is not notified by ring alert, vibrate alert, light alert or sub-display. And, the display operates according to the setting of the Silent receive act.
- If setting to "Alert+Show name.", it is treated as a call from a party that secret attribute is not set.

Silent receive act. : Set the incoming operation when setting Private call act. to "Silent receive". And, even if each function is set, it is not notified by ring alert, vibrate alert, light alert or sub-display.

- If setting to "Keep receiving", when there is an incoming call, only the phone number is displayed on the incoming call screen.
- If setting to "Start Ans. Machine", when there is an incoming call, answer machine is activated. Only the phone number is displayed on the incoming call screen.
- If setting to "Fwd to Voice Mail", the received call is connected to voice mail. Note that the incoming screen is not displayed.

Private mail act. : Set the display or notification when a mail comes from a party that secret attribute is set or from a party whose mail is set to be sorted to folders that secret attribute is set in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact" or when Mail & Logs is "Hide secrecy fldrs").

- If setting to "No alert/name/no.", mails are received but the receiving operation is not performed.
- If setting to "Alert+Show name", even if receiving a mail from a party that secret attribute is set, ticker, name or subject is displayed and the receiving operation is performed.

Incoming: privacy mode : Set if you are notified, with a changed battery icon type, of incoming calls or mail from a phonebook entry with secret attribute, or mail from a party whose mail is set to be filtered to a folder with secret attribute. Select a battery icon to display or select "OFF".

◆ Setting operations for Other item privacy

You can set if authentication is required to use My Picture, i-motion, My Document, Other (Word, Excel, PowerPoint), Schedule, Notepad, i-appli, Loc. history (GPS), Bookmark or Screen memo.

1 [Settings & NW services] 4 2 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ ▶

- When "Hide secrecy album", "Hide secrecy fldrs" or "Hide set schedule" is selected, albums, folders or schedule with secret attribute set are not displayed.

✓INFORMATION

- If Schedule is set to "Authorized access", watching 1Seg/recording reservation are also included.
- If i-motion is set to "Hide secrecy album", titles in playlist are not displayed when movies/i-motion in album with secret attribute are saved in playlist.

◆ Setting start/cancel method of Privacy mode

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶

Activate/Deactivate : Set the activation/cancellation method of Privacy mode.

- When setting to "No activation", Privacy mode is activated only when Auto start is set.
- When setting to "Key+Authorize", the operation of authentication screen for activation/cancellation is not displayed. When selecting this item, press  to display the detailed explanation screen of this operation.

Auto start : Set the time period till Privacy mode automatically starts when doing nothing on stand-by display.

◆ Activating Privacy mode

❖ Start/Cancel method by "Hold L-cursor key"

1 (1 sec. or more)

Canceling :  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Authenticate

❖ Start/Cancel method by "Key+Authorize"

1 ▶ ▶ Authenticate ▶

- No operation of  is required for Verify fingerprint or Fingerprint access.
- Authentication screen is not displayed. When authentication is failed, press  and authenticate again. The power is not turned OFF even if authentication is failed 5 times in succession.

✓INFORMATION

- When Auto start of Privacy mode settings is other than "OFF", Privacy mode is activated when the set time elapses on stand-by display.
- For Timed theme, when Privacy mode is set to "ON", even if Activate/Deactivate of Activation option is set to "No activation" and Auto start is set to "OFF", Privacy mode is activated.

❖ When Privacy mode is activated

There are restrictions as below depending on the contents set by the items of Privacy mode.

<Except i-appli : "Authorized access">

- There is unavailable i-appli (except when Mail & Logs is "Authorized access") or i-appliDX.

<Call & Logs or Mail & Logs : Except "Show all">

- To display mail groups or sort mail, authentication is required.

<Call & Logs : Except "Show all">

- When sending mail with a still image shot during a call, even if a mail address of the party you are talking over a call is saved in the phonebook, that mail address is not entered as a destination.

<Call & Logs : "Authorized access" or "Hide set contact">

- When receiving i-appli call, only a phone number is displayed but the other party's name saved in phonebook is not.

<Call & Logs : "Authorized access">

- When making a call by pressing the dial, only a phone number appears, but the name or image saved in phonebook does not. When sending a mail by directly entering mail address, a phone number or mail address is displayed. When receiving, receiving operation is performed according to the setting saved in phonebook.
- Missed calls or Recorded messages do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout.

- A mail address appears, but the name saved in phonebook from mail or mail logs does not.
- Even when the requester ID of GPS Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed. Also, the located position is displayed in Loc. history, however, the requester's name is not displayed on the Loc. history details screen.
- Birthdays or contacts saved in Scheduler is not displayed.
- Persons saved to Custom menu cannot be selected. The icon changes to  and a person's name appears as " * * *".
- Calls cannot be made using Headset quick-dial or a Bluetooth device.

<Call & Logs : "Hide set contact">

- Arrival information for parties with secret attribute does not appear. No displays are given to redial^{*1}, received calls^{*1, 2}, recorded messages, voice memo during talking, Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list, or mail logs.
- When Private call act. is set to "Silent receive", if there is an incoming call from a party that secret attribute is set, Chaku-moji is not displayed on the reception screen. Note that the call is recorded in received calls.
- When setting Private call act. to "Silent receive", if you receive a PushTalk call from the party with secret attribute, PushTalk ring alert does not sound and the phone number is displayed on the screen.
- If Private call act. is set to "Silent receive" and Silent receive act. is set to "Start Ans. Machine", Answer machine starts even if it is not activated. However, if 4 messages are recorded in Answer machine, the setting in "Keep receiving" is used to receive calls.
- If setting Private call act. to "Silent receive" and setting Silent receive act. to "Start Ans. Machine", if Personal data lock is activated, Answer machine does not operate, and incoming operation is performed as "Keep receiving" setting.
- Even if setting Silent receive act. to "Fwd to Voice Mail", if Voice Mail is not subscribed, incoming operation is performed as "Start Ans. Machine" setting in Silent receive act. Note that, when 4 items are already recorded in Recorded messages, incoming operation is performed as "Keep receiving" setting.
- Unread messages, Missed calls or Recorded messages for parties with secret attribute do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout.
- Display of name, or images, movies/i-motion and vibrator saved in a phonebook entry with secret attribute operates for incoming calls according to the settings of Privacy call act.
- When the requester ID of Location request of GPS matches a phonebook entry with secret attribute, the requester's name does not appear. Also, the located position is not displayed in Loc. history.

- In Scheduler, birthdays or contacts of a phonebook entry with secret attribute set are not displayed.
- On Custom menu, parties in phonebook entries with secret attribute do not appear.
- If secret attribute is set to a phonebook entry or group from which you call, you cannot use Headset key control or a Bluetooth device to dial.

*1 When making/receiving a PushTalk group call, members with secret attribute do not appear.

*2 When receiving a PushTalk group call, received calls from members with secret attribute do not appear.

<Mail & Logs : "Authorized access">

- Unread messages do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout.
- Authentication is required when searching mail using phonebook or scheduler, searching mail by quick search, displaying mail logs, downloading, upgrading or deleting Message i-appli.

<Mail & Logs : "Hide secrecy fldrs">

- When a mail is sent or received to/from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute, it is not notified with arrival information or mail logs.
- Mail from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout or Unread messages.
- When a received mail compatible with Message i-appli is saved in a folder with secret attribute, even if a Message i-appli is downloaded, they are not automatically sorted to the folder for Message i-appli.

<My Picture or i-motion : "Authorized access">

- When using data in My picture or i-motion in settings for various functions, an authentication is required. A screen appears indicating that an item for some functions set for hiding is reflected after Privacy mode is canceled.

<My Picture : "Authorized access">

- Still images or movies with frames cannot be shot.
- Images except those in "Deco-mail picture" and "Deco-mail pict" saved by default do not appear in Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pict list currently used for mail creation.

<Schedule : Except "Show all">

- Even if a schedule is set on Calendar in Info/calendar layout, a red mark does not appear.

<Schedule : "Authorized access">

- Schedule area is not display for Info/calendar layout. On the Calendar set in Info/calendar layout, the display by the color indicating that the day off is set by Days off setting or Day off of week setting for the schedule is reset to default display.
- Schedule reminder (including Notify start of 1Seg) does not sound even when the specified time comes. Note that the recording reservation of 1Seg operates.
- When Alarm auto power ON is set to "ON" with the power turned OFF, the power is not turned ON even when the specified date and time come.

<Schedule : "Hide set schedule">

- Schedule reminder for a schedule with secret attribute does not sound even when the specified date and time arrive.
- Schedules with secret attribute do not appear in the schedule area for Info/calendar layout and it is not included in the number in No. of items.

<Notepad : "Authorized access">

- List of notes and Note in Info/Calendar layout are not displayed.

<i-appli : "Authorized access">

- Authentication is required to select a folder for Message i-appli or to download i-appli.
- When setting i-appli on the stand-by display with Stand-by display, an authentication is required. A message appears indicating that an item set for hiding is reflected after Privacy mode is canceled.

<Screen memo : "Authorized access">

- When overwriting a screen memo, an authentication is required.

✓ INFORMATION

- Browser history of i-mode and full browser do not display other browser histories than those in Privacy mode.
- If all items except Incoming: privacy mode and Auto start are "Show all", Privacy mode is not activated. If Privacy mode is already activated, it is canceled.
- Deleting all data or perform "Delete all items" with the functions below also deletes the data hidden in Privacy mode.
 - Redial/Dialed calls, Answer machine, phonebook
 - Mail*, Mail logs, Schedule, Voice memo
 - * Deleting operations other than "One item" or "Selected items" also delete hidden mail.

- When Call & Logs of Privacy mode setting is changed from "Show all" or "Authorized access" to "Hide set contact" in Privacy mode, a message appears indicating that Contact setting is to be made to reflect the privacy to mail.
- Depending on the settings of Privacy mode, when using mail or schedule (including 1Seg watching/recording reservation) from i-appli in Privacy mode or save data in My Picture, a message may appear indicating that the specified function cannot be performed.
- Once authentication is performed to use the function set to "Authorized access" in Privacy mode, no more authentication is required before returning to the stand-by display. The same situation occurs when using multiple functions set to "Authorized access".
<Example> When sending an image saved in My Picture by mail in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs and My Picture is "Authorized access"), authentication is not required to display phonebook on a mail creation screen because it is carried out when displaying My Picture.

◆ Canceling Privacy mode temporarily

On a list screen containing hidden data etc., you can temporarily cancel the privacy state to display hidden data.

- The temporary cancellation is active until the stand-by display reappears. You may not be able to perform temporary cancellation depending on the screen.

1 On the screen to be temporarily canceled, **[CLR]** (1 sec. or more) ▶ Authenticate

◆ Hiding mail whose senders/receivers with secret attribute set in phonebook <Contact setting>

When performing Contact setting after secret attribute of a phonebook entry is changed or mail received via data communications is saved to FOMA terminal, secret attribute can be set to sent or received mail and SMS in correspondence with phone numbers or mail addresses in phonebook with secret attribute.

- In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), mail or SMS with secret attribute does not appear.

1 **[M5]** **[Settings & NW services]**
[4] [2] [4] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- If Contact setting is not performed after changing a phonebook entry secret attribute or editing a phonebook entry, activating Privacy mode does not hide mail or SMS of the changed/edited phonebook entry.
- Mail and SMS to have secret attribute are as follows.
 - Sent/Unsent mail or SMS whose destination address (TO, CC, BCC) has secret attribute set in a phonebook entry
 - Received mail or SMS sent from phonebook entries with secret attribute set
- While setting secret attribute, the terminal is in data transfer mode (same as out of service area).
- When returning to stand-by display after receiving an external phonebook entry with secret attribute or setting secret attribute for phonebook entry, a confirmation screen appears asking if you want to reflect the secret attribute of phonebook entry to mail. Select "Yes" to apply secret attribute. When Privacy mode is not activated, message for confirming Activation of Privacy mode appears.
- When using 2in1, secret attribute is set regardless of 2in1 mode and Ph.book 2in1 setting.
- Performing Contact setting in the cases below causes cancellation of secret attribute for the related mail and/or SMS.
 - When secret attribute of a phonebook entry is canceled
 - When a phonebook entry with secret attribute is edited (for a phone number or mail address before editing)
 - When a phonebook entry with secret attribute is deleted (including deletion of a phone number or mail address of phonebook entry)

Receive display option

Setting display contents for receiving call/mail

You can set the displaying contents (name, phone number, etc.) on the display or sub-display when receiving a call or mail from a party saved in phonebook.

- For the displaying contents when receiving a call or mail in Privacy mode, the setting of Privacy mode precedes this setting.

1  [Settings & NW services]   ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Main display info (At call received) : Set the display of the screen when receiving a voice/videophone call or PushTalk call (including during communications).

- If setting to "Name+Phone No.", when receiving a voice call or videophone call, the name and phone number are displayed. When receiving a PushTalk call (including during communication), only the name is displayed.

Main display info (Ticker at mail rcvd) : Set the display of reception result ticker.

- If setting to "Name+Subject", when receiving a mail, the name and subject are displayed on the reception result ticker.
- If setting to "Incoming notice", only the message indicating the mail reception is displayed on the reception result ticker.
- If setting to "No ticker", reception result ticker is not displayed.

Sub-display info (At call received) : Set the display of sub-display when receiving a voice/videophone call or PushTalk call (including during communications).

- If setting to "Incoming notice", only the incoming notice is displayed.

Sub-display info (At mail received) : Set the display of sub-display when receiving a mail.

- If setting to "Incoming notice", only the message is received indicating that a mail is received.

✓INFORMATION

- Even if setting name to be displayed in All lock, Omakase Lock or Personal data lock, only the phone number is displayed on stand-by display or sub-display. Also, even if setting the reception result ticker to be displayed in All lock, Personal data lock, Lock on close or Auto keypad lock, the reception result ticker is not displayed.

Side key hold

Preventing inadvertent operation of side keys

This function disables ,  and  while FOMA terminal is folded, thus avoiding accidental operations of the terminal (e.g. when carrying in a bag).

1  (1 sec. or more)

KEY  appears on the stand-by display.

Canceling :  (1 sec. or more)

✓INFORMATION

- Even in Side key hold, you can activate sub-display/the Quick answer machine or stop ring alert/the vibrator during reception.

Locking keys

You can set Lock on close that locks keys when the terminal is folded, or Auto keypad lock that locks keys automatically when no operation is performed until the specified time elapses. Because authentication is required to unlock, you can prevent unauthorized use by others.

To make an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in Lock on close, enter the emergency phone number on the terminal security code entry screen, stand-by display or Lock on close ON screen and press .

* The emergency call number entered on the terminal security code entry screen is masked with "*".

■ For Verify fingerprint

On the fingerprint authentication screen, enter the emergency call number and press . When a stand-by display or the locked screen appears, press  or  to make an emergency call.

■ When Fingerprint access is "ON"

Press  on the fingerprint authentication screen, enter the emergency call number and press . When a stand-by display or the locked screen appears, press  or  to make an emergency call.

- Lock on close cannot be activated when FOMA terminal is as below.
 - While dialing ^{*1, 2}, receiving ^{*2}, calling ^{*1, 2}, holding a call ^{*1, 2}, disconnecting a call ^{*1, 2}
 - While recording movie (including pausing) ^{*3}, recording with Sound recorder (including pausing) ^{*3}
 - While receiving Area Mail (including while contents are displayed) ^{*2}
 - While playing melody ^{*2}, playing i-motion (including while playback screen is displayed)
 - While sending location by GPS ^{*2}
 - Infrared communication (including when displaying INBOX) ^{*2}, iC transmission (including when displaying INBOX) ^{*2}
 - Sounding tone of Schedule reminder, Alarm clock (including snooze), Countdown timer (including pause and countdown), receiving Fake call (including countdown), Fake call activated ^{*2}
 - Software update (including while updating software)
 - While ISeg watching, ISeg recording (only while watching), Notify start of ISeg, playing video from ISeg folder list or recorded by ISeg, displaying still image, displaying data list
 - Activating Music&Video Channel (except program downloading), MUSIC Player ^{*2}
 - Repeat playing movie saved in microSD card

- 64 K data communication with a PC ^{*2}, data transfer using Data link software ^{*2}, transfer phonebook with Bluetooth device ^{*2} in progress

- *1 Actions when Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch or Bluetooth devices are connected.
- *2 Auto keypad lock activates if FOMA terminal is open, or in flip style after the operation is completed. However, with FOMA terminal folded, Lock on close or Auto keypad lock with shorter activating time takes precedence.
- *3 Not locked only with Auto keypad lock. However, Auto keypad lock becomes active with FOMA terminal folded or is activated with another function.

• The functions below are available.

- Turning power ON/OFF
- Operation of receiving voice/videophone/PushTalk call, making an emergency call (110, 119, 118)
- Recording of recorded messages, voice memo or movie memo
- Automatic update of Data Center
- Switching displaying/hiding calendar layout
- Receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F ^{*1}, SMS ^{*1}
- Receiving Area Mail, activating Omakase Lock
- Receiving i-appli call ^{*2} or obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader
- Activating recording by ISeg recording reservation
- Headset quick dial by Headset key control
- Reactions to Location request of GPS
- Updating software, auto-updating pattern definitions.

*1 When receiving with FOMA terminal open, none of receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are not taken.

*2 Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken.

◆ Setting Lock on close "ON"

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Lock on close : Set whether to activate Lock on close.

Lock after phone close : Lock on close is activated when the specified time elapses after FOMA terminal is folded.

◆ Setting Auto keypad lock to "ON"

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Auto-keypad lock : Set whether Auto keypad lock is activated automatically

Time to lock : Auto keypad lock is activated when no operation is performed until the specified time after the last operation elapses.

- The last operation includes keypad operation, opening/folding, fingerprint sensor operation (pointing, registering fingerprint, authenticating fingerprint) and changing the style to flip.

Immobile sensor : When "ON" is set, Auto keypad lock is activated when no operation is performed until the specified time elapses or there is no operation of FOMA terminal.

- No operation of FOMA terminal means when you do not walk or do not give the terminal big shake instantaneously.

◆ When Lock is activated

When Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is activated, all keys except ,  and  are locked. Note that, even if  (1 sec. or more) is pressed, voice memo/movie memo list screen is not displayed.

- Lock on close is activated after set Lock after phone close time elapses every time FOMA terminal is folded.
- Auto keypad lock is activated and locks key operations automatically if no operation was performed for the time set in Time to lock after the last operation.
- When Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is activated on the stand-by display or on the first level of flip menu in flip style from the stand-by display.  appears. When Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is activated in other state, the locked screen appears.
- To cancel Lock on close, open FOMA terminal and perform authentication. If the locked screen appears, directly enter terminal security code or perform authentication by pressing  or .

- Unlocking in flip style→P41 "■Authentication"

✓INFORMATION

- When Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is "ON", Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is activated after the power is turned OFF and ON. Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is activated after Omakase Lock is canceled if active.
- If Lock on close is already activated, Auto keypad lock is not activated even if it is set. Also, if Auto keypad lock is already activated, Lock on close is not activated even if it is set.

◆ Indicating activation of Lock on close with a light <Security indicator>

You can set whether the state of Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is shown with a light.

1  [Settings & NW services]   ▶ Authenticate ▶  or 

◆ When Security indicator is set

If FOMA terminal is closed and Lock on close is activated, the light blinks in blue for approximately 2 seconds. When set to other than "Right after", if the set time elapses, the light blinks in blue for approximately 2 seconds to indicate that Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is activated. Note that, when the light blinks in red for approximately 2 seconds, it indicates that Lock on close/Auto keypad lock is not activated.

Accepting/Rejecting calls from specified phone numbers

Accepting/Rejecting incoming call can be set for each phone number saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, specifying Accept/Reject call for each phone number and Specified caller setting are required. The settings and the operations of Accept/Reject call are as listed below.

Setting		Accept/Reject call for each phone number		
		Accept call	Reject call	No setting
Specified caller	Cancel settings	Accepted	Accepted	Accepted
	Reject call	Accepted	Rejected*	Accepted
	Accept call	Accepted	Rejected*	Rejected*

* The call or PushTalk call from a specified phone number is disconnected without activating ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone.

- This function is activated only when the other party sends caller ID.
- Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls.
- If Ring time is set to "0 Sec." for Voice Mail or Call forwarding, Voice Mail or Call forwarding is activated and the call is not stored as a received call.
- Combination of Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous caller is recommended when used.

Specifying phone numbers to accept/reject calls <Accept/Reject call>

Accepting/Rejecting incoming call is set for phone numbers saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 **Search phonebook** **Move the cursor to a phonebook entry** **Authenticate** **Select a phone number** -

- To accept/reject calls from specified phone numbers, activate settings of Specified caller in succession to the above step.
- If a phone number with Accept/Reject call set is edited or deleted, this setting is canceled. Set Accept/Reject call again for the new number.

Enabling Accept/Reject call from specified numbers <Specified caller>

- This setting applies to all phone numbers with Accept/Reject call set.
- Reject call and Accept call are not enabled simultaneously.

1 **[Settings & NW services]**

Authenticate -

INFORMATION

- If a call without caller ID is received from a party you set Reject call, the FOMA terminals response is according to the setting in Anonymous caller regardless of this setting.
- When Accept call is selected with no phonebook entry set to Accept call, a message appears indicating to reject all incoming calls. Select "Yes" to reject all incoming calls.
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

Anonymous caller

Setting operations for incoming calls not to notify caller ID

For each reason for hiding caller ID, you can set a receiving operation for incoming calls notifying no caller ID.

- For the ring alert and incoming call image for an incoming voice call that does not notify the caller ID, this setting precedes the settings of Call alert (Incoming call).

1 **[Settings & NW services]** **Authenticate** - **Set required items**

(Incoming operation) : Set operations for incoming calls or PushTalk calls that do not notify caller ID.

- When "Disable settings" is specified, the ring tone sounds according to setting.
- When setting to "Ring alert off", ring alert does not sound. Set an image in "Show image".
- When setting to "Melody", select a melody and set an image in "Show image".
- When setting to "Movie ringtone", select a movie/i-motion.
- When setting to "Music", select a music data and set an image in "Show image".

Setting Music→P91

Show image : Set an image for incoming calls without caller ID.

- When "i-motion" is selected, select a movie/i-motion from the movie list.

List images : When "Select image" is selected in Show image, select List images field and set an image.

✓INFORMATION-----

- When "Call Rejection" is set, the rejected calls are recorded as missed call.
- When there is an incoming videophone/PushTalk call without caller ID notification, the operations are performed only when "Call Rejection" is set. For other settings, ring tone and incoming image depend on each ring tone or incoming call image setting.
- If movie/i-motion containing only sound is set in "Movie ringtone" for the incoming settings, "Standard image" is set, however, the image (except Flash graphics) can be changed by selecting "Select image" from Show image.
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

Ring alert delay

Setting not to answer calls from the party not saved in phonebook

- Effective to "One-ring phone scam".
- This option cannot be set when Unregistered caller is set to "ON".

1  **[Settings & NW services]** **1** **5** **▶ Set required items** 

Delayed ring alert : Set whether to enable Delayed ring alert.

Delay time (sec) : Set the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing. (1-99 seconds)

Missed call : Set whether to display a missed call that was terminated before the time set in Delay time in Received calls.

❖When Delayed ring alert is set

When an incoming voice, videophone or PushTalk call is received from a party not saved in phonebook or such call is received without caller ID notification, the reception is notified only with screen display for the specified period of time. After the set time has elapsed, normal ring alert action starts.

- Before the specified time elapses, ordinary call receiving operation such as answering an incoming call or replying it with Answer machine can be performed.
- In Personal data lock, this function operates even for an incoming call from a party saved in the phonebook.
- This option also starts when a call arrives from a party that secret attribute is set with Private call act. set to "Alert+Show No." in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact").

✓INFORMATION-----

- Regardless of this function, when the functions or services below are set, they precede.
 - Public mode, Answer machine
 - Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service
- When there is an incoming call or PushTalk call from a party to be rejected because of settings from Specified caller or Anonymous caller, rejective operation takes priority over the settings from this function.
- When Delay time has been set to the same seconds as that for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring alert may sound.

Unregistered caller

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not saved in phonebook

- Combination of Caller ID Request Service is recommended when used.
- This function cannot be set when Personal data lock is activated or when Delayed ring alert of Ring alert delay is "ON".

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Authenticate ▶ or

❖ When Unregistered caller is set

The voice/video/phone/PushTalk call from a caller who is not saved in phonebook is disconnected without activating ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone.

- Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls.
- This option also starts when a call arrives from a party that secret attribute is set with Private call act. set to "Alert+Show No." in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact").
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

Using Data Security Service

This service allows you to store phonebook, images, mail, ToruCa and schedule (hereinafter referred to as "saved data") saved in FOMA terminal to Data Center, and you can restore the saved data to FOMA terminal in case of misplacement, changing model, etc. You can also send broadcast notice to notify you changed your mail address. No packet communication fee is charged for the broadcast mail. With a PC (My docomo), more convenient uses are available.

- For details about Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Data Security Service is a charged service requiring subscription (i-mode subscription is required for the service).
- You need to subscribe to i-concier to store ToruCa and schedule (as of November, 2008).
- If you do not subscribe to this service, a message indicating so appears when you attempt to connect to Data Center.

◆ Storing (updating or restoring) phonebook in Data Center

■ Updating

1 [LifeKit]

Operating from FOMA terminal phonebook: ▶ Search the phonebook ▶

2 "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

- : Cancel save

3 Check the communication result

- The communication result disappears automatically in approximately 5 seconds.

■ Restoring

- You can restore phonebook, set auto-update, etc. from Data Security Service site of i-mode.

iMenu→English→My Menu→電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service)*

* When you subscribed to i-concier, "お預かり / i コンシェル (Data Security Service/i-concier)" is displayed.

✓ INFORMATION

- Entries saved in UIM phonebook cannot be saved in Data Center.
- If automatic update is performed after deleting entries of FOMA terminal phonebook, the entries of phonebook saved in Data Center are also deleted.
- If you deleted entries from FOMA terminal phonebook, you can download phonebook entries from Data Security Service site of i-mode.

iMenu→English→My Menu→電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service)*1→お預かりセンター (Data Center)*2→Enter i-mode password→電話帳・ケータイへダウンロード (Download to phonebook/mobile phone)→OK→Return to stand-by display

*1 When you subscribed to i-concier, "お預かり / i コンシェル (Data Security Service/i-concier)" is displayed.

*2 When you subscribed to i-concier, "お預かりデータ確認 (Check stored data)" is displayed.

- When any other functions are running at the specified time of phonebook automatic update, automatic update is executed after returning to stand-by display. Automatic update is not executed when FOMA terminal is turned OFF or out of FOMA service area or if UIM is not installed.
- When the automatic update of phonebook fails, no icon etc. appears on stand-by display. You can check update result using Synchronization log.
- The order by which phonebook groups are saved may not be returned to their original order by restoration.

◆ Setting to send saved image in phonebook <Sync setting>

1 [LifeKit] [6] [3] ▶ Select Contact image sending field ▶ 1
or [2] ▶

◆ Storing (updating or restoring) data in Data Center

You can save images, mail, ToruCa and schedule saved in FOMA terminal to Data Center.

- Up to 10 images or mails can be stored in one operation.
- i-mode mail attachments are deleted when the mail is saved. Note that, images or melodies in message text or Flash graphics in Decome-Anime message text (except files prohibited to attach to mail or output from FOMA terminal) are not deleted.
- SMS report request cannot be stored.
- ToruCa (Details) containing images may be saved without details.

1 Select data to save

Saving mail : ▶ 1 or [4] - [5] ▶ Select a folder ▶ [4] [5]
▶ Select a mail ▶

- To save unsent mail, select a folder and press [4] [3], then select mail to save.

Saving an image : [Data Box] [1] ▶ Select a folder ▶ [5] [6]
▶ Select an image ▶

Updating ToruCa : [Osaifu-Keitai] [3] ▶ [X]

Updating Scheduler : [0] [2]

2 "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

- : Cancel save

3 Check the communication result

- The communication result disappears automatically in approximately 5 seconds.

✓ INFORMATION -----

- Saved data can be updated/restored to FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center.
- An image whose size exceeds 100 Kbytes cannot be saved or restored.
- Images in "Item" folder or "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture cannot be selected.
- For details about restoration, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Restored mail is protected except for the cases below.

- When received mail or SMS saved in Data Center is unread
- When the number of protected saved mail has reached the maximum
- When ToruCa is automatically updated from Data Center and viewed for the first time, a confirmation screen for saving ToruCa appears. Select "Yes" to save it, but the viewed ToruCa is deleted when "No" is selected.

◆ Storing (updating or restoring) data in Data Center from i-concier

- You can save phonebook entries, ToruCa and schedule saved in FOMA terminal from i-concier menu to Data Center. Saved phonebook entries, ToruCa and schedule can be updated/restored to FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center.
- i-concier is a charged service requiring subscription. For details about notes and use, refer to "Mobile Phone Users Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

1 [i-concier]

2 ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Update storage data" ▶ Select data ▶

3 "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

- : Cancel saving

4 Check the communication result

- The communication result disappears in approximately 5 seconds.

◆ Checking used log <Synchronization log>

- Logs saved in Data Center can be checked.
- Up to 30 synchronization logs can be recorded. When the maximum is exceeded, older logs are overwritten first.

1 [LifeKit] [6] [2] ▶ Select logs

Reset

Resetting various functions

You can restore functions in **red characters** on the menu list to default settings. → P388

- 1  [Settings & NW services]
   ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Select an item to reset** ▶  ▶ **"Yes"**

✓INFORMATION

- When i-mode preferences is reset, i-Channel ticker does not appear on stand-by display. Displaying i-Channel list by pressing  on stand-by display starts receiving the latest information and displaying a ticker on stand-by display.
- Resetting Pedometer resets the number of Steps walked and Distance walked for the day.

Delete all data

Deleting saved data all at once

Delete the saved or registered data, and restore the settings of each function to default.

- The protected data is also deleted.
- All settings or data are deleted regardless of the 2in1 mode.
- The data below are not deleted. Also, default settings are not restored.
 - Data stored by default
 - Data saved, registered or set in FOMA terminal and the microSD card
 - Osafu-Keitai compatible i-αpli that data is saved
 - Data communication settings set from a PC
 - Network search mode
 - 3G/GSM setting
- i-αpli saved by default are as shown below.
 - "iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application)" is not restored to default settings or deleted.
 - "DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit service application)" is deleted when no data is saved.
 - i-αpli other than "iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application)" and "DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit service application)" can be restored to the default, however, upgraded i-αpli is deleted.
- When data is saved in IC card, IC owner is not reset.

- If mails of "オススメ◇◇BEST (Recommendation)", "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Early warning "Area Mail" information)", "Welcome◇◇デコメアニメ (Decome-Anime)  ", saved in "Inbox" folder are deleted, they are saved again.

- 1  [Settings & NW services]
   ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

Delete all data is performed while restarting.

✓INFORMATION

- When restarting after this function is performed, the same screen as that for the first activation of the terminal appears (拡大メニューの設定 (enlarged menu setting) appears only when the confirmation screen is closed without any settings). → P54
- When deleting a large size of data, restarting may take approximately 1 minute. Be careful not to turn the power OFF before deletion completes.
- Execution of this function disables automatic reception of Music&Video Channel programs. To enable automatic reception of programs again, perform Set program of Music&Video Channel.

Initializing remotely

Resetting data by remote control

With subscription to use this function, this service allows an administrator to request to initialize data (memory in phone/SD card/UIM) in the target FOMA terminal.

■ Inquiries

DOCOMO business website
docomo Business Online

- From a PC
<http://www.docomo.biz>
- * May be unavailable for system maintenance.

◆ When data is reset by remote control

When remote initialization is activated, a message indicating remote setting starts appears. During setting or remote initialization, a message indicating operations are unavailable appears.

- All keypad operations are unavailable during initializing remotely.
- One of the initialization below is performed.
 - Initializing data in FOMA terminal (deleting all data at once)
 - Initializing data in UIM (for UIM phonebook and SMS settings)
 - Quick format for data in microSD card

✓INFORMATION

- Even in Omakase Lock, the remote initialization precedes.
- This setting is retained even when resetting by remote control is completed.
 - All lock
 - Omakase Lock

Remote customization

Restricting each function by remote control

With subscription to use this function, this service allows an administrator to request to restrict remotely or set ON/OFF to functions (camera function, lock setting, etc.) in the target FOMA terminal.

■ Inquiries

DOCOMO business website
docomo Business Online

- From a PC
<http://www.docomo.biz>
- * May be unavailable for system maintenance.

◆ When data is customized by remote control

When remote customization is activated, a message indicating remote setting starts appears. During setting, a message indicating operations are unavailable appears, and a completion message appears when the remote customization is complete.  appears at the bottom of the display.

- If a function restricted or set to "ON" is accessed, the message below appears on stand-by display.
 - "This function is restricted by remote setting. Unable to use."
- The functions below may be restricted. The functions cannot be used while restricted.
 - Music/Movie player (including i-motion, MUSIC Player, Music&Video Channel, playing movie file or preview operation on Full Browser screen, downloading/playing music data)
 - 1Seg (including 1Seg watching, 1Seg recording, playing video recorded by 1Seg, displaying a still image, Notify start of 1Seg)
 - i-appli, i-appli auto start (setting to "Auto start")
 - Browser (including activation of i-mode or Full Browser, display of screen memo and PDF data)
 - Mail (including view of Outbox/Inbox/Unsent of i-mode mail, SMS and MessageR/F, creation of a new mail, mail logs, Mail settings)
 - Phonebook (including UIM phonebook, PushTalk phonebook)
 - Camera (including Still camera/Movie camera, Sound recorder)
 - Data exchange (including infrared remote control, infrared communication/iC transmission, Bluetooth communication, data communication using USB connection)
 - Data Box (including view of Data Box, usage of images)
 - microSD use (including moving/copying to microSD card, backing up data)
 - Moving/Copying data between the terminal and UIM
- The following functions may be set to "ON" regardless of the settings. The settings cannot be changed.
 - Lock on close/Auto keypad lock
 - IC card lock
 - Keypad dial lock
 - Unregistered caller
 - Fingerprint setting
 - Fingerprint access
 - Silent mode (setting to General silent mode)
 - GPS Request permit/deny

◆ Checking data customized remotely <Check remote settings>

1 [ME] [Settings & NW services] 7 5 2

Each function that is restricted or set to "ON" is listed.

- For the items customized remotely by an administrator, you cannot change the setting or initialize (initializing remotely) them from FOMA terminal.

✓INFORMATION

- Restricted function cannot be newly set to Shortcut icon.
- Even lock functions already set to "ON" may be changed to "OFF" by remote customization. When the remote customization is canceled, the previous setting is restored.
- When remote customization is activated while running other functions, those functions are terminated (data being edited, if any, may not be saved before the termination).
- Even in Omakase Lock, remote customization precedes.
- Remote customization is unavailable if FOMA terminal is misplaced with its power OFF, out of service area, or in Self mode.
- You can turn the power ON/OFF, however, remote customization is not canceled even if you turn the power OFF, perform Reset or Delete all data.
- While mail function is restricted, mail can be received automatically, but no receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are taken.
- When phonebook is restricted, it operates as below.
 - When making/receiving a call to/from the party saved in phonebook, neither name nor image saved is displayed and only the phone number is displayed. When making/receiving PushTalk, only the phone number is displayed.
 - Voice calls or videophone calls are received, display the caller's phone number instead of the name or image saved in the phonebook. The incoming image, ring alert and other settings are reset to default settings, and the default image is displayed as videophone substitute image. The settings you made are restored when canceled.
 - Even when the requester ID of GPS Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed.
- If i-appli is restricted, even when i-appli call is received, it is discarded and not displayed in i-appli call log.
- Even when Data Box is restricted, data subject to restriction can be downloaded and saved. When the memory space is not enough, delete data and save. Note that preview operation is unavailable on the saving screen.

Other security settings

In addition to those introduced in this chapter, you can use the functions below and services related to Security settings.

Function/Service	Page
IC card lock	P266
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P364
Caller ID Request Service	P364
FirstPass	P171 P184
Software update	P429
Scanning function	P433
Receive option	P157
"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version"
Change Mail Address	
Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL)	
Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
Spam Mail Prevention (かんたん設定 (Simple mail setting))	
Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders)	
Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
Other Settings (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail)	
Limit Mail Size	
Confirm Settings	
Suspend Mail	
ケータイお探しサービス (Keitai-Osagashi Service)	

i-mode mail	134

Creating i-mode mail/Deco-mail

Composing and sending i-mode mail	Compose message	134
Creating and sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail	135
Creating and sending Decome-Anime	Decome-Anime	137
Using mail templates		138
Attaching a file	Attachment (sending)	140
Saving i-mode mail then, sending later	Save i-mode mail	142
Composing i-mode mail quickly	Quick mail	142

Receiving and handling i-mode mail

When you receive i-mode mail	Mail auto receive	143
Receiving mail selectively	Receive option	144
Checking new i-mode mail	Check new message	144
Replying to i-mode mail	Replying to i-mode mail	144
Forwarding i-mode mail to other address	Forwarding i-mode mail to other address	145
Downloading Receive option attachment file		145
Operating attachments		146

Operating Inbox/Outbox

Displaying mail in inbox/outbox/unsent mailbox	148

Useful functions of Mail

Using mail logs	Mail logs	153
Useful functions of Mail		154

Setting Mail

Setting mail function of FOMA terminal	Mail settings	155

Using Message Service

When MessageR/F is received	Receive MessageR/F	160
Displaying MessageR/F stored in the FOMA terminal	MessageR / MessageF	161

Using early warning "Area Mail"

Early warning "Area Mail"		162
When receiving early warning "Area Mail"	Receive Area Mail	163
Setting early warning "Area Mail"	Area Mail	163

Using SMS

Composing and sending SMS	Composing and sending SMS	164
When SMS is received	Receive SMS	165
Checking for SMS	Check new SMS	165
Setting SMS	SMS settings	166
Saving SMS at UIM (FOMA card)	SMS saved to UIM	166

i-mode mail

Only by subscribing to i-mode, i-mode mails can be exchanged not only with i-mode terminals but also via Internet.

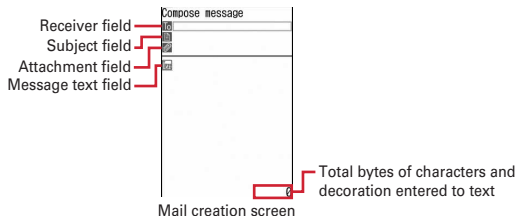
In addition to message text, you can attach up to 10 files (images, movie files, etc.) of up to 2 Mbytes in total to a mail. Moreover, you can change a font color, size and background color of message text with Deco-mail, and you can also send expressive mails easily with Deco-mail pictogram.

- For details of i-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Compose message

Composing and sending i-mode mail

1 (1 sec. or more)



2 Select the receiver field

3 Select entry method ▶ Enter the address

Entering mail address from mail logs : Select "Sent msg log" or "Received msg log" ▶ Select mail logs to send mail

Entering by searching phonebook : "View phonebook" ▶ Search phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry to send mail

Entering mail address from mail group : "Mail group" ▶ Select a mail group

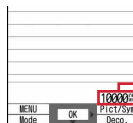
Entering directly : "Direct input" ▶ Enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- To send mail to another i-mode terminal, "@docomo.ne.jp" can be omitted.

4 Select the subject field ▶ Enter the subject (up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters)

- The whole title may not be received depending on the receiving terminal.

5 Select the message text field ▶ Enter the message text (up to 5,000 two-byte (10,000 one-byte) characters)



The remaining number of bytes that can be entered in the text

Pasting URL of location information : Select the message text field ▶   

The next procedure → P275 "Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

- When location information is pasted,  and location information URL are entered to the text. Entered URL and icons are counted as text characters.
- Location information is available only when the receiving device is an i-mode terminal.

Inserting signature : Select the message text field ▶   

6

- To stop transmission, press  on the connecting screen or press  on the sending screen. Note that i-mode mail may be sent depending on the operation timing. Even if the i-mode mail is sent, it is saved in "Unsent" folder.
- When you are out of service area, a message indicating out of service area appears. If you press the key other than , when the number of Auto-send mails is fewer than 5, the setting confirmation screen for Auto-send appears. When "Yes" is selected, i-mode mail with Auto-send set is saved in "Unsent" folder.

✓ INFORMATION

- When transmission is complete correctly, the i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Outbox. When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unprotected sent mails are overwritten chronologically.
- When Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) is used, the mail is sent as Deco-mail.
- Some pictograms may not be displayed correctly depending on the other party's i-mode terminal model.
- When i-mode mail containing pictograms is sent to other company's mobile phones, the pictograms are automatically converted to similar pictograms on the receivers terminal. Note that the pictograms may not be displayed correctly on the receiver's terminal depending on the models and/or functions of the receiver's terminals and they may be converted to characters or ■ if there are no applicable pictograms.
- Under some radio wave conditions, characters are not displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Even when i-mode mail is sent correctly, an error message "Transmission failed." may appear depending on the signal quality.
- i-mode mail that failed to be sent is saved in "Unsent" folder.
- Error messages for address unknown etc. may not be received when mails are sent to addresses other than DOCOMO.
- When the memory space of Outbox/Unsent messages is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, i-mode mail cannot be created or sent. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from the folder of Unsent messages.
- To send an i-mode mail using address B of 2in1 as the sender, use WEB Mail. →P144
- When a mail exceeding 10,000 bytes in process of creation is automatically saved due to other functions being started etc., some part of it may not be saved.

◆ Adding address

i-mode mail can be sent to up to 5 addresses at the same time (Simultaneous sending).

- There are 3 address types of receivers as below.

To : Main receiver

Cc : Other receiver(s) than the main receiver to inform the contents of the mail

Bcc : The receiver(s) to inform the contents of the mail without making the mail address displayed on other receivers' terminals

- When no receiver addresses are entered in **To**, the mail cannot be sent.
- The mail addresses entered in address fields of **To** and **Cc** are displayed on the receiving side. However, they may not be displayed depending on receivers' terminals, devices, mail software, etc.

1 On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the receiver field ▶ [ME] ▶ Select an entry method

- When selecting "Mail group", go to Step 3.

Changing address type : On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the address ▶ [ME] [9] ▶ Select the address type

Deleting an added address : Move the cursor to the address on the mail creation screen ▶ [ME] [8] ▶ "Yes"

2 Select Address type

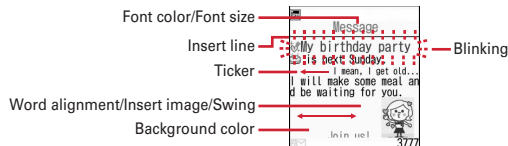
3 Enter the address

Deco-mail

Creating and sending Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by changing the text font size or background color, inserting a still image shot, Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pictogram stored by default in i-mode mail text.

■ Decoration example

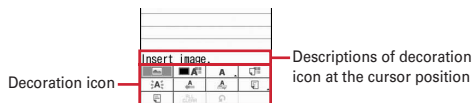


- Deco-mail can be created in two ways : one is entering characters after selecting a decoration type (→P136) and the other is selecting a decoration type after entering characters (→P137).
- Deco-mail of 100 Kbytes or less in size can be sent. Images up to 20 types or up to 90 Kbytes in total can be attached to the text out of 100 Kbytes. Note that Flash graphics are up to 2 items.
- Deco-mail received on an incompatible terminal becomes mail containing a URL for viewing or mail with only message text depending on the receiver's terminal.

◆ Entering characters after specifying decoration

1 Select the message text field on the mail creation screen

2  ▶ Select a decoration icon ▶ Decorate



Operating procedure of decoration → P136 "Operating procedures of decoration icons"

- When a decoration icon such as a blink, ticker, swing icon is selected, select it again to cancel the selection.
- When setting multiple decorations, select the decoration icons successively. Ticker, Swing and Word alignment cannot be set at the same time.

Canceling the decoration at the cursor position and entering characters : Move the cursor to the character entry position ▶   ▶ Enter characters

- Decorations that can be canceled are Font color, Font size, Blink, Ticker, Swing and Word alignment.

Changing a decoration :   ▶ Select the start position

The next procedure → P137 Step 2 and the following steps in "Specifying decoration after entering characters"

3   ▶ Check the decoration

You can check the decoration set to the text and the accurate bytes of the remaining data amount you can enter on the lower-right screen.

- When Flash graphics with sound effect is attached to the text, the sound effect is played. When a melody is attached, only the melody is played.

4  ▶  ▶ Edit a mail ▶ 

◆ Operating procedures of decoration icons

Function	Operating procedure/supplement
 Insert image	① Select the insertion source • "microSD" can be selected only when microSD card is installed. • If you select "Use still camera", a still image smaller than Stand-by (480×864) in size can be shot and inserted. • By pressing  instead of , you can display Deco-mail picture list. • Deco-mail pictogram can be inserted also in the procedure for entering pictogram. → P353 ② Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ 
 Font color	Select a Font color ▶ Enter characters • Select from 20 default colors or 64 colors of "Other color". • The pictogram font colors can also be changed (except for Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D)). • Can be restored to the original color by specifying the range. → P137
 Font size	Select a Font size ▶ Enter characters • Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) cannot be changed.
 Background color	Select Background color ▶  • Select from 20 default colors or 64 colors of "Other color".
 Blink	Enter characters • Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) cannot be set.
 Ticker	Enter characters • Enter characters between  and .
 Swing	Enter characters • Enter characters between  and .
 Word alignment	Selecting word alignment ▶ Enter characters • If characters are already entered at the cursor position, a line feed occurs.
 Insert line	 Lines (ruled lines) are inserted in the color specified with  (Font color).
 Reset all	 All decorations are canceled.
 Undo	 Last set decoration or character entry is canceled.

◆ Specifying decoration after entering characters

1 Select the message text field on the mail creation screen ▶ Move the cursor to the start point of decoration ▶ (1 sec. or more)

2 Select the end point

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence : ▶

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence : ▶

Selecting the whole sentence :

3 Select the decoration

Changing font color : ▶ Select a font color

- The color of separating line (ruled line) is also changed.
- To change the color back to the default, select "Default".

Changing font size : ▶ -

Setting/Canceling blinking of characters : ▶ or

Setting/Canceling Show ticker of characters or images : ▶ or

Setting/Canceling Swing display of characters or images : ▶ or

Changing the display position of characters or images : ▶ -

Canceling all decorations in a selected range :

Copying :

Cutting :

Returning to the previous state :

- Last set decoration or character entry is canceled.

Decorating characters continuously : ▶ Repeat Step 3

Operating procedure of Insert line, Insert image and Background color and checking/canceling method of decoration → P136 "Entering characters after specifying decoration"

4 ▶ ▶ Edit a mail ▶

✓ INFORMATION

- Even when the decorated characters are deleted, only decoration data remains and the number of characters permitted may be fewer. Cancel decoration first and then delete them. To delete characters including decoration data after the cursor position, press for 1 second or more.
- On the mail creation screen or the preview screen, the operation such as blink, ticker, swing and animation is automatically stopped after a certain period.

- When mails are exchanged with other than FOMA terminal supporting Deco-mail such as a PC, the decoration may not be correctly displayed.

Decome-Anime

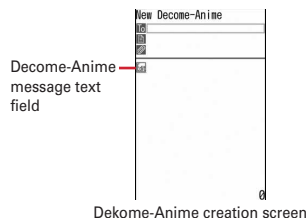
Creating and sending Decome-Anime

Decome-Anime is an expressive mail service using Decome-Anime template, and using Flash graphics with messages or images inserted.

Default mail templates or those purchased from IP (Information Provider) can be used.

- Decome-Anime text of 90 Kbytes or less can be sent.
- Decome-Anime received on an incompatible terminal becomes mail containing a URL for viewing or mail with only message text depending on the receiver's terminal.

1



2 Select Decome-Anime message text field

- Icon definitions are as below.
 / : File restricted/unrestricted
Icon definitions except the above → P138 Step 1 in "Reading Deco-mail template for creating a mail"
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and list display switch.
- Go to Step 4 if you already set Decome-Anime template.

3 Select Decome-Anime template

The list of components of text or image that can be edited are displayed.

- Icon definitions are as shown below.

-  : Text component  : Image component
-  : Display preview

For Decome-Anime with sound effect, the sound effect is played. When a melody is attached, only the melody is played.

4 Select text component ▶ Enter characters

- The number of characters, number of lines, or position that can be entered differ by Decome-Anime template.
- Entering of Deco-mail pict (Pictogram D), decorating such as changing of the font size or color and inserting of signature are unavailable.

Editing image component :

- The position that an image can be inserted differs by Decome-Anime template.
- Even an image smaller than a size of number of characters (bytes) that can be entered may not be inserted.
- When inserting an image, the number of characters (bytes) that can be entered becomes smaller than the inserted image.

① Select an image component ▶ Select the insertion source

- "microSD" can be selected only when microSD card is installed.
- If you select "Use still camera", a still image smaller than Stand-by (480×864) in size can be shot and inserted.

② Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Reading other Decome-Anime template :   ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select a mail template

Deleting an image :   ▶ "Yes"

Restoring to default :   ▶ "Yes"

5 ▶ Edit the mail ▶

✓INFORMATION

- When inserting an image or text, some extra bytes are added because the size is calculated after the composition. Therefore, Decome-Anime may not be previewed or be sent due to being oversized.
- File sizes displayed on the thumbnailed Decome-Anime template list screen include data used for thumbnail display or preview display in addition to template file sizes.
- The message text of Decome-Anime that failed to be sent and is saved in "Unsent" folder cannot be re-edited.

Using mail templates

A mail template is a predefined form of i-mode mail. Deco-mail/Decome-Anime can be created easily by modifying this form.

In addition to the mail templates stored by default, mail templates created by yourself or downloaded from sites are available.

- Checking memory space→P311

◆ Reading Deco-mail template for creating mail

1 On the mail creation screen, ▶ or

- If the text already exceeds 10,000 bytes, "Load & Insert" cannot be selected.
- When selecting "Load & Overwrite", a confirmation screen for discarding entered contents to load appears.
- Icon definitions are as shown below.
 -  : Mail template unavailable due to UIM operation restriction
 -  : Mail template that an incorrect image is used
 -  : Find Deco-mail template from i-mode site→P139
- Icon definitions except the above→P149 "Mail list screen"
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and list display switch.

2 Select a mail template

- When selecting "Load & Insert" in Step 1, if there are characters already entered in the text, select the insert position and select "Yes".

3 Edit the mail ▶

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from submenu of message text entry screen :  

◆ Viewing mail template for creating mail

<Example> Creating Deco-mail

1 1 ▶ Select a mail template

Creating Decome-Anime : 2 ▶ Select a mail template

2 ▶ Edit the mail ▶

Changing detail information of Deco-mail template : 7 2

The next procedure→P139 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating and saving mail templates"

Changing detail information of Decome-Anime template :

4 2 ▶ Enter the display name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶

✓INFORMATION-----

- File sizes displayed on the thumbnailed Decome-Anime template list screen include data used for thumbnail display or preview display in addition to template file sizes.

◆ Creating and saving mail template

You can save created or sent/received i-mode mail as a Deco-mail template.

- Saving as a Deco-mail template is unavailable in the cases below.
 - When total size of text and decoration data exceeds 10,000 bytes
 - When the total size of text, decoration and attached file exceeds 100 Kbytes
- Sent/Received i-mode mail without text cannot be saved. Address and title are not saved.
- You cannot use this function for Decome-Anime.

1 On the mail creation screen, 6 3 ▶ "Yes"

Saving sent/received i-mode mail : On the mail details screen, 4 5

2 Set required items

Display name : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

File name : Up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, ".", "-", "_" can be entered. "." cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

3

It is saved to "Decome" of Template.

✓INFORMATION-----

- If attempting to save a Deco-mail template containing an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image may be deleted.

◆ Downloading Deco-mail template

- The savable size of Deco-mail template is 200 Kbytes per item.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a mail template

- Pressing while downloading : Stopping download

2 "Save"

The next procedure→P139 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating and saving mail templates"

- When 2in1 is not in B mode, a confirmation screen for creating a new mail appears after saving.
- When an unavailable file is attached, a confirmation screen for deleting the attachment file before saving appears.

Displaying : "Preview"

Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

◆ Downloading Decome-Anime template

- The maximum savable size of each Decome-Anime template is 100 Kbytes.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a Decome-Anime template

- Pressing  while downloading : Stop downloading

2 "Save"

Displaying : "Preview"

Displaying detail information : "File property"

Detail information → P310

Canceling saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

3 Enter the display name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶

It is saved to "Decome-Anime" of Template.

- When 2in1 is not in B mode, a confirmation screen for creating a new mail appears after saving.

◆ Deleting mail template

<Example> Deleting a Deco-mail template

1 1

Deleting Decome-Anime template :   2

2 Move the cursor to mail template ▶ 2 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a mail template.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

✓ INFORMATION

- When a mail template stored by default is deleted (except attached melody), it can be downloaded from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site. → P311

Attachment (sending)

Attaching a file

You can send i-mode mail with files attached.

- Up to 10 files of up to 2 Mbytes in total can be attached.
- Files prohibited to be attached to mail and outputting from FOMA terminal (except files with "File restricted" set for File restriction with your terminal or PDF data not downloaded from i-mode) or files unavailable due to UIM operation restriction cannot be attached.
- File types that can be attached are as shown below.

File type	Condition of attachment
Image* ¹	• Only JPEG/GIF format images, GIF animation and Flash graphics can be attached (except created animation)
Movie/i-motion/ Sound* ²	• Only MP4 format movie/i-motion can be attached (except ASF format or partially downloaded movie/i-motion) • Movies/i-motion with replay restriction set cannot be attached* ³
Melody	• Only melodies in SMF or MFi format can be attached
ToruCa* ⁴	• ToruCa in the "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be attached • Attachment is unavailable depending on settings of IP (Information Provider)
PDF data	• PDF data partially downloaded/failed in downloading cannot be attached
Phonebook	—
Schedule	—
Bookmark	—
Other	• Word, Excel or PowerPoint file can be attached

*1 When sending a JPEG image larger than 10,000 bytes to a 2M incompatible i-mode terminal, it is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that the receiving terminal supports. To an i-mode terminal with mova service, only one JPEG image can be sent. Note that i-mode mail with URL for image viewing is received by the terminal of the receiver's side.

*2 Movie/i-motion with images may be converted to continuous still images and played depending on receiver's terminals or devices.

When sending to 2M incompatible i-mode terminal, a movie recorded in Compatible mode is recommended. → P207

When the receiver's terminal is 2M incompatible i-mode terminal, movies/i-motion are saved in i-motion mail Center and the terminal receives i-mode mail containing URL for i-motion viewing.

Sound recorded with the Sound recorder or Record voice is attached as movie/i-motion containing only sound. i-mode terminals with mova service cannot receive movies/i-motion containing only sound.

*3 Files may not be attached to the mail even when replay restriction is not set.

*4 ToruCa (Details) may not be received even if the receiver's device is compatible with ToruCa.

1 On the mail creation screen, select the attachment field ▶ Select a file to attach

The selected file is displayed in the attachment field of the mail creation screen.

- If microSD card is installed, a screen appears asking to select an attachment source from "Phone memory" or "microSD".

Selecting an image ("1 Image")

- For JPEG image larger than QVGA (240×320, 320×240), a converting confirmation screen to QVGA size appears.
- For an image with location information, a confirmation screen for pasting location URL to the message text appears. Select "No" to attach only the image.
- For a JPEG format image exceeding 2 Mbytes in size, it is converted to a size available for mail attachment.
- When "Activate camera" is selected as an attachment source, you can shoot and attach a still image.→P200

Selecting a movie/i-motion ("2 i-motion")

- When "Activate camera" is selected as an attachment source, you can shoot and attach a movie.→P203

Selecting "3 Melody"

- Melodies are saved in "Mail attach melody" folder by default.→P401

Selecting "4 ToruCa"

- When ToruCa (Details) can be attached, a confirmation screen for attaching ToruCa with the detail information to mail appears.
- When ToruCa (Details) cannot be attached, a confirmation screen appears asking if you attach ToruCa to mail without the detail information.

Selecting "6 Schedule"

- When a schedule in i-schedule is selected, it is attached as an ordinary schedule.

Selecting bookmark ("7 Bookmark")

- When "Phone memory" is selected as an attachment source, each time  is pressed on a bookmark list, the bookmark list switches i-mode and Full Browser.

Selecting ("9 Record voice")

- Sound data can be recorded and attached to mails.
Method of recording sound→P203 Step 2 and the following steps in "Recording movies with Camera"

2 Edit the mail ▶

✓INFORMATION-----

- Attachments not supported by the receivers' terminals may be deleted or may not be displayed/played correctly.
- Sending an attachment file of a certain size may take time.

◆ Changing/Removing attachments

<Example> Canceling

1 On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the attachment field

2 ▶ "Yes"

Changing :  ▶ Retry attaching files→P140

Saving i-mode mail then, sending later

◆ Saving i-mode mail

1 on the mail creation screen

i-mode mail is saved in "Unsent" folder, and a confirmation screen for pasting Shortcut icons appears.

- When saving Decome-Anime, a confirmation screen for saving appears. Note that, if saved, the message text cannot be edited.

◆ Automatically sending mail from a place where radio waves reach <Auto-send>

You can set so that i-mode mail created out of service area is automatically sent when moving to a place where radio waves reach.

- Up to 5 mails can be registered.

1 On the mail creation screen,

Mail is saved in "Unsent" folder and  appears at the top of the display.

◆ When moving to a place where radio waves reach

Automatically sent. During automatic sending,  blinks. When transmission is complete correctly, the i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Outbox and  disappears.

- When transmission is interrupted or fails,  changes to  and blinks, and the i-mode mail remains in "Unsent" folder.

Move the cursor to i-mode mail failed in automatic sending in Unsent messages and press    to display the reason for unsending.

-  disappears after all mail that failed to Auto-send are edited, canceled or deleted.

✓INFORMATION

- When failed to be sent because of out of service area, it is resent up to 2 times.
- A mail is not automatically sent while using mail functions such as creating a mail or editing signature or while using Full Browser.

◆ Canceling Auto-send setting

1 ▶ Select folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-mode mail ▶ ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- Auto-send setting is canceled also in the cases below.
 - When the mail creation screen appears by selecting unsent Auto-send mail
 - When an unsent Auto-send mail is moved to a folder for Message i-appli
 - When UIM is replaced
 - When Host number or Host address is changed in Host selection
 - When 2in1 is set to B mode

◆ Editing sent/unsent mail

1 ▶ or ▶ Select a folder

- For SMS,  appears.

2 Select a mail

Re-editing the sent mail : Move the cursor to mail ▶ 

3 Edit the mail ▶

Quick mail

Composing i-mode mail quickly

i-mode mail and SMS can be sent by simple operation to the parties with phonebook number 0-99 in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in a phonebook, the destination is the first mail address for i-mode mail and the first phone number for SMS.

<Example> Sending an i-mode mail in phonebook number 23

1 Phonebook number () ▶

i-mode mail creation screen appears with the mail address saved in the phonebook entry of the entered phonebook number as the destination.

Creating SMS : Phonebook number ▶  (1 sec. or more)

SMS creation screen appears with the phone number saved in the phonebook entry of the entered phonebook number as the destination.

When you receive i-mode mail

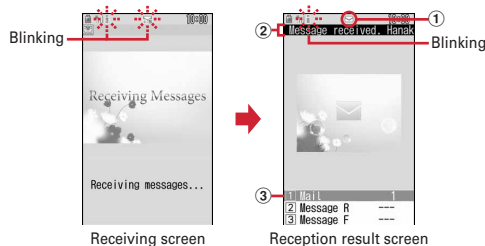
1 Receive an i-mode mail

and blink and "Receiving messages..." appears. Mail ring alert sounds, the light turns on or blinks, and the reception result screen appears.

The received i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Inbox.

- : Cancel receiving

The mail may be received depending on the radio wave conditions.



① Icon

: Unread i-mode mail exists : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist

② Reception result ticker

③ Number of received i-mode mails

- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen appears, the screen automatically reappears.

When reception has failed

"X" appears on the right side of "Mail" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform i-mode inquiry.

✓ INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- Up to 100 Kbytes of i-mode mail including its attachments can be received automatically. Attachments larger than 100 Kbytes can be downloaded manually from i-mode Center.→P145
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unread or unprotected received mails are overwritten chronologically. A large number of existing mails may be deleted depending on the size of the received mail.
- In the cases below, received i-mode mail is stored in the i-mode Center.
 - When the power is OFF or out of i-mode service area
 - During a videophone call or a PushTalk session
 - Accessing Data Center
 - In Omakase Lock or Self mode
 - During FirstPass center connection
 - When reception has failed
 - When receiving SMS
 - When Receive option setting is "ON"
 - During infrared communication/iC transmission
 - When storage area is filled with mail unread or protected
- If there is not enough memory space available because memory is filled with unread and protected mails, reception of i-mode mail is stopped, and appear on the screen. To receive, you need to display the contents of unread mail, delete or unprotect unnecessary mail.
- If there are remaining i-mode mail in the i-mode Center, or appears. It may not appear even when there is i-mode mail. When exceeding the savable number in the i-mode Center, the icon changes to or .

◆ Displaying newly-received i-mode mail

1 On the reception result screen, ①

- MessageR/F can be displayed by pressing ② or ③.

2 Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

Playing Flash graphics with a melody or sound effect→P159

Reading received mail details screen→P150

◆ Operating WEB Mail

To send or receive mail from/to address B of 2in1, you need to connect to WEB Mail site. Only when 2in1 is in B or Dual mode, you can connect to the WEB Mail site.

- 2in1 is a charged service requiring subscription.

1 ▶ Select i-mode password entry field ▶ Enter i-mode password ▶ "決定 (Yes)"

You are connected to WEB Mail site.

- For operations in WEB Mail site, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".

Receive option

Receiving mail selectively

You can check the subject of i-mode mail stored in the i-mode Center to select if you receive or delete i-mode mail without receiving it.

When mail arrives at i-mode Center, "You have mail at i-mode center." appears on the display.

- To use Receive option, Receive option setting must be set to "ON" in advance.

1

You are connected to the i-mode Center and can view the list of i-mode mail stored.

- For details about i-mode Center operations, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

✓ INFORMATION

- By pressing keys except ,  or , "You have mail at i-mode center" disappears.
- In All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Lock on close or Auto keypad lock, no messages appear.
- If you perform Check new message, all the messages are received. To inhibit reception of mails, deselect "Mail" from the inquiry items for Check msg option.
- Area Mail, SMS and MessageR/F are received automatically even when Receive option setting set to "ON".

Check new message

Checking new i-mode mail

You can make inquiry for any i-mode mail delivered while you were out of service area or the power was turned OFF.

MessageR/F can also be checked at the same time if it is set to be checked in Check msg option.

- Under some radio wave conditions, you may not be able to perform Check new message.

1

- During i-mode message, the light blinks in rainbow. When there are no newly received i-mode mail after i-mode message, the light blinks in red. When i-mode message failed, the light blinks in yellow.
- You can also press  for 1 second or more to operate, or press  for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal folded by default.
- You can operate from the sub-display menu. → P35

Replying to i-mode mail

Replying to i-mode mail

You can reply to the received i-mode mail or SMS.

- You may not reply to some received mails.
- You cannot reply to received SMS sent from "User unset", "Payphone" or "Not support".

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to the mail ▶

Reply format screen appears.

- For a mail sent to multiple addresses, the selection screen of the addresses to reply to appears.
- Reply format screen does not appear in the cases below. Go to Step 3.
 - When Activate quick reply is "OFF"
 - When no quick reply format is registered
 - When replying to SMS

2 1

Using Quick reply : 2-6.

Selected quick reply format is inserted.

3 Edit the mail

The sender's mail address or phone number of the received mail is entered in the receiver field, the subject of the received mail is entered in the subject field with "REX:" (X is the number of replies except "1") prefixed at the beginning (only i-mode mail).

- The status icon of received mail changes from  to , or from  to .

INFORMATION

- Quoting and Quick reply when replying can be set. → P158
- When pressing  and selecting "Reply/Forward" on the received message list screen or details screen, "Reply" (received message text not quoted) or "Reply with quote" (received message text quoted) can be selected regardless of the settings of Reply format. The same operation is available from the received mail details screen of microSD card.
- Reply with quote is unavailable for Decome-Anime.
- Operation for replying with Decome-Anime : On the received mail list screen and details screen,  → "Reply/Forward" → "Use Decome-Anime" The same operation is available from the received mail details screen of microSD card.
- Only message text, decoration and images (File restriction is not set) attached to the text are quoted by Reply with quote. When the total size of images in text exceeds 20 types and 90 Kbytes after quotation, a screen showing the deletion of excessive images appears.

Forwarding i-mode mail to other address

Forwarding i-mode mail to other address

You can forward received i-mode mail or SMS to other addresses. i-mode mail is forwarded as i-mode mail and SMS as SMS.

-  1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a mail ▶  1 4

The subject of the received mail is entered in the subject field with "FWX:" (X is the number of forwarding except "1") prefixed at the beginning (only i-mode mail) and the text of the received mail is entered in the message text field.

- When receiving a mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set. Note that Receive option attachment files that have not yet been downloaded or are being downloaded is not set.

2 Edit the mail

- The status icon of received mail changes from  to , or from  to .

INFORMATION

- When the link item that can activate the melody or i-appli attached in the received message text, it is not set to forwarded mail and is not quoted as characters.
- Files prohibited to be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forwarded mail. When forwarding the received mail from microSD card, all attached files are canceled.
- When forwarding Decome-Anime, the message text cannot be edited. And, Decome-Anime that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal is canceled, and the mail creation screen appears.
- When the images in received message text to be forwarded exceeds 90 Kbytes, a screen showing the deleting of excessive images appears.
- When transferring a received mail sent to Address B or Number B and saved to FOMA terminal with 2in1 in Dual mode, the mail is sent as a mail from Address A or Number A.

Downloading Receive option attachment file

You can download the receive option attachment file which is being or not yet downloaded, attached to the received i-mode mail.

- When the total size of text and attachment file exceeds 100 Kbytes, a part or all of attachment file is received as a Receive option attachment file.
- When there is an attachment file which is being or not yet downloaded, its storage period in the i-mode Center is displayed on the received message details screen.
- The maximum size of each file that can be downloaded is 2 Mbytes.

-  1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode mail with an attachment file

File icon, file name and file size	 This is my new mobile phone e-mail address. I'll keep in touch. Good-bye.
Storage period in the i-mode Center	Exp. Date: 2008/11/17 200.0KB - END -

Icon definitions → P150 "Mail details screen"

2 Select a file name

- If you press  and select "No" while downloading, downloading is terminated and the downloaded part is saved.
- Operations after downloading are the same as those of an attachment file automatically received. → P146

✓INFORMATION

- When the memory space is not enough for the receive option attachment file to be downloaded, downloading is unavailable. Try to download again after deleting i-mode mail attachments already received, viewing unread mail, canceling protection, deleting unnecessary mail, etc.
- Read mails may be deleted when downloading a Receive option attachment file of a certain size.
- When downloading interrupts because of out of service area etc., resuming confirmation screen appears. When "No" is selected, the downloaded part is saved and  appears as attachment icon.

Operating attachments

You can display/save the file attached to an i-mode mail.

- Flash graphics or melodies that are larger than 100 Kbytes, ToruCa (Details), and ToruCa that are larger than 1 Kbytes cannot be displayed/played on this FOMA terminal. And, they can be saved only to microSD card.
- Multiple phonebook entries, Schedule and Bookmark still attached to i-mode mail cannot be displayed. Check the contents after saving.

<Example> i-mode mail with an image attached



Icon definitions → P150 "Mail details screen"

◆ Displaying/Playing

- The files not compatible with this FOMA terminal cannot be displayed or played.

1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-mode mail

2 Select the file name

- For an image, display/not display is switched.
- If there is detail information in ToruCa, Select "詳細 (Details)" button to download it from a site (ToruCa (Details)).

✓INFORMATION

- An image that the width is larger than the display size is displayed being scaled down.
- Select the file name of the image to display the image attached to Deco-mail.
- Displaying/Playing is not available for some receiver's terminal or the received file.
- If the character in the text is mistakenly recognized as the melody data, move the cursor to the melody and press    to display it as characters. Press  on the first line of the data-displayed melody to redisplay the melody.
- The same operation is available from sent mail details screen.
- Playing i-motion attached to a mail on a PC requires i-motion compatible software. For details, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Saving

- Savable file types and saving destinations are as shown below.

File type	Save to	
	FOMA terminal	microSD card
Image	Folder of My Picture	Any of "My Picture", "Other images" or "Deco-mail pict"
i-motion	"i-mode" folder of i-motion	For no file restriction, "Movie" folder (for i-motion with voice only, "Other movie" folder) For file restriction, a folder selected in "Movie" folder
Melody	"i-mode" folder of Melody	"Melody" folder
ToruCa	"ToruCa" of ToruCa content	"ToruCa" folder
PDF data	"i-mode" folder of My Document	"My Document" folder
Phonebook entry	FOMA terminal phonebook	"Phonebook" folder
Schedule data	Scheduler	"Schedule" folder
Bookmark data	i-mode "Bookmark" folder in Bookmark	"Bookmark" folder
	Full Browser "Bookmark" folder in Bookmark	
Word, Excel, PowerPoint file	Folder of Other	"Other" folder
Various files*	—	"Other" folder

* File not supported by this FOMA terminal. Only saving and transfer to microSD card are available.
Note that the file name may be changed while saving.

<Example> Saving ToruCa

1   1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-mode mail

2 Move the cursor to a file name ▶   6 3

Saving image of Deco-mail :   4 4 ▶ Select the image

The next procedure→P178 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

Saving melody : Move the cursor to the melody ▶   6 2

The next procedure→P179 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

3  or 

- For some ToruCa, only one of the saving destinations can be selected.

Saving an image : The next procedure→P178 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

Saving i-motion : The next procedure→P186 Step 3 in "Downloading i-motion from sites"

Saving phonebook entries, schedule data and bookmark data : 

- Up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters can be entered to edit the title of bookmark data.
- If you register the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed on the bookmark list.
- If pressing  when microSD card is installed, it is saved to microSD card.
- For multiple numbers of data, a saving destination selection screen appears.

Saving PDF data, Word, Excel and PowerPoint files : 

- When changing the display name, up to 36 characters can be entered.
- When there are more than one folder in Other, a screen for selecting a save destination folder appears. The files are saved to a selected folder.
- When " 

destination and press  to save to microSD card.

Saving other files : "Yes"

✓ INFORMATION

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) sizes larger than 480×864 in GIF format or 1,944×2,592 in JPEG format cannot be saved in FOMA terminal. Some images cannot be saved by the JPEG type.
- Some ToruCa can be saved only once.
- The file can be saved in the same way from sent mail details screen.

◆ Checking file name

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-mode mail

2 Move the cursor to a file name ▶

Checking the title of the attached melody : Move the cursor to the melody ▶

Checking the title of the attached melody in message text : Move the cursor to the melody ▶

✓INFORMATION

- Operation to check the file name from the sent mail details screen : Move the cursor to the file name → → "Attachment" → "Check title" or "Display file name"

◆ Deleting

- You cannot delete image or melody attached in the message text and link item to activate i-appli.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-mode mail

2 Move the cursor to the file name ▶ ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

Deleting melodies or Receive option attachment files : Move the cursor to file name ▶ ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- File attached to a sent mail can be operated in the same way.

Displaying mail in inbox/outbox/unsent mailbox

Received/Sent/Unsent i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F can be checked.

- Mails of "オススメ◆BEST" (Recommendation), "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内" (Early warning "Area Mail" information), "Welcome◆デコメアニメ (Decome-Anime) " are saved in Inbox by default. Communication charges are free for receiving these mails. And, you cannot reply to these mails.

<Example> Displaying received mails

1

Displaying sent mail folder list :

Displaying unsent mail folder list :

2 Select a folder

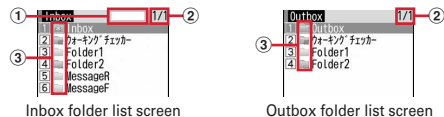
The received mail list is displayed.

- Select a folder for Message i-appli to activate the corresponding i-appli. To display a mail without starting i-appli, move the cursor to the folder for Message i-appli and press .

3 Select a mail to display

- Display preview in the mail list and the mail details screen can be zoomed in/out at 15 levels (Quick zoom).
 ▶ "Display" ▶ Press "Key function help" to display Key function help.
 - Key operation is available while displaying. Press to return to the original screen.
 - Decome-Anime cannot be zoomed in/out.

◆ Folder list screen



① Usage rate of the memory space

② Page/Total pages

③ Folder

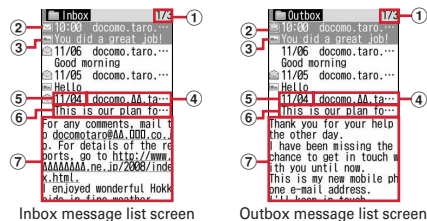
Received mail

- ☐ (gray) : No mail ☐ (blue) : No unread mail
- ☐ : No unread mail or no mail (Secret attribute ON)
- ☐ : No unread mail or no mail (used in Message i-appli)
- ☐ : Unread mail exist ☐ : Unread mail exist (Secret attribute ON)
- ☐ : Unread mail exist (used in Message i-appli)

Sent/Unsent mails

- ☐ (gray) : No mail ☐ (blue) : Mail exist
- ☐ : Secret attribute ON ☐ : Message i-appli

◆ Mail list screen



① Page/Total pages

② Status icon

Received mail

- ☐ : Unread ☐ : Unread (unable to reply) ☐ : Read ☐ : Read (unable to reply)
- ☐ : Read (replied) ☐ : Read (forwarded) ☐ : Protected
- ☐ : Protected (unable to reply) ☐ : Protected (replied) ☐ : Protected (forwarded)

* For replied and forwarded, indication priority is given to the last operation icon.

Sent/Unsent mails

- No icon : Unprotected
- ☐ : Protected ☐ : Auto-send set ☐ : Failed in Auto-send
- ☐ : Protected + Auto-send set ☐ : Protected + failed in Auto-send

③ Type of attachment/SMS/Notification/Message i-appli/Area Mail

- ☐ : Image ☐ : i-motion ☐ : Melody ☐ : ToruCa
- ☐ : PDF data ☐ : Phonebook entry ☐ : Schedule
- ☐ : Bookmark ☐ : Word file ☐ : Excel file
- ☐ : PowerPoint file ☐ : Files that cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal
- ☐ : Multiple files are attached ☐ : SMS ☐ : SMS report request, Notify missed call
- ☐ : Mail to be used in Message i-appli ☐ : i-appli To exists
- ☐ : Area Mail ☐ : Area Mail to be used in Message i-appli
- ☐ : Invalid data attached

* For sent/unsent mails, when icon is not displayed at the position of ②, the icon of ③ is displayed at the position of ②.

* For received/sent mail lists, when List style of Message list is "Display 1 row", the icon below appears at the end of date and time.

: A file is attached : Area Mail

: Area Mail to be used in Message i-appli

④ Sender/Receiver

When saved in phonebook, the name is displayed.

For Area Mail, "Area Mail" appears.

⑤ Received/Sent/Saved date & time

The time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on other than the reception day.

⑥ Subject

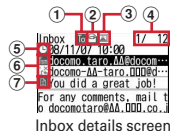
It may not be displayed depending on the i-mode mail. For Area Mail and SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed.

⑦ Message text

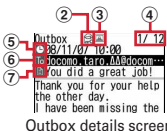
The message of the mail at the cursor position is displayed.

- For SMS sent from an overseas sender, the sender address is preceded by "+".
- For i-mode mail or SMS sent/received/saved while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear at the end of date and time.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, appears at the top of the subject for i-mode mail for Address B or Number B, and at the top of the message text for SMS. For the mail list that was copied all or backed up from microSD card, is displayed at the end.

◆ Mail details screen



Inbox details screen



Outbox details screen

① Address type icon

: Receiver (and only for i-mode mail)

For i-mode mail, you can check which address type is applied to you as a receiver.

② Status/Notification icon

Received mail

: Read : Read (unable to reply) : Read (replied)

: Read (forwarded) : Protected : Protected (unable to reply)

: Protected (replied) : Protected (forwarded)

* For replied and forwarded, indication priority is given to the last operation icon.

Sent mail

No icon : Unprotected : Protected

③ Type of attachment/SMS/Area Mail

: Image : i-motion : Melody : ToruCa

: PDF data : Phonebook entry : Schedule

: Bookmark : Word file : Excel file

: PowerPoint file : Files that cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal

: Multiple attachments exist : SMS : i-appli (i-appli To)

: Area Mail : Area Mail to be used in Message i-appli

: Invalid data attached

* Depending on the conditions of attachment files, icons below appear below the message text with the icon above.

: Copyrighted (Mail attachment or output from FOMA terminal unavailable)

: Data error/Data exceeded : Receive option attachment file not yet downloaded

: Receive option attachment file being downloaded

: Downloading of the receive option attachment file unavailable

④ Mail number/number of items

⑤ Sent/Received date and time

⑥ Address type of sender's/receiver's/broadcast address

: Sender : Sender (unable to reply) : Receiver

: Receiver (unable to reply) (only for i-mode mail)

⑦ Subject

- For i-mode mail or SMS sent/received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear at the end of date and time.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, appears at the end of the reception date and time for i-mode mail or SMS for Address B or Number B.

Viewing Decome-Anime

If selecting Decome-Anime from received/sent mail list, Flash graphics of Decome-Anime text are played.

- While displaying Decome-Anime, the operations below are available.

: Play from the beginning

: Adjust volume (for Decome-Anime with sound effect)

: Stop playing

: Return to the mail details screen/Display Decome-Anime

- For Decome-Anime with sound effect, the sound effect set by Melody volume of Adjust volume is played.

✓INFORMATION

- Characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with spaces or other characters.
- When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.
- When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, "/" or "/" is inserted at the end and the remainder of the message is deleted automatically.
- When the file attached to the received mail is larger than the data size that can be received (the data size that can be attached→P140) or for some files, it is deleted at the i-mode Center and [添付ファイル削除 (attachment files deleted)] is displayed below the subject.
- Only one melody or link item to start i-appli attached in the text of message, is valid. If multiple melodies or link items are attached, those attached data become invalid and [1] or [2] is displayed on the received message list screen or details screen.
- If the message text includes phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To and Web To functions can be used.
- "Received SMS" appears as a subject of received SMS, and the phone number or the name saved in a phonebook appears as a sender. For SMS sent, "Sent SMS" appears as a subject.
When the caller ID is not notified, the characters below are displayed in the sender field.
"User unset" (Message was sent with setting not to notify the caller ID)
"Payphone" (Message was sent from a payphone)
"Not support" (Message was sent using a procedure that does not provide caller ID information)
- You can save mail using Data Security Service.→P128

◆ Creating/Deleting folders

- Except for the folders stored by default and the folder for Message i-appli, up to 40 folders can be created in Inbox and up to 20 folders in Outbox/Unsent messages each.
- Folder settings of the folders stored by default and the folder for Message i-appli cannot be changed.
- Folders cannot be deleted in the cases below.
 - Folders stored by default
 - When protected mails are in the folder
 - When corresponding i-appli is in the folder for Message i-appli

<Example> Creating folders

1 [✉] ▶ [1] or [4] - [5]

2 [ME] [1]

Deleting : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [ME] [2] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

Changing folder setting : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [ME] [3]

Changing the order : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [ME] ▶ [7] or [8]

3 Set required items ▶ [📎]

Folder name : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Secret attribute : Set if you display a folder in Privacy mode (when Mail & Logs is "Hide secrecy fldrs").

◆ Checking number of mail items <Check No. of msgs>

The number of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages are checked for each folder.

1 [✉] ▶ [1] or [4] - [5] ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [ME] [5]

◆ Displaying mail address <Display address>

1 [✉] ▶ [1] or [4] - [5] ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to a mail ▶ [ME] [7] [3]

Displaying a mail address of unsent mail : [ME] [5] [3]

✓INFORMATION

- You can check also by selecting a sender or an address to check on the sent/received mail details screen. Note that it cannot be checked from the unsent mail details screen.
- Operations from the mail template details screen : [ME] [4] [2]

◆ Moving mail to another folder <Move message>

1 [✉] ▶ [1] or [4] - [5] ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to a mail ▶ [ME] [4] [1] ▶ [1] - [3]

- To move selected items, select them ▶ [📎].

3 [●] ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "Yes"

◆ Searching for mail

You can search sent or received mail.

1 ► **1** or **5**

2 **9** ► **Set required items**

- Description of mail search is displayed on the first activation. Press to display the search screen.

Subject/Message text : Up to 35 two-byte (70 one-byte) characters can be entered. To search with multiple key words, insert a one-byte blank space between words.

- After selecting the tab below Subject/Body field, select "All words" or "Include any words".

Sender (Inbox)/Receiver (Outbox) : Select from sent/received mail logs or phonebook.

Date range : Select date range from the calendar.

- Press to display search records (up to 5). After a record is selected, the conditions of record are entered and the search screen appears

3

Mails that match the search criteria are listed.

- During search : Cancel search
- On the search result screen, press to search again.
- From the search result screen, the same operations as on the normal mail list are available.

✓INFORMATION

- Operations from the received/sent mail list : **0**
In this case, only the mails in the folder are searched.

◆ Sorting received/sent mail <Sort>

The sorting order of the mail list in Inbox and Outbox can be changed temporarily.

1 ► **1** or **5** ► **Select a folder**

2 **7** **4**

Sorting sent mails : **5**

3 **1** - **4**

✓INFORMATION

- For sorting "By sender" or "By address", even when the mail address is added to the phonebook, mails are not sorted by the name saved in the phonebook but in the mail address order.
- When the one- and two-byte characters are mixed in the titles of mails, the sort result "By title" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- If SMS or Area Mail is included, as the beginnings of message are displayed in the list screen, the result of sorting by "By title" does not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.

◆ Changing read/unread state of received mail

- Read/Unread state of received mails protected cannot be changed.

1 **1** ► **Select a folder** ► **Move the cursor to the mail** ► **5** ► **1** - **6**

- To operate multiple mails, select them ► ► "Yes". To operate all mails, "Yes" is required.

◆ Protecting/Unprotecting mail <Protect mail>

By protecting received/sent/unsent mails, they are protected from erroneous deletion or overwriting due to the lack of the memory space etc.

- Unread mail cannot be protected.
- Operation for protecting/unprotecting selected Area Mails is unavailable.

1 ► **1** or **4** - **5** ► **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to a mail** ► **3** ► **1** - **6**

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them ► .
- The status icon changes to one of the followings.
Inbox : (Read), (Unable to reply), (Replied), (Forwarded)
Sent/Unsent mails :

✓INFORMATION

- When "Protect all" is selected, mail is protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

◆ Deleting mail

❖ Deleting received mail

- 1
 - To delete all mails, press , perform authentication and go to Step 3.
- 2 **Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a mail** -
 - To delete 1 item, move the cursor to mail.
 - To delete selected items, select them . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- 3 "Yes"

❖ Deleting sent/unsent mail

- 1 or
 - To delete all mails, ▶ perform authentication and go to Step 3.
- 2 **Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a mail** -
 - To delete selected items, select them . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- 3 "Yes"

Mail logs

Using mail logs

This function is used to record the destination, sender's address of sent/received mail as mail logs. You can use the log to create a mail or add to the phonebook.

- Up to 30 items can be recorded for each of sent mails and received mails. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When using 2in1, up to 30 received mails for Address/Number A and up to 30 received mails for Address/Number B are recorded; up to 60 received mails in total are recorded. Only logs for Address/Number A are displayed in A mode and only those for Address/Number B are displayed in B mode. In Dual mode, all sent/received logs are displayed.
- When multiple mails are sent to the same destination, only the latest item is recorded in Sent msg log.
- Received mail logs of i-mode mails or SMS that cannot be replied to are not recorded.

◆ Displaying mail logs

<Example> Displaying Sent msg logs

- 1

- Select the party to display details screen.



Sent msg log list



Sent msg log details

- Icon definitions
 - : i-mode mail logs
 - : SMS logs
 - : Received message logs for Address B or Number B (with 2in1 in Dual mode)

: Sent message log* recorded while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00)

* May not be displayed when sending date/time is not recorded etc.

Displaying received message logs :

❖ Using mail logs

Creating an i-mode mail : Move the cursor to a log

- For SMS log, the mail creation screen with a mail address set as destination appears if the mail address is saved in the phonebook, and the mail creation screen with a phone number set as destination appears if the mail address is not saved.

Creating SMS : Move the cursor to a log (1 sec. or more)

- For i-mode mail log, SMS cannot be created unless a phone number is saved with mail address in the phonebook.

Adding to phonebook : Move the cursor to a log 4 or 5 1 or 2

Phonebook new entry→P82

- To update and add, select a phonebook entry to add.

Making calls : or

- For i-mode mail logs, a call cannot be made unless a phone number is saved with mail address in the phonebook.

Making PushTalk calls :

- For i-mode mail logs, a PushTalk call cannot be made unless a phone number is saved with mail address in the phonebook (except for the case that the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp").

Displaying redial/received call logs :

❖ Switching mail logs details screens <View preference>

1 On the mail logs details screen, 9 1 - 3

◆ Deleting mail logs

1 Display the mail logs list

2 Move the cursor to the mail logs 6 1 - 3 "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a mail log.
- To delete selected items, select them . To delete all items, authentication is required.

Useful functions of Mail

◆ Copying texts

You can copy characters in mail. Copied characters can be pasted in entry fields in the mail creation screen or phonebook data entry screen.

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF and they can be pasted any number of times.

1 1 or 5 Select a folder Select a mail 2

- To copy a selected item, move the cursor to the item to copy and press 2.

2 Select a copy option

Copy text : Copy a specified range of characters.

Copying method→P355 Step 2 and the following steps in "Copying/Cutting characters"

Copy title : Copy the title.

Copy selected item : Copy selected items (mail address, phone number, etc.).

Pasting method→P355

✓ INFORMATION

- Operation from the details screen of mail template or the details screen of SMS in UIM : →"Copy" or "Move/Copy".
- For SMS stored in UIM, you can copy the message body, address or sender.
- For Deco-mail, only text is copied and decorations are not copied.
- For Decome-Anime, the message text cannot be copied.
- Text in the Date To format can be saved as schedule after being pasted to Notepad.

◆ Making call from mail <Phone call>

If the sender of a received mail or mail address of sent/unsent mails are saved with phone number in phonebook, calls can be made (for SMS or mail that the address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", a call can be made without saving).

1 [Envelope] ▶ [1] or [4] - [5] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a mail [ME] [6]

- When the mail has multiple destinations, select a mail address of the party to be called.
- When operating from the received message/sent message details screen, move the cursor to the sender, receiver or phone number and press [ME] [7].

2 Set a condition for dialing ▶ [ME]

Making a call under set conditions → P64

◆ Adding phone number, mail address and URL

You can add the phone number, mail address and URL that you can move the cursor to to the phonebook entry from mail. URL can also be registered as bookmark.

<Example> Adding a phone number

1 [Envelope] ▶ [1] or [5] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail
2 Move the cursor to a phone number ▶ [ME] [4] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ [1] or [2]

Phonebook new entry → P82

- To update and add, select a phonebook entry to add.

Adding URL to phonebook : Move the cursor to a URL ▶ [ME] [4] ▶ [1] or [2]

Registering URL in bookmark : Move the cursor to the

URL ▶ [ME] [4] [3] ▶ Select a destination folder

The next procedure → P175 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from MessageR/F details screen : [ME] [3] → [1] - [3]
- You can operate also from SMS details screen of UIM.
- Operations from the mail details screen of microSD card : [ME] [4]
- Registering from Deco-mail may be unavailable.
- When multiple addresses are listed in the mail text, you may not be able to add them.

Mail settings

Setting mail function of FOMA terminal

◆ Sorting mail automatically <Sort method>

You can set sort methods and automatically sort received/sent mail to specified folders.

- Up to 30 methods for received/sent mail can be registered.
- Ordinary mails can also be sorted to the folder for Message i-appli, but message i-appli sorting method precedes.
- Sent/Received mails are not sorted.

◆ Setting whether to sort automatically <Auto-sort ON/OFF>

1 [Envelope] [0] [2] ▶ [1] ▶ Set required items ▶ [Camera]

◆ Setting sort methods

1 [Envelope] [0] [2] ▶ [2] or [3]

Registered sort methods (in the order of priority)

Inbox sort methods	1/1
01	Set in phonebook
02	docomo.taro.00do...
03	Information

- Icon definitions :

To : Mail address (Outbox sorting)

From : Mail address (Inbox sorting)

Sub : Subject [ME] : Ph.book number [ME] : Ph.book group

[?] : Not in phonebook [] : No method

2 ▶ Set a sort method

Specifying a mail address :  ▶  - 

Sort mails from specified mail addresses. The mail address specifies the entire address including the character succeeding symbol @. Addresses exceeding 50 one-byte characters cannot be specified.

- For  - , operate for selecting and for , enter a mail address ▶ .
- If you add and specify the same mail address in FOMA terminal and UIM phonebooks, it is sorted as the mail address of FOMA terminal phonebook.
- If the specified mail address is i-mode terminal, it is sorted even if it is specified with the domain (@docomo.ne.jp) omitted. However, if the address is "Phone number @docomo.ne.jp", add only the mobile phone number excluding the domain (@docomo.ne.jp).
- When specifying phone numbers, you can sort SMS as well.

Specifying a subject :  ▶ Enter the subject (up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters) ▶ 

Mail containing the specified characters is sorted.

- You cannot sort SMS by subject.

Specifying phonebook entry (phonebook number) :  ▶ Enter the phonebook number ▶  ▶ 

Sort mail by mail address or phone number of the specified phonebook number in FOMA terminal phonebook. i-mode mail are sorted by checking mail address with that in the phonebook as sort method. SMS are sorted by checking phone numbers with that in the phonebook.

Specifying phonebook entry (phonebook group) :  ▶  or  ▶ Select a group

Sort mail by mail address or phone number saved in the group of the phonebook.

Specifying Not in phonebook : 

Sort mail from mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook.

Specifying No method : 

Sort all mail into the folder specified in Step 3 without setting rule.

3 Select the folder to sort

- When the folder for Message i-appli is selected, a screen appears notifying the mail is used for i-appli.

4 Select a priority level

A new method is added to the selected row.

- To add the first method, select "Add last".
- Methods are sorted sequentially from the one with the highest priority level.
- When registered methods are changed, "Move to last" is displayed instead of "Add last".

✓INFORMATION

- If multiple conditions are set, judgment is made from the condition with higher priority and sorted to the folder that matched for the condition first. A mail that was not matched for any condition is saved in the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

✦Setting sort methods from sent/received mails

  ▶  or  ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a mail ▶    ▶  or  ▶ Check the saved contents ▶ 

The next procedure → P156 Step 3 and the following steps in "Setting sort methods"

- When Auto-sort ON/OFF is "OFF", a confirmation screen for setting to "ON" appears.

✦Checking, changing or deleting sorting methods

<Example> Checking

    ▶  or 

2 Select sorting rule

Changing sort methods :

- ① Move the cursor to a sort method ▶   ▶ Set a sort method
Operations for setting sort method → P156 Step 2-4 in "Setting sort methods"
- ② "Yes"

Changing sort priority : Move the cursor to the sort method ▶   ▶ Select the position to move to

- To move to the end of the list, select "Move to last".

Deleting : Move the cursor to a sort method ▶   or  ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a sort method.
- To delete all items, authentication is required.

◆ Setting mail signatures

❖ Setting whether to insert signature automatically

You can set if you automatically insert the signature when composing, replying or forwarding mail.

1 ▶ or

❖ Registering signature

1 ▶ Enter the signature (up to 4,999 two-byte (9,998 one-byte) characters) ▶

✓ INFORMATION

- The background color set for the signature is not applied when decorations and/or characters is already entered in the message text or when quoting the received mail to reply to or forward a mail.
- Signature is also counted as the number of characters of message text.
- Signature cannot be inserted in Decome-Anime.
- Signature cannot be inserted to SMS in the cases below.
 - In case of signature including characters that can not be inserted in the message text when Font type in SMS settings is "English"
 - When a signature has been decorated
 - When the text exceeds 70 characters by inserting signature

◆ Setting Check new message

1 ▶ Select the items to check ▶

- You cannot save unless you select any of the items.

◆ Setting to select and receive only necessary mail <Receive option>

1 ▶ or

- When setting to "ON", a screen indicating mail cannot be automatically received appears.

◆ Adding mail group

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, i-mode mail can be sent to multiple receivers by a simple operation.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be added. Up to 5 mail addresses can be added for 1 mail group.

1

2

Creating a mail : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶

Editing a mail group name : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶

Copying a mail group : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶

Deleting a mail group : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶ ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required for deleting all items.

Operating mail address registered in a mail group : Select a mail group ▶ Go to Step 5

3 Enter the mail group name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶

- Press to add other mail group continuously.

4 Select a mail group for registering a mail address

5 ▶ Set required items

Address Type : Set "TO", "CC" or "BCC".

Address : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- When entering from mail logs or phonebook, press , and press - , and select a destination.

Editing a registered mail address : Move the cursor to the mail address (or name) ▶ ▶ Edit

Deleting a registered mail address : Move the cursor to a mail address (or name) ▶ ▶ "Yes" ▶ Go to Step 7

Displaying details of registered mail address : ▶ When finishing checking,

6

- To add another mail address, repeat the operation from Step 5.

7

◆ Setting a quoting method in reply <Reply format>

You can set if you quote the body of the message when replying to an i-mode mail or SMS. And, you can set the type of quote characters added to the quoted message.

1 [Envelope] [0] [4] [1] ▶ Set required items ▶ [Icon]

Quote : Set if you quote message when replying to a mail.

Quote characters : Up to 1 two-byte (2 one-byte) characters can be entered.

- The quote characters are included in the total character count for the body of the message.
- When a character that cannot be sent has been set, the default quote character is used.

◆ Setting quick reply

You can set if you use Quick reply to reply to i-mode mail.

1 [Envelope] [0] [4] [2] ▶ [1] or [2]

◆ Registering quick reply format

- Up to 5 items can be registered.

1 [Envelope] [0] [4] [3]

2 Select a format ▶ Enter a text (Up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters) ▶ [Icon] ▶ "Yes"

Viewing the message text : Move the cursor to the message text ▶ [Icon]

Deleting the message text : Move the cursor to the message text ▶ [ME] [1] ▶ "Yes"

Resetting all formats : [ME] [2] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

Adding new format : "<New reply format>" ▶ Enter a text ▶ [Icon]

◆ Setting display style of mail list

You can set the style to display a list of Inbox/Outbox mails.

1 [Envelope] [0] [6] [5] ▶ Set required items ▶ [Icon]

List style : Set display style.

Display preview : Set if you display message under the mail list.

Auto status change : When all texts are displayed under the received mail list, set if you change them to read.

✓INFORMATION

- The list display style of Unsent messages and SMS of UIM are 2 rows regardless of this setting and Display preview is not displayed.
- For the display style of mail search result screen, Display preview is not displayed regardless of this setting.
- When setting Auto status change to "ON", selecting "Unread item only" from By display type and displaying the received mail list, the mail is not set to Read even if all the message text is displayed under the received mail list.

◆ Setting display style of mail in flip style <Layout in flip mode>

You can set the style to display folders or a list of mails in Inbox in flip style.

1 [Envelope] [0] [6] [7] ▶ [1] or [2]

◆ Setting receiving method of attachments <Incoming msg. attach>

You can set in advance if you receive files attached to i-mode mail depending on file types.

- Files set not to be received automatically are the received as receive option attachment files. → P145
- Images or melodies attached to message text are automatically received regardless of this setting.

1 [Envelope] [0] [6] [3] ▶ Select a file item to receive ▶ [Icon]

- "Tool data" indicates the data of phonebook, bookmark and schedule.
- "Other" indicates Excel, Word, PowerPoint and other data.

◆ Setting playing method of melodies or sound effects <Attachment auto-play>

You can set whether to play melody attached to message text or sound effect of Flash graphics automatically when displaying i-mode mail or MessageR/F.

1 [Envelope] [0] [6] [4] ▶ [1] or [2]

✓INFORMATION-----

- When a received/sent mail, mail template or MessageR/F with an attached melody is displayed with "Auto play" set, the melody is played once with the volume set in Melody effect sound of Adjust volume. When multiple melodies are attached, they are played in turn. Press [Stop] to stop.
- When "Auto play" is set, if displaying Decome-Anime with sound effect, it is played at the volume set by Melody effect sound of Adjust volume. Press [Stop] to stop. If a melody is attached to the mail, only the melody is played.
If displaying the preview screen for creating Decome-Anime with sound effect, the retry screen of sent/received Decome-Anime or Decome-Anime template details screen, sound effect is played regardless of this setting.
- When MessageR/F is automatically displayed, the melody is not automatically played even with "Auto play" set.

◆ Displaying mail by type <Display by type>

You can display only the mails of specified type in the received and sent mail lists temporarily. When the list display is closed, sorting is restored to "Display all items".

- You cannot select the display type for unsent messages and SMS of UIM.

1 [Envelope] ▶ [1] or [5] ▶ Select a folder ▶ [ME] [7] [2] ▶ [1] - [4]

- For sent mail, you can select only "Display all items" and "Protected item only".
- For "Read item", protected received mails are not displayed.

◆ Changing font size

You can select a font size from 5 types to display mails.

- The font size for Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) is not changed.

1 [Envelope] ▶ [1] or [5] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail ▶ [ME] [3] [1] ▶ [1] - [5]

✓INFORMATION-----

- Operation from the details screen of mail template or SMS in UIM : [ME] → "Display" → "Font size"
- Operation from the details screen of received/sent/unsent mail in microSD card : [ME] [3]
- The changed font size remains until the setting is changed again.
- This setting also applies to Mail view in Font size.
- Font size for creating or editing a mail can be changed by Font size. → P107

◆ Setting mail reception notification for terminal in operation <Display priority>

You can set if you display a receiving screen, reception result screen or a screen during Auto-send by priority when i-mode mail, SMS or MessageR/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

1 [Envelope] [0] [6] [1] ▶ [1] - [3]

Continue operation : Display none of the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen.

Show message : Display the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen.

Open:Cont/Close:Show : Continue operation when FOMA terminal is open and prioritizes reception notification when the terminal is folded.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Even if "Continue operation" is set, "Show message" takes precedence while the menu is displayed.
- Even if "Show message" is set, during a voice call or while camera is activated, streaming type i-motion is playing, i-appli is running, alarm is sounding, Area Mail is received, etc., "Continue operation" takes precedence.

When MessageR/F is received

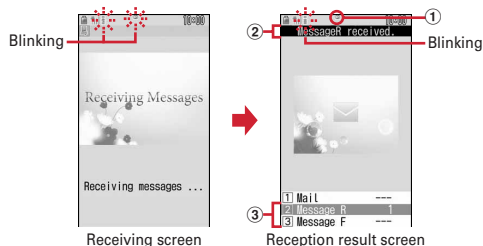
Receive MessageR/F

and (blue) or (green) blink and "Receiving messages..." appears. MessageR/F ring alert sounds, the light turns on or blinks, and the reception result screen appears.

The received MessageR is saved in "MessageR" folder. The received MessageF is saved in "MessageF" folder.

- : Cancel receiving

May be received depending on the reception conditions.



① Icon

(blue) : Unread MessageR exist (green) : Unread MessageF exist

② Reception result ticker

③ The number of received MessageR/F

- The contents of unread MessageR/F are displayed after the reception result screen appears, and if you do not press any key for about 15 seconds, the previous screen reappears.

When reception has failed

"X" appears on the right side of "Message R" or "Message F" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform Check new message.

✓INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- When MessageR/F is received, the MessageR/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- In the cases below, received MessageR/F is stored in the i-mode Center.
 - When the power is OFF or out of i-mode service area
 - During a videophone call or a PushTalk session
 - Accessing Data Center
 - In Omakase Lock or Self mode
 - During FirstPass center connection
 - When reception has failed
 - When receiving SMS
 - Infrared communication/iC transmission
 - When the memory space is filled with MessageR/F unread or protected
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, a new MessageR/F overwrites the chronologically oldest message except for unprotected unread messages.
- If there is not enough memory space available because the memory space is filled with unread and protected MessageR/F, reception of MessageR/F is stopped, (red) or (red) appears on the screen. To receive, displaying the contents of unread MessageR/F, deleting unnecessary MessageR/F or unprotected is required.
- If there are remaining MessageR/F in the i-mode Center, or appears. It may not appear even when there are MessageR/F. When the i-mode Center reaches the maximum number of mail items that can be stored, the icon changes to or .

◆ Displaying new MessageR/F

1 On the reception result screen, 2 or 3

- Press 1 to display i-mode mail.

2 Select MessageR/F

Playing when a melody is attached→P159

Displaying MessageR/F→P161

◆ Displaying MessageR/F automatically <Auto-display>

You can set if you display the contents (for about 15 seconds) when the screen returns from the reception result screen to the screen prior to the reception.

1 [Envelope] [0] [6] [6] ▶ [1] - [5]

✓ INFORMATION

- If no key operations are made during automatic display, MessageR/F is saved under unread state.
- When MessageR/F is automatically received while displaying the stand-by display, menu or during a voice call (except when using Multiaccess/Multitask), it is automatically displayed.
- In flip style, the content is not displayed regardless of this setting.

MessageR / MessageF

Displaying MessageR/F stored in the FOMA terminal

1 [Envelope] [1] ▶ "MessageR" or "MessageF"

2 Select MessageR/F to display

Deleting : Move the cursor to MessageR/F ▶ [MSG] [1] ▶ [1] - [4] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to MessageR/F.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [Image] . To delete all items, authentication is required.

Protecting/Unprotecting : Move the cursor to MessageR/F ▶ [MSG] [2] ▶ [1] - [5]

MessageR/F is protected/unprotected and the icon changes to [Image] or [Image] .

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them ▶ [Image] .

Displaying by type <Display by type> : [MSG] [3] ▶ [1] - [4]

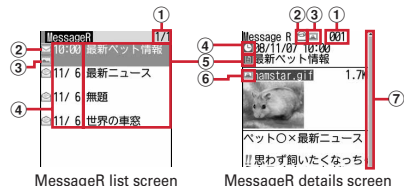
- Protected MessageR/F is not displayed when selecting "Display read only".

Rearranging <Sort> : [MSG] [4] ▶ [1] - [3]

- When a title contains one- and two-byte characters, alphabetic characters, kanji and those displayed with URLs, the sort result "By title" may not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.

Changing font size : Select MessageR/F ▶ [MSG] [6] ▶ [1] - [5]

◆ MessageR/F list/details screen



① Page/Total pages (list screen), MessageR/F No. (details screen)

② Status icon

List screen

[Envelope] : Unread [Image] : Read [Image] : Protected

Details screen

[Image] : Read [Image] : Protected

③ Types of attachment

List screen

[Image] : Image [Image] : Melody [Image] : ToruCa [Image] : Multiple files are attached

Details screen

[Image] : Image [Image] : Melody [Image] : ToruCa [Image] : Multiple files are attached

④ Reception date and time

- For list screen, the time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on the other day.

⑤ Title

⑥ Types of attachment (details)

[Image] : Image [Image] : Image (Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal)

[Image] : Image (Data error) [Image] : Melody

[Image] : Melody (Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal)

[Image] : Melody (Data error) [Image] : ToruCa [Image] : ToruCa (Data error)

⑦ Scroll bar

- If pressing [Image] for 1 second or more when all the lines are not displayed, the current position relative to the whole display appears temporarily. If pressing [Image] [7] on MessageR/F details screen, you can switch display/hide.

◆ Displaying/Saving attachment

<Example> Saving

1 Display the list of MessageR/F

Icon definitions→P161 "MessageR/F list/Details screen"

2 Select MessageR/F with an attached file

3 Move the cursor to a file name ►

The next procedure for image→P178 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

The next procedure for melody→P179 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

- For ToruCa, the selection screen of the saving destination appears. The save destination becomes "ToruCa" of ToruCa when  is pressed and "ToruCa" of microSD card when  is pressed. Only one of the destinations above is enabled for some ToruCa.
- ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbytes can be saved only to microSD card.

Displaying/Playing : Select a file name

- For an image, the image is displayed/hidden.
- ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbytes cannot be displayed.

Displaying title : Move the cursor to a file ►   

- An attached file of image cannot be operated.

✓INFORMATION

- Saving image in the message text or background image :   →  or  → Select the image to save
- For some ToruCa, saving is enabled only once.

Early warning "Area Mail"

This is a service that you can receive emergency earthquake flash report etc. delivered by the Meteorological Agency.

- Area Mail can be received even if you do not subscribe to i-mode.
- Area Mail that could not be received cannot be received later.
- It cannot be received in the cases below.
 - When the power is OFF or out of service area
 - During a voice/videophone call
 - In Omakase Lock or Self mode
 - During accessing Data Center
 - In data transfer mode such as Infrared communication/iC communication/using microSD, etc.
 - In International Roaming
 - While updating software
- It may not be received in the cases below.
 - During a PushTalk session
 - In i-mode communication
 - Packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC
 - Updating pattern definitions
- A reception completion screen or contents display screen does not appear when receiving in the cases below.
 - During a PushTalk session
 - In Public mode (Drive mode)
 - Playing a streaming type i-motion
 - Activating camera
 - During i-appli
 - Sounding alarm

When receiving early warning "Area Mail"

◆ When receiving Area Mail of Earthquake Early Warning

 turns on, the light blinks in red, the dedicated buzzer alarm sound is emitted, the vibrator operates and the contents display screen appears.

- The contents display screen is cleared by pressing any of , , .
- The volume of the buzzer alarm sound is set to "Level 6" in Mail/Msg alert vol. It cannot be changed.
- The vibrator operates with the operating pattern of "Sync melody".
- In Silent mode, FOMA terminal operates according to the setting of Silent mode or Personalized silent mode. Note that, even with Vibrate alert of Personalized silent mode "OFF", vibrator operates in "Sync melody". And, if any item in sound setting of Personalized silent mode is set to other than "Silent", the dedicated buzzer alarm sounds.

◆ When receiving Area Mail except Earthquake Early Warning

 turns on, the light blinks in red, the dedicated Area Mail ring alert sounds, the reception completion screen or contents display screen appears.

- It depends on the setting of the distributor which of the distribution completion screen or the contents display screen appears when receiving an Area Mail.
- The contents display screen is cleared by pressing any of , , , and the reception completion screen is cleared by pressing any key or doing nothing for approximately 15 seconds.
- The volume of the Area Mail ring tone operates according to the alert volume in Mail/Msg alert vol. of Adjust volume.
- The ring time of the Area Mail ring tone operates according to Ring time (sec) of Mail ring alert of Mail/Msg ring alert of Ring alerts & Sounds.
- In Silent mode, FOMA terminal operates depending on the setting of Silent mode or Personalized silent mode. Note that the vibrator operates with the pattern of "Sync melody".

✓ INFORMATION

- Area Mail is saved in the folder of Inbox. Regardless of the memory space of whole Inbox, when exceeding the savable number of Area Mail, the unprotected received Area Mail is overwritten chronologically.

Setting early warning "Area Mail"

◆ Setting if you use Area Mail <Receive setting>

- 1     ▶ Check "Notice" ▶ Select "Use Area Mail function?" field ▶  or  ▶ 

◆ Adding/Deleting Area Mail to use <Receive entry>

- Up to 20 items can be added.
- Receive entry is not required for receiving emergency information (emergency earthquake flash report, disaster/evacuation information) only.

<Example> Save

- 1    
- 2  ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Area Mail name : Enter any name in up to 15 two-byte (30 one-byte) characters.

Message ID : Enter ID of 4 digits provided by the service provider.

Editing : Select Area Mail ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Deleting : Move the cursor to an Area Mail name ▶   ▶ Authenticate

- "Emergency information" saved by default cannot be edited or deleted.

◆ Setting Beep time

- 1     ▶ Enter the time (1-30 seconds) ▶ 

Composing and sending SMS

You can send a character message to a mobile phone number as the destination.

- SMS can be sent to or received from parties using overseas service providers except DOCOMO. For the service areas and overseas service providers, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- Reading received/sent/unsent SMS list/details screen → P149

<Example> Creating/Sending by entering address directly

1   **8**  **1**  **1** ▶ Select the receiver field

2 "Direct input" ▶ Enter a phone number (up to 20 one-byte numeric characters)

- For a destination using an overseas service provider except DOCOMO, you can send SMS after entering 21 characters maximum including "+".
- For a destination using an overseas service provider except DOCOMO, enter "+" (Press  for 1 sec. or more), "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order or enter "010", "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order (Also enter "+" or "010" when replying to SMS from an overseas sender). Omit "0", if any, at the beginning of the mobile phone number.

Entering from mail logs : Select "Sent msg log" or "Received msg log" ▶ Select a log

Entering by searching phonebook : "View phonebook" ▶ Search phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry to send mail

3 Select the message text field ▶ Enter the message text

- The number of characters that can be entered differs depending on Font type in SMS settings.

Inserting signature :  **4**  **6**

4 

- To save SMS without sending it, if pressing  **2**, it is saved in "Unsent" folder and the confirmation screen for pasting Shortcut icon appears.

✓INFORMATION

- When sending is completed correctly, the SMS is saved in a folder of Outbox. When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unprotected sent mails are overwritten chronologically.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, font type or the terminal of the other party, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Line feeds in message text may be replaced with spaces depending on the other party's terminal.
- When Font type is Japanese, if you use one-byte katakana, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly. If you use pictograms,  is replaced with , and each of pictograms except  is replaced with a space.
- When Font type is English and symbols (| ^ { } [] ~ ¥) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. Moreover, symbol (`) can be entered and sent, but it is replaced with a space on the receiver's terminal.
- i-mode mail that failed to be sent is saved in "Unsent" folder.
- If setting SMS report request to "Request" and send SMS, you receive SMS report that notifies you that the other FOMA terminal received SMS. SMS report request is saved in the folder of Inbox.
- Even if Activate/Deactivate of caller ID notification is "Not notify", caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.
- When the memory space of Unsent messages is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, SMS cannot be created. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from the folder of Unsent messages.
- When using 2in1, you cannot send SMS for Number B.

✦Editing/Sending sent or saved SMS

Sent SMS and SMS saved before sending or failed to send can be edited or sent. → P142

When SMS is received

1 Receive SMS

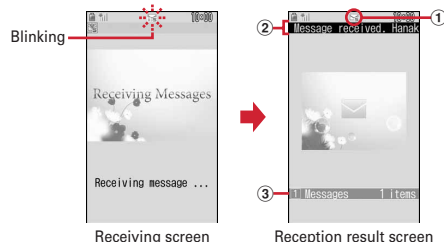
✉ blinks and "Receiving message..." appears.

Mail ring alert sounds, the light turns on or blinks, and the reception result screen appears.

The received SMS is saved in a folder of Inbox.

- While receiving SMS, [✉] : Cancel receiving

May be received depending on the reception conditions.



① Icon

✉ : Unread SMS exists ✉ : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist

② Reception result ticker

③ Number of received SMS

- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen appears, the previous screen automatically reappears.

Reading received SMS immediately : On the reception result screen,

[1] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select SMS

- You can reply to and/or forward received SMS. → P144

When reception has failed

"X" appears on the right side of "Messages" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform check new SMS.

✓ INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or Message/R/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or Message/R/F received last.
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unread or unprotected received mails are overwritten chronologically.
- While receiving i-mode mail, Message/R/F or Area Mail, automatic reception of SMS is unavailable. Perform Check new SMS.
- When SMS is received from parties of overseas service providers except DOCOMO, "+" is prefixed to the mail address of the sender. When the phone number with prefix "+" is saved in phonebook, the name saved in the phonebook entry is displayed.
- When Message scan of Set scan is "Valid", if you receive and try to display SMS with a phone number or URL, a warning message screen appears.
- If there is not enough memory space available because it is filled with unread and protected mails, reception of SMS is stopped and ✉ or ✉ appears on the screen. To receive, you need to display the contents of unread mail, delete or unprotect unnecessary mail.
- If received SMS specified to save to UIM, it is saved directly to UIM. Note that, when the number of SMS saved in UIM has reached 20 items, SMS cannot be received. Delete unnecessary SMS and perform Check new SMS.

Check new SMS

Checking for SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while you were out of service area, the power was turned OFF or other cases.

- If it takes a time to receive or depending on the radio wave conditions, you may not be able to perform Check new SMS from SMS Center.

1 [✉] [8] [1] [5]

Setting SMS

It is usually not necessary to change SMS Center, Address and Type of Number settings.



Font type : Select the font type of the message to send. When "Japanese" is set, up to 70 characters can be entered. When "English" is set, up to 160 one-byte alphanumeric characters (except `、` `[]` `.` `\*` `°`) can be entered.

SMS report request : Select if you request SMS report request of SMS to send.

Keep in SMS center : Select the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS center in cases the receiver cannot receive the SMS.

- When "0 day" is set, SMS is deleted from SMS center after resending of it is repeated for a certain period of time.

SMS Center : Select when using SMS services except DOCOMO.

- When setting to "Others", enter a mail address of up to 20 one-byte characters in Address field.

Type of Number : Select from "International" or "Unknown".

- If selecting "Others" in SMS Center field and setting numbers for Address field. Type of Number needs to be set to "Unknown".

✓INFORMATION

- Operations from SMS creation screen :  **3**

In this case, only SMS report request and Keep in SMS center can be set for SMS that is being created.

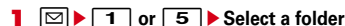
- Settings of Font type, Keep in SMS center, SMS Center and Type of Number are saved in UIM.

SMS saved to UIM

Saving SMS at UIM (FOMA card)

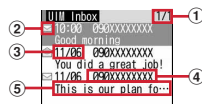
◆ Moving/Copying SMS to UIM

- Unsent SMS cannot be saved in UIM.
- When moving or copying sent SMS, if there are corresponding SMS report requests, they are moved or copied together.
- When protected SMS is moved/copied to UIM, its protection is canceled in the moving/copying destination.



- To move and copy selected items, select them .

◆ Displaying SMS of UIM



- ① Page/Total pages

- ② **Status icon**

✉: Unread (able to reply) ✉: Unread (unable to reply) ✉: Read (able to reply)

*📞 : Read (unable to reply) 📧 : SMS report request, Notify missed call

 : SMS error

- ③ **Sent/Received date and time**

The time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on other than the reception day.

Note that except for sent SMS with SMS report request set, the sent date and time are deleted.

- ④ **Sender/Receiver**

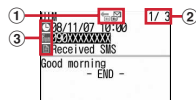
When saved in phonebook, the name is displayed.

⑤ Top of the message

SMS report request is displayed as "SMS report request", Notify missed call as "Notify missed call".

- Read/Unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS of UIM was displayed. The state of read/unread before moving or copying is also carried over.
- For SMS sent from an overseas sender, the sender address is preceded by "+".
- For SMS which contains error, *9 or 9 appears. For SMS with 9 displayed, the reception date/time appears as "-/-" (only on the day of reception), and the sender or the top of the message is not displayed. SMS that 9 is displayed is SMS that detail cannot be displayed.
- When SMS is received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), 9 may appear at the end of the receiving date and time.

2 Select SMS to display



① Icon

Received (able to reply) : Received (unable to reply) : Sent
SMS report request, Notify missed call : SMS of UIM

② Mail No./No. of msgs

③ Icon

Date and time : Receiver : Sender : Sender (unable to reply)
Subject "Received SMS" "Sent SMS" "SMS report request" "Notify missed call"

- When sent SMS is moved or copied to UIM, the sent date and time are deleted from sent SMS of UIM. Note that the sent date and time are displayed in sent SMS with SMS report request set.
- For SMS which contains error, *9 appears instead of 9 and except 9 does not appear.
- When SMS is received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), 9 may appear at the end of the receiving date and time.

Moving/Copying SMS in UIM to FOMA terminal :

① Move the cursor to SMS ▶ [F6] [3] ▶ [1] - [4]

- To move and copy selected items, select them ▶ [6].

② [F6] ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "Yes"

- When moving or copying sent SMS with SMS report request, the corresponding SMS report request is moved or copied to the folder of Inbox together.

Deleting SMS in UIM : Move the cursor to SMS ▶ [F6] [2] ▶ [1] -

[4] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to SMS.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [6]. To delete all items or all SMS report request, authentication is required.
- When deleting sent SMS, the corresponding SMS report request of UIM is deleted together.

✓INFORMATION-----

- From SMS of UIM, you can also reply to or forward, resend, change the font size, save in the phonebook, etc. The operation is the same as that of received/sent SMS.
- When performing reply/forward, resend, etc. from SMS of UIM, sent SMS is saved in a folder of Outbox of FOMA terminal.
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, SMS cannot be moved or copied. Unprotected i-mode mail and/or SMS, if any, are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from folders of Inbox/Outbox.

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel/i-concier

i-mode	170
Displaying a site	
Displaying a site	170
Viewing and operating sites	172
Using My Menu	173
Changing i-mode password	174
Displaying websites	174
Saving web pages or sites for quick access	175
Saving site contents	176
Downloading data such as images and melodies from sites	
Downloading data from sites	177
Uploading image or movie to sites	
Uploading image or movie/i-motion to sites	179
Useful functions of i-mode	
Useful functions of i-mode	180
Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode settings	181

Using Certificate

Operating certificate	183

Using i-motion

i-motion	186
Downloading i-motion from sites	186
Setting whether to play i-motion automatically	187

Using i-Channel

i-Channel	187
Displaying i-Channel	187
Setting i-Channel ticker	188
Resetting i-Channel	188

Using i-concier

i-concier	188
When information is received	189
Displaying i-concier details	189
Setting display for information	189

i-mode

With i-mode, you can use online services such as site (program), Internet or i-mode mail by the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

- i-mode is a charged service requiring subscription.
- For details of i-mode, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

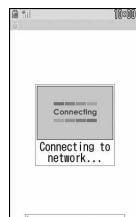
Before using i-mode

- The contents of sites (programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data imported to your i-mode terminal from a site (program) or website cannot be altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- When installing a UIM except yours or you turn ON FOMA terminal without UIM, still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, attached files sent/received by mail (still image, movie, melody, etc.), screen memos and MessageR/F for some models cannot be displayed or played.
- When data with UIM operation restriction is set for the stand-by display or ring alert, replacing UIM with another one or turning the power ON with no UIM installed changes the settings back to the default.

Displaying a site

You can connect to i-mode to view various sites.

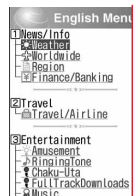
1 1



Blinking while using i-mode

- On the connecting screen, : Canceling saving
- while downloading a page : Stopping downloading a page.
- Items with numbers such as 1 or 2 may be selected by pressing the keypads corresponding to the item (direct key function).

2 "English" ▶ "Menu List"



Scroll bar

- The current position relative to the whole display appears temporarily by scrolling when reading a page is completed or all lines are not displayed during a page appearing.

- You can set whether to display scroll bar. → P172

3 Select an item to view

Display the desired pages using the same procedure.

4 When quitting viewing a site, ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION-----

- Returning to iMenu during site display :  
- When the serial number of your mobile phone/UIIM is required from the website, a confirmation screen for sending appears. When "Yes" is selected, the serial number of your mobile phone/UIIM is sent. Your FOMA terminal serial number and UIIM serial number sent are used by IP (Information Provider) to identify you when providing you with customized information or judging whether the contents provided by IP are available on your mobile phone.

Since the serial number of your mobile phone/UIIM is sent to the IP (Information Provider) via Internet, there is a possibility that it could be captured during transmission by third parties. This operation causes none of your phone number, address, age or gender to be informed to the IP (Information Provider).

- When information about the music played by your mobile phone is required from the website, a confirmation screen for sending music information appears. When "Yes" is selected, the information (title, artist name, play date/time) of the music played by your mobile phone is sent. The music information to be sent is used by the IP (Information Provider) to provide you with customized information etc.
- When displaying a site including an image, the icons below may appear instead of the image.

 : When Set image display is "Not display" in Set image & effect

 : When the image data is invalid or the image cannot be found, or when the image cannot be received because FOMA terminal goes out of service area during image reception

 : When displaying is disabled for an incorrect URL of the image etc.

◆ Connecting to SSL page

Sites compatible with SSL (SSL page) can be displayed.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection when date and time have not been set.
- Establishing SSL sessions may require electronic information called "Certificate" issued by the same certification organization for the connected site and FOMA terminal. →P183
- To connect to FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it on UIIM.

1 Display indication screen of the start of SSL session

 appears at the top of the display.

Displaying certificate while SSL page is displayed :   

- When proceeding from an SSL page to an ordinary page, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to display the ordinary page,  disappears from the top of the display.

◆ Connecting to FirstPass compatible page

1 Select the User Certificate to send ▶ Enter the PIN2 code

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page appears.

- When correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL session is disconnected.

✓INFORMATION-----

- When connecting to an SSL page, certificate selection screen may appear. If it appears, select a certificate to send.
- The packet communication fee charged when connected to the FirstPass compatible page is included in the Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double service, but communicating by connecting to a PC is not included.

◆ Reconnecting to the page displayed before <Browser history>

The URL of sites or websites displayed before is recorded in FOMA terminal. Using Browser history allows you to reconnect quickly to the page displayed before.

- Up to 10 URLs are stored in Browser history of each of i-mode and Full Browser. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1  

2 Select URL

Deleting : Move the cursor to a URL ▶   ▶  -  ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a URL.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Operation from site or website :   
- Some URL may not be accessed or a different website may be displayed.

Viewing and operating sites

The basic operations available during a site display are explained below.

◆ Operation during site display

Selecting linked pages and items : On some sites, the operations below are available.

Linked page

Items used to jump to a related page from the currently displayed page. Placing the cursor on a linked item highlights it.

Character entry field

Select a field to enter characters.

Up to 5,000 two-byte (10,000 one-byte) characters can be entered. Note that types and number of characters to be entered differs by entry field.

Radio button

Select only one item from selections.

☐ : Unselected

☒ : Selected

Check box

Select multiple items from selections.

☐ : Unselected

☒ : Selected

Pulldown menu

When selecting this menu, the selections hidden are displayed.

Button

Determine page settings and send to a site or cancel them. The button name varies by the site.

- For some pulldown menus, multiple items can be selected by repeating the operation of pressing  and selecting items on the selection screen. If you press  after selecting items, the screen where all selected items are displayed reappears.
- Contents entered using character entry field, radio button, check box or pulldown menu are not reflected in saved bookmark, screen memo, etc.

携帯電話情報

IDとパスワードを入力して下さい。

ID:

★あなたの性別

☐ 男性
☒ 女性

★あなたの趣味

☒ 野球
☐ サッカー
☐ ラグビー

★あなたの年齢★

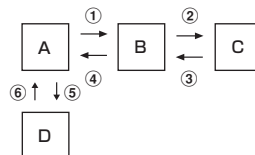
10才以下

決定

Returning/proceeding the pages :

A storage area in the terminal that temporarily stores the display history of pages is called "Cache" and up to 20 items are recorded. Pages recorded in cache can be displayed without communicating by .

- When the terminal cache size has been exceeded or when displaying a page which has been set to forcibly read the latest information, communications are started.
- This function is unavailable while FirstPass center is being connected (→P184).
- When displaying Page A→B→C in that order (①, ②), return to Page A (③, ④), and proceed to Page D (⑤), the display history of Page A→B→C is erased. You can return to Page A from Page D (⑥) but cannot again return to Page B (①).



- Information such as entered characters or settings is not stored in the cache.
- When terminating i-mode, all display history entries are deleted.
- The procedure for operating page may differ when Flash graphics are displayed.
- When the page recorded in cache is Full Browser, a confirmation screen for switching to Full Browser appears when displaying the page.

Scrolling the screen up and down :

- Operation is available when  or  is displayed on the guide line.
- Press  or  to scroll the screen by pages.
- Hold down , , or  to scroll continuously.

Reloading information of the page :

Displaying the URL of the currently displayed site :

- When operating from Browser history list, Entry URL log list, Bookmark list, Access shortcuts list or Screen memo list, press .

Displaying/Hiding the scroll bar :

- Each time you press the key, display/not display is switched.
- When operating from the screen memo display screen, press   .

◆ Displaying Flash graphics

Flash graphics can be displayed on FOMA terminals. Flash graphics enhances the expressive power of the site.

- Flash graphics are not displayed when Set image display of Image & Effect is "Not display".
- While Flash graphics are displayed, the operations may differ from ordinary sites.
- Some Flash graphics may not be operated even when  is displayed on the guide area.
- When saving Flash graphics in Data Box, Screen memo or microSD card, it may vary its look on the saving destination.
- Even when Flash graphics are displayed, it may not operate correctly, or may not be saved if an error occurs while being played.
- Some Flash graphics have sound effects. The volume follows the setting of Melody effect sound in Adjust volume. To disable sound effects, set Sound effect setting of Image&Effect setting to "OFF". Note that the sound effect of the Flash graphics set for the stand-by display or incoming call screen is not emitted.
- Even if Vibrate alert/effect is "Sync melody", it is not synchronized with the sound effects of Flash graphics. Note that, even when set to "OFF", FOMA terminal may vibrate.
- If not operating for 1 minute or more during replaying, it pauses. To resume to replay, press the keys except for , , , , , ,  or .
- To play Flash graphics again, press , , .
- When Flash graphics are not set within the display, they start to be played at the time when they are set within the display by scrolling.
- Some Flash graphics may use terminal data. You can set whether to use terminal data from Use phone information of Image & Effect.

My Menu

Using My Menu

You can register frequently accessed sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the site next time.

- Up to 45 items can be registered. To register, i-mode password is required.
- When submitting an application to a pay site, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.
- Only i-mode sites can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu.

◆ Subscribing to a site in My Menu

1 Display a site ▶ "マイメニュー登録"

- The page structure varies by the site. Press the keypad corresponding to the item or select the applicable item.

2 Select the i-mode password entry field ▶ Enter the i-mode password ▶ Select "決定 (OK)"

- The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.

◆ Displaying sites from My Menu

1 ▶ "English" ▶ "My Menu" ▶ Select a site to display

Change i-mode password

Changing i-mode password

Your i-mode password is required to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to or cancel Message Service and i-mode pay sites, or make mail settings. i-mode password is set to "0000" by default. Change it to another 4 unique numbers for the sake of safety. Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- If you forget your i-mode password, it is reset to "0000" at the DCOMO Shop after checking your official certification (e.g. a driver's license).

1   **"English" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Change i-mode Password" ▶ Select Current Password field ▶ Enter the current i-mode password**

2 **Select New Password field ▶ Enter a new i-mode password**

3 **Select New Password (Confirmation) field ▶ Enter the i-mode password entered in Step 2 ▶ "Select"**

Go to location

Displaying websites

You can connect to the Internet and access i-mode compatible websites. Specify websites by entering the address (URL) to connect to.

1   

- From the second time, the URL previously entered for connection appears.

2 **Enter a URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) ▶ **

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from site or website :   
- During website display, press    and select "Yes" to display with Full Browser. Note that some websites may not be displayed correctly if switched to Full Browser.

◆ Displaying pages using Entry URL log <Entry URL log>

URLs of websites connected by entering URL are recorded in FOMA terminal. Use this URL history to connect to websites.

- Up to 20 URLs are stored in the Entry URL log of each of i-mode and Full Browser. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1   

2 **Select the URL of website**

Deleting : Move the cursor to a URL ▶     ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a URL.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from site or website :   

◆ Displaying characters correctly <Switch encode>

When characters of sites or websites do not appear correctly, they may appear correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is an encoding scheme developed for making characters available on computers.

1 **While displaying site or website,    **

- Each press changes the character encoding in the order of Auto switch→SJIS→EUC→JIS→UTF8. Press     to switch to "Auto switch".
- When displaying a site or website, "Auto switch" is set.

Saving web pages or sites for quick access

You can register frequently visited websites in Bookmark and thereafter display them simply by selecting bookmarks.

- The number of characters that can be registered for URL in Bookmark is 256 one-byte characters for i-mode and 512 one-byte characters for Full Browser. URLs of some site or website cannot be registered in Bookmark.

◆ Registering in bookmark

1 Display the site or website ▶ [2] [1] ▶ Select a folder to register to

2 Enter the title (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters) ▶

- If you register the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed on the bookmark list.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Operation from the list of Browser history, Entry URL log, Screen memo : → "Add bookmark"

◆ Displaying site or website from Bookmark

1 [2] ▶ Select a folder

- Icon definitions.
 - : No bookmark : Bookmark exists
 - : No bookmark (Secrecy ON)
 - : Bookmark exists (Secrecy ON)
- To delete all bookmarks, on the folder list, [4] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes".

2 Select a bookmark

Icon definitions→P176 Step 3 in "Registering bookmarks in Access shortcuts"

Editing a title : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶

The next procedure→P175 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

Deleting : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶ [3] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a bookmark.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- If you delete a bookmark registered as Access shortcut, Access shortcut is also canceled.

Rearranging <Sort> : [6] ▶ [1] - [4]

All bookmarks in the folder are sorted temporarily.

- When a title contains one- and two-byte characters, alphabetic characters, kanji and those displayed with URLs, the sort result "By title" may not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶ [9]

✓INFORMATION-----

- Operation from site or website : [2] [2]

◆ Creating/Deleting folders

- Up to 20 folders can be created for each i-mode and Full Browser.
- The default "Bookmark" folder cannot be deleted. Also, Folder settings cannot be changed.

<Example> Create

1 [2]

2 [1]

Changing a folder setting : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [3]

Changing the order of folders : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [7] or [8]

Deleting : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [2] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

3 Set required items ▶

Folder name : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Secrecy : Set whether to display a folder in Privacy mode (when a Bookmark is set to "Hide secrecy fldrs").

✓INFORMATION-----

- If setting Secrecy of the folder containing a bookmark registered to Access shortcuts to "ON", a confirmation screen for canceling Access shortcuts appears.

◆ Connecting to sites or websites using simple key sequence <Access shortcuts>

When registering a bookmark as access shortcut, you can quickly display the site or website from the stand-by display.

❖ Registering bookmarks in Access shortcuts

- You can register 1 bookmark for each keypad, up to 10 bookmarks in total for i-mode and Full Browser.
- Bookmark in a folder that Secrecy is "ON" cannot be registered.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶

Canceling : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶  

3 Select a destination to register

The icon numbers (-) correspond to the keypads (-) used for Access shortcuts.

- On the bookmark list, the icon for the registered bookmark switches from  to .
- When a destination already registered is selected, overwriting confirmation screen appears.

❖ Displaying site or website using Access shortcuts

1 - ▶

A site or website corresponding to the keypad appears.

❖ Operating from Access shortcuts list

<Example> Registering shortcut

1

2 Move the cursor to Not recorded ▶

Displaying sites : Select a bookmark

Canceling : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶   ▶ "Yes"

3 "i-mode" or "Full Browser" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a bookmark to register

For the bookmark of Full Browser registered as access shortcut,  appears on the access shortcut list.

✓ INFORMATION

- A bookmark of Full Browser can be displayed on Full Browser using Access shortcuts or connecting from Access shortcuts list.

◆ Moving bookmark

You can move saved bookmarks to another folder.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶ ▶ -

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .

3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to

- If you try to move a shortcut-registered bookmark to a folder with Secrecy set to "ON", a confirmation screen for canceling Access shortcuts appears.

Screen memo

Saving site contents

Site screens in a display can be saved as screen memo.

◆ Saving screen memo

- The maximum size of screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.

1 Display a site ▶

2 Enter the title (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters) ▶

- If you register the screen memo without a title, "No title" appears in the screen memo list.

Setting a screen memo to Shortcut icon : 

◆ Displaying screen memo

1 3

- Icon definitions
 : Ordinary screen memo  : Protected screen memo
- The bar indicating the usage rate of the memory space appears at the top of the display.

2 Select screen memo

- Operation on the screen memo display screen is the same as during site display with some exceptions.

Editing a title : Move the cursor to a screen memo 

The next procedure→P176 Step 2 in "Saving screen memo"

Protecting/unprotecting : Move the cursor to a screen

memo     

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them .
- The icon of the protected/unprotected screen memo changes to  or .
- Deleting :** Move the cursor to a screen memo                                  

Saving all at once :

① **Display a site** ► ► "Yes"

② **Move the cursor to the saving destination** ►

To save to microSD card, see Step 3.

Saving a background image : **Display a site** ►

2 Set required items

- Some items may not be selected depending on the image.
- For images that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal ("File restricted" appears in File restriction), items except Display name cannot be changed.

Display name : Up to 36 characters can be entered.

File name : Up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, " . ", " - " or " _ " can be entered. " . " is unavailable for the first character of the file name.

Comment : Up to 100 characters can be entered.

Use as frame : Set whether to enable the image to be pasted as a frame.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) sizes larger than 480×864 cannot be set as frame option.

Use as stamp : Set whether to enable the image to be pasted as a stamp.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) sizes larger than 480×864 cannot be set as stamp option.

File restriction : Set if you set restriction of transfer from the receiver mobile phone to another mobile phone for a file sent by mail attachment.

- You cannot change File restriction for images downloaded from sites.

3 ► Select a destination to save

- Images satisfying all of the conditions below are saved to "Deco-mail pict" folder.
 - Size of 20×20 and 90 Kbytes or smaller
 - Mail attachment or output from FOMA terminal are enabled
 - JPEG or GIF format
- Images with extension "ifm" are saved in "Item" folder.
- When " is displayed in the guide area, pressing and saves it to "My Picture", "Other image" or "Deco-mail pict" in microSD card. →P301
- To save to FOMA terminal, press and - to set to stand-by display etc. →P290

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from the screen memo display screen : → -
- When displaying a site including an image wider than the screen size, the image size is reduced.
- Images larger than 480×864in GIF format or 1,944×2,592 in JPEG format cannot be saved in FOMA terminal. Some JPEG images may not be saved.

◆ Downloading data

- Data that can be downloaded and the saving destination are as described below.

Data (file) type	Save to	
	FOMA terminal	microSD card
Melody (SMF/MFI format)*1→P298	"i-mode" folder of Melody	"Melody" folder
PDF data*2→P316	"i-mode" folder of My Document	"My Document" folder
Dictionary→P356	"DL dictionary" of Text input	—
Chara-den*3→P298	"i-mode" folder of Chara-den	—
ToruCa→P269	"ToruCa" of ToruCa content	"ToruCa" folder
Kisekai Tool*2→P103	"i-mode" folder of Kisekai Tool	—
Font→P106	"Font style" of Font & Language	—
Machi-chara*2→P102, 297	"i-mode" folder of Machi-chara	—
Schedule/i-schedule*4→P326	Scheduler	—

*1 Up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters can be entered for a display name.

*2 Up to 36 characters can be entered for a display name.

*3 Up to 36 characters for a display name and up to 100 characters for comment can be entered.

*4 You need to subscribe to i-concier to download.

1 Display a site ▶ Select data to download

- If a password is set for PDF data, a password entry screen appears. Enter the password and press .

2 "Save"

- For some data types, a display name or comment entry field is displayed on the save screen. Set required items and press  to save. When "i" appears in the guide area, press  and  to save to microSD card.
- For some data types, data can be checked by selecting "Display", "Play" or "Preview".
- To cancel saving, "Back" ▶ Select "No".

Saving PDF data :

- ①   ▶ Enter a display name ▶ 

- To download the remaining part of the PDF data partially downloaded, press  .

- ②  ▶ "Yes"

Saving a dictionary/font : "Save" ▶ 

Saving ToruCa : "Save" ▶  or 

✓INFORMATION-----

- When downloading of PDF data, Kisekai Tool or Machi-chara is stopped or communication is interrupted, a confirmation screen for resuming it may appear. When selecting "No", a confirmation screen for partial saving appears when it is available. The rest of partially saved data can be downloaded from each saving destination.
- When saving melodies, Kisekai Tool or Machi-chara to FOMA terminal, press  on the save screen to set it as call alert etc. Note that the set data is saved to FOMA terminal.
- If you try to download the PDF data exceeding 500 Kbytes, downloading confirmation screen appears.
- PDF data with total size of i-mode bookmarks and marks exceeding 100 Kbytes or with unknown size or PDF data inapplicable to this FOMA terminal cannot be downloaded.
- When the same PDF data with different i-mode bookmarks or marks is downloaded again, they are additionally saved. If the number of i-mode bookmarks or marks exceeds 10, a screen appears indicating that the recordable number is exceeded. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete i-mode bookmarks or marks until the number of items becomes lower than the limit.
- If stopping saving of i-schedule, it may be saved partially. To download it again, delete the partially saved i-schedule.

Uploading image or movie/i-motion to sites

You can upload the images of JPEG or GIF format or movie/i-motion of MP4 format saved in FOMA terminal or microSD card to a site or website.

- The file size of an image or movie/i-motion that can be uploaded is 2,048 Kbytes, and when multiple images or character strings are included, it is 2,128 Kbytes.

1 Displaying site or website ▶ "Browse"

- "View" appears when image or movie/i-motion can be uploaded. If browsing the same site or website with a PC etc, it is displayed in different icon.

2 Select File format ▶ Select a file

- When microSD card is installed, select "Phone memory" or "microSD".
- To change or cancel the selected image, press "View" again and select "Change" or "Cancel".

✓INFORMATION-----

- Uploading method or files that can be uploaded vary by site or website.
- Data except still images, movie/i-motion or character strings cannot be uploaded. And, images or movie/i-motion prohibited to output from FOMA terminal cannot be uploaded.
- Movie/i-motion of ASF format or those partially downloaded cannot be uploaded.

Useful functions of i-mode

- Some functions may not be used in certain sites or websites.

◆ Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/SMS To/Web To/Media To function

1 Display a site or website ▶ Move the cursor to a phone number, mail address, URL or 1Seg watching information

- Only the information which the cursor can be placed on can be selected.

2

Phone To (AV Phone To) :

You can make a call under set conditions. →P64

Mail To :

The i-mode mail to the selected mail address can be created and sent. →P134

SMS To : Select Call type ▶  ▶  ▶ "Yes"

SMS to the selected phone number can be created and sent. →P164

Web To :

A site or website is connected.

- When a URL is selected from message text etc., a confirmation screen for connecting to a site appears. When "FBrowser" appears in the guide area of the confirmation screen; press  to make connection using Full Browser.

Media To :

You can watch 1Seg or make watching/recording reservation. →P216, 222

✓INFORMATION

- When multiple addresses are listed, Mail To function may not be used correctly.

◆ Copying URL

You can copy URL from the currently displayed site, website or screen memo. Copied characters can be pasted in the fields in the mail creation screen or phonebook data entry screen.

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF and they can be pasted any number of times.

<Example> Copying URL of a site

1 Display URL of a site ▶

Displaying URL →P172

2 Select a copying area

Copying/Pasting method →P355

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from Browser history list, Entry URL log list, Access shortcuts list or Screen memo list :  → "Copy URL".
Operation from bookmark list :  → "URL disp/type/copy" → "Copy URL"
If you operate from those screens, the entire URL is copied.

◆ Attaching URL to i-mode mail

You can send i-mode mail with attaching URL or website from the currently displayed site.

1 Displaying site ▶

◆ Saving a phone number and mail address to phonebook

Phone number or mail address that the cursor can be placed on the current screen (site, screen memo) can be saved.

- You can save the data except displayed item in some sites.

<Example> Saving the phone number displayed on the site screen

1 Display a site

2 Move the cursor to a phone number ▶ ▶ or ▶ or

Phonebook new entry →P82

- To update and add, select a phonebook entry to update.

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from the screen memo display screen :   →  or 

◆ Adding URL to phonebook

You can register URL from bookmark list, Screen memo list, etc.

<Example> Registering URL from bookmark list

- 1 2 ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶ 7 ▶ 1 or 2

Phonebook new entry→P82

- To update and add, select a phonebook entry to update.

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from URL display screen of Browser history : → 2 or 3
- Operation from Screen memo list : 7 → 1 or 2

◆ Using location information

You can select a link item of a location information on the current screen (site, screen memo or MessageR/F) to view a map, activate GPS-compatible i-αppli or make mail attachment.

- You can also send Location info by selecting a link for sending Location info. → P275 "■ Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

<Example> Viewing a map from a link item of location information on site screen

- 1 Display a site ▶ Select a location info
- 2 Select "Read map" ▶ "OK"

GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select Map in Map setting starts.

Starting GPS compatible i-αppli : "Map/GPS αppli" ▶ Select i-αppli ▶ "OK"

Using GPS compatible i-αppli → P276

Attaching location information to mail : "Paste to mail" ▶ "OK"

i-mode settings

Making i-mode settings

Various functions about i-mode communication can be set.

- The settings below are also effective for Full Browser.
 - Connection timeout
 - Host selection
 - Display light time
 - Manage certificate
 - Skip password

◆ Setting connection time out <Connection timeout>

Set the timeout for connection with the i-mode Center. If connection is not normally established, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time.

- 1 8 2 ▶ 1 - 3

✓INFORMATION

- If you set "Unlimited", connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to radio wave conditions etc.
- This setting also applies to Connection timeout of Data broadcasting.

◆ Changing host (ISP connection communication) <Host selection>

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

ISP connection communication

You can connect to the various providers (ISP) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DOCOMO. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Note that, packet communication fee for ISP connection is not covered by the Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double service. Please be forewarned.
- You cannot make settings or changes for the host during communication.

Provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to the provider to use ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details of service such as site, Internet connection, mail function.

- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DOCOMO never charges you for it.
- Your phone number may be notified to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.

1

2 Move the cursor to User setting

Restoring settings for using i-mode : "i-mode(UIM)"

Changing to the previously set host : Select the host

3 Authenticate ▶ Set required items

- You can delete all the contents entered for the items all at once by pressing .

Host name : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Host number : Up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address : Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address2 : Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

- Host address 2 is the host for i-Channel.

4 Select the edited host

✓INFORMATION

- When host is changed, i-Channel information is restored to the default setting and the i-Channel ticker does not appear on the stand-by display. When the i-Channel list appears by pressing on the stand-by display, the latest information is received and a ticker also appears.
- If you change the host, the program settings of the Music&Video Channel is initialized and the program cannot be obtained automatically. If you select "Set program" on Music&Video Channel screen, the setting confirmation screen appears, and if you select "Yes", the program setting information is received and the program can be obtained automatically.
- When Host number or Host address is changed, Auto-send settings are canceled.
- When the host is changed while using 2in1, i-Channel ticker for each mode is reset to the default settings.

◆ Setting Display light time

You can set the lighting time for displaying a page of a site, website, screen memo, MessageR/F or i-Channel.

1 ▶ or

- When "Terminal setting" is set, this operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from a site, website or the screen memo display screen : → "Display" → "Display light time"
- This setting is also used for Display light time (i-mode session) of Display & Key light.

◆ Setting image display and sound effect <Image & Effect>

You can set an image or Flash graphics sound effect to be used when displaying a site, screen memo, MessageR/F, 1Seg data broadcasting site, etc., and sound effect for 1Seg data broadcasting and data broadcasting sites.

1 ▶ Set required items

Set image display : Set whether to display image.

- When "Not display" is set, appears instead of image, Flash graphics or GIF animation.

- When "Display" is set, Animation and Use phone information can be set.

Animation : Set whether to display GIF animation.

- When "Not display" is set, the first image of the GIF animation appears.

Use phone information : Set whether to use data saved in FOMA terminal for displaying Flash graphics.

- Cannot be set from Image & Effect of 1Seg.

Sound effect setting : Set whether to play sound effect of Flash graphics or data broadcasting, or data broadcasting site.

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from site, the screen memo display screen : → "Display" → "Set Image & Effect"
- Operation from the screen displaying data broadcasting :
- Operation of Sound effect setting from the i-Channel list display :
- When Set image display is set to "Not display", the images attached to received i-mode mail using the Web To function cannot be saved or displayed either.
- The image settings do not apply to images attached as attached files or those in text of MessageR/F and data feed.
- Sound effect setting does not apply to MessageR/F.
- If you set Use phone information to "Yes", the battery level, received signal level, time information, Melody effect sound in Adjust volume, Select language and model information may be sent to IPs (Information Providers), causing such information to be known by the third party.

Operating certificate

You can perform the operation of the certificate required for the SSL session.

◆ Displaying certificate and setting certificate validity/invalidity <Manage certificate>

- The certificates below are required for connecting to SSL page.
CA Certificate : The certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.
DOCOMO Cert : A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass center or FirstPass compatible sites. It is saved in the UIM by default.
User Certificate : A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites. It proves that you subscribe to FOMA service. After requesting a certificate to be issued by FirstPass center and downloading it, the certificate is saved in the UIM.
Original certificate : A certificate issued from a company, local government, etc. It is saved to FOMA terminal after being downloaded. The downloaded certificate can be used at supported sites.
- If blue UIM is installed in FOMA terminal, certificates except CA Certificate do not appear.

<Example> Setting validity/invalidity

1

- Icon definitions.

: CA certificate : DOCOMO Cert/User certificate
 : Original certificate : Original certificate without chain
 : Valid certificate

2 ▶ Select the certificate to set ▶

- DOCOMO Cert2 cannot be set.

Displaying : Select the certificate

- Selecting Original certificate displays the Original certificate list. Select a certificate to view.

✓INFORMATION

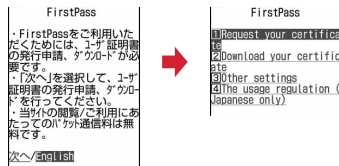
- Certificate contents displayed
User
CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name or discrimination number
O= : (Organization) Company name etc.
C= : (Country) Country name
Issued by
CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name or discrimination number
OU= : (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company etc.
O= : (Organization) Company name etc.
Expiration date
Serial number
- For a certificate with owner, issuer and/or expiration date items left blank, only their item names are displayed.

◆ Setting FirstPass <Certificate download>

Connect to the FirstPass center, request to issue the user certificate and download it.

- Screens for FirstPass center connection or operations are subject to change.
- Mails cannot be sent/received and MessageR/F cannot be received during connection to the FirstPass center.
- You cannot use this function overseas.

1 8 5 2 ▶ "English"



2 "Request your certificate" ▶ "Continue" ▶ Enter PIN2 code

The completion screen appears and the user certificate is issued.

Revoking the issued user certificate : "Other settings" ▶ "Revoke your certificate" ▶ Select the certificate to send ▶ Enter PIN2 code ▶ "OK" ▶ "Next" ▶ "OK"

- If PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the application for issuance is canceled.

3 "Download" ▶ "Continue"

The completion screen appears and the user certificate is downloaded.

- Downloaded user certificates can be viewed in "Manage certificate".→P183

✓INFORMATION

- No packet communication fee applies for connection to FirstPass center.
- FirstPass can be used on Full Browser.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DOCOMO's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass is available for Internet communication from a FOMA terminal and Internet communication in the condition the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is required. For details, refer to 簡易操作マニュアル (Manual for simple use) in CD-ROM. To view 簡易操作マニュアル (Manual for simple use) (PDF format), Adobe® Reader® is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".
- Before requesting a user certificate, read "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code. All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Take extreme care not to let UIM or PIN2 code used incorrectly by any third party.
- If UIM is misplaced or stolen, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.
- In any circumstances DOCOMO assumes no obligation nor responsibility for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DOCOMO nor certification organizations provides any guarantee for security etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

◆ Downloading original certificate

- Up to 5 items of original certificate, up to 10 items of root certificate and intermediate certificate in total, 35 Kbytes in total can be saved.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a certificate

- while downloading : Stopping download

2 "Save"

- Downloaded certificates can be viewed in "Manage certificate".→P183
- When password entry is requested, enter the password to the password entry field and select "OK".

Canceling saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

✓INFORMATION-----

- Original certificates are issued by companies or local governments, etc. Downloaded certificates can be used at compatible sites.
- Original certificates are also available for Full Browser.
- A packet communication fee is required for downloading original certificates.
- If blue UIM is installed in FOMA terminal, Original certificate cannot be downloaded.

◆ Changing certificate control name

You can change the control name of a downloaded original certificate.

1 8 5 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a certificate ▶

2 Enter the name (up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters) ▶

Restoring to the control name used when downloading :

◆ Deleting Certificate

You can delete original certificates downloaded.

1 8 5 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a certificate ▶ ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

◆ Skipping password entries <Skip password>

To use an original certificate, enter terminal security code for authentication. You can set whether to skip entry of terminal security code to reuse the original certificate already authenticated.

1 8 5 4 ▶ 1 or 2

◆ Changing certificate host <Certificate host>

If you use services except the FirstPass, set the host for certificate. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

1 8 5 3

2 Select Host field ▶ 2

Restoring a connection to FirstPass : Select host field ▶ 1 ▶

3 Set required items ▶

User host : Enter up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters for the host.

User host URL : Enter up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters for URL.

i-motion

You can save and play downloaded movie and sound from a site or website. Saved movie and sound can be played as i-motion or set as Chaku-motion (→P91).

- i-motion is categorized into 2 types, as below.

Type	Playing action
Normal type (can be saved*)	Play while downloading i-motion data (up to 10 Mbytes). After completion of receiving, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as i-motion to be played after downloading all data. Play after downloading all i-motion data (up to 10 Mbytes).
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Play while downloading i-motion data (up to 10 Mbytes). Delete i-motion data after playing.

* Some i-motion may not allow saving.

Downloading i-motion from sites

1 Display a site ▶ Select an i-motion

Downloading starts, and when completed, completion screen appears.

- During downloading, press  and select "Yes" to stop downloading.
For i-motion of a size between 500 Kbytes and 10 Mbytes that can be partially saved, the confirmation for restarting appears. Select "No" to display a confirmation screen for partial saving. You can download the rest of partially saved data from i-motion list.→P293 INFORMATION in "Playing movie/i-motion"
- When a streaming type i-motion is selected, a playing confirmation screen appears.

- The operations below can be performed when playing i-motion that can be played while being downloaded. After completion of playing, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as i-motions to be played after downloading all data.

 : Pause/Play (normal type)

 /  : Adjust volume

 : Streaming type is interrupted by selecting "Yes" on the confirmation screen, and Normal type is stopped (Pressing  while stopped plays the i-motion from the beginning)

 : Switch horizontal and vertical displays (for an image size of 320×240, horizontal display (full-screen)→horizontal display (wide-screen)→vertical display)

 **1** : Switch to horizontal display

 **2** : Display detail information

Detail information→P310

* Even when pausing or stopping the play, the data download continues.

- Key operations (except ) for playing i-motion to be played after downloading the data→P292 Step 3 in "Playing movie/i-motion"

2 "Save"

- i-motion of streaming type cannot be saved.

Replaying : "Play"

Displaying detail information : "File property"

Detail information→P310

Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

- For streaming type i-motion, if you select "Back", the site screen reappears.

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ▶

Selected items are saved to "i-mode" folder of i-motion.

- When  is displayed in the guide area, pressing  and  saves data without file restriction to "Movie" folder (i-motion with only sound to "Other movie" folder) in microSD card. Move the cursor to the saving destination folder in "Movie" folder in microSD card and press  to save data with file restriction to the selected folder.
- To save to FOMA terminal, press  and **1** - **5** to set to the stand-by display etc.→P294

✓INFORMATION

- Only i-motion files in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and/or played. Downloading or playing of i-motion files in ASF format is disabled.
- Even if ticker (text) is included in i-motion, the text cannot be played.
- The replay restrictions such as number of times or expiration of playing may be set for i-motion files.
- When i-motion is played while the data is being downloaded, play may be temporarily stopped in waiting for data reception. The playing is automatically resumed when data reception starts.
- When i-motion is played while the data is being downloaded, it may become unable to play, or image may be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. i-motion can be played after the download if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion allow download of data but are not played correctly.
- If i-motion is improper, download may be canceled.
- Even when Ring alert or Receive display is displayed as "Available" in detail information (→P310) before saving i-motion used from i-appli, it may not be saved. In this case, it cannot be set to ring alert or incoming call image.
- When playing streaming type i-motion while the data is being downloaded, if you fold FOMA terminal or a call comes in or the set date/time of watching reservation of 1Seg, alarm clock or schedule comes, downloading is interrupted and the playing is stopped. When playing normal type i-motion while the data is being downloaded, if you fold FOMA terminal, the playing is stopped but download continues.
- When exceeding the savable number/area→P312

i-motion

Setting whether to play i-motion automatically

You can set whether to automatically play normal type i-motion during or after downloading.

- 1    ▶ Select Auto replay setting field ▶  or  ▶ 

✓INFORMATION

- Operation from site screen :   
- Even when "Auto Play Off" is set, i-motion can be played by selecting "Play" on the download completion screen.
- For streaming type i-motion, a playing confirmation screen appears regardless of this setting.

i-Channel

(In Japanese only)

This is a service that the information such as news or weather is distributed to terminals compatible with i-Channel. It can automatically receive information and show the latest information as a ticker on the stand-by display or display on the channel list by pressing  (Displaying the channel list→P187).

And, there are 2 types; the one is "Basic Channel" provided by DOCOMO and the other is "Okonomi (Favorite) channel" provided by IPs (Information Providers). For "Basic Channel", the packet communication fee for updating the distributed information is not charged. For "Okonomi (Favorite) channel" that you can use by registering your favorite channels, the packet communication fee for updating information is charged. Note that, when viewing detail information for "Basic Channel" and "Okonomi (Favorite) channel", packet communication fee is charged separately. When using international roaming service, packet communication fee is charged for both automatic update and viewing detail information.

- i-Channel is a charged service requiring subscription (i-mode subscription is required for the service).
- For details of i-Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Displaying i-Channel

By displaying i-Channel, you can view details of information of the current ticker display.

- 1  

- When setting movie/i-motion or i-appli on the stand-by display, press   .

- 2 Select a channel

The site is connected and the detail information appears.

✓INFORMATION

- While receiving information,  keeps blinking.
- When information is received, none of the ring alert, vibrator, light operates.

- In the cases below, when the i-Channel list appears by pressing **[CLR]** on the stand-by display, the latest information is received and a ticker appears.
 - When the information cannot be received as FOMA terminal is turned OFF or out of service area
 - When moving UIM to another i-Channel compatible terminal
 - When changing the host→P181
 - When initializing i-Channel→P188
- When the i-Channel or i-mode service is canceled, no ticker appears; pressing **[CLR]** displays a screen for non-subscribers. However, before the procedure for cancellation is completed, a ticker may appear and pressing **[CLR]** may display the last information received in the i-Channel list.
- Operating Flash graphics again while displaying i-channel list : **[NE] 1**
- Under some usage conditions, information may be received when displaying the i-Channel list.

i-Channel ticker

Setting i-Channel ticker

1 **[iA]** **7** **2** ▶ Set required items ▶ **[iA]**

✓INFORMATION

- When movie/i-motion or i-appli is set for the stand-by display, if you try to set Show ticker of this function to "Yes", a confirmation screen for clearing the stand-by display settings appears.
- When the i-mode service is canceled before canceling the i-Channel service, Show ticker of this function remains set to "Yes".
- When using 2in1, i-Channel ticker can be set for each mode.

Reset i-Channel

Resetting i-Channel

You can reset i-Channel to default states.

1 **[iA]** **7** **3** ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- After i-Channel is reset, no ticker appears on the stand-by display. When the i-Channel list appears by pressing **[CLR]** on the stand-by display, the latest information is received and a ticker also appears on the stand-by display.
- When using 2in1, initialization is required for each mode.

i-concier

i-concier is a service that a character on the stand-by display (Machi-Chara) serves your life like "Concierge".

Using i-concier, you can receive information about train services or daily life etc., download Schedule/i-schedule, and keep or update phonebook, ToruCa and Schedule/i-schedule etc.

- i-concier is a charged service requiring subscription (Subscription is required subscription of i-mode).
- If you do not subscribe Data Security Service (→P128), when you subscribe i-concier, you subscribe Data Security Service, too.
- There are 2 types of information; the one is provided by DOCOMO and the other is provided by IP (Information Provider). For the information provided by DOCOMO, a packet communication fee for receiving is not charged. For the information provided by IP (Information Provider), a packet communication fee is required for receiving separately.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to use detail information.
- When using international roaming service, a packet communication fee is charged for both receiving and viewing detail information. When using overseas, a packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.
- Information fee may be required additionally for some contents (information, i-schedule, etc.) besides i-concier monthly service fee.
- Automatic updating i-schedule/ToruCa/phonebook requires a packet communication fee separately.
- For details of i-concier, refer to "Mobile Phone Users Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Downloading Schedule/i-schedule→P178

Receiving information

When information is received

When FOMA terminal is in service area, information is sent automatically.

- Received information is saved up to 50 items in the information list of i-concier.

When exceeding the limit, items are overwritten chronologically.

1 Information is received

 or  lights, the light is turned on or blinks, and i-concier ring alert sounds then the information is displayed.

- When multiple pieces of information are received,  or  blinks.
- When information is selected, information list of i-concier or a linked site is displayed or the screen displayed before receiving information reappears depending on information.
- Press  or  to return to the screen displayed before receiving information.
- When multiple pieces of information are received, the latest piece appears on stand-by display.

✓INFORMATION

- When Information display is set to "Not display", the information is not displayed.
- For some information,  or  lights, the light is turned on or blinks, and i-concier ring alert does not sound.
- When information is received during another operation, the terminal acts according to Display priority of mail. When "Show message" is selected, a message indicating that information arrived appears.
- While information is displayed, Power saved mode is canceled temporarily.

Displaying i-concier details

You can display details of received information and display Scheduler or ToruCa of FOMA terminal from i-concier menu easily.

<Example> Displaying details of information

1 [i-concier]

The i-concier information list is displayed.

2 Select a piece of information

- Some information pieces may have schedule or ToruCa attached or contain a link to a site that provides more detailed or related information. To view the content, select an icon.
- When a schedule or ToruCa menu is selected by pressing , Scheduler or ToruCa of FOMA terminal can be displayed.

Information display

Setting display for information

You can set whether to display information on the stand-by display when i-concier information is received.

1 [Settings & NW services] or

- When movie/i-motion or i-appli is set to stand-by display and "Display" is selected, a confirmation screen for canceling the stand-by display settings appears.

Displaying web pages designed for PC	Full Browser	192
Setting Full Browser		196

Displaying web pages designed for PC

You can connect to Internet to view websites created for a PC.

- Communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing many images and downloading require high charges. For details of packet communication fees and charging plans, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- You can also operate from flip style.→P40

<Example> Connecting to website at specified address (URL)

1

2 ▶ Enter a URL (up to 512 one-byte characters) ▶

- When Access setting is set to "No", a confirmation screen appears asking to use Full Browser.→P196
- From the second time, the URL previously connected appears.
- Press or to stop connecting or to stop connecting with multiple windows.

Connecting to Home :

Displaying from bookmark : ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a bookmark to display

Connecting from Entry URL log : ▶ Select a URL

Operation from Entry URL log→P174

Connecting to Browser history : ▶ Select a URL

Operation from Browser history→P171

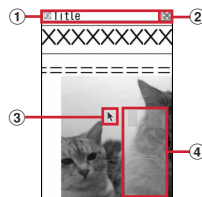
3 After reading a website, ▶ "Yes"

◆INFORMATION

- Plug-in and saving screen memos or Flash graphics are not supported.
- Mail To and Web To functions can be used, but Phone To (AV Phone To), SMS To and Media To functions are not supported.
- Some websites may take extra time to be displayed or not be displayed correctly.
- SSL/TLS is a technology for securing safe data communications with authentication/encryption. A website that supports SSL/TLS has URL beginning with https://. In some cases, it is used in a part of a website.
- Icons indicated instead of the image when displaying a website including an image→P171 INFORMATION in "Displaying a site"
- The volume while playing Flash graphics can be adjusted by .
- If no operations are performed for more than 5 minutes, playing Flash graphics ends.

- The maximum download size of each page is 1,536 Kbyte.
- Flash animation of Flash graphics supports up to 1 Mbyte per item, and Flash®Video supports up to 10 Mbytes per item.
- Applicable to files of up to version equivalent for Flash8 (some Flash9). Note that, even a file in appropriate version may not be played depending on websites.

◆ Full Browser screen



Full Browser screen (Vertical display)

① Status display/Title or URL

- (blue) : Obtaining : Displaying frame thumbnail
- : In frame enlarged display
- (dark blue) : Obtaining another frame during enlarged display of current frame

- : Downloading PDF data, Word, Excel or PowerPoint files
- : Uploading image or movie/i-motion

② / : Display mode (PC mode (full scale)/Mobile mode)

- : In Window Open Guard
- : Scrolling a screen by tilting the terminal

③ Pointer

④ Section map

The current display position to the whole page is temporarily displayed (except while displaying frame thumbnail). In PC mode, the size of section map may change.

❖ Operating on Full Browser screen

Scrolling : Press any of or , , ,

- Press , , or to scroll the screen by pages. Hold down the key to scroll continuously.
- When the pointer is hidden in Mobile mode, press to scroll up and press to scroll down.
- When Motion sensor is "ON", you can scroll a screen by tilting the terminal. →P46

Displaying previous/next pages : or

- When the pointer is hidden in Mobile mode, press to move pages back and forth.

Displaying key function help :

- Key operation is available while displaying. Press to return to the original screen.
- Settings of zooming remain after exiting Full Browser.

Connecting to Home :

Registering the displayed website in bookmark : ▶ Select a folder to register

Displaying from bookmark : ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a bookmark to display

Connecting by specifying URL : ▶ Enter the URL ▶

Connecting from Entry URL log : ▶ Select a URL

Connecting to Browser history : ▶ Select a URL

Reloading information :

Sending a URL by i-mode mail :

Website URL currently displayed is pasted to the message text.

Displaying URL of a website :

- When pressing and selecting a range to copy, URL is copied.

Displaying URL of link destination : Select link destination ▶

- When pressing and selecting a range to copy, URL is copied.

Displaying certificate of SSL/TLS compatible page : While SSL/TLS page is displayed,

Certificate→P183

Performing Image&Effect settings :

Image&Effect settings→P196

Switching character encode :

- Each time you press these keys, character code is changed as SJIS→EUC→JIS→UTF8. Press to switch to "Auto switch".

Playing animation from the beginning by Retry :

Making Window open guard valid/invalid : ▶ "Yes"

Script setting→P196

Checking section map :

Setting display or color of section map : ▶ -

✓INFORMATION-----

- When the display magnification is changed by zooming in Multi window, the change applies only to the currently active window.
- Operations below are the same as those for i-mode.
 - Selecting a linked page or item (while the pointer is hidden)→P172
 - Bookmark

◆ Switching display of pointer

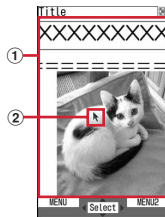
While displaying the pointer, you can move on a screen by operating the pointer with . Hold down the key to scroll continuously.

- This setting is retained even when Full Browser is ended.
- The pointer is hidden in flip style.

1 On Full Browser screen, ▶ "Yes"

The pointer is hidden. To display it, press .

- If hiding the pointer while playing Flash graphics, the play stops.



① Moving range

For websites containing frames, the range the pointer can move may be limited.

② Pointer

Link destination or item can be selected. When moving near the end of the window, the screen scrolls.

- The display of the pointer is switched as shown below by operation.

⬅ : Displaying pointer ➡ : Selecting link

🔍 : Obtaining data 🔍 : Selecting link while obtaining data

✂ : Selecting text box 🖱 : Drag mode ON

❖ Operating switching to drag mode

You can switch to drag mode while pointer display to operate contents available in drag mode.

- Operations available in drag mode vary by contents.

1 Move pointer onto contents ▶ [O] (1 sec. or more)

Pointer changes from ➡ to 🖱, and you can operate contents with 🖱.

Canceling : [O]

❖ Displaying a framed website

When connecting to a framed website, the frame thumbnail screen appears and you can check the entire composition. Enlarge the individual frame to operate.

1 On the frame thumbnail screen, 🖱 ▶ Select a frame

- During enlarged display of current frame, press [CLR] to return to the frame thumbnail screen.
- Even while displaying frame thumbnail, zooming in/out by pressing [1] / [3] and changing display magnification with zoom by pressing [5] are available.

✓INFORMATION

- Frames requiring authentication appear with a yellow border and those with problem elements detected by Scanning function appear with a red border.

❖ Displaying multiple websites <Multi window>

You can view a website selected from up to 5 displayed websites.

<Example> Displaying a website link on a new window

1 On Full Browser screen, move the cursor to the link ▶ [O] [3] [6]

- A window can be switched by pressing [O] and selected from a window list by pressing [O] (for 1 second or more) or [O] [1]. Press [O] [2] and select "Yes" to close the current window.
- Only switching windows can be operated in flip style.

❖ Searching the character string on website

1 On Full Browser screen, [O] ▶ Enter characters in the search field (up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters)

The search result is highlighted.

- Press [O] to move to the previous option and [O] to move to the next option.
- Press [O] to end searching.

Setting search method : On Full Browser screen, [O] ▶ [O] ▶ Set required items ▶ [O]

✓INFORMATION

- Searching in pages is not available in flip style.
- Some websites may not be searched.
- When the search result and search fields are overlapped, press [O] for viewing.

❖ Uploading image or movie/i-motion

You can upload the images in JPEG or GIF format or movie/i-motion in MP4 format saved in FOMA terminal or microSD card to a website.

- The file size of an image or movie/i-motion that can be uploaded is up to 2,048 Kbytes, and when multiple images or character strings are included, it is up to 2,128 Kbytes.

1 On Full Browser screen, "Browse"

The next procedure→P179 Step 2 and the following steps in "Uploading image or movie/i-motion to sites"

- "Browse" button appears when FOMA terminal can upload images or movie/i-motion. It appears as a different mark when displaying the same website on a PC etc.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Uploading method or files that can be uploaded differs depending on websites.
- Data except still images, movie/i-motion or character strings cannot be uploaded. And, images or movie/i-motion prohibited to output from FOMA terminal cannot be uploaded.
- Movie/i-motion of ASF format or those partially obtained cannot be uploaded.

◆ Downloading image

You can save images in JPEG/GIF format, etc. except background image.

- An image file of up to 1 Mbytes is savable.
- PNG and BMP format images can be saved in "Other" folder of microSD card, but cannot be displayed.
- Savable number→P438

1 On Full Browser screen, ▶ Select an image

The next procedure→P178 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

- When moving the cursor to the image to save, the image is surrounded by frame and the file name and the file size displayed.
- Saving a downloaded image→P178 INFORMATION in "Downloading image"

◆ Downloading PDF data, Word, Excel or PowerPoint files

- A data file of up to 1 Mbytes is savable.
- Word, Excel or PowerPoint files can be downloaded only when microSD card is installed.
- File of Word 2007, Excel 2007 or PowerPoint 2007 cannot be saved in FOMA terminal.

1 Select data on Full Browser screen

- You can stop downloading by pressing  or   and selecting "Yes".
You can stop downloading all data with multiple windows by pressing  .

2 "Save"

Displaying : "Preview"

Canceling saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ▶

- When " " appears in the lower-left corner of the guide area, the save destination can be switched by pressing .
- Data are saved in the folders below.
 - PDF data : "i-mode" folder of My Document in FOMA terminal/"My Document" folder in microSD card
 - Word, Excel, PowerPoint file : "Other" folder in FOMA terminal */"Other" folder in microSD card
- * When there are multiple folders in "Other" folder, the selection screen of the saving destination appears.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Downloading stops when the data size exceeds 1 Mbytes while downloading.
- When exceeding the savable number/area→P312

Setting Full Browser

Home URL : Register URL for Home connection.

Cookie set/delete : Set or delete Cookie.

- Cookie is a function that saves website-specified information such as the date and time the website appears and the number of the times it is visited in FOMA terminal. Some websites or contents services may not be correctly displayed or used unless setting Cookie to Valid.
- When setting Cookie to Valid, information such as date/time or number of times of displaying the website is sent. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility if your information is known to a third party by this. Please be forewarned.

Script setting : Set operation of a website containing JavaScript.

- Some websites may not be correctly displayed unless setting Script setting to Valid.

Display mode setting : Set if you display a screen with the PC screen size (PC mode(full scale)) or aligned with the lateral display size of FOMA terminal (Mobile mode).

Image&Effect setting : Set whether to display/hide an image or animation on Full Browser screen and set sound effect of Flash graphics.

Access setting : You can set various functions for Full Browser.

- When setting to "Yes", be sure to read "For more information".

Referer setting : Set if you send Referer.

- Referer is URL information of a website from which a link is selected to move to a website specified in it. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility if your information is known to third parties by sending Referer. Please be forewarned.

Screen view setting : Set whether to activate Full screen view in vertical display.

Auto-access setting : Set if you accept Auto-access setting request from the browsed page on Full Browser screen.

- When setting to "No", Flash graphics may not be displayed correctly.

1 9 5

2 Set required items

Setting Home URL : 1 ▶ Enter a URL (up to 512 one-byte characters) ▶

- To set the current website to Home URL, press 7 and select "Yes".

Setting/deleting Cookie : 2 ▶ Select Cookie field ▶ 1 - 3 ▶

- When "Valid(notify)" is set, select the timing to notify sending/receiving of information in Notify field.
- To delete all Cookie data, press ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes".

Setting Script setting : 3 ▶ Select Script setting field ▶ 1 or 2 ▶

- When "Valid" is set, select Window open guard field. When "Invalid" is set, a message appears asking if you open a new window as specified by JavaScript. When "Valid" is set, no new windows open.

Setting Display mode setting : 4 ▶ 1 or 2

- To switch display mode while displaying a website, press 4. All displays are switched while displaying with Multi window.

Setting Image & Effect : 5 ▶ Set required items ▶

- When setting Set image display to "Not display", appears instead of the image or animation.
- When setting Animation to "Not display", the first image is displayed.
- If you set Use phone information to "Yes", time information and Select language may be sent to IPs (Information Providers) and may be known by the third party.

Making Access setting : 6 ▶ "Yes" or "No"

Making Referer setting : 7 ▶ 1 - 3

Making Screen view setting : 8 ▶ 1 or 2

Making Auto-access setting : 9 ▶ 1 - 3

- Setting "Yes" performs communication without confirmation. When setting to "Confirm each time", the automatic communication starting confirmation screen appears each time there is a communication request.

Before using camera	198
Shooting still images with Camera	Still camera 200
Recording movies with Camera	Movie camera 203
Recording voice with Sound recorder	Sound recorder 204
Setting image size and saving method of still images/movies	Still image settings/Recording settings 205
Changing settings for shooting	205
Sending still image shot during call	210
Using bar code reader	Bar code reader 210

Copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use of photographs or movies and site (program) or website information obtained by using FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When releasing shot or recorded work on Internet websites, use with care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking photos and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before using camera

- You can shoot in normal style or flip style.→P29
- When Movie camera and Sound recorder are used, the sound is recorded from the microphone. Do not cover it with your fingers.
- When camera is used, the shooting indication light turns on and blinks in red in accordance with the light.
- During still image shooting, the image changes its orientation or vertical/horizontal positions according to FOMA terminal position.→P206
- If no operations are performed for approximately 3 minutes during shooting stand-by, camera ends.
- For Still camera, contrast is corrected automatically while shooting a subject against the sun etc.
- There are some unavailable functions or settings when Camera is activated from phonebook, mail or i-appli.

■ Shooting your image

You can shoot your own image by rotating the display 180 degrees clockwise in normal style. However, it is not displayed as a mirror image.

◆ Precautions for using camera

- Though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Images shot under very low light intensity contain increased noise such as white lines, but it is not a malfunction.
- If FOMA terminal is left in a warm place or exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, images to be shot may be deteriorated.
- When attempting to take a photo of a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp, images may become dark or degraded.
- For some characteristics of the lens, distorted images are displayed.
- Shooting images under illumination flickering at high frequency such as fluorescent lamp, mercury vapor lamp or sodium vapor lamp may cause the screen to flicker or stripe patterns to appear on the screen, which is called flicker phenomena, giving different coloring for some shooting timings. Flickers or stripes may be reduced by adjusting the brightness for shooting.
- Images shot with the camera may differ from actual subjects in color and brightness.

- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before taking photos.
- Be careful not to cover the lens with fingers when shooting images.
- Be careful of hand movement. Though FOMA terminal provides shake reduce function, it may become less effective for some shooting environment and/or object. Hold FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move; or use of Auto timer function with FOMA terminal placed in a stable location is recommended. Auto timer is only available when shooting still images.
- There is some time lag after the shutter tone sounds and until the actual shooting takes place. Do not move FOMA terminal for a while after you hear shutter sound. Also, if you shoot a fast moving object, the position of the object in the image may slightly differ from the position displayed on the screen when the shutter tone sounded.
- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects when recording a movie, the image may be blurred.
- Images shot with the camera with i-appli are saved in the i-appli ("i-mode" folder or "Deco-mail picture" folder for some i-appli). In some cases, automatically sent to the server.
- If battery power is low before saving shot image, the shot image is discarded.
- As the camera consumes the battery power very quickly, do not leave the camera activated for a long time or do not leave shot images unsaved for a long time.
- Some settings may require extra time for an image to be displayed on the shooting screen when starting the camera.

◆ Still image/Movie files

Still image file

File format	Extension
JPEG (Exif format, compatible with PRINT Image Matching III ^{*1})	.jpg

Movie file

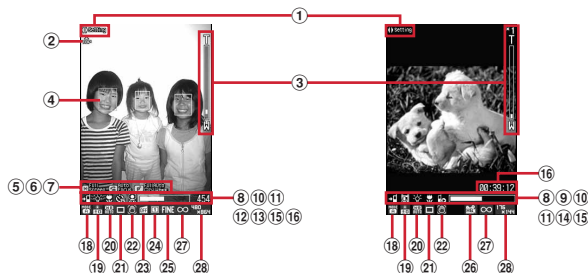
File format	Encoding method	Extension
MP4 (MobileMP4)	Movie : MPEG4, H.264 ^{*2} Sound : AAC LC	.3gp

^{*1} Not supported when Scene mode/effect is "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch".

^{*2} Encoding method for image size of "VGA (640×480)".

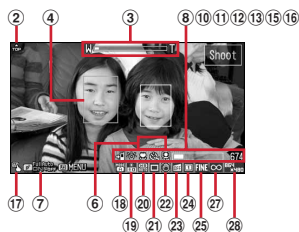
- Shooting date/time is automatically set to Display name/Title/File name, but it can be changed before or after saving.→P200, 203, 309
- The extension added to the file name is not displayed on FOMA terminal.

◆ Shooting screens

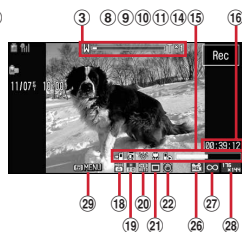


Still image shooting screen (Normal style)

Movie recording screen (Normal style)



Still image shooting screen (Flip style)



Movie recording screen (Flip style)

* The recording screen of Sound recorder is identical with the recording screen of movies, however, some icons are not displayed. Also, guide menu (→P41) is always displayed and the designated image is displayed instead of camera image.

No.	Icon name	No.	Icon name
①	Shooting setting guidance→P207	②	Determination of up side→P206
③	Slider (Zoom)→P205 T : Maximum zoom W : Standard	④	Face detection frame→P206
⑤	Full-screen/standard screen switching guidance→P206	⑥	(Manual) Auto focus→P201 Ⓢ : Stand-by*1 Ⓡ : Detecting OK / Ⓢ : Success/Fail
⑦	Full auto focus→P201	⑧	Memory to save→P205 Ⓢ : FOMA terminal Ⓢ : microSD card
⑨	Recording type→P205 Ⓢ : Image + Sound Ⓢ : Image only Ⓢ : Sound only	⑩	Light→P205
⑪	Macro shooting→P206	⑫	Auto timer→P206
⑬	Face detection→P206	⑭	Compatible mode→P207
⑮	Indicator*2	⑯	Counter*3
⑰	Touch AF→P202	⑱	Scene mode/effect→P207
⑲	Brightness→P207	⑳	White balance→P207
㉑	Frame→P207	㉒	Reduce shake→P208
㉓	Skew correction→P208	㉔	Continuous shooting→P202, 208
㉕	Image quality→P208	㉖	Movie quality→P208
㉗	Size restriction→P208	㉘	Image size→P208
㉙	Guide menu display operation guide →P209		

*1 Not displayed in flip style.

*2 During shooting stand-by : Usage ratio of memory space at the saving destination (available space on microSD card may not become 0 even if no files are saved).
During auto timer countdown : Remaining time before shutter clicks.
During movie recording : The rate of the currently recorded movie size to the file size set in Size restrictions.

*3 During shooting stand-by : Approximate number of images/recording time that can be saved under the current settings.

During auto timer countdown : Remaining time before shutter clicks.

During shooting in Continuous (Manual), 4 frames (Manual) and Panorama : The number of images currently shot and savable number of images.

During movie recording : Elapsed time/Remaining time (approximate)

Shooting still images with Camera

- Shutter sound is emitted even when "Silent" is set for volume settings or in Silent mode or Public mode.
- You can also operate from flip style.→P40

1

Enters shooting stand-by state, and the light blinks in blue.

2 Check the settings and frame the shot

When the face detection is set to "ON", the face detection frame appears.

- Auto focus can be used to shoot.→P201
- Continuous shooting or continuous panorama shooting can be set.→P202
- Settings for shooting can be changed.→P205

Viewing saved still image :  (in flip style,  ► Touch [List])

Still images in the saving destination set in Image settings can be viewed.

Displaying image→P288, 304

-  on the list screen of still image or the folder : Return to shooting stand-by.

3 or (touch "Shoot" in flip style)

The shutter tone sounds, the light turns on in red, a still image is shot, and a confirmation screen for saving still image appears. For continuous shooting or panorama shooting, each time an image is shot, shutter tone sounds and the light turns on repeatedly in red, yellow, green, blue, purple and orange in order.

In Continuous (manual), 4 frames (Manual), Panorama

Repeat Step 3 for the number of images set to be shot.

Press  (in flip style ) to cancel shooting before the set number of images are shot. Go to Step 4 for Continuous (manual) or Panorama with multiple images already shot. For 4 frames (Manual) or Panorama with only 1 image already shot, the shooting stand-by reappears and still images already shot are discarded.

4 Check the shot still image

- Still images of V/H-QVGA (240×320, 320×240) or smaller are displayed enlarged. Press  to display in actual size, and press  to enlarge again.

For Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)

- Each time you press , a single image and thumbnails toggle.
- When a single image is displayed, pressing  switches to previous or next still image.
- Only a single image shot with Continuous (Manual) is not displayed in thumbnails.

Shooting again :  (touch "Back" in flip style)

Switching view to actual size : 

- Press  to scroll the screen.
- Press  to switch displaying/hiding the guide area.
- Press any of , , ,  or  to cancel.
- Only images of V/H-WXGA (768×1280, 1280×768) or larger can be displayed in the actual size.

Scrolling automatically (for Panorama) :  (touch "Scroll" in flip style)

Attaching to mail : 

A confirmation screen for saving appears.

- Saved to FOMA terminal even when the saving destination is microSD.
- Depending on image size, a confirmation screen may appear for converting to QVGA size.
- For some Image size and Size restrictions, a confirmation screen for file size adjustment appears. Selecting "No limit" causes the image to be saved without size adjustment, and selecting "Msg attach:Small" causes the image to be reduced to 90 Kbytes or less in size and saved.
- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the message text appears.

Setting as the stand-by display :    ► "Yes"

The still image is saved to FOMA terminal and set to the stand-by display.

- When image size is V/H-QVGA (240×320, 320×240) or smaller, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)".
- If i-αpli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-αpli stand-by display appears.
- When the memory to save is microSD card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

Saving to a phonebook entry :   ►  or  ► "Yes"

Still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook data entry screen appears. Only images of QCIF(176×144) can be saved.

- To update phonebook, select the party to save.
- When the memory to save is microSD card, the image cannot be saved to phonebook.

Adding location information :

The next procedure→P275 Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

- When Location info is added, appears on the upper left of the display.

Changing the title : ▶ Enter the title ▶

- Up to 31 characters can be entered (up to 30 characters for continuously shot images).
- Display name is changed. The display name can be changed after saving.→ 309

Adjusting brightness or color balance :

The edit screen appears.→P290

- Images cannot be adjusted in the cases below.
 - When the image size is V/H-VGA (480×640, 640×480) or larger
 - When the frame is set for 4-frame shooting
 - For continuous Panorama
 - When Scene mode/effect is set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch"

Switching the saving destination between FOMA terminal and microSD card :

Displaying the list of saved images : ▶ or

5 or (touch "Save" in flip style)

The shot still image is saved in "Camera" (for microSD card, "My Picture") folder of My Picture.

Saving only the displayed still image (in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) : (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"

- A still image at cursor position is saved for thumbnail display.

Selecting selected still images to be saved from still images shot continuously (for thumbnail display in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) :

① ▶ to cancel saving of still image

- Press to zoom in the still image at the cursor position. Press or to return to thumbnail display.

② ▶ "Yes"

The selected still images are saved.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Saving shot still images takes time for some image sizes, quality or the destinations to save.
- When an image of V/H-VGA (480×640, 640×480) or larger is shot with Reduce shake:Auto or Skew correction set to other than OFF, it may take a while before operations performed by pressing , , become available.
- Shooting still image during a voice call may interrupt the call.

- During still image shooting stand-by, when a call or PushTalk call is received, the incoming call screen appears.
- If the screen is switched by an incoming call or alarm immediately after shooting, the image may be destroyed.

◆ Using Auto focus

To shoot still images, you can use full auto focus or manual auto focus to focus automatically.

- The distance that you can focus on the object by auto focus is 30 cm or longer. Note that when simultaneously using Macro shooting mode, the distance is 8 to 40 cm.
- In cases below, Auto focus may not work.
 - When shooting while moving FOMA terminal
 - When shooting a matte object or moving object
 - When shooting in a dark place or shooting in a place where there is light in the shooting area
- Auto focus is not available when Scene mode/effect is set to "Night scene".

◆ Switching ON/OFF of full auto focus

When full auto focus is set to "ON", auto focus is activated automatically for shooting, and the shutter clicks after the object is focused.

- When face detection frame is displayed, the green frame is used to focus. When face detection frame is not displayed, the center of the screen is focused.

1 On the still image shooting screen,

◆ Activating auto focus manually

- This option is available when is displayed in normal style.

1 On the still image shooting screen,

When face detection frame is displayed, the green frame is used to focus. When face detection frame is not displayed, the center of the screen is focused. When focused, a confirmation tone sounds.

The next procedure→P200 Step 3 and the following steps in "Shooting still images with Camera"

- When face detection frame is not displayed, an orange focus frame appears. It changes to "+" when focused.

Canceling focus :

◆ Focus to the location touched

- This function is available when Touch AF is set to ON in flip style.→P209

1 Touch the location where you want to focus on the still image shooting screen

The touched location or touched face detection frame is focused. When focused, a confirmation tone sounds.

The next procedure→P200 Step 3 and the following steps in "Shooting still images with Camera"

- When face detection frame is not displayed, an orange focus frame appears. It changes to "+" when focused.

Canceling focus : Touch the shooting screen

■ When full auto focus is set to "ON"

Shooting takes place after focusing. The focus confirmation tone does not sound.

◆ Setting continuous shooting and 4 frames shooting

Still images can be shot continuously.

Continuous (Auto)/Continuous (Manual) : The set number of images are shot.

Images are saved in created animation format when the saving destination is set to FOMA terminal and saved as individual still images to microSD card.

4 frames (Auto)/4 frames (Manual) : Four continuous images are shot and saved as 1 still image composed as a 4-frame cartoon.

- Still images can be shot at interval of approximately 0.4 seconds in Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto). However, the interval of shooting may differ depending on the shooting condition.
- Available shooting sizes and number of images to be shot are shown below.

Shooting size	Continuous (Auto) Continuous (Manual)	4 frames (Auto) 4 frames (Manual)
QCIF (176×144)	2-9*	—
V/H-QVGA (240×320, 320×240)	2-9*	4
V/H-VGA (480×640, 640×480)	2-6*	4
Stand-by/H-WVGA (480×864, 864×480)	2-6*	4

* Can be set in Continuous shot photos of Still image settings. (Even if a number larger than the maximum is set, only up to the maximum can be shot.)

1 On the still image shooting screen, **6** **1** - **4** or **6** (in flip style ► "MENU" ► "Continuous" ► Touch an item to set)

- You can set from an icon on the screen.→P207

✓INFORMATION

- When 1 or selected images shot in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual) are selected and saved, the images not selected are discarded.
- You can separate an image in create animation format into individual still images. A number from "-1" to "-9" is added to each image file name.→P290
- During shooting, when a call or PushTalk call is received, the set date and time of countdown timer, alarm clock or Schedule come, the style is switched between normal and flip, or FOMA terminal is folded, operation in each case is as below.
 - Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto) shooting continues, and a confirmation screen for saving appears after the call or alarm ends.
 - Continuous (Manual) shooting is interrupted, and a confirmation screen for saving appears.
 - 4 frames (Manual) shooting is interrupted, and still images already shot are discarded.
 - No ring alert or alarm sound is emitted before the shutter sound ends.
- When Auto timer is set, shooting in Continuous (Manual) or 4 frames (Manual) is unavailable.

◆ Setting continuous panorama shooting

2-8 still images continuously shot changing the direction of the camera little by little can be formed to 1 still image by connecting them vertically or horizontally.

- During continuous panorama shooting, approximately one fifth of the previously shot still image is transparently displayed on the seam. Shoot the next image overlaying the transparent part.
- To connect horizontally, shoot rightward continuously, and to connect vertically, shoot downward continuously.



Overlap the transparent parts

- With grid line displayed, the transparent part for the next shooting can be checked.
- Image size, maximum image size and maximum number of shot images are as shown below.

Image size	Maximum image size		Maximum number of shot images
	Horizontal connection	Vertical connection	
V-QVGA (240×320)	1584×320	2112×240	8
H-QVGA (320×240)	2112×240	1584×320	
V-VGA (480×640)	1632×640	2176×480	4
H-VGA (640×480)	2176×480	1632×640	
Stand-by (480×864)	1248×864	2246×480	3
H-WVGA (864×480)	2246×480	1248×864	

- Continuous panorama shooting cannot be operated in the cases below.

- Starting still camera from phonebook or i-appli
- Frame in use
- During i-appli
- Size restriction other than "None"
- Auto timer activated
- When Scene mode/effect set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch"

1 On the still image shooting screen, or (in flip style ► "MENU" ► "Continuous" ► Touch "Panorama" or "OFF")

- You can set from an icon on the screen.→P207
- In the lower left of the guide area, when  is displayed, the image is connected horizontally, and when  is displayed, the image is connected vertically.

Switching the direction of panorama shooting : 

✓INFORMATION-----

- During panorama shooting, when a call or PushTalk call is received, the time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes, the shooting stops and the shot still images up to that point are discarded.
- During panorama shooting, if the style is switched normal and flip, or FOMA terminal is folded, the shooting is interrupted and a confirmation screen for saving appears.

Movie camera

Recording movies with Camera

- A shutter sound is emitted even when volume setting is "Silent" or in Silent mode or Public mode.
- When Recording Type is set to "Voice only" in Recording settings, Sound recorder starts.
- You can also operate from flip style.→P40

1 (1 sec. or more)

Enters shooting/recording stand-by state, and the light blinks in blue.

2 Check the settings and frame the shot

- Settings for shooting can be changed.→P205

Viewing the saved movie :  (in flip style  ► Touch [List])

The movie in the saving destination set in Recording settings can be viewed.
Displaying movie→P292, 304

- Press  on the list screen of movie or folder to return to the recording stand-by state.

3 or (touch "Rec" in flip style)

Shutter sound is emitted,  appears on the display and recording starts. The light blinks in red.

- When Recording Type is "Voice only" and FOMA terminal is folded, the indicator appears on the sub-display.

Pausing/Resuming : While shooting/recording  (touch "Pause"/"Shoot" in flip style)

When paused, the light turns on in green and  switches to .

- When paused or resumed, the shutter sound is emitted.
- In flip style, you can also press  to resume.

4 or (touch "Stop" in flip style)

Shutter sound is emitted and recording ends.

- When restricted size or time is exceeded, shooting/recording ends. Time is limited to 180 minutes when Codec type is set to "Video + Voice" or "Video only" (80 minutes when movie quality is "XQ" and image size is "VGA (640×480)"), and 720 minutes when Recording Type is "Voice only".

5 Check the recorded movie

Playing : (touch "Play" in flip style)

Shooting again : (touch "Back" in flip style)

Attaching to mail :

A saving confirmation screen appears.

- Even when the memory to save is microSD card, the shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal.
- When file size exceeds 2 Mbytes, it cannot be attached to mail.

Setting as the stand-by display (stand-by i-motion) : ▶ "Yes"

The movie is saved to FOMA terminal and set to the stand-by display.

- When "Yes (Zoom)" is selected, movie is enlarged fitting to the screen size and appears on Stand-by display.
- If i-appli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-appli stand-by display appears.
- When the memory to save is microSD card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.
- When Recording type is "Voice only", the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

Saving to phonebook entry : ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

The movie is saved to FOMA terminal and phonebook data entry screen appears.

- The movie can be saved to phonebook data, only when the Recording Type is "Video only".
- To update phonebook, select the party to save.
- Saving as phonebook images is disabled in the cases below.
 - When the memory to save is microSD card
 - When the image size is "VGA (640X480)"

Changing the title : ▶ **Enter the title (up to 31 characters)** ▶

- Display name and title are changed. The display name can be changed after saving. → 309

Switching the saving destination between FOMA terminal and microSD card :

- For a file whose size is 2 Mbytes or smaller, the saving destination can be switched.

Displaying the list of saved movie : ▶ or

6 or (touch "Save" in flip style)

Recorded movies are saved in "Camera" folder (movies are saved to "Movie" and voice is "Other movies" if the destination is microSD card).

✓INFORMATION

- Some data cannot be recorded to the maximum size set in Size restrictions.
- Data may not be saved when battery runs out while shooting or recording data.
- If the below cases occur during recording, a confirmation screen for saving appears.
 - When a call or PushTalk call is received
 - When the time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
 - When FOMA terminal is folded*
 - When the style is switched between normal and flip*
- * Only while movie recording. Voice recording continues, but is interrupted when FOMA terminal is opened with Lock on close ON.
- Shooting or recording is interrupted if battery level becomes very low.
- If an alarm or battery alarm sounds while shooting/recording and shooting/recording is interrupted, the alarm may be recorded at the end of the saved movie.

Sound recorder

Recording voice with Sound recorder

- A shutter sound is emitted even when volume setting is "Silent" or in Silent mode or Public mode.
- If setting Recording Type to "Voice only" from Recording settings when recording a movie, Sound recorder starts.
- Precautions on using → P204 INFORMATION in "Recording movies with Camera"

1 **[LifeKit]**

Enters recording stand-by state, and the light blinks in blue.

The next procedure → P203 Step 2 and the following steps in "Recording movies with Camera"

Switching to Still camera :

Switching to Movie camera :

Setting image size and saving method of still images/movies

- The functions that can be set differ between still image and movie.

1 on the still image shooting screen, or on the movie recording screen

- When Recording Type is "Voice only", press  on the recording screen.

2 Set required items

Image size : For still image shooting, a setting screen appears and available functions can be checked. →P208

Size restrict/restriction : Set the size limitation of file to save. →P208

Quality : Setting is available only with Still camera. →P208

Quality : Movie camera/Sound recorder : Setting is unavailable with Still camera. The settings are made separately between movie and sound recorder. →P208

Recording Type : Setting is unavailable with Still camera.

Continuous shot photos : Setting is available only with Still camera. Set the number to shoot in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual). →P202

Auto save : When setting to "Yes", saving is performed without displaying the confirmation screen for shooting or recording.

Save to : Set the saving destination of shot image or recorded voice.

Shutter sound : Select the sound to be emitted when shooting. When moving the cursor to the shutter sound, the sound is emitted.

- This setting also applies to settings of Shutter sound/Movie camera sound in System sound.

Sense orientation : Set if you switch between portrait/landscape shooting automatically. It is available only for still image shooting. →P206

Display light time : If setting to "Phone settings", the light operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.

✓INFORMATION

- On Still image settings screen or Recording settings screen, press  to display the approximate number of images that can be shot or approximate recording time for movie/sound.

- With Still camera, the image size larger than WXGA (768×1280) and "Msg attach:Small" for size restriction cannot be set at the same time.
- The screen has the highest brightness with Display light time set to "Always on" and Brightness of FOMA terminal display (→P101) set to "Auto adjust".

Changing settings for shooting

- Operations in flip style →P209
- Only "Quality" and "Size restrictions" can be set with Sound recorder.

◆ Zooming

Change shooting magnifications and shoot an object by zooming.

- You can change the magnification while recording a movie.
- Display magnifications available for each image size are as shown below.

Image size	Maximum magnification display (times)	
	Still camera	Movie camera
QCIF (176×144)	Approx. 16.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 16.0 (8 scales)
QVGA* (240×320)	Approx. 8.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 8.0 (5 scales)
VGA* (480×640)	Approx. 4.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 4.0 (3 scales)
Stand-by (WVGA)* (480×864)		
WXGA* (768×1,280)	Approx. 4.0 (6 scales)	
FullHD* (1,080×1,920)	Approx. 2.0 (6 scales)	—
3.7 M* (1,440×2,592)		
5 M* (1,944×2,592)		

* For still image shooting, vertical and horizontal positions can be switched.

1 On the shooting/recording screen,

Each time you press the key, the slider scale shifts and zooming factor changes.

- For movie recording, magnification is displayed above or right of the slider.

◆ Turning on/off the light

- You can turn on/off the light while recording a movie.
- While the light turns on, shooting indication light does not work.

1 On the shooting/recording screen,

 appears when the light is turned on.

◆ Switching macro shooting ON/OFF

When setting to "ON", you can focus on an object approximately 7-10 cm away from camera.

- With auto focus function, you can focus on an object approximately 8-40 cm away from camera.

1 On the shooting/recording screen,

When setting to "ON",  appears.

◆ Switching full-screen and standard screen modes

In full-screen mode, icons and the guide area are not displayed.

- This setting applies to flip style in Still camera and Movie camera.
- Switching is not available in flip style.

1 on the still image shooting screen

◆ Switching still image shooting and movie recording

- Switching is not available in continuous panorama shooting.
- Switching is not available in flip style.

1 on the shooting/recording screen

◆ Setting Auto timer

You can set so that the shutter clicks after specified time elapses.

- When set, countdown starts while shooting, and the light blinks in green synchronized with the countdown sound. The countdown sound and blinking of the light go faster when the remaining time is reduced to a few seconds.
- With auto focus function, countdown starts after auto focus is activated. When using manual auto focus or touch auto focus, focus is adjusted and countdown starts regardless of the setting of full auto focus.
- To cancel the countdown, press  ( in flip style).

1 On the still image shooting screen,

  appears indicating the number of seconds before the shutter is released.

✓INFORMATION

- Countdown is canceled in the cases below.
 - When a call or PushTalk call is received
 - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule come
 - When  is pressed
 - When FOMA terminal is folded
 - When the style is switched between normal and flip
- Auto timer is not available for Continuous (Manual), 4 frames (Manual) and Panorama.

◆ Switching portrait/landscape shooting <Sense orientation>

The orientation of still image to be saved changes automatically according to the orientation of FOMA terminal.

- You can switch only when Sense orientation is set to "ON" in Still image settings.
- You cannot switch in the cases below.
 - For continuous panorama shooting
 - When the second frame or later is shot in 4 frames (Manual)
 - When Motion sensor is set to "OFF"
- You can switch between vertical/horizontal positions by rotating a still image after saving. → P290

1 Change the orientation of FOMA terminal on the still image shooting screen

 indicates upward.

- The right, left, upper and lower side of the display can be recognized as top.

■ When Sense orientation is set to "OFF"

Portrait images in normal style and landscape images in flip style are shot. The upper side is fixed.

- When the image size is QCIF (176×144), landscape images are always shot.

◆ Setting/Canceling face detection

When this function is set, the face of a person is detected automatically. Shoot using Auto focus (→ P201).

- Up to 10 face detection frames are displayed. The frame with the highest detection rate is displayed in green. Other frames are displayed in white.
- When a face is not detected, a white frame is displayed at the center of the screen.
- This can be set only when Scene mode/effect is set to "Auto", "Portrait", "Landscape" or "High sensitivity".
- This can be set only when Skew correction is set to "OFF".

1 [MENU] 7 3 on the still image shooting screen

✓INFORMATION

- Face detection may not work in cases below or under other shooting conditions.
 - A face is turned away or tilted
 - A face is partially covered with eye glasses, a hat, mask or shadow
 - A face is extremely small, large or dark against the entire screen
 - A face is at the edge of the screen

◆ Displaying/Hiding grid line

Grid is gridded straight lines that guide shooting. Grids are not displayed on the shot image.

- Grids cannot be displayed when setting a frame.

1 [MENU] on the still image shooting screen

◆ Switching Compatible mode ON/OFF

When setting to "ON", you can record a movie that can be played regardless of the model of FOMA terminal.

- Size restrictions, Quality and Image size are restricted to "Msg attach:Small", "HQ(high quality)" or less and "QCIF(176×144)", respectively.
- Switching is not available in flip style.

1 [MENU] 6 on the movie recording screen.

When setting to "ON", appears.

◆ Setting using icons on display

You can change settings using icons at the bottom of screen with the shooting screen displayed.

<Example> Setting a frame

1 [camera icon] or 4 on the shooting screen

Frame name

• Switching frame by

Frame icon

• Switching frame by



Keypad compatible number

2 [camera icon]

Returning to the shooting screen without changing settings : [CLR]

◆ Setting shooting modes

Shooting modes can be applied to still images/movies being shot according to the shooting state or your preference.

[MODE] : Auto : Portrait*1 : Landscape : Night scene*1 : Backlight
 : Sport : Texts*1 : High sensitivity*1 : Monotone
 : Sepia : Monochrome sketch*1, 2, 3 : Colored sketch*1, 2, 3

*1 Cannot be set for movie recording.

*2 Disabled when Camera is activated from i-appli.

*3 Effects can be checked after shooting.

✓INFORMATION

- Below the shooting mode list displayed when [MENU] 1 is pressed on the shooting screen, a description of the shooting mode at the cursor position appears.
- When Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto) is set for still image shooting, "Night scene" cannot be set.
- Only images of Stand-by/H-WVGA (480×864, 864×480) or smaller can be set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch" for still image shooting.
- During Continuous/4 frames/Panorama shooting for Still camera, "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch" cannot be set.
- When setting to other than "Auto", white balance settings cannot be changed. And, the settings of Brightness are retained until switched to "Auto".

◆ Adjusting brightness

You can adjust brightness of still images or movies to shoot in 5 levels : from -2 to +2.

◆ Adjusting white balance

- When Scene mode/effect is "Auto", a color tone matching the atmosphere can be adjusted when shooting under natural and/or illumination light.

[WB AUTO] : Auto : Sunlight : Cloudy : Fluorescent light : Bulb light

◆ Shooting with frame added

Frames saved in FOMA terminal or downloaded from sites can be added for shooting.

: Frame : No frame

- Frames are available for the sizes below.

Still image shooting : Stand-by/H-WVGA (480×864, 864×480) or smaller

Movie recording : QCIF (176×144)

Canceling : 4 (1 sec. or more)

Listing frames : **3** **1**

Rotating : **3** **3**

Updating : **3** **4**

❖ Reducing camera shake

: Automatically reduce camera shake : Setting canceled

✓ INFORMATION

- The setting is "OFF" in the cases below.
 - During Continuous/4 frames/Panorama
 - When Still camera is activated from i-appli or while i-appli is running
- The effect of auto correction is not achieved for some subject or shooting condition.

❖ Correcting skew

For shooting a still image, correct skew of images to make characters more easy to read.

: When shooting printed materials such as books or magazines

: When shooting handwriting : Setting canceled

✓ INFORMATION

- The setting is "OFF" in the cases below.
 - During Continuous/4 frames/Panorama
 - When Still camera is activated from i-appli or while i-appli is running
- Sizes of V-H VGA (480×640, 640×480) or larger can be set.
- Skew correction function cannot completely correct camera skew. The effect depends on the object and/or shooting states. Some still images may be more natural if not adjusted.
- It is recommended to use auto-focus when using skew correction.

❖ Setting continuous shooting or continuous panorama shooting

• Continuous shooting, continuous panorama shooting→P202

: Continuous (Auto) : Continuous (Manual) : 4 frames (Auto)

: 4 frames (Manual) : Panorama : OFF (Shoot 1 image)

❖ Setting quality of still image/movie

During still image shooting

: Fine : Standard : Economy

During movie recording

: XQ (Extra high) : HQ (High quality) : STD (Standard)

: LP (Long play)

- When Recording type is "Voice only", only "HQ(High quality)" or "STD (Standard)" can be set.

❖ Restricting file size

- Set Size restrictions to other than "None" when a file is attached to i-mode mail to send.

During still image shooting

When the file size becomes larger than the limit value, the file is shrunk and saved.

- Size restrictions may be changed automatically for some image sizes.

None : No restriction for file size.

Msg attach:Large : Restrict file size to 2 Mbytes. Attach to i-mode mail without changing file size.

Msg attach:Small : Restrict file size to 90 Kbytes. This file size is suited for being attached to i-mode mail.

During movie recording

When file size reaches the limit value, recording ends.

None : No restriction for file size. Note that there is a restriction for the time for recording at a time.→P203

Msg attach:Large : Restrict file size to 2 Mbytes. A movie of this file size can be sent to terminals which supports large capacity mail.

Msg attach:Small : Restrict file size to 500 Kbytes. A movie of this file size can be sent to terminals which does not support large capacity mail by attaching to i-mode mail.

❖ Setting image size

During still image shooting

: QCIF : V-QVGA : H-QVGA : V-VGA
 : H-VGA : Stand-by : H-WVGA : V-WXGA*1
 : H-WXGA*1 : V-FullHD*1,2 : H-FullHD*1,2
 : V-3.7 M*1,2 : H-3.7 M*1,2
 : V-5 M*1,2 : H-5 M*1,2

During movie recording

: QCIF : QVGA : VGA*2

*1 Cannot be selected when Scene mode/effect is set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch".

*2 Cannot be selected while i-appli is operating.

- For still image larger than QVGA size, a confirmation screen for converting size appears when attaching to i-mode mail.

✓INFORMATION

- Size restrictions setting is changed automatically for Image size for some still images.
- When setting from Still image settings screen, the icons below appear on the image size selection screen. Unavailable functions are displayed in gray.
 : (left) Reduce shake, (right) Skew correction : Continuous shooting
 : Panorama shooting and 4-frame shooting : Frame setting
- Press on the image size selection screen to display the approximate number of images that can be shot.
- indicates there are vertical/horizontal sizes for the image.

◆ Adjusting flicker

Adjusting flicker can suppress the flicker phenomena which cause flickering or fringe patterns on the screen under light such as fluorescent lights.

- This is not available in flip style.

1 On the shooting screen, [2] [3] ▶ [1] - [3]

Auto : Adjust automatically to eliminate flickering.

50 Hz (East-Japan) : Adjust to match the power frequency in eastern Japan.

60 Hz (West-Japan) : Adjust to match the power frequency in western Japan.

- If flickering still remains in "Auto", set according to the area you stay.
- This setting is retained even when Camera is ended. This setting also applies to the flicker adjustment of Videophone and Bar code reader.

✓INFORMATION

- The flicker may not disappear in a very bright place such as under fluorescent lights.
- When the shake reduce function is used with Adjust flicker set to "Auto", Adjust flicker may not function satisfactorily. In this case, it is recommended to set Adjust flicker according to the area you stay.

◆ Restoring default shooting/recording settings

- The settings of Scene mode/effect, Brightness, White balance and Adjust flicker are reset to the default settings.
- This is not available in flip style.

1 On the shooting screen, [2] [4] ▶ "Yes"

◆ Changing settings for shooting in flip style

- Press to switch displaying/hiding guide menu.→P41
- In flip style, you can change the setting of functions in the operations below. indicates the availability for still images and indicates the availability for movies Only "Quality" and "Size Limit" are available for Sound recorder.

Function/Page			Operations in flip style
Adjusting zoom→P205	☐	☐	Slide right or left on the screen* or
Switching lights→P205	☐	☐	"MENU"▶"Light"▶Select an item
Switching Macro shooting→P206	☐	☐	"MENU"▶"Macro"▶Select an item
Setting auto timer→P206	☐	☒	"MENU"▶"Auto timer"▶Select an item
Switching vertical/horizontal shooting→P206	☐	☒	Change the orientation of FOMA terminal
Switching face detection→P206	☐	☒	"MENU"▶"Face detection"▶Select an item
Switching touch auto focus→P202	☐	☒	"MENU"▶"Others"▶"Touch AF"▶Select an item
Displaying/Hiding grids→P207	☐	☒	"MENU"▶"Others"▶"Show grid line"▶Select an item
Selecting shooting mode→P207	☐	☐	"MENU"▶"Scene/Effect"▶Select an item • While shooting still image, for some items, additionally select "Others"
Adjusting brightness→P207	☐	☐	"MENU"▶"Camera settings"▶"Brightness"▶Select an item • While recording movie, skip "Camera settings".
Adjusting white balance→P207	☐	☐	"MENU"▶"Camera settings"▶"White balance"▶Select an item • While recording movie, skip "Camera settings".
Setting frame→P207	☐	☐	"MENU"▶"Others"▶"Frame"▶Select an item
Reducing shake→P208	☐	☐	"MENU"▶"Others"▶"Shake reduce"▶Select an item
Correcting skew→P208	☐	☒	"MENU"▶"Others"▶"Skew correct"▶Select an item

Function/Page			Operations in flip style
Selecting continuous or continuous panorama shooting→P202			"MENU"▶"Continuous"▶Select an item
Selecting image quality→P208			"MENU"▶"Others"▶"Quality"▶Select an item
Selecting quality→P208			"MENU"▶"Quality"▶Select an item
Selecting size restriction→P208			"MENU"▶"Others"▶"Size Limit"▶Select an item • While recording movie, skip "Others".
Selecting image size→P208			"MENU"▶"Size"▶Select an item

* While shooting an image or recording a movie with Touch AF set to "OFF", sliding is enabled only on the right side of the screen (the right of the position that the time is displayed in standard screen mode).

Sending still image shot during call

- Even with the saving destination set to "microSD" in Still image settings, images are saved to FOMA terminal.
- Still image cannot be sent if the saving destination is set to "microSD" and Auto save is set to "Yes" in Still image settings.

1 During a call, ▶ Shoot a still image

Shooting method→P200 "Shooting still images with Camera"

- Shot still images are displayed as thumbnails after continuous shooting. Move the cursor to a still image to send.
- When Auto save is "Yes" in Still image settings, a confirmation screen for attaching mail appears.
- If pressing or , shooting ends and the talking screen reappears.

2 ▶ "Yes"

Still image is saved in FOMA terminal and the mail creation screen appears.

- For some image sizes, a confirmation screen for converting to QVGA appears.
- For some settings in Image sizes and Size restrictions, a confirmation screen for adjusting a file size appears. Selecting "No limit" saves the image without size adjustment, and selecting "Msg attach:Small" saves the image reduced to 90 Kbytes or smaller in size.

- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or smaller, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the message text appears.
- When the mail address of the other party is saved in phonebook, it is automatically entered as the destination.
- When returning to the shooting screen without creating i-mode mail, press or .

3 Edit the i-mode mail

i-mode mail is sent and the shooting stand-by screen reappears.

Bar code reader

Using bar code reader

You can read and use information of JAN code, QR code, NW7 code, CODE39 code and CODE128 code. Up to 5 pieces of information can be saved.

- QR code cannot be scanned for some versions (type and size).
- A large width code may be unfocused and fail in recognition when trying to display the entire code on the screen. Such code is easily recognized when Auto focus is used or FOMA terminal is brought close to the center of the code until it is focused.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may disable code reading.
- You can activate it from the character entry screen and enter the scanned data.→P354

■ JAN code

JAN code is a bar code representing a number with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. The bar code of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 (JAN13) can be read.

■ QR code

QR code is the 2-dimensional codes representing a string of alphanumeric, kanji, hiragana, katakana, pictograms or data such as melody and image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.

■ NW7 code

A bar code representing alphanumeric characters with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. Bar code with up to 20 characters, a 2-character start symbol and a 2-character end symbol can be read.

CODE39 code

A bar code representing alphanumeric characters and symbols with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. Bar code with up to 20 characters, a 2-character start symbol and a 2-character end symbol can be read.

CODE128 code

A bar code representing ASCII characters with vertical lines (bars) of different widths.

- * To read CODE128 code, downloading i-appli compatible with the code is required. (→P260)
Read codes following instructions displayed on the screen.

Example of JAN code



Information to be scanned
"4942857315721"

Example of QR code



Information to be scanned
"株式会社NTTドコモ (NTT DOCOMO, INC.)"

Example of NW7 code



Information to be scanned
"A123456789012A"

Example of CODE39 code



Information to be scanned
"*123456ABC*"

Scanning codes

1 [ME] [LifeKit] 1

After Bar code reader starts, camera automatically switches to Macro shooting and zoom becomes ON. Hold camera approximately 7-10 cm away from the code to scan.

- During Bar code reader stand-by, the operations below are available.

[Z] : Zoom ON [Q] : Zoom OFF

[L] : Switching Light ON (ON/OFF)

[M] : Switching Macro shooting OFF/ON (OFF/ON)

[A] : Switching Auto focus

- Depending on the states, the auto focus icon changes as shown below.

[AF] (black) : Adjusting focus [AF] (green) / [AF] (red) : Focus succeeded/failed

- Switch to Macro OFF before scanning large size codes. The readability of code may be raised by setting zoom OFF.

Adjusting flicker : [ME] 2 ▶ 1 - 3

Select the power supply frequency of your area. When selecting "Auto", the power supply frequency is adjusted automatically.

- The setting is retained even after Bar code reader ends. This setting also applies to the flicker adjustment of videophone and camera.

Switching to still image shooting or movie recording : [ME] 4 ▶ 1 or 2

- When Bar code reader has not been started from Camera or the stand-by display, the switching is unavailable.

2 Move camera to the code

The code is scanned automatically. A confirmation sound is played when scanning is complete and the scanned data appears.



[S] : Scanning
[Q] : On stand-by

Scanning state of divided QR codes*

Gray : Not yet scanned Blue : Already scanned
Green : Scanned the last

The remaining number to be scanned/Total number*

* Displayed when scanning divided QR codes

- If scanned data exceeds 5,500 two-byte (11,000 one-byte) characters, exceeded characters are not displayed, but they are saved.

Scanning divided QR codes

When one data item is divided into multiple (up to 16) QR codes, scan them one by one following the instructions on the display.

- Canceling scanning : [CLR] ▶ "Yes"

3 Use the scanned data

Saving data : [ME] 4

- Up to 5 items can be saved. When 5 items are already saved or the memory space is not enough, a confirmation screen appears.

Rescanning code : [R]

Copying text : [ME] 1 ▶ Select a range to copy

Copy/Paste information→P355

Adding information to phonebook : Move the cursor to information ► [3] ► [1] or [2] ► [1] or [2]

- To update phonebook, select the party to save.

Saving all data to phonebook at a time : "Add to phonebook" ► [1] or [2]

The phonebook entry screen appears with the information entered.

Sending i-mode mail : Select a mail address or "Compose message"

The mail creation screen with the mail address entered appears.

Connecting site or Internet website : Select a URL ► "Yes"

- Press to connect with Full Browser.

Registering URL as bookmark :

① Move the cursor to a URL ► [3] [3]

- Select "Add bookmark" to save.

② Select a folder where the bookmark is added.

The next procedure → P175 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

Starting i-appli : "Start i-appli"

Making a voice, videophone, PushTalk call : Select a phone number ► Set a condition for dialing ►

Making a call under set conditions → P64

Sending SMS : Select a phone number ► Select Call type field ► [4] ► ► "Yes"

SMS can be created and sent to the selected phone number.

Composing and sending SMS → P164

Saving a still image file : Select a still image file ► "Save"

The next procedure → P178 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

- When saving to phone, select the saving destination from either "Deco-mail picture" or "Data transfer" folder of My Picture. Images that fit to Deco-mail pictogram standards (→ P288) are saved to "Deco-mail pict" folder.
- Selecting "Display" displays the still image file.

Saving melody data : Select melody data

The next procedure → P179 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

- When saving to phone, the saving destination is "Data transfer" folder of Melody.
- Selecting "Play" plays the melody data.

Saving ToruCa : Select ToruCa

The next procedure → P179 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

✓INFORMATION-----

- If the code is not scanned well, try to change the distance between the code and camera, the angle or direction of camera, etc.
- In the cases below, the confirmation sound is not emitted when the code is read.
 - In Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode)
 - When Keypad sound is set to "OFF" (including the setting of Personalized silent mode)
 - When "Operation sound" in Adjust volume is set to "Silent"

◆ Using the scanned data saved

1 [LifeKit] [1] ►

2 Select the scanned data

Using scanned data → P211 Step 3 in "Scanning codes"

Deleting scanned data : Move the cursor to the scanned

data ► [3] ► [1] or [2] ► "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.

✓INFORMATION-----

- When Bar code reader is activated from i-appli, the scanned data is saved and used by i-appli.
- A data file is named as scanned date/time + file number + extension. The extension is "jan" (JAN code), "qr" (QR code), "nw7" (NW7 code) or "c39" (CODE39 code). When there is already a data saved on the same date/time, the file number is incremented by 1. The file name cannot be changed.

1Seg	214
Before using 1Seg	215
Setting channels	215
Watching 1Seg	Activate 1Seg 216
Using i-appli program guide	219
Using Data Broadcasting	Data broadcasting 219
Using TV link	TVlink 219
Managing TV link	220
Watching 1Seg with Multi window	220
Recording a 1Seg program while watching	Recording 1Seg 221
Setting timer for watching or recording 1Seg program	Watching reservation/Recording reservation 222
Setting 1Seg watching/recording settings	User setting 225
Using remote controller with microphone F01	Remote controller with microphone 226

1Seg

1Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service that allows mobile devices to receive broadcasted data along with images and sounds. You can also use i-mode to acquire detailed program information, participate in quiz programs, enjoy TV shopping, etc.

- For details of "1Seg" service, refer to the website below.

The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting

PC : <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>

i-mode : <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>

◆ Using 1Seg

- 1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc.
 - * A communication fee for receiving video picture and sound is not required. Contact NHK for details on your NHK viewing fees.
- There are 2 types of information displayed in the data broadcasting area : "Data broadcasting" and "Data broadcasting site". "Data broadcasting" is displayed using airwave along with images and sounds; while "Data broadcasting site" is displayed by connecting to a site provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc., using information of data broadcasting. Sometimes, you may connect to "i-mode site" etc. You need to subscribe to i-mode to connect to the site.
- For viewing "Data broadcasting site", "i-mode site", etc., packet communication fees are charged. Some sites require information fees (i-mode pay sites).

◆ Radio waves

1Seg is one of the broadcast services and a different type of radio waves (airwaves) from that of FOMA service is received. Therefore, regardless of whether you are in or out of FOMA service area, it cannot be received where airwaves do not reach or during broadcasting interruptions.

Also, even in FOMA service area, reception condition may be poor or reception may be unavailable in such places as below.

- A place far from the tower that the airwaves are sent from
 - Mountain-ringed regions or a place between buildings where airwaves are interrupted by geography or buildings
 - Tunnel, underground or far back from a building where airwaves are weak or do not reach
- To receive stronger radio waves, try to move FOMA terminal closer or further from your body, or move to another location.

◆ Screen appearing when using 1Seg for the first time

When using 1Seg for the first time after purchasing, a confirmation screen for disclaimers appears.

If you agree and then press "OK", the confirmation screen does not appear again.

◆ Storage area

Storage area is an area dedicated to 1Seg only in the terminal. Based on the settings made by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), the storage area saves information entered by customers according to instructions of data broadcasting. Saved information may contain personal information such as answers to quizzes, membership number, gender, age, occupation, etc.

Saved information, without reentry, may be displayed when viewing data broadcasting sites or sent to TV broadcasting enterprises (stations).

Deleting storage area → P225

If UIM is replaced, a confirmation screen for initializing the storage area appears.

Select "Yes" and initialize the storage area. When "No" is selected, services using the storage area are unavailable.

■ Screen appearing when reading storage area

When using information saved in the storage area while watching a program, "Use saved information? It may include information used by the same affiliate." appears. Select "Yes" to display no confirmation screens subsequently when reading saved information while watching the same program. Select "Yes (Always)" to display no confirmation screens subsequently also for different programs.

Before using 1Seg

■ 1Seg watching procedures

Step 1

Create and set the channel list corresponding to the area where you watch 1Seg.
→P215

Step 2

Start 1Seg. →P216

■ 1Seg antenna

- The terminal has a built-in 1Seg antenna. To best use 1Seg, do not cover the antenna with your hand. →P26

■ When a call is received or alarm time comes while Seg watching

- In flip style, the new task starts. In vertical display, 1Seg and the new task are displayed in Multi window (→P220). After the task is terminated, 1Seg resumes.

✓INFORMATION-----

- 1Seg watching is interrupted if i-appli is activated. By pressing  for 1 second or more, you can switch 1Seg watching and i-appli.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility whatsoever for any loss or modification of saved contents resulting from malfunction, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal.
When changing the model of or repairing FOMA terminal, information (still images recorded by 1Seg, TVlink, information saved in the storage area, etc.) saved in the terminal cannot be transferred.
- Watching 1Seg long time while charging may reduce the battery pack lifetime.

Setting channels

To watch 1Seg, you need to create a channel list of broadcasting stations and saved channels, and set it according to the area. Up to 10 items can be saved.

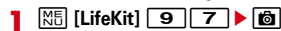
◆ Creating Channel list

Channel list can be created in either of the ways below.

Use preset : Broadcasting stations and channels that can be received are saved in advance by area. Select from the area list.

Auto setting : Broadcasting stations and channels that can be received in your current location, are automatically searched and set. Perform this within the terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service.

- Channels in a preset may not be available depending on the place you watch. In that case, use Auto setting.



- A confirmation screen appears if there is not channel list.

2 Select a method to create

Setting from a preset : "Use preset" ► Select an area ► Select a prefecture ► Select a local municipality

- For some areas, selecting prefecture or local municipality may be omitted.

Creating by automatic search : "Auto setting" ► "Yes" ► Select an area

Auto setting starts and, upon completion, a confirmation screen appears.

- Select "No" to display an auto-scanning channel setting screen. At this time, channel list is named after the date and time of setting.
- A channel of the selected area is searched for by priority.
- To interrupt Auto setting, press  and select "Yes".

3 "Yes"

Channel list is created.

✓INFORMATION-----

- It takes approximately 60 seconds to search for channels in Auto setting. It may take longer time depending on the number of broadcasting stations and airwave conditions.
- Auto setting performed near a noise source such as a PC or LCD TV may require a time.
- While Auto setting is set, system sound is not generated.
- Auto setting is unavailable while recording.

◆ Specifying Channel list

- You cannot specify Channel list while recording.
- When there is only one Channel list saved, it is automatically set as the one to be used.

1 **[ME] [LifeKit] 9 7**

A list of Channel list appears.

Displaying Channel list while watching 1Seg : On 1Seg watching screen,

[ME] 3

2 Move the cursor to Channel list ▶

Channel list to be used is set and channel number list appears.

- If setting while watching 1Seg, 1Seg watching screen appears immediately.
- For the list of Channel lists, ☒ appears in the set Channel list.

◆ Using Channel list

- Displaying the list of Channel lists→P216

Opening the channel number list : Select Channel list

Updating Channel list : Move the cursor to Channel list ▶ **[ME] 4**

The next procedure→P215 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating Channel list"

Deleting Channel list : **[ME] 5** ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a channel list.
- Authentication is required for deleting all items.

Changing Channel list name : Move the cursor to Channel list ▶ **[ME] 2** ▶ Enter
Channel list name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶ 

■ Operations on a channel number list

Starting 1Seg watching : Select a channel

Changing a channel number : Move the cursor to a channel ▶ **[ME] 1** ▶ Select a new channel

Deleting a channel : Move the cursor to a channel ▶ **[ME] 2** ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- While watching 1Seg, operations below are unavailable for the currently active Channel list.
 - Updating or deleting Channel list
 - Changing channel numbers
 - Deleting registered channels

Activate 1Seg

Watching 1Seg

- A confirmation screen appears when you watch 1Seg for the first time.→P214
- You can operate from flip menu.→P40

1 **[TV] (1 sec. or more)**

- The channel watched last appears. A confirmation screen appears if there is no set Channel list. Press "OK" to create Channel list.→P215 Step 2 and subsequent steps in "Creating Channel list"

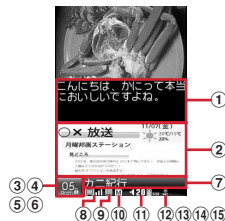
✓INFORMATION

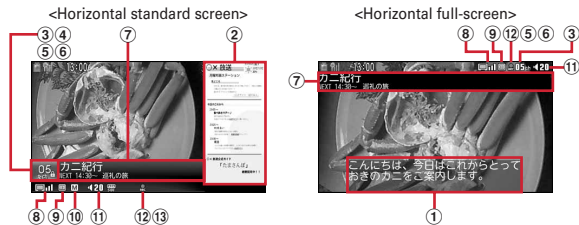
- You can also activate 1Seg watching in the ways below.
 - Select 1Seg watching information etc. displayed on Program guide i-appli, mail, MessageR/F, i-Channel, site, Web site, etc. (Media To)→P180
 - Watching reservation→P222
- A confirmation screen for 1Seg use, storage area, etc., or for which "Yes (Always)" is selected does not appear again unless the UIM is replaced or Reset permit status is performed.
- If you select "Yes (default)" on a confirmation screen, data broadcasting or data broadcasting site information may be updated etc. without confirmation and packet communication fees may be charged.

◆ Reading and operating screen

- When going outside broadcasting service area while selecting a channel, a black screen is displayed for both video and data broadcasting.
-  and the message from the broadcasting stations may appear at the top of the display.

<Standard screen>





1Seg watching screen

① Captions (if any)

- On the horizontal standard screen, captions are displayed instead of ③-⑬.

② Data broadcasting or data broadcasting site

- You can also use full-screen display (data broadcasting full-screen).

③ Currently selected remote controller number

④ Channel selection unavailable

⑤ Broadcasting multiple programs

This appears when multiple programs (services) are being broadcasted in 1 channel. You can switch and watch another program on the vertical display. → P218

Operation to switch is available only on the vertical display.

⑥ Time shift play

: In time shift play : In time shift fast forward play

⑦ TV station name (currently selected)/Program name (station selection finished)

- When a program being watched is interrupted, "Unavailable channel" appears.
- On the horizontal display, the name of the next program and starting time are also displayed.

⑧ 1Seg reception level

: Out of broadcasting area
Strong ← → Weak

⑨ 1Seg ECO mode

⑩ Sound state

: Stereo : Monaural : Main sound : Sub sound
 : Main sound+Sub sound

⑪ Volume

: Audio output available/Unavailable

(vertical display), (horizontal display) : to adjust the volume (not displayed on the horizontal full-screen even if operation is available)

⑫ Recording (when recording time is set, the remaining time is also displayed)

⑬ OFF timer

: remaining time: Off timer is activated, or "End time" is set in watching reservation

- When the remaining time is more than 99 minutes, only appears.

: Off timer is activated (until the end of the program), or "End time" is set to "Auto-delay adjust" in watching reservation

⑭ Browser function state

: When items can be selected by using the keypad during data broadcasting or at a data broadcasting site

⑮ Key guidance

: When you can switch functions while running 1Seg watching and other functions concurrently

❖ Operations enabled while watching TV

: Adjust volume

(1 second or more) : Silent

: Switch the standard screen/data broadcasting full-screen

: Activate Program guide i-appli

► "Yes" : End 1Seg watching

Except for data broadcasting full-screen

: One-key channel selection*1

: Select the previous and next channel and press this for 1 second or more to search receivable frequencies*2

: Switch display/hide of captions (if any)

: Save still image → P222, press for 1 second or more to start/stop video recording → P222

Data broadcasting full-screen

: Move to previous or next page*3

With data broadcasting display area

: Move the cursor in the data broadcasting display area

: Return to the top page*4

Without data broadcasting display area

: Adjust volume

(1 second or more) : Silent

*1 Channels after 13 can be selected from the channel number list.

- *2 Searching channels, after you move etc., may enable you to receive waves from a broadcasting station that is not saved. When you cannot receive waves, the previously watched channel reappears. A broadcasting station that is found through wave reception can be saved to a channel. Note that the channels may not be searched in the order of the remote controller numbers because channels are searched in the order of frequency.
- *3 Available when previous and next pages are stored in the cache.
- *4 By the displayed contents, an operation such as returning to the previous page may be performed.

Checking TV station list : **1**

Checking program information : **2**

- Note that information not yet set or read may not be displayed.

Switching Channel list : **3**

The next procedure→P216 Step 2 in "Specifying Channel list"

Operation of the Channel list→P216 "Using Channel list"

Checking recordable time/number of items : **4** **3**

Deleting recorded video/still image : **4** **4** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select video/still image** ▶ **"Yes"**

- On the list screen, press to check details, and press to switch between list and thumbnail display. Note that, thumbnail display is unavailable in "Video (microSD)".→P318

Setting/Canceling OFF timer : **5** ▶ **1** - **5**

Creating introduction mail : **6** **2**

A mail creation screen appears with information for 1Seg watching of the currently watched program (Media To) already entered in the message text.

Saving currently watched channel to Channel list : **8** **5** ▶ **Select a channel**

- When a channel already saved is selected, a confirmation screen appears. Up to 62 items can be registered.

Switching services to watch : **8** **6** ▶ **1** - **3**

- You can operate when other programs (services) are broadcasted in the same channel.

Switching 1Seg ECO mode ON/OFF : **8** **7**

Light becomes disabled when this mode is set to ON to darken the display for power saving. In a well-lighted area, power saving effects may not be great.

Outputting audio using a Bluetooth device : **8** **8**

The Bluetooth device list appears.

The next procedure→P344 Step 2 in "Connecting the FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device"

- When a Bluetooth device is connected, a confirmation screen for outputting sound appears according to the settings of "Voice output to BT".→P225

Displaying key function help : **9**

❖ Watching 1Seg in flip style

- and can be used as on the vertical display except when a menu or panel is displayed.

Selecting a channel : Slide right or left ▶ Touch /

Adjusting volume : Slide up or down ▶ Slide up or down on the volume adjustment panel

Starting video recording : Touch the screen ▶ "MENU" ▶ "Start REC"

Video recording→P222

Listing Channel numbers : Touch the screen ▶ "TV stations"

- If the list has 10 or more channels, touch / to switch pages.

Switching standard horizontal display/horizontal full-screen : Touch the screen ▶ "Switch view"

Switching standard horizontal display/horizontal full-screen : Touch the screen ▶ "Subtitles"

Turning 1Seg ECO mode ON/OFF : Touch the screen ▶ "MENU" ▶ "ECO-mode ON"/ "ECO-mode OFF"

Displaying touch operation help : Touch the screen ▶ "MENU" ▶ "Help"

Terminating 1Seg watching : Touch the screen ▶ "MENU" ▶ "End" ▶ "Yes"

❖ Time shift function

While watching 1Seg (except selecting a channel), when Voice, Videophone, or PushTalk call is made or received, video picture that was being received during the call is played automatically for approximately 3 minutes.

Upon completion of the call, a confirmation screen for replaying the movie received during the call appears.

Replay of the program continues even after the part received during the call ends.

- Unavailable during Fake call.
- Data broadcasting is not available.
- For a long call duration, first images may be overwritten.
- During fast forward play, audio may not be heard clearly.

Operations during time shift play

: Switch ordinary play to fast forward play

- In flip style, slide to right or press for 1 second or more.

: Switch fast forward play to ordinary play

- In flip style, slide to left or press .

 ▶ "Yes" : Return from time shift play to ordinary play

- In flip style, touch the screen and touch "Back to reception".

✓INFORMATION

- Some channels cannot be received depending on areas. They may be received by updating Channel list or performing Auto setting. →P215
- Depending on airwave strength, a audio may be interrupted, data broadcasting may not be received, or the video picture may contain block noise or may stop.
- When activating 1Seg watching or a channel is switched, it takes a time before watching is enabled.
- When OFF timer end time comes, a confirmation screen for ending the watching appears. When 30 seconds elapse without doing any operations, 1Seg watching stops.
- If 1Seg is started from information for 1Seg watching or Program guide displayed in watching reservation, site or mail, OFF timer is automatically activated if the information contains an end date/time.
- When another channel is selected with OFF timer set to "Complete program", the end date/time set in OFF timer changes to the end date/time of the program broadcasted on the channel selected. Note that, the end date/time does not change unless there is information.

Using i-appli program guide

You can activate 1Seg watching and make a watching reservation or recording reservation from Program guide.

- "Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)" is saved by default as Program guide i-appli (→P249). You can set Program guide i-appli to use in "Program guide key setting" in Software settings of i-appli (→P245).
- When using Program guide i-appli for the first time, you must make initial settings.

 [LifeKit]  

Program guide available in the area you live are displayed.

- Press  to watch a program being broadcasted from the selected channel.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Data broadcasting

Using Data Broadcasting

You can use various information on the site which is linked to a program.

- You can only display in flip style.
- Data broadcasting and data broadcasting site →P214 "Before Using 1Seg"

1 On 1Seg watching screen (Standard screen) or the data broadcasting full-screen, ▶ Select an item

Data broadcasting is shifted to data broadcasting site display.

Operations while displaying the screen →P217

- Depending on selected items, a confirmation screen may appear. Selecting "Yes (Always)" may automatically update data broadcasting/data broadcasting site information without a confirmation from next time. Note that in this case, packet communication fee may be charged.

Moving to the previous/next page :   ▶  or 

Reloading :   

Displaying details of a certificate :   

Setting image or sound effect :    ▶ **Set required items** 

Resuming data broadcasting :   

✓INFORMATION

- If there is not enough available space in the storage area, a confirmation screen appears. When overwriting, follow instructions on the screen.
- When Close setting (→P226) is set to "Continue" or "Mute", information may be updated even when FOMA terminal is folded and packet communication fees may be charged.

TVlink

Using TV link

For some data broadcasting and/or data broadcasting site, site and memo information can be saved in TVlink. The site or memo information saved in TVlink can be directly displayed.

- Saved contents can be used only by 1Seg.

◆ Saving in TV link

- Up to 50 items can be saved.

1 Select a savable item in TVlink ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select a folder

- If you attempt to register an already registered URL or Text info, there is not enough available space, or the savable number is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears.

◆ Displaying saved TV link

1 [ME] [LifeKit] [9] [6]

2 Select a folder ▶ Select TVlink

Displaying TVlink while watching 1Seg : On 1Seg watching screen,

[ME] [7] [6]

- When a site is opened, a confirmation screen of TVlink list may appear automatically.
- Icon definitions :
 - [Folder icon] : Folder
 - [Empty folder icon] : Empty folder
 - [Data icon] : Link to data broadcasting site
 - [i-mode icon] : Link to a site or website using i-mode or Full Browser
 - [Text icon] : Text info

3 "Yes"

Displaying the details screen : [Camera icon]

Managing TV link

You can move or delete TVlink or organize them using folders. Up to 20 folders can be created.

1 [ME] [LifeKit] [9] [6]

Deleting all TVlinks in a folder : Select a folder ▶ [ME] [2] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to TVlink.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [Camera icon]. To delete all items, authentication is required.

Deleting all TVlinks : [ME] [4] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

Moving selected TVlinks : Select a folder ▶ [ME] [3] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ Select a destination folder

- To move 1 item, move the cursor to TVlink.
- To move selected items, select them ▶ [Camera icon].

Creating a folder : [ME] [1] ▶ Enter a folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶ [Camera icon]

Deleting a folder : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [ME] [2] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

- When there is only 1 folder, it cannot be deleted.

Changing a folder name : [ME] [3] ▶ Enter a folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶ [Camera icon]

Changing the order of folders : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [ME] ▶ [5] or [6]

Watching 1Seg with Multi window

You can divide the vertical display into 2 to perform another task while watching 1Seg.

❖ Using another function while watching 1Seg

Multi window appears when 1Seg watching and one of the functions below are used at the same time.

- Voice call^{*1}, PushTalk^{*1}, Fake call
- Mail display^{*2,3}, mail creation, Check new message
- i-mode, Full Browser, i-Channel
- i-appli list, Display light of i-appli, Vibrate effect
- Phonebook, PushTalk phonebook, Received calls, Redial, Answer machine, Voice memos, Mail logs, User information
- Display image list, list/detail information of movie/i-motion^{*4}, list/detail information of My Document/Other, Word/Excel/PowerPoint files
- Infrared communication/iC transmission, packet communication with a PC, microSD card^{*5,6}, Data Security service^{*5}, GPS^{*7}, Pedometer, IC card list, 1Seg reservation list
- Notepad, Alarm clock, Calculator, Dictionaries, Countdown timer
- Call alert volume, Mail/Msg alert vol., i-concier ring alert, i-appli effect sound, Melody effect sound, Pointing device, Saving mode ON/OFF
- Alarm^{*8} of schedule, Alarm clock or Countdown timer

^{*1} 1Seg watching is interrupted.

- *2 For received mail, attached melody and the sound effect of Flash graphics in Deco-mail or Decome-Anime cannot be played.
- *3 Detail display is not available for mail or SMS received from parties not saved in Phonebook.
- *4 Detail info from playing and playing screen of movie/i-motion cannot be displayed on the Multi window.
- *5 To save mail in microSD card or those stored at Data Center with Data Security Service to FOMA terminal, Multi window is not available.
- *6 Mail in microSD card cannot be displayed on Multi window.
- *7 If you start positioning or communication by GPS, Multi window ends.
- *8 Switched to Multi window when Alarm is activated while watching 1Seg. When Alarm sound is i-motion, "Pausing 1Seg..." appears on 1Seg screen.

1 While watching 1Seg with a vertical display, **MULTI** ▶ Select a function



Video, subtitle, channel, TV station/program name, 1Seg receiving status, sound volume, recording icon, key guidance, data broadcasting are displayed

Creating mail during 1Seg watching

Switching between Multi window and 1Seg watching screen : **TV** (1 sec. or more)

- When 1Seg watching is used together with Full Browser, Word/ Excel/ PowerPoint files concurrently, the screen is switched each time you press **TV** for 1 second or more in the order of Multi window→the screen of the function used concurrently→1Seg watching screen.

✓INFORMATION

- When receiving call/mail or activating the alarm during 1Seg watching in flip style, making the display vertical activates Multi window.
- Even when Multi window is activated by selecting another function, no 1Seg image may appear or 1Seg sound may remain sounding during display of other functions.

◆Receiving a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call while watching 1Seg

The ring alert sounds and the screen is switched to Multi windows.

- "Pausing 1Seg..." appears on 1Seg screen, and the image and sound of 1Seg are interrupted.
- Multi window does not operate during a videophone call.
- When a call is ended, you can watch a program received during a call.→P218

◆Receiving mail, MessageR/F or SMS while watching 1Seg

With Display priority set to "Show message", the screen is automatically switched to Multi window. After the reception result screen closes, 1Seg screen reappears.

Recording 1Seg

Recording a 1Seg program while watching

You can record movies, sounds and data broadcasting (video recording) or save movies being broadcasted as still images (still image recording).

- Video is saved to "Video(Phone memory)" or "Video(microSD)" folder in "1Seg" of Data Box, and a still image is saved to "Image(Phone memory)" folder in "1Seg".
- Program name is used as a display name for video, the saved date and time are used as a display name for a still image. Saved date and time are used as a file name. However, it does not apply to the file name for the video saved in microSD.→P301
- Programs whose recording is prohibited cannot be recorded. When airwave reception condition is not good, recording may be unavailable.
- Recorded data cannot be sent via mail attachment or infrared communication/iC transmission. They cannot be set to the stand-by display etc.
- Viewing recorded video or still images→P318
- You can save recorded videos up to 10 items in FOMA terminal, up to 99 items in microSD card, and up to 100 still images can be saved. Estimated recording time is up to approximately 37 min. (after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted) in FOMA terminal and up to approximately 640 min. in micro SD card of 2 Gbytes.
- Recording ends when the recorded data reaches 2 Gbytes. It is approximately 11 hours in terms of time. Recording time may vary depending on program contents etc.

◆ Recording video

- Recording is unavailable on the data broadcasting full-screen.
- Record setting → P226

1 On 1Seg watching screen, press (1 sec. or more) (in flip style, touch "MENU" ► "Start recording")

1Seg recording starts.

- While recording, channel switching, Auto setting, using OFF timer and service switching are unavailable.

2 (1 sec. or more) (in flip style, touch "MENU" ► "End only recording")

Recording stops and watching continues.

Ending watching only and keeping recording :  ► "End only reception" (in flip style, touch "MENU" ► "End only reception")

 appears on the stand-by display.

- To end recording before specified recording end time, select  and press "Yes".

Ending recording and watching :  ► "Yes" (in flip style, touch "MENU" ► "End REC/Reception")

✓ INFORMATION

- When the memory space is not enough or exceeding the savable number, you cannot record. Delete unnecessary videos or still images. → P218
- Recording stops when storage area is exhausted while recording.
- In case the saving destination is microSD card, recording may not be performed while functions such as PDF data browsing with a heavy workload on FOMA terminal or other functions using microSD card are operating.
- In the cases below, both or either of movie and sound stops, however, recording continues.
 - When a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk or 64K data communication is received
 - When a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call is made
 - When the date and time specified in Alarm clock or schedule come
 - When mail, MessageR/F is received (with Display priority of mail set to "Show message")
 - When a melody is played
 - When i-motion is played/displayed
 - When i-appli is activated from data broadcasting
- * When using watching reservation schedule, when you select "Yes" on a confirmation screen, recording is stopped if the channel is different from the one being recorded.
- When i-appli that cannot be used concurrently with recording is started, a confirmation screen for watching and continuation of recording appears

- When a link to 1Seg watching information displayed on a site or mail is selected while recording, select "Yes" on a confirmation screen to stop recording and start watching the linked channel. If the linked channel is the same as the one being recorded, recording continues.
- At the time for recording reservation while recording, reserved recording starts. When the channel currently recording and the channel for recording reservation are different, a confirmation screen appears if Record setting of recording reservation is set to "Operation".
- To record data broadcasting, record it for approximately 1 minute or more under strong wave reception conditions. If the recording time is too short, data broadcasting may not be displayed.
- If FOMA terminal goes outside broadcasting service area immediately after starting recording and the recording is stopped without receiving the airwave, the recorded data may not be saved.
- For some programs, movie and/or sound may be recorded from a point a little before recording operation is done.
- While a function that cannot be activated at the same time as recording is running, a confirmation screen appears.

◆ Recording still image

- Recording is unavailable during video recording or on the data broadcasting full-screen. Captions or data broadcasting are not saved.

1 On 1Seg watching screen,

When exceeding the savable number/area → P312

- When there is an incoming videophone or PushTalk call immediately after pressing , still images may not be recorded.

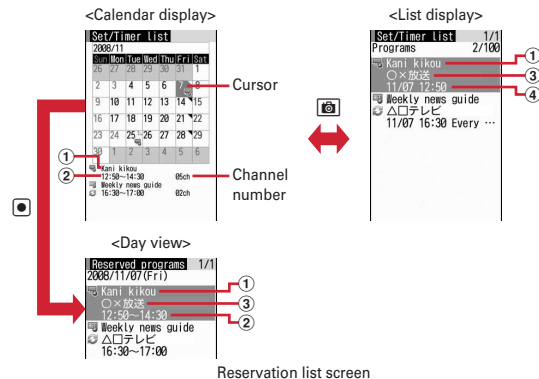
Watching reservation/Recording reservation

Setting timer for watching or recording 1Seg program

You can start 1Seg watching, receive notification of start of a program or start recording automatically.

- Up to 100 watching and/or recording reservations can be saved in total, but the savable number varies by the number of saved items in Scheduler. → P438
- You can also use channel information shown in Program guide i-appli, site or mail to register reservations.

The reservation list screen appears.



Reservation list screen

- ① Program name
- ② Start time - End time
- ③ TV station
- ④ Start time

* In the case of a long-term schedule, the start time is displayed only on the start date and the end time is displayed only on the end date. The start and end dates are displayed between those days.

• In Calendar display, use [12] / [13] to switch months.

• Icon definitions are as shown below.

- [14] : Watching reservation [15] : Recording reservation
- [16] / [17] : Repeated schedule [18] / [19] : Long-term schedule

• At the bottom of calendar display, list display and Day view screen, icons of programs which have already passed start time and date are displayed in gray.

Setting calendar display format : In calendar display, [ME] [6] [2] ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [14]

Setting calendar mode → P327 "Setting Scheduler display"

• "Scheduler type" cannot be set in 1Seg reservation list.

Displaying key function help : In calendar display, [ME] [7]

2 In list view or Daily view, [14]

The reservation method selection screen appears.

• In calendar display, press [ME] [1].

3 Select a reservation method

Reserving from Program guide i-appli : "By program guide"

Program guide i-appli starts. You can reserve watching or recording.

• For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Reserving 1Seg watching : "Manual reception" ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [14]

- Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered for a program name.
- "Auto-delay adjust" of end time changes the end time of an extended program.
- You can check the settings of Set notify alarm with icons below.
 - [15] (gray) : Start-alarm setting activated/deactivated
 - [16] : Start after confirm [17] : Auto start [18] : Not start
- [ME] : Change to recording reservation

Reserving 1Seg recording : "Manual recording" ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [14]

- Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered for a program name.
- "Auto-delay adjust" of end time changes the end time of an extended program.
- You can check the settings of REC setting with icons below.
 - [19] : Recording [20] : Operation
 - [21] : Save to phone [22] : Save to microSD
- [ME] : Change to watching reservation

4 [14]

- If the start time has already passed when you make watching reservation, the program starts immediately.
- If 1 minute before the start time has already passed when you make recording reservation, preparation of recording starts.

Changing the reservation : [ME]

INFORMATION

- Long-term schedule is defined as there being 24 hours or more from the start to end time. Long-term schedule and repeated schedule cannot be set concurrently.
- Watching reservation and recording reservation are also displayed in Scheduler.

◆ When the reserved date and time come

◆ When the time set in watching reservation comes

The saved reserved contents appear on the display.

- When  or any key except  is pressed while the alarm sounds, you can open an activation confirmation screen or activate 1Seg watching.
- At the watching reservation time during recording, a confirmation screen appears.

✓INFORMATION

- Operations for the reserved contents are the same as those for the schedule reminder. →P328
- When multiple watching reservation items or schedules are saved, the alarm of the watching reservation or schedule saved the last becomes effective. 1Seg watching may not be activated according to Sync TV start depending on the order of saving. The Schedules or watching reservation not activated can be confirmed by pressing  after the alarm sound is stopped.
- At the specified date and time during a call or PushTalk call, a warning sounds and the activation notification screen appears. Even if 1Seg is set to be activated with "Auto start" in Set notify alarm, 1Seg is not activated. Pressing  on the activation notification screen displays the activation confirmation screen or activate 1Seg watching if the call or PushTalk call is terminated.
- When pressing  while the alarm sound is emitted or there is an incoming voice call, 1Seg watching is not activated automatically. Pressing  can display the activation confirmation screen or activate 1Seg watching.

◆ When the time set in recording reservation comes

 blinks on the stand-by display 1 minute before the start time. When the specified time comes, blinking stops and recording starts automatically.

- To stop recording, select  and press "Yes".

✓INFORMATION

- Preparations for recording are made under poor condition of airwave reception, and recording is started when the wave reception condition becomes better.
- When reserving times are overlapped, a reservation with earlier start time is interrupted by the one with later start time. Note that, if the start times are the same, the later reservation is given priority.
- When recording reservation was made without the confirmation screen for using 1Seg displayed, recording is not performed. →P216
- When reserved recording starts while any of the functions below is running, recording starts according to Priority (→P223) interrupting the running function or a confirmation screen appears. Active data in the interrupted function may be discarded.
 - Camera, Sound recorder, Bar code reader
 - Play of MUSIC Player, Download of music data
 - Some i-appli (A confirmation screen appears regardless of Priority).
- When reserved recording is started during downloading music data, the music data cannot be saved until the end of recording.

◆ When reserved recording ends

The icon ( /  : Recording reservation completed/failed) appears on the standby display. Select to check recording results. →P225

- When multiple programs are reserved to be recorded, an icon for the last recording result is displayed.
- The saving destination, file names and precautions are the same as for recording while watching. →P221

◆ Checking/Operating reservation

You can check/operate reservations in the reservation list screen.

- Reservation screen →P223

Displaying the reservation details screen : Select the reservation

Editing : Move the cursor to reservation ►   ► Edit reservation ►  ► 

- You cannot operate reservations in calendar display.

Deleting :   ► Select an item ► "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the reservation.
- If a long-term schedule is included when performing One day, select whether to delete all except the long-term schedule.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.
- The type of deletion that can be operated varies depending the display.

Rearranging <Sort> : **4** ▶ **1** - **4**

- "Name(Ascending)" sorts program names in the order of Unicode.
- Can be used only in list display.

Displaying recording result : **5**

The next procedure → P225

- Cannot be displayed on Day view screen.

Setting display/operation : **6** **1** ▶ **Set required items** ▶

- When "Auto-del past items" is set to "Auto delete", reservations that already passed the reserved time are deleted without confirmation.
- Cannot be set in Daily view screen.

✓ INFORMATION

- In list display, reservations with the start date/time already passed appear after those not passed. However, it does not apply when items are sorted or "Sort" of Display/Operation is set to other than "Air date(new→old)".

◆ Checking result of recording reservation <Recording result>

- Up to 50 items can be saved. When exceeding the savable number, item is overwritten chronologically.
- Reserved recording result is not recorded if reservation is canceled because other reservation was set for the same time or because FOMA terminal was not turned ON at the start time.

1 **[LifeKit]** **9** **5**

Recording result list appears.

- Icon definitions

: Recording reservation completed : Recording reservation failed

2 Move the cursor to a result ▶

Recording result details appear.

Playing a recorded program : Select a completed recording result

- Playing is unavailable when recorded program is moved or deleted.

Deleting a recording result : Move the cursor to recording

results ▶ **1** ▶ "Yes"

Deleting all histories : **2** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Yes"

User setting

Setting 1Seg watching/recording settings

1 **[LifeKit]** **9** **8**

2 Set required items

Setting screen : **1** ▶ **Set required items** ▶

- If setting Display subtitle to "In silent mode", subtitle appears when "No" is selected from a sound play confirmation screen appearing when watching 1Seg in Silent mode.
- When Subtitle size is set to "Large", data broadcasting is not displayed on the vertical display.
- For the horizontal standard screen, the subtitle size remains unchanged.
- With Display icon always, you can set whether to always display icons on horizontal full-screen.
- With Incoming msg ticker of Show ticker, you can set whether to display received i-concier information.

Setting sound : **2** ▶ **Set required items** ▶

- With Confirm audio to Bluetooth, you can set whether to confirm audio output when a Bluetooth device is connected.

Setting connection timeout : **3** **1** ▶ **1** - **3**

- These settings also apply i-mode Connection timeout.

Setting operations when ToruCa is obtained from 1Seg : **3** **3** ▶ **1** or **2**

- You can set whether to save ToruCa distributed while watching or recording 1Seg. ToruCa is saved to "ToruCa" of FOMA terminal automatically.
- Even when Duplication check of ToruCa from IC card is set to "OFF", no ToruCa is saved if it is identical to the existing one.

Deleting information from the storage area : **3** **4** ▶ **Move the cursor to affiliate broadcasting station or individual enterprise** ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ "Yes"

- When there are storage areas of individual enterprises, select an affiliate broadcasting station.
- When "Delete all items" is selected, perform authentication.

Resetting permit status : **3** **5** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Yes"

Setting operations when FOMA terminal is folded <Close setting> :

4 ▶ **1** - **3**

- When "Continue" is selected, 1Seg watching or recording continues.
- When "Mute" is selected, 1Seg watching continues with the sound silent.
- When "Recep:End/REC:Cont" is selected, only 1Seg watching ends and recording continues.
- Close setting is applied also while playing the recorded video. Note that, when "Mute" is selected, play is paused.

Setting operations to record 1Seg : **5** ▶ Set required items ▶

- Record time is the time from starting recording or changing the setting of recording until recording ends.
- It is unavailable for recording reservation.

✓INFORMATION

- Display light is not applied while 1Seg ECO mode is ON.
- With Close setting for data broadcasting and data broadcasting site set to "Continue" or "Mute", information may be updated even when FOMA terminal is folded, requiring packet communication fees.
- Recording destination of Record setting is applied from the recording performed after the setting. Record time is applied from the time of setting.

Remote controller with microphone

Using remote controller with microphone F01

You can use Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional) to operate 1Seg watching.

- It cannot be operated when a menu or panel is displayed in flip style.

 during time shift fast forward play : Time shift ordinary play

 (1 sec. or more)*1 : End 1Seg watching (including data broadcasting site)

  : Adjust volume

While watching,  (1 sec. or more) *1 : Select the next channel

During time shift play,  (1 sec. or more) *2 : Time shift fast forward play

While watching,  (1 sec. or more) *1 : Select the previous channel

 (Slide in the direction of ▼) : Disable ,  and  keys.

 (Slide in the opposite direction of ▼) : Enable unavailable keys

*1 Available only on 1Seg watching screen.

*2 Unavailable during displaying detail program information.

Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel	Music&Video Channel	228
Setting/Checking/Canceling programs		228
Playing a program		229
Operating Music&Video Channel from data box		231

MUSIC Player

Playing music		232
MUSIC Player		232
Saving music data		233
Viewing MUSIC Player screen		234
Playing music data		235
Managing folders, playlists and music		237

Enjoying music in various ways

Using i-appli while playing music	BGM play	240
Using remote controller with microphone F01	Remote controller with microphone	240

Handling music data

- This manual refers to Chaku-uta full® and WMA (Windows Media® Audio) files played with MUSIC Player as "music data".
- FOMA terminal can play WMA file or Chaku-uta full® protected by copyright protection technologies.
- When downloading music data from Internet websites etc., check the use conditions (permitted, prohibited actions, etc.).
- WMA files protected by copyright protection technologies are played using information specific to FOMA terminal. When information specific to FOMA terminal is changed due to failure, repair or modifications of the terminal, existing WMA files may not be played.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for handling of copy control CD (CCCD) or for reactions to disability of converting music data to WMA files.
- Music data saved in FOMA terminal or microSD card is allowed for personal use only. When using the music data, take extreme care not to infringe intellectual property rights of a third party such as copyrights etc. Do not move or copy music data saved in FOMA terminal or microSD card to other devices such as a PC.

Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel is a service which automatically distributes a program of up to approximately 1 hour at night just by setting your favorite music program etc. in advance. You can also enjoy high-quality video program of up to approximately 30 minutes. Programs are updated regularly and you can enjoy the distributed program at your convenient time such as on commuting.

■ Using Music&Video Channel

- Music&Video Channel is a charged service requiring subscription. To subscribe to the Music&Video Channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode and Pake-Houdai/ Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double in advance.
- Information fee may be required additionally for some programs besides Music&Video Channel service fee.
- If UIM is used on a Music&Video Channel incompatible FOMA terminal after subscribing to Music&Video Channel, Music&Video Channel cannot be used. Note that the service fee is charged unless Music&Video Channel is unsubscribed.
- Program setting and downloading are unavailable during international roaming*. Stop distribution of programs before leaving Japan. Also, restart distribution of programs after returning to Japan.
- * Note that attempting program setting or downloading during international roaming requires packet communication fee for i-mode connection.
- You can view mail or i-mode site etc. while listening to music with Music&Video Channel (Background play). Note that it is unavailable for video programs. Combination of functions that can be used together→P416
- For details of Music&Video Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Setting/Checking/Canceling programs

- Up to 2 programs can be set. To set, Music&Video Channel program site must be registered in My Menu.→P173

1 [MUSIC] 2



Music&Video Channel screen

① Image of a set program

-  appears if it is not displayed.

② State of program

-  : Program completely downloaded  : Program partially downloaded
-  : Replay restricted, trick play restricted
-  /  : Replay restricted, trick play restricted : Time link distribution
-  : Program not played yet  : Download failed

③ Channel number

④ Display name of programs

- Displayed as below with some program setting and/or download state.
- Program title display : Program already downloaded
- No program : Before program is downloaded
- Updating program : Program downloading

⑤ Schedule of next program update

⑥ Service menu

2 "Set program" ▶ Set, check or cancel the program according to instructions on the screen

- If you select the service menu at the time of purchase of this FOMA terminal or if the UIM is replaced, a confirmation screen appears.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

INFORMATION

- To set a program with a different UIM installed, first check the program setting information from Set program. Checking the program setting information may delete programs not moved to Saved program folder.
- Even when canceling the setting of program, the site registered in My Menu is not deleted.

When program is set

appears on the stand-by display 12 hours before program distribution time. Program is automatically downloaded at night.

- On the stand-by display, appears when the download was successful, if failed. If you select the icon, you can open Music&Video Channel screen.

INFORMATION

- If the battery level becomes 2 or lower, programs cannot be downloaded. Check that the remaining battery is sufficient and the radio wave conditions are good.
- If communication is interrupted during download of a program, the program is automatically downloaded up to 5 times every 3 minutes.
- If downloading failed because FOMA terminal is not turned ON, the battery level is low, out of service area or in the bad radio wave conditions, downloading is attempted again at the same time of the night, the next day.
- Downloading cannot be performed automatically in the cases below. Set the program again from Music&Video Channel screen.
 - If another UIM is inserted after you set a program, or the UIM is inserted to another FOMA terminal compatible with Music&Video Channel
 - All data on FOMA terminal is deleted
- Downloaded programs are saved by channel temporarily to Delivered program folder in Music&Video Channel of Data Box. Programs of Delivered program folder are deleted and cannot be played when the channel containing that program is updated. Programs can be enjoyed during their valid period by moving them to another folder before updating (→P231, 308). Note that some programs may not be moved.
- Canceling Music&Video Channel or i-mode may delete programs in Delivered program folder.

Downloading programs manually

When program downloading fails, the rest of the program can be manually downloaded.

- A message appears for a time slot which could not be downloaded.
- Even if program download is interrupted, downloaded chapters can be played partially.

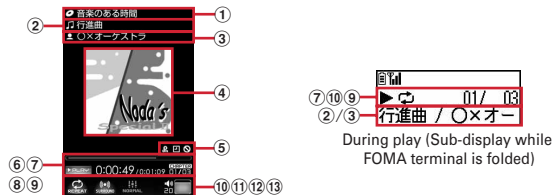
1 [ME] [MUSIC] [2] ▶ Select a program ▶ "Yes"

Playing a program

- Operation from Saved program folder in Data Box→P231

1 [ME] [MUSIC] [2] ▶ Select a program

Music&Video Channel player is activated and the program is played from the beginning or from the beginning of the chapter previously stopped.



Music&Video Channel player screen

- Program title
- Chapter title
- Artist's name or creator's name of the chapter
- Chapter image/Movie or program image
 - Some may not be displayed.
- Replay restricted [RE] : Time link distribution [TL] : Trick play restricted
- Play position indicator
- Play state
 - ▶ PLAY / ▶ : In play
 - ⏸ PAUSE / ⏸ : In pause
 - ⏩ F.F. : In fast forward
 - ⏪ REW : In rewind
- Play time/Total time
- Current chapter number/Number of total chapters
- Repeat play
- Surround*
- Equalizer*
- Play volume

* When the function is set to "OFF" or "Normal", characters are displayed in gray.

- The operations below are available on the Music&Video Channel player screen.
 - : Play/Pause*¹
 - : Adjust volume
 - (1 sec. or more) : Rewind*¹/Fast forward*¹
 - (1 sec. or more) : Jump to the beginning of a chapter. If play time is within 3 seconds, jump to the previous chapter*¹
 - (1 sec. or more) : Move to next chapter*¹
 - : Connect to a site→P231
 - : Switch Standard screen/Horizontal full-screen*²
 - : Stop playing and end Music&Video Channel player screen
- *¹ Unavailable for time link distribution program
- *² On the horizontal full-screen, only the played image is displayed. Hold FOMA terminal horizontally while watching. Operate the multi-cursor key in the direction rotated by 90 degrees clockwise from its original position.

- The light turns on or blinks by some operations.

Setting/Canceling repeat : **4** ▶ **1** or **2**

- This is not available for a time link distribution program.

Setting display light : **5** ▶ **1** or **2**

- When "Phone setting" is specified, the light turns on according to the setting of Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.
- This setting also applies to Display light time (i-motion) of Display & Key light and Display light time of Settings for i-motion.

Setting/Canceling surround play : **6** ▶ **1** or **2**

Setting Equalizer : **7** ▶ **1** - **9**

- This is not available for video programs.
- "In-a-train" reduces the sound leakage from earphone etc.

❖ Programs with replay restrictions

Some programs are subject to replay count, replay expiration and/or replay period restrictions; you cannot play programs which exceed the restrictions.

- When setting both replay expiration and replay period, the date closer to the current date is displayed.
- Expiration and period of replay restriction cannot be changed even if you change the date and time.

✓INFORMATION-----

- In the cases below, play is paused. Play restarts automatically after the operation is over.
 - When there is an incoming voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call
 - When mail is received (Display priority is "Show message")
 - When i-mode inquiry is performed
 - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
 - When a function that cannot be used concurrently is performed→P416
 - When FOMA terminal is folded while playing a video program
- When many functions are used simultaneously, the tune being played may be interrupted.
- For a time link distribution program, the same contents as radio broadcasting are played at the same time. Playing requires auto time adjust.
- When attempting to play partially downloaded program, a confirmation screen for downloading the remaining part appears. A time link distribution program cannot be played until remaining chapters are downloaded.
- When a program that has failed downloading is selected, a confirmation screen for playing appears.
- With Rewind, Fast forward, Chapter back or Chapter skip, the operation with the restriction is unavailable. When the remaining replay count is 0 while playing, the operation of rewinding, returning to chapter or playing from the chapter list is unavailable.
- If the remaining battery level is 2 or lower, a confirmation screen for playing appears.

◆ Checking program chapter list

1 **[MUSIC]** **2** ▶ **Move the cursor to a program** ▶ **1**

- appears below the chapter number currently played.

Playing a chapter : Select a chapter

Checking details of chapter : Move the cursor to a chapter ▶

- On Music&Video Channel player screen, press **2** to check the details of the chapter currently played.

◆ Checking program information

1 [MUSIC] ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶

- When the program name is unknown, "musicchX" (where X is a channel number) is displayed.

◆ Moving a program to Saved program folder

- Saved program folder → P231 "Playing from program list"
- Up to 10 items can be saved.

1 [MUSIC] ▶ Move the cursor to a program
▶ ▶ "Yes"

✓ INFORMATION

- When exceeding the savable number/area → P312
- Data failed in downloading, data with Move restriction set, data with replay restriction reached, or a time link distribution program cannot be moved.
- Data cannot be moved to microSD card.

◆ Deleting a program

- Deleting a program does not cancel Program setting.

1 [MUSIC] ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶ ▶ "Yes"

◆ Connecting to sites

You can connect to the site for the program with URL.

1 [MUSIC] ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶ ▶ "Yes"

Operating Music&Video Channel from data box

From Data Box, you can display or play a distributed program or program saved in Saved program folder, or manage folders or programs.

- Folder operations are the same as for other data in Data Box. Note that Delivered program folder and Saved program folder cannot be deleted.
 - Creating/Deleting folders → P308
 - Moving (→ P308), Deleting (→ P311), Sorting (→ P311) programs
- Program data cannot be copied.

◆ Playing from program list

1 [Data Box]

: Delivered program folder : Saved program folder : User-created folder

2 Select a folder



- In the thumbnail view, the file size at the cursor position is displayed at the bottom of the display.

① Replay restriction

: Replay restricted, trick play restricted

/ : Replay restricted, trick play restricted : Time link distribution

② Display name of programs

③ Program type

: Music&Video Channel program

: Program unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

: Program partially downloaded

④ File restriction

⑤ Program image

When program images cannot be displayed, the icons below appear.

: No image : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

3 Select a program

Music&Video Channel player is activated and the program is played.→P229

◆ Changing program display name

- 1  [Data Box]  ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor a program ▶   ▶ Enter a program display name (up to 128 two-byte or 256 one-byte characters) ▶ 

- "Title" cannot be edited.

Playing music

- The methods for playing music with FOMA terminal are as follows.
 - Playing with MUSIC Player
Chaku-uta full[®] downloaded from sites or music data (WMA file) downloaded from the Internet websites or CDs using a PC and transferred to microSD card is played.
 - Playing as i-motion
i-motion containing only sound downloaded from i-mode and saved to Data Box of FOMA terminal is played (→P292). Playing is available from microSD card when i-motion is saved on the card (→P304).
- You can view mail or i-mode site etc. while listening to music (Background play).
→P322, 416
- When there is any incoming call, message, etc. while listening to music, play may be paused. →P236 INFORMATION in "Playing music data"

MUSIC Player

Chaku-uta full[®] downloaded from a site, and Windows Media[®] Audio (WMA) files downloaded from music CDs, or Internet, etc. can be saved to FOMA terminal or microSD card and played.

- MUSIC Player supports Chaku-uta full[®] and Windows Media Audio (WMA) files.
- You can connect the terminal with a Bluetooth device to output MUSIC Player sound to the device.→P342
- You can play music in stereo using a Bluetooth device or stereo earphone set (or stereo speaker).
- Note that using MUSIC Player consumes much battery power.
- Precautions for using microSD card→P300
- For Windows Media Player, contact the manufacturer of your PC.

❖ Uta-hodai

This is a flat-rate service with replay expiration provided by a music distribution company.

Music expired or that with service registration stopped etc. cannot be played. To play, updating license is required.

Saving music data

◆ Downloading Chaku-uta full®

- With the size limitation of 5 Mbytes per item, up to 100 items to FOMA terminal or up to 1,000 items to microSD card can be saved.

1 Display a site including Chaku-uta full® ▶ Select Chaku-uta full®

Download starts. Uta-hodai download starts after the replay expiration information is downloaded.

Pausing downloading :  ▶ "No"

2 "Save"

Playing : "Play"

Saving the downloaded part : "Save temporary".

- This is displayed if "No" is selected on the confirmation screen for resuming when downloading is interrupted. The remaining data can be downloaded from the music data list screen. → P235 Step 2 in "Playing music data"

Displaying detail information : "File property" → P239

Canceling saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

3 Enter the display name (up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters) ▶

- "Title-Artist" is entered as a display name.
- When " 

✓INFORMATION-----

- When exceeding the savable number/area → P312
- Checking memory space of FOMA terminal, microSD card → P306, 311

◆ Saving WMA files

Up to 1,000 files can be saved. Use Windows Media Player to save WMA files to microSD card. Be sure to check the version of Windows Media Player before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC.

- It is recommended that you use PC's OS and Windows Media Player in combination of the versions below.
 - For Windows XP Service Pack 2 or later as PC's OS
Windows Media Player 10 (version 10.00.00.3802 or later) or Windows Media Player 11 (version 11.0.5721.5145 or later)
 - For Windows Vista
Windows Media Player 11 (version 11.0.6000.6324 or later)
- For operations, refer to the help of Windows Media Player 10/11.
- It is recommended that you keep Windows XP, Windows Vista or Windows Media Player updated to ensure better performance of operating or displaying forwarded WMA files.
- Playlists can be transferred from a PC. However, up to 400 items in the playlist can be transferred.
- WMA files cannot be saved to FOMA terminal.
- WMA file saved to microSD card with another FOMA terminal may not be displayed/played on F-01A. And, if you use a microSD card used for transferring a WMA file from a different FOMA terminal, it may not be recognized by a PC even if you switch to MTP mode. In these cases, perform Delete all WMAs (→ P240), or initialize the microSD card (→ P306). Note that, if you initialize the microSD card, all the data other than music files are also deleted.

1 Install microSD card to FOMA terminal ▶ Set USB mode settings to "MTP mode"

USB mode settings → P307

2 With Windows Media Player activated, connect FOMA terminal to a PC using USB cable ▶ Send WMA file from the PC

- Prepare WMA file in advance.
- For connecting method, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" in the attached CD-ROM. Note that, when transferring a WMA file, installation of the FOMA communication configuration file is not required.

Napster® application

Using Napster® application, music data can be saved.

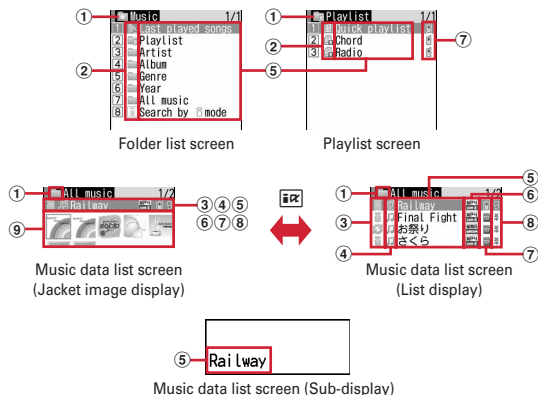
- Napster® application can be downloaded from the website below.
<http://www.napster.jp/>
- For more detailed information about Napster® application, refer to the website below.
<http://www.napster.jp/support/>

✓INFORMATION

- Checking memory space of microSD card → P306
- Do not remove the USB cable during data transfer. It may cause malfunction or data loss.
- While a PC is accessing microSD card in FOMA terminal, only MTP mode can be switched.
- WMA files saved in microSD card in FOMA terminal can be deleted using Windows Media Player while FOMA terminal is connected to a PC.
- When music data cannot be transferred from a PC, you can check the optimum configuration for your PC by using "ポータブルデバイス用/パソコン環境診断 (PC environment diagnosis for a portable device)".
For ポータブルデバイス用/パソコン環境診断, refer to the website below.
FMWORLD (<http://www.fmwORLD.net/>) → 携帯電話 (Mobile phone) → WMP環境診断ツール (WPM environment diagnostic tool)
- When Windows Media Player and Napster® application are used at the same time on a PC, processing speed of the PC may be lowered.
- AAC format files can be played only in "Other movie" in Multimedia on microSD card. Set the copying destination of AAC format files to directly under the PRIVATE¥ DOCOMO¥ MMFILE or MUDxxx in MMFILE on microSD card (→ P301).
* Files named other than "MMFxxxx" or files with extension of "m4a" cannot be displayed or played even after they are copied.
- When you copy files, it is recommended that you use SD utility of FOMA F series. SD utility automatically converts file names.
For SD utility of FOMA F series, refer to the website below from a PC.
FMWORLD (<http://www.fmwORLD.net/>) → 携帯電話 (Mobile phone) → データリンクソフト (Data link software)

Viewing MUSIC Player screen

■ Folder list screen, Playlist screen, music data list screen



- On the jacket image display screen, the file size (actual memory size) of the music data at the cursor position is displayed at the bottom of the display.

① Current folder/playlist

② Folder/Playlist/Types of functions

- Play previous tune
- Playlist folder
- Ordinary folder
- Searching tunes from i-mode sites
- Quick playlist
- Playlist created by FOMA terminal
- Playlist transferred from a PC

③ Originated

- i-mode
- Data exchange

④ Replay restriction

- (orange) : Replay unrestricted
- (gray) : Data partially saved
- (orange) : Number of times/Expiration/Period (only Chaku-uta Full®)
- (orange) : License not expired/ License expired, Replay prohibited (Uta-hodai only)
- (gray) : Replay prohibited (Uta-hodai only)

⑤ Folder name*/Playlist name*/Function name*/Music display name

* On the sub-display, ③ is displayed at the beginning of the name.

⑥ File format and copyright management

: Chaku-uta full®, DOKOMO

: Chaku-uta full® unavailable due to UIM operation restriction, DOKOMO

: WMA file, Windows Media digital rights management technology (WM DRM)

: WMA file, no copyright management

⑦ Save location

: FOMA terminal : microSD card

⑧ File restriction

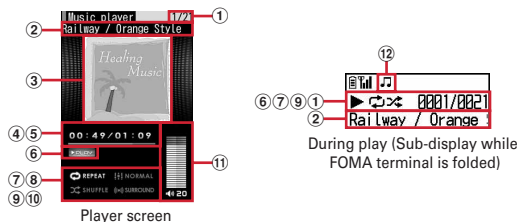
⑨ Jacket image

When images cannot be displayed, the icons below appear.

: No jacket image : Data partially saved

: Data with UIM operation restriction

■ Player screen



Player screen

① Tune number/Number of tunes in folder or playlist

② Tune title/Artist name

③ Jacket image of tune

④ Play time/Total time

⑤ Play position indicator

⑥ Play state

: Ordinary play : Fast forward : Rewind

: Introduction play : In pause

⑦ Repeat play*

: Play one : Play all

⑧ Equalizer*

⑨ Shuffle*

⑩ Surround*

⑪ Play volume

⑫ Play icon

* When the function is set to "OFF" or "Normal", characters are displayed in gray. Icons do not appear on the sub-display.

✓ INFORMATION

• If the original song saved to a Playlist on FOMA terminal cannot be recognized, "-" appears as a song name in the Playlist and the song cannot be played.

Playing music data

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder or playlist

• The menu on the sub-display can also be used. → P35

2 Select music data

Playback starts. The light turns on or blinks depending on operations.

• When Chaku-uta full® failed or interrupted in downloading and partially downloaded is selected, a confirmation screen appears. If the remaining data cannot be downloaded again, partially saved data is deleted.

• The operations below are available on the player screen.

: Play/Pause

: Adjust volume

(1 sec. or more) : Rewind/Fast forward

(1 sec. or more) : Move to the beginning of the current tune*1

(1 sec. or more) : Move to the next tune

(1 sec. or more) : Display music data list screen without stopping playback*2

: Stop playing and display music data list screen

: Changing the repeat setting

: Changing the equalizer settings (cannot be changed during playback)

: Changing the shuffle setting

: Changing the surround settings (cannot be changed during playback)

(Pressing twice quickly) : Save the current tune or tune in pause to Quick playlist → P238

(1 sec. or more) : Stop MUSIC Player

: Display clock (when FOMA terminal is folded)*3

*1 Operation when playing time is within 3 seconds moves you to the previous tune.

*2 Press or to return to player screen.

*3 Press twice to return to the player screen.

- With FOMA terminal folded, on the music data list screen, folder list screen or playlist list screen, press for 1 second or more to move to the immediately higher folder. While displaying the top folder, press for 1 second or more to stop MUSIC Player.

When selecting "Last played songs"

Play from the tune that was played when ended last time.

When selecting "Search by i-mode"

You can connect to i-mode and select the tune to download.

When Uta-hodai is selected

When you need to update the replay period in the selected file or other files, a confirmation screen appears. After update is completed, Uta-hodai is played.

Playing introduction : Move the cursor to music data ▶

Only the first 7 seconds of tunes in the folder can be played one after another.

- During introduction play, pressing or cancels introduction play and the play continues.

✓INFORMATION

- In the cases below, play is paused. Play restarts automatically after the operation is over.
 - When there is an incoming voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call
 - When mail is received (Display priority is "Show message")
 - When i-mode inquiry is performed
 - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
 - When a function that cannot be used concurrently is performed→P416
- When many functions are used simultaneously, the tune being played may be interrupted.
- If the battery level becomes 2 or lower, a confirmation screen appears.

◆ When music data has replay restriction set

Some music data has replay count, replay expiration and/or replay period restrictions; you cannot play music that exceeds the restrictions.

- The remaining replay count, replay expiration and replay period of Chaku-uta full® can be checked by viewing the detail information.
- Expiration and period of replay restriction cannot be changed even if you change the date and time.

■ Uta-hodai replay expiration

After expiration, a confirmation screen appears. Updating the replay expiration requires site connection. Packet communication fee is charged to connect to a site.

✓INFORMATION

- The replay expiration of Uta-hodai may contain a renewal period of several days after the specified expiration. In this period, the service is available without updating the replay expiration information.
- When MUSIC Player is used with a different UIM from the one used for downloading Uta-hodai, it is recommended to delete all data at once.→P130
- When Uta-hodai is attempted to be downloaded from a site for which FOMA terminal does not have an updated license, a confirmation screen appears before downloading. Select "Yes" and update license to download.
- The default tone sounds when Uta-hodai set to ring alert or alarm sound cannot be played.
- Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double is not applicable to packet communication fee to be charged for updating the replay expiration during international roaming.
- To play a WMA file which cannot be played, check that it has not expired yet using a PC, and connect FOMA terminal to the PC to synchronize.→P233
- In a place overseas with time difference, the replay expiration of Uta-hodai is displayed with local time. Note that, the replay expiration is passed in Japan time, playing is unavailable regardless of the local time displayed.

◆ MUSIC Player setting <Settings>

1 On the folder list screen, music data list screen or player screen,
 ▶ "Settings" ▶ Set required items ▶

✓INFORMATION

- These settings are retained even after MUSIC Player is exited.
- Bluetooth auto-start is automatically applied to Start MUSIC Player in Bluetooth settings.→P347
- "In-a-train" of Equalizer reduces the sound leakage from earphone etc.

Managing folders, playlists and music

◆ Moving Chaku-uta full®

You can move Chaku-uta full® between FOMA terminal and microSD card.

- 1 Move the cursor to Chaku-uta full® on the music data list screen other than Playlist ▶ 4 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ "Yes"

Chaku-uta full® is moved, and and are switched.

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .

✓INFORMATION

- Chaku-uta full® partially saved or exceeded play limit cannot be moved.
- If Chaku-uta full® set for ring alert is moved from FOMA terminal to microSD card, the ring alert setting returns to default.

◆ Deleting music data

- 1 Move the cursor to music data on the music data list screen other than Playlist ▶ 5 ▶ 1-3 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to music data.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

✓INFORMATION

- When all music data is removed from a folder, the folder itself is also deleted. Note that folders immediately below the top folder are not deleted.
- If music data set for ring alert is deleted, the ring alert setting returns to default.

◆ Creating Playlists

You can create a Playlist and manage music data in your preferred playing order. You can save up to 20 Playlists in FOMA terminal and up to 100 in microSD card.

- Playlists created on a PC can be transferred. → P233

- 1 On the folder list screen, select Playlist folder ▶ 1 ▶ Enter a playlist name (up to 40 two-byte (80 one-byte) characters) ▶

An empty playlist is created.

- As display name of playlist, "playlistYYYYMMDD" (YYYYMMDD is the year, month and day that the playlist was created) is preset.

◆ Creating playlist from music data to save

- 1 Move the cursor to music data on the music data screen other than Playlist ▶ 3 1 ▶ 1-3

- Selecting operation ▶ is required for registering selected items.

- 2 Enter the Playlist name (up to 40 two-byte (80 one-byte) characters) ▶

◆ Saving music data to playlist

- Up to 100 items of music data can be saved in a playlist created by FOMA terminal.

◆ Operating from playlist to save data

- 1 On the folder list screen, select Playlist folder ▶ Select a playlist
- 2 3 1 ▶ 1-3 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music data

- To save selected items, select them ▶ . To save all items, is required.
- All music data is displayed as selected for registering all items.

Saving to playlist that no music date is saved : "Yes" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music data ▶

- Multiple music data can be selected.

❖ Operating from the music data to save

- 1 Move the cursor to music data on the music data list screen other than Playlist ▶ [3] [2] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ Select a Playlist

Music data is added to the Playlist.

- To save selected items, select them ▶

❖ Saving music data to Quick playlist on the player screen

You can add a song in playback or paused to dedicated Playlist (Quick Playlist). Up to 100 songs can be saved.

- Quick playlist cannot be newly created.

- 1 On the player screen, press twice

When saved, the confirmation sound is emitted.

❖ Removing music data from playlist

- Removing music data from the Playlist does not delete the data itself. Music data cannot be removed from Playlists transferred from a PC.

- 1 Move the cursor to music data on the music data list screen in Playlist ▶ [3] [2] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ "Yes"

- To remove selected items, select them ▶

❖ Deleting playlists

- Quick playlist cannot be deleted.

- 1 On the folder list screen, select Playlist folder ▶ Move the cursor to a Playlist ▶ [3] ▶ "Yes"

❖ Renaming playlist

- Quick Playlist and Playlist transferred from a PC cannot be renamed.

- 1 On the folder list screen, select a Playlist folder ▶ Move the cursor to a Playlist ▶ [5] ▶ Enter a name (up to 40 two-byte (80 one-byte) characters) ▶

Displaying a playlist name : Select the Playlist folder on the folder list screen ▶ Move the cursor to a Playlist ▶ [4]

❖ Copying playlist

- 1 On the folder list screen, select the Playlist folder ▶ Move the cursor to a Playlist ▶ [2]

- When copying Playlists transferred from a PC, press [2] and select "Yes". These are saved to FOMA terminal as Playlists created on FOMA terminal.

❖ Rearranging the display order of music data <Sort>

- 1 On the music data list screen, [6] ▶ Set required items ▶

❖ Sorting play order in playlist freely

- Sorting is unavailable for playlist transferred from a PC.

- 1 On the music data list screen in Playlist, [3] [3] ▶ Move the cursor to music data ▶ or ▶

◆ Setting music data as ring alert

You can select "Full song ring tone" to set whole music data as a ring alert or "Point ring tone" to set a part of it.

- You cannot set WMA files and music data in which Full song ring tone and Point ring tone are set to "No" in Detail info.

<Example> Setting music data on FOMA terminal

1 Move the cursor to music data on the music data

screen ► ► -

2 or

- To set as Point ring tone, select a section to set.
- When setting as a contact alert (call, mail), select a phonebook entry and press .

Setting music data of microSD card to full song ring tone : ► "Yes"

The music data moves to FOMA terminal and is set as ring alert.

Setting music data of microSD card to point ring tone :

① ► Select the part to set ► "Yes"

- When setting the music data of "Music(subscription)" moves the music data to FOMA terminal. No more operation is required.

② Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ►

- When selecting the music data of "Music", the selected part of the music data is saved in "i-mode" folder of i-motion of FOMA terminal as an i-motion compatible with contents transfer.

◆ Displaying detail information of music data <Displaying detail information>

1 On the music data list screen, move the cursor to music data

► ► to display various information

- WMA file and other files are different in the types of information to be displayed.
- "Display name" is the name to be displayed on the music data list screen, "Title" is the name to be displayed on the player screen.

- "Track number" indicates a song number in album/total number of songs in album.
- A file extension is not displayed in "File name".
- In "File type", "Music" indicates Chaku-uta full®, and "Music(subscription)" indicates Uta-hodai files respectively.
- "Sound" indicates a format and bit rate of the music data. Bit rate is not displayed for a WMA file.
- While File of detail information is being displayed, press to display a confirmation screen for connecting to a site indicated in "URL".

Changing detail information of music data : Move the cursor to music data on the music data list screen ► ► Select an item ► Enter new data ►

- If detail information of music data in pause is changed, that music data may not be played from the beginning when MUSIC Player starts next time.
- Detail information of WMA file cannot be changed.
- Items that can be changed and the number of characters that can be entered to individual saving destinations are as below.

Item	F-01A	microSD card
Display name	25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters	
Title	127 two-byte (254 one-byte) characters	31 two-byte (63 one-byte) characters
Artist		126 two-byte (253 one-byte) characters
Album		
Year	4 one-byte digits	
Genre	127 two-byte (254 one-byte) characters	126 two-byte (253 one-byte) characters
Comment		
Track number	3 one-byte digits	
Total track number		

- Selecting "Restore original" causes the item above the button to return to the information as downloaded.

◆ Displaying images or lyrics contained in music data

- Images in JPEG or GIF format can be displayed. Lyrics are saved as image data.
- You can display up to 1 Jacket image, 2 images and 7 lyrics.

1 On the music data list screen, move the cursor to music data ▶ 2 3

2 1 - 3

Displaying on a full-screen :

- : Display the previous or next image or lyrics
- : Cancel

Saving :

- Images or lyrics are saved to "i-mode" folder of My Picture.

✓ INFORMATION

- Some images or lyrics may not be saved.
- Jacket image cannot be saved to WMA file.

◆ Deleting WMA files all at once <Delete all WMAs>

1 On the folder list screen in the top folder,

1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

WMA files saved in microSD card and playlists transferred from a PC are deleted.

✓ INFORMATION

- Performing Delete all WMAs deletes the WM folder in microSD card, WM_SYSTEM folders and all data from these folders. Note that data not used by MUSIC Player is also deleted.

BGM play

Using i-appli while playing music

You can set whether to play Music&Video Channel programs or MUSIC Player songs in background while using i-appli.

- Background play is not available unless the volume of the running i-appli is set to 0. Background play may not be available even when the volume of some i-appli is set to 0.

1 [Settings & NW services] 1 7 ▶ 1 or 2

Remote controller with microphone

Using remote controller with microphone F01

Using Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional), you can operate Music&Video Channel player and MUSIC Player.

(1 sec. or more)^{*1} : Start (when FOMA terminal is folded)/End

: Play/Pause

(Pressing twice quickly on the player screen)^{*1} : Save the current or paused tune to Quick playlist

(Player screen) : Adjust volume

(Folder list screen, playlist list screen, music data list screen)^{*1} : Move the cursor

(1 sec. or more) : Move to the next chapter/tune

(1 sec. or more)^{*2} : Jump to the beginning the next chapter/song

(Slide in the direction of ▼) : Disable , and keys.

(Slide in the opposite direction of ▼) : Enable unavailable keys

^{*1} This is available only for MUSIC Player.

^{*2} If playing time is within 3 seconds (Music&Video channel) or less than 3 seconds (MUSIC Player), jump to the previous chapter/song.

i-αppli

i-αppli	242
Downloading i-αppli	242
Starting i-αppli	243
Starting i-αppli quickly	256
Starting i-αppli automatically	256
Using i-αppli call	257
Starting i-αppli from site, mail or ToruCa	i-αppli To 258
Operating i-αppli stand-by display	i-αppli stand-by display 258
Managing i-αppli	259
Using various i-αppli functions	260

i-Widget

i-Widget	261
Using i-Widget	261
Downloading widget application	262

i-αppli

"i-αppli" is a software for i-mode compatible mobile phones. By downloading various software from i-mode site, you can update the information of stock price or weather automatically, enjoy the games without connecting network or use FOMA terminal more conveniently.

Moreover, i-αppli Online which enables online communication among multiplayer by using real-time communication or i-αppli call (→P257) is supported to enjoy a versus game or chat application etc.

Also, some i-αppli support i-Widget (→P261) .

- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- When using overseas, a packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan. →P372
- For details of i-mode, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

✓INFORMATION

- Any image or movie saved by i-αppli or i-αppliDX is saved in "i-mode", "Deco-mail picture" or "Deco-mail pict" folder of My Picture, "i-mode" folder of i-motion or added album respectively, or in the i-αppli. Any ToruCa saved by i-αppli is saved in "ToruCa" of ToruCa content.
- When ring tone is saved by i-αppliDX, it is saved in "i-mode" folder of Melody or in the i-αppli.
- Press  (i-αppli)  to display the registered trademarks regarding i-αppli.

Downloading i-αppli

You can download i-αppli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- The maximum size of i-αppli that can be saved is 2 Mbytes.

1 Displaying a site ▶ Select an i-αppli

i-αppli is downloaded.

- Press  and select "Yes" while downloading to stop downloading.

- When downloading is stopped or communication is interrupted, a confirmation screen for resuming it may appear. When selecting "No", a confirmation screen for partial saving appears when it is available. When partially saved, the remainder can be downloaded from Software list. →P243 Step 3 in "Starting i-αppli"

When Software info disp. is "ON"

A confirmation screen of i-αppli information and downloading appears.

- The detail information of the i-αppli to be downloaded can be displayed by pressing .

Downloading i-αppli that uses the saved data, the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM/IC card or microSD card

A downloading confirmation screen appears.

- With "Guide" displayed on the guide area, press  to check details of the data used by the i-αppli.

When the selected i-αppli is already downloaded.

A screen indicating that the data is already downloaded appears. When the new version of the i-αppli is released, upgrading confirmation screen appears. When already downloaded with another UIM, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

When the setting screen for Set stand-by disp. (i-αppli stand-by), Use network, Use location info. (Location usage setting), Program guide key setting or i-αppli call setting appears.

Set required items.

Setting items → P245 Step 1 in "Setting operating condition of i-αppli"

2 After completion of downloading, "Yes" or "No"

Select "Yes" to activate i-αppli and select "No" to return to the site display.

- Downloaded i-αppli is saved to "My folder" of Software list.
- When setting Set stand-by disp. to "Yes", a confirmation screen for setting appears. When it is set, i-Channel ticker or Information display is set to "No/Not display" if it was set to "Yes/Display".
- With 2in1 in B mode, the site screen reappears when downloading i-αppli to use mail functions is completed. When the setting screen is displayed, press  to return to the site screen.

✓INFORMATION

- When exceeding the savable number/area→P312
- Checking memory space→P311
- Downloading of i-appli may be unavailable if memory space in the IC card is not sufficient (regardless of memory space in the i-appli storage area) or the i-appli to be downloaded is Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli that uses the same services as those used by another Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli already saved. Delete the i-appli following instructions displayed on the screen. Note that, some types of i-appli may not be displayed as ones to be deleted or may require to be started or downloaded again and the data in the IC card to be deleted.

◆ Downloading Message i-appli

When Message i-appli is downloaded, the folders for Message i-appli are automatically created in the folder list of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages. The automatically created folder name is set to the name of the Message i-appli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Up to 5 items of Message i-appli can be saved (included in the savable number, 100 of i-appli). When exceeding the savable number, follow the instructions on the screen and delete stored folder for Message i-appli.
- If Message i-appli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, it cannot be downloaded.
- If a Message i-appli is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i-appli folder remains, a confirmation screen for using mail folder appears. If you do not use, download after deleting the mail folder.
- If a mail that supports Message i-appli to be downloaded has already been saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen for moving to the folder created automatically when downloading appears.

◆ Setting whether to display i-appli information when downloading <Software info disp.>

1 [MENU] [i-appli] 3 3 ▶ 1 or 2

Starting i-appli

1 [i] (1 sec. or more)

Displaying only Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli : [ME] [Osaifu-Keitai]

1 ▶ Go to Step 3

Displaying only GPS compatible i-appli : →P276

2 Select a folder

- Icon definitions

[Folder icon] / [Folder icon] : Stored folder by default with/without i-appli

[Folder icon] / [Folder icon] : Created folder with/without i-appli

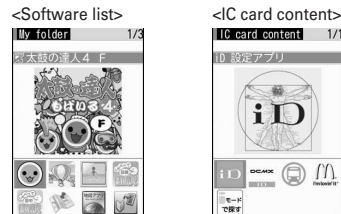
Checking number of i-appli in folder <Count software> : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [F]

- For icon definitions, see Step 3.

Checking current settings : [E]

The settings such as saved number, i-appli stand-by display, one-key shortcut and auto start are displayed.

3 Select i-appli to start



Graphical display

- Icon definitions (Only marks with * are displayed in IC card content.)

[i] : Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

[i] : IC card data transferred by iC transfer service

[i] : Message i-appli [i] : i-appliDX

[i] (orange) : i-appli

-  : i-appli setting available/currently set for i-appli stand-by display
-  : Auto start set
-  (upper half in gray, lower half in orange)* : i-appli partially saved
-  : i-appli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.
-  : i-appli of stopped condition by IP (Information Provider)
-  : i-appli downloaded from SSL page
-  : Unable to start when 2in1 is in B mode
-  : i-appli registered as one-key shortcut
-  : i-appli registered as two-key shortcut
-  : i-appli set with Individual IC card lock * : GPS compatible i-appli
-  /  : Program guide key setting available/set to ON
-  /  : Search i-mode site for i-appli→P242

- Each time you press , display view switches in the order of graphical display→list display→thumbnail display.
- When widget application is activated, an operation screen for the widget application appears.→P21
- When partially saved i-appli is selected, a downloading confirmation screen asking if you download the rest appears. The i-appli can be started after the rest is downloaded; when download is disabled, the i-appli partially saved may be deleted.
- When IC card data transferred by iC transfer service is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading or connecting to the site appears. The related Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli can be started after it is downloaded.
- To exit i-appli, follow the procedure specified for each i-appli. You can also quit i-appli by pressing  and then selecting "Yes".

✓ INFORMATION

- For some i-appli, display area differs or horizontal display is applied.
- i-appli that vertical and horizontal (or vice versa) size is less than 432×240 dots are displayed with horizontal and vertical size doubled.
- For i-appli that is displayed with 864 vertical or horizontal dots, each time you press , you can switch displaying/hiding the battery icon.
- You can adjust the volume that sounds while i-appli is running. Note that some i-appli does not emit sounds.→P246
- Some i-appli can activate another specified i-appli while running i-appli (when not specified, select i-appli). Note that, if the specified i-appli is not on the Software list, it must be downloaded.
- Images used on i-appli (shot using the camera from i-appli, obtained using the i-appli infrared communication/iC transmission function) or the data you entered may be sent to the server via Internet.

- i-appli that uses microSD card can save data in microSD card from the i-appli, but the saved data may not be used for other models. Select "i-appli data" in microSD card to check for the i-appli that uses microSD card.→P304
- i-appli may be interrupted when any of the conditions below occur. When the operating function ends, i-appli restarts, but some i-appli does not return to the state of the time of interruption.
 - When there is a call or PushTalk call
 - When Lock on close or Auto keypad lock is activated
 - When the date specified in the watching/recording reservation of 1Seg, countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
 - When the function is switched over to another function
- When you are out of service area or the saved data cannot be used, i-appli may not start or not operate correctly.
- For certain i-appli, the IP (Information Provider) may access i-appli saved in the mobile phone and directly set operation disabled state. In this case, i-appli startup, stand-by display settings, upgrading, etc. are disabled, enabling only deletion and software description display. To resume using i-appli, notification of i-appli enabled must be received; contact the IP (Information Provider).
- For certain i-appli, the IP (Information Provider) may send data to i-appli saved in the mobile phone.
- When the IP (Information Provider) requests i-appli for stopping or restarting or sends data to i-appli, FOMA terminal makes communications and  blinks. In this case, no communication fee is charged.
- For i-appli builders

If i-appli does not operate normally while building, trace information may help. Press  [i-appli]   on the stand-by display to display Trace information. Note that Trace information cannot be displayed if i-appli that records Trace information is not in the software list.

To delete Trace information, press  and select "Yes".

◆ Displaying Security error history

When i-appli ended with an error because i-appli cannot use the saved data, the name of the i-appli, date and time, and cause of security error are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1  [i-appli]  

- To delete histories, press  and select "Yes".

◆ Displaying i-appli description <Software description>

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-appli ▶ 

- Displayed items differ by i-appli.
- To check the site certificate of the i-appli downloaded from SSL page, press  on Software description screen.

◆ Setting operating condition of i-appli <Software settings>

- You cannot select the item not supported by the i-appli.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode or B mode, "Set i-appli display" and "Set NW transmission during i-appli display" cannot be selected.

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-appli ▶   ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Set i-appli display : Set if you set i-appli to stand-by display. Only one i-appli can be set.

Set NW transmission during i-appli display : Set if you allow automatic communication while the i-appli stand-by display is running.

Set NW transmission : Set if you allow automatic communication while the i-appli is running.

Use icons : Set if you allow i-appli to use icons for mail, MessageR/F, battery, Silent mode and signal level.

Start from browser : Set if you allow starting the i-appli from site (i-appli To).

Start from ToruCa : Set if you allow starting the i-appli from ToruCa (i-appli To).

Start from mailer : Set if you allow starting the i-appli from mail (i-appli To).

Start from Location Service menu : Set if you allow starting the i-appli from link item of location information in site, MessageR/F or ToruCa (i-appli To).

Start from external : Set if you allow starting the i-appli from external device (i-appli To).

Start from data broadcasting site : Set if you permit activation from 1Seg data broadcasting site (i-appli To).

Allow ring tone / image changes by software* : Set if you allow i-appli to change settings such as ring tone and images for the stand-by display.

Confirm all changes* : Set if you display a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring alert or images are changed.

Allow access to phone book / call records by software* : Set if you allow i-appli to refer to phonebook, redial or received call logs automatically. This setting also applies to ToruCa saved in FOMA terminal.

Location usage setting* : Set if you allow GPS compatible i-appli to use location information automatically.

Program guide key setting* : Set if you set i-appli in program guide i-appli activated from 1Seg. Only one i-appli can be set.

Map setting* : Set if you set i-appli to be the i-appli used for viewing a map. Only one i-appli can be set.

- This setting also applies to Select Map. → P285
- Only i-appli compatible with GPS supported this setting can be set.

i-appli call setting* : Set if you activate i-appli from i-appli call.

* Available only for i-appliDX.

✓ INFORMATION -

- When setting Set i-appli display to "Yes", a confirmation screen for setting appears (except when i-appli is already set to the stand-by display). When it is set, i-Channel ticker or Information display is set to "No/Not display" if it was set to "Yes/Display". When setting Set i-appli display to "No", i-Channel ticker or Information display is restored to "Yes/Display".
- If you set "No" for Set NW transmission, i-appli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather information may not be provided by i-appli.
- If you set "Yes" for Use icons, since icons for unread messages, unread MessageR/F, remaining battery level, Silent mode, and antenna icon may be sent to IPs (Information Providers) through the Internet, it may give the information to a third party. Some i-appli requiring icons may not operate when "No" is set.
- When "No" is selected in Program guide key setting, a cancellation confirmation screen appears.
- When "Yes" is selected in Map setting, a message appears indicating that selected location information may not be displayed.
- Some i-appli are unavailable even when i-appli call is set to "Yes".

◆ Setting operations while i-αppli is active

❖ Setting Display light time

1  [i-αppli] 3 4 ▶ 1 or 2

- When setting to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.

✓INFORMATION

- Even if "Software" is set, the light turns off in Public mode when the time specified in Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light has elapsed.
- This setting also applies to Display light time (i-αppli) of Display & Key light.

❖ Setting vibrator

You can set if you allow the vibrator operation by i-αppli.

- This setting also applies to i-αppli effect of Vibrate effect.

1  [i-αppli] 3 5 ▶ 1 or 2

❖ Setting volume

- This setting also applies to i-αppli effect sound of Adjust volume.

1  [i-αppli] 3 7 ▶  or  ▶ 

◆ Motion tracking

This FOMA terminal supports motion tracking of operating i-αppli (tilting or shaking FOMA terminal) using recognition technology of a camera.

- May unavailable in the cases below.
 - When the lens on a camera is soiled
 - When your clothing looks similar to the background
 - When the background is not fixed like when moving
 - When in a dark place or where back ground is too bright
- Some motion tracking compatible applications can be played by moving yourself. For the application, rotate the display 180 degrees, point the display and camera toward you, and then operate. Note that the direction of right and left is reversed.

WARNING

Play motion tracking compatible applications by shaking FOMA terminal etc.

There is a risk that FOMA terminal hits people or objects around you by shaking it too much, causing an accident or damage. When you play, grip FOMA terminal firmly, do not shake it too much and confirm the safety around you while playing.

◆ Using preinstalled i-αppli

- If you delete stored i-αppli, you can download the software from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site. →P311

Precautions related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

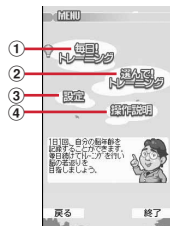
- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the information set in the IC card.

❖ ケータイ脳カストretching2 (Keitai Brain Stretching 2 (editing supervised by Professor Ryuta Kawashima at Tohoku University))

You solve various problems to estimate your brain age or train brain.

■ MENU screen

Pressing  on the title screen displays MENU screen.



- ① Start training with problems suitable for the player's brain age and display past records
- ② Select problem to start training and display past records
- ③ Display a calendar, set sound/vibrator and clear data
- ④ Display operation descriptions

 : Return to the title screen.

 : Exit i-appli.

 : Move the cursor.

 : Determine the item.

 : Adjust volume.

 : Vibrator ON/OFF.

■ How to play

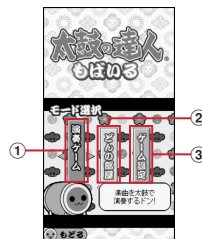
When "毎日! トレーニング (Train everyday!)" is selected, 3 questions of the day are given. Select "選んで! トレーニング (Select training!)" to select questions for training. Before solving a problem, read the description displayed by pressing . Depending on the training conditions, a new problem appears.

❖ 太鼓の達人4 F (Master of Drums 4 F)

This is a game to press corresponding keys on good timing to the kind of the drum played. The difficulty level varies by the tune.

■ Mode selection screen

Pressing  on the title screen displays the mode selection screen.



① Start game

② Change the clothes of Wada-don appearing in the game to something you like

③ Key setting, extra items (change of key settings), volume adjusting of BGM or SE (tone), shake/not shake, display play log

 : Return to the title screen

 : Move of the cursor

 : Determine the item

■ How to play

Select "演奏ゲーム (Music playing game)" on the mode selection screen, and select the tune to be played and its difficulty level, then the game starts. Press corresponding keys on good timing to the kind of the drum played on the display.

- For key assignment, see キー設定 (key settings) of "ゲーム設定 (game settings)".
- If pressing  on the title screen, the description of the game is displayed.

© 2000-2008 NBGI

❖ 日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F / 日中版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F/J-C Speech Translation for F)



By voice entry, translate words mainly used for travelling from Japanese to English/Chinese and vice versa.

- To use, you are required to agree to the Terms of Service.
- A packet communication fee is charged separately.
- For operation method, refer to "チュートリアル(tutorial)" by pressing  on the title screen.
- All functions are free till the 60th day from the first activation. You are charged from 61st day to use all the functions, and My Menu registration is required from "しゃべって翻訳 (Speech Translation)" site of ATR-Trek.
i-mode site : iMenu → メニューリスト (Menu list) → 辞書/便利ツール (Dictionary/Convenient tool) → しゃべって翻訳 (Speech Translation)

QR code for
site access



© ATR-Trek Co., Ltd. 2007

❖ iアバターメーカー (iavatar maker)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

Functions available with iavatar maker

■ Creating avatar

Avatar can be created by using parts for iavatar maker.

You can create avatar while watching camera photos or images in Data Box or by selecting from samples provided beforehand.

■ Using avatar

With the created avatar, you can use as materials for Deco-mail, Deco-mail pictogram or Decome-Anime, and it can be converted to Machi-chara compatible with i-concier.

By registering to iavatar site, the created avatar can be changed various clothes items or publicized on competition or compatible sites.

- A packet communication fee is separately required to convert avatar to Decome-Anime.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to register an avatar to iavatar.
- To dress it up on iavatar site, you may be required to purchase items on the site.
- iavatar is a trademark of D2 Communications Inc.
- アバターメーカー (Avatar maker) is a trademark of Acrodea, Inc.

©2008 Acrodea, Inc./©eitarosoft

◆ モバイルGoogleマップ (Mobile Google map)

You can search for area information, shop information or user created contents by displaying the map. And, you can switch to aerial photograph mode, see the street view or check the means of transportation to a destination by route search.

■ Map screen

- You are required to agree to the Terms of Service at the first time you use this application.



[M] : Display "メニュー (menu)"

[G] : Search (Search shop or service information or location of the area and display it on the map)

[R] : Context menu (路線検索 (Route search), ストリートビュー (Street view), お気に入りに保存 (Save to favorite))

[C] : Move of the cursor

[1] : Zoom out

[2] : Switch map/aerial photo

[3] : Zoom in

[O] : Display current location

[S] : Save to/display お気に入り (your favorite)

- A packet communication fee is charged separately.

- For details, see "ヘルプ (Help)" of メニュー (Menu).

©2008 Google - Map data ©2008 Geocentre Consulting, NFGIS, Zenrin, Europa Technologies

◆ Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)



* The display is an example.

It may differ from actual display.

- Program guide available in the area you live is displayed.

This is a convenient application containing a TV program table and AV remote controller function with no monthly fee.

You can easily obtain the TV program information of terrestrial digital, terrestrial analog or BS digital of your preferred time any time and anywhere. You can check the title, contents, start/end time, etc. of TV programs. Also, you can activate 1Seg from Program guide, and Program guide from 1Seg. If there is any program you are interested in, you can make a watching reservation of the program to DVD recorder etc. via Internet (DVD recorder etc. compatible with remote watching reservation function is required). When using, the initial setting of this application is required). Moreover, you can search program information by keyword of TV category or favorite personalities, or pickup keyword at the top of the main display, etc. You can also perform remote controlling operation of TV, video or DVD player (→P315) (some models does not support this function).

- The first time you use this i-appli, initial setup and agreement to the Terms of Service are required.
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- It is unavailable with 2in1 in B mode.
- When using overseas, set Date & time of FOMA terminal to Japan time.
- For details of G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■ Watching reservation function

You can select a program from Program guide of this i-appli and reserve 1Seg watching.

Watching reservation :

Activate this i-appli, select a program to reserve, select "視聴予約 (Reserve)" from "予約実行 (Reserved program)" of メニュー (Menu) and reserve the program according to the instruction given on the screen when the reservation scheduler is activated.

■ Recording reservation function

You can select a program to record from Program guide of this i-appli and make a recording reservation of 1Seg.

Recording reservation :

Activate this application, select a program to make a recording reservation, select "予約実行 (Reserved program)" from "#ワンセグ録画予約 (1Seg recording reservation)" of メニュー (Menu) and reserve the program according to the instruction given on the screen when the reservation scheduler is activated (recording reservation can also be made by selecting a program to make a recording reservation and pressing .

■ Remote recording reservation function

If a DVD recorder etc. applicable with remote recording reservation is available, you can make recording reservation from a program table of this application even while going out.

For remote recording reservation, initialization in this application is necessary.

Initialization procedure :

- ① Set DVD recorder etc. for Internet connection (See the operation manual of the DVD recorder etc.).
- ② Start this application, select "リモート録画予約 (Remote recording reservation)" from メニュー (Menu) and perform initialization according to the prompt displayed.

Reserving program :

After initialization has completed, specify your favorite program and select "リモート録画予約 (Remote recording reservation)" from メニュー (Menu). Thus, you are connected with the DVD recorder etc. set in this application via Internet and can make recording reservation.

◆iアプリバンキング (i-appli banking)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

i-appli banking is a service that allows you to use mobile banking (checking the balance, details of deposits and withdrawals, transferring and other operations on your own account) from your FOMA terminal conveniently. When activating i-appli, you are only required to enter a password set by yourself; after that, you can use mobile banking for up to 2 financial institutions. A payment for invoice/payment notice by Pay-easy is also available.

- Before using mobile banking by i-appli banking, you are required to have an account of and make a subscription to one of financial institutions applicable to the Internet banking service.
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For details of i-appli banking, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- For information about i-appli banking, visit i-mode site.

i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→モバイルバンキング (Mobile banking)→iアプリバンキング (i-appli banking)

QR code for
site access



❖ iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

Charge-free Electronic money "iD" is a service that enables shopping only by holding up an Osaifu-Keitai or credit card loaded with "iD". You can enjoy shopping simply and conveniently without signing your name unlike in a conventional way. It also supports cashing, depending on the card issuer.

- To use "iD", you need to own Osaifu-Keitai with the necessary settings done with iD-appli or card i-appli provided by a card issuer or a credit card equipped with "iD", in addition to subscribing to an "iD" compatible card issuer.
- To use "iD" with Osaifu-Keitai, settings for iD-appli or card i-appli are required. For some cards, after completing iD-appli settings, you may need to download or activate card i-appli and make card i-appli settings.
- The charges required for iD-compatible service (including the annual charge) vary by card issuer.
- "iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application)" cannot be deleted.
- For information regarding "iD", refer to the "iD" i-mode site.

i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→「iD」

QR code for
site access



❖ DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit service application)

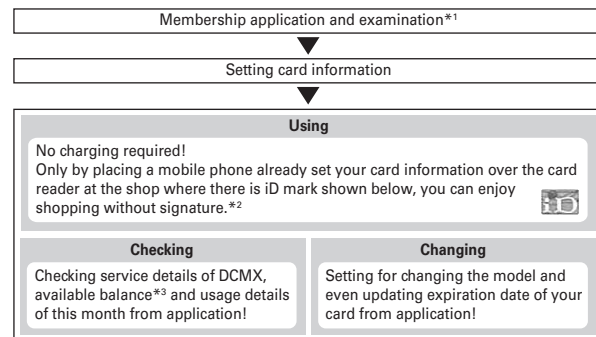


* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"DCMX" is a credit service compatible with "iD" provided by NTT DOCOMO.

There are 2 types of DCMX : DCMX mini that allows you to use up to ¥10,000 per month and DCMX/DCMX GOLD that allows you to use more amount of money than DCMX mini while saving DOCOMO points.

Using DCMX mini, a credit payment service becomes available right now by making application from this application.



*1 A membership examination is carried out online at your application for DCMX mini. For application for services except DCMX mini, you are connected to i-mode application page.

*2 Entry of security code may be required under certain conditions.

*3 Only DCMX mini is available.

- For details of the service and application, refer to i-mode site of DCMX.
i-mode site : iMenu → DCMX iD

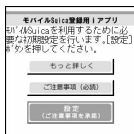
QR code for
site access



✓INFORMATION

- When starting this application for the first time, agreement with "Precautions on Usage" is necessary.
- A packet communication fee is required for various settings and operations.

◆モバイルSuica登録用iアプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-appli)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"モバイルSuica登録用iアプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-appli)" is an i-appli that is provided by NTT DOCOMO for making initial setting of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service "モバイルSuica (Mobile Suica)" that is provided by JR East Japan Railway Company before using. After initial setting by this application, download Mobile Suica application from JR East Japan Railway Company's site with following the instruction on the screen and make member registration.

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "ご注意事項 (必読) (Notice (essential reading))".
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- You can delete this application after completion of initial setting, but the area in IC card for setting remains occupied. For using this area for other service, formatting all of data in IC card (hereinafter, Full-format) is required.
- For performing Full-format, it is necessary to come to DOCOMO shop.
- When Full-format is performed, all of data in IC card is deleted.
- For using Mobile Suica service again after performing Full-format, an initial setting by this application is required again.

- For information about Mobile Suica, refer to i-mode site.
i モードサイト : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→おサイフケータイ (Osaifu-Keitai)→モバイルSuica (Mobile Suica)
- "モバイルSuica" (Mobile Suica) is a registered trademark of East Japan Railway Company.

◆FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check application)

FOMA communication environment check application is an application to check if FOMA terminal can use FOMA high-speed area.



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

- When using FOMA communication environment check application, agreement with "ご利用上の注意 (Precautions on Usage)" is necessary.
- Depending on the communication condition (weather, radio wave conditions or congestion of the network) at the time of communication confirmation, different communication results or the result of out of service area may be displayed even if the place or the time zone is the same.
- If you activate another function while using this application, you may not confirm correctly.

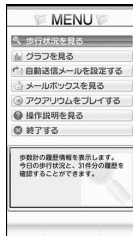
❖ Walking checker

You can use Walking checker i-appli and walking checker widget application compatible with Pedometer (→P339).

■ Walking checker i-appli

The information such as the number of steps or consumed calories can be checked or the data of number of steps can be automatically sent via mail. Also, you can get points according to the number of steps, and use them for purchasing aquarium fishes or items which you can lay out in the aquarium.

- Menu screen appears when activated.



: Move the cursor

: Determine the item

: Sound ON/OFF

- When mail is automatically sent, i-appli automatically starts.
- Precautions for auto start→P256
- For details of each item, see "操作説明を見る".

■ Walking checker widget application

You can quickly check the walking state on i-Widget screen. To use, activate from i-Widget.→P261

- While running, the operations below are available.

: Activate Walking checker i-appli

: Change skin

: Change the date

❖ Start! i ウィジェット (Start! i-Widget)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"Start! i ウィジェット (Start! i-Widget)" is an application for viewing how to use i-Widget by movie.

You can display sites to download application other than the ones saved in FOMA terminal by connecting i-mode.

- A packet communication fee is separately required when selecting "ダウンロード (Download)" to connect i-mode.

❖ iWウォッチ (iW Watch)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"iWウォッチ (iW Watch)" is an application that you can enjoy the graphical watch at i-Widget.

You can change the design and the color of watch to your preference.

❖ 地図アプリ (Map Application)

A useful application that allows you to search the destination or display means of transportation by using GPS function equipped with FOMA terminal.

Operating procedure of "地図アプリ (Map Application)"→P276

❖ 楽オク☆アプリ (Rakuoku☆ application)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"楽オク☆アプリ (Rakuoku☆ application)" is a convenient application for easily auctioning in Rakuoku any time, anywhere. With guide display for auctioning operation and "体験出品 (Auctioning trial)", it is available even to beginners of auction at ease. With using "かんたん入力 (Easy entry)" function for composing description or convenient functions for image shooting, editing, log saving, etc., you can make auctioning from a site in a shorter period of time.

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "Terms of Service".
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For details of Rakuoku, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Auctioning in Rakuoku requires your subscription for a membership of Rakuten and registering to My Menu.
- For information about Rakuoku, see i-mode site.

i-mode site : iMenu → オークション (Auction)

QR code for
site access



■ Widget application compatible



You can check the auction state easily with displaying Rakuoku recommendation items or the information of your selling/bidding items.

❖ マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application)



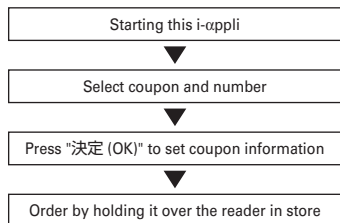
* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

You can check recommended information such as McDonald's new product instantaneously or download to use discount coupon "かざすクーポン (Hold over coupon)" that is available at McDonald's.

For using "かざすクーポン", register "トクするケータイサイト (TOKUSURU KEITAI site)" and select/set your favorite coupon from the application, and hold it over the reader in McDonald's store.

- For information of マクドナルド トクするアプリ, refer to McDonald's official site "トクするケータイサイト".
i-mode site : iMenu → メニューリスト (Menu list) → グルメ/レシピ (Gourmet/Recipe) → マクドナルド トクする (McDonald's TOKUSURU)
- "かざすクーポン" is unavailable in some stores.
- For the area "かざすクーポン" is unavailable, "見せるクーポン (Show coupon)" is available.
- For "おすすめ情報 (Recommendation)", it is available even for nonmember of "トクするケータイサイト".
- The function or service of "マクドナルド トクするアプリ" may be changed.
- A packet communication fee is required separately.

■ Using かざすクーポン



■ Widget application compatible

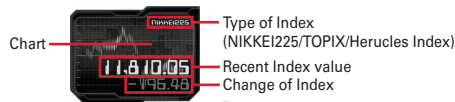


When "おすすめ情報" of McDonald's is updated, the sign of McDonald's of widget application turns and informs you of that.

Select the sign to display the recommendation. By pressing "もっと詳しくボタン (For more details button)" to see more detailed information.

©2008 McDonald's

◆ 株価アプリ (Stock Prices Application)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"株価アプリ (Stock Prices Application)" is an application that you can see the stock price information easily at i-Widget.

The stock price information that can be displayed is 3 indexes of "日経225 / TOPIX / ヘラクレス指数 (Nikkei 225/TOPIX/Hercules)". A recent price and change on each index can be displayed.

For chart information, "日中足 / 日足 / 週足 / 月足 (intra-day/daily/weekly/monthly)" can be switched.

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "利用規約 (Terms of Service)".
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For recent index value, it is the information of approximately 20 minutes late.
- The information of this application is not for trading stocks etc. and for assisting trade.
- The information of this application expands all possible means for its contents but no assurance. DOCOMO and the information providers assume no responsibility for damages resulted from this information.

◆ Googleモバイル (Google Mobile)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"Googleモバイル (Google Mobile)" is an application that you can use mobile web search function. It is convenient because entering the search word entered in the past or the trend word can be entered simply.

And you can call for convenient Google service such as mail service (Gmail) or transfer guide etc. easily.

- A packet communication fee is required separately.

Starting i-appli quickly

i-appli can be started by a simple operation from the stand-by display.

◆ Registering i-appli as one-key/two-key shortcut

- You can register one item of one-key shortcut.
- You can register one item of two-key shortcut for each key of keypad, up to 10 items in total.

<Example> Registering two-key shortcut

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to i-appli ▶

Registering i-appli shortcut : Move the cursor to i-appli ▶

- Same operations are required also for canceling.

3 Select a destination to register

- Icon numbers (-) correspond to keypads (-) used to activate two-key shortcut.
- When a destination already registered is selected, an overwriting confirmation screen appears.

✓ INFORMATION

- Press [i-appli] on the stand-by display to display the Shortcut list. Detail info can be displayed and perform Cancel two-key s.cut from the submenu of the list screen.

◆ Starting i-appli using one-key/two-key shortcut

<Example> Starting i-appli using two-key shortcut

1 - ▶ (1 sec. or more)

Starting i-appli using one-key shortcut : (1 sec. or more)

Starting i-appli automatically

◆ Setting whether to start automatically <Auto start>

You can set whether to automatically start all i-appli which are set to "ON" for User in Set auto start info.

1 [i-appli] ▶ or

◆ Setting date and time of auto start <Set auto start info.>

Set the conditions such as ON/OFF of automatic start or start time for each i-appli and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on the i-appli.
- Some i-appli may not be able to start automatically.
- This function cannot be set when Auto start is "OFF".

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-appli ▶ ▶ Set required items ▶

User : Select if you perform auto start with the conditions below.

Time : Enter the time for auto start of the i-appli.

Repeat : Set the condition for repetitive auto start of the i-appli.

Weekly : Set the day of the week when Repeat is set to "Weekly".

Date : Set the date when Repeat is set to "Onetime".

Software : Set if you automatically start at the intervals preset for the i-appli.
i-appli 1-4 : For some i-appliDX, up to 4 conditions of auto start can be set while it is running. You can set if you enable those settings.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Even with auto start set, automatic activation does not occur in the cases below, causing  to appear on the stand-by display and to be recorded in Start failure hist.
 - When the screen except the stand-by display appears
 - When it is unavailable due to UIM operation restriction (except for preinstalled i-appli) or UIM cannot be recognized.
 - When the interval of auto start is too short
 - When All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode is ON (when i-appli is "Authorized access")
 - When 2in1 is in B mode (only for i-appli to use mail function)
 - When i-appli usage is stopped by IP (Information Provider)
- Even if you change "Repeat" to set multiple i-appli to be automatically started at the same time, only one of them can be activated at one time. The information of the i-appli that failed to be activated is recorded in Start failure hist., however,  does not appear on the stand-by display.

◆ Displaying the start failure history

When auto start of the i-appli fails,  appears on the stand-by display and the name of the i-appli, date and time, and causes are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When displaying Start failure hist. or when the next auto start is successful,  on the stand-by display disappears.

1 [i-appli]

- To delete histories, press  and select "Yes".

Using i-appli call

This is a function to ask activation of i-appli from a third party in order to call the opponent when playing a versus game connecting to a network.

- You can use this function with i-appli call compatible i-appli.
- You can reject reception of i-appli call collectively. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone Use's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

◆ Sending i-appli call for calling

1 Operate i-appli and select "Yes" on a confirmation screen for sending i-appli call.

◆ Receiving i-appli call

1 Receive i-appli call

 turns on, the light turns on or blinks according to Mail alert, the ring alert sounds and a confirmation screen for responding appears. On the confirmation screen for responding, the phone number (the name when saved in phonebook) of the sender and i-appli name are displayed.

- The volume when receiving i-appli call follows the setting of Mail/Msg alert vol. of Adjust volume.
- When i-motion is set to mail ring alert, it operates according to the default setting of Mail alert.

2 "Respond"

Targeted i-appli starts.

- When the targeted i-appli is not saved, a confirmation screen for downloading it or connecting to a site appears. Select "Yes" to download. A packet communication fee is charged separately.

Not activating i-appli : "Reject"

Holding calling : "Hold"

You can respond from i-appli call log. Note that you cannot respond after expiration date.

✓INFORMATION-----

- A confirmation screen for responding does not appear in the cases below.
 - When the screen except the stand-by display appears
 - When date and time are not set
 - In Public mode
 - In All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Privacy mode (when setting i-appli to "Authorized access"), Lock on close or Auto keypad lock
 - When "No" is set for i-appli call setting of targeted i-appli.
 - When the targeted i-appli is not saved and i-appli call DL set is "Reject"
- Some i-appli starts without displaying a confirmation screen for responding.
- Responding to i-appli call may require packet communication fees.

◆ Displaying i-appli call log

When i-appli call is received, reception date, response state, i-appli name, expiration date and phone number of the sender (the name when saved in phonebook) are recorded.

- Up to 30 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1 [i-appli]

- Icon definitions

 : Select "Hold" on a confirmation screen for responding/No operation for approximately 15 seconds.

 : Respond  : Reject  : Expired

Responding to i-appli call on hold : Select the log on hold ▶ "Respond"

Deleting :   ▶  or  ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.

◆ Setting download for i-appli call <i-appli call DL set>

You can set if you download the targeted i-appli if it is not saved when receiving i-appli call.

1 [i-appli] ▶ or

i-appli To

Starting i-appli from site, mail or ToruCa

1 Display site, i-mode mail or ToruCa ▶ Select a link item enabling to start i-appli ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- i-appli not saved in FOMA terminal cannot be started with i-appli To. Some i-appli can be started immediately after being downloaded from a site, without saving.
- Partially saved i-appli cannot be started from mail with i-appli To.
- For i-appli starting just after downloading from sites, a communication confirmation screen while they are activated may appear.
- Some i-appli program may not be saved in FOMA terminal.
- If the i-appli is set not to start with i-appli To, the i-appli cannot be started.→P245

i-appli stand-by display

Operating i-appli stand-by display

You can set i-appli to the stand-by display and start it from the stand-by display to operate.

- While displaying i-appli stand-by display,  or  appears on the top of the display in gray.
- Setting i-appli stand-by display→P97, 245

◆ Starting i-appli of i-appli stand-by display

1 On the i-appli stand-by display, ▶ Operate the i-appli

 or  on the top of the display flash in orange.

✓INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is turned ON while setting the i-appli stand-by display, an activating confirmation screen of the i-appli stand-by display appears. The display starts when selecting "Yes" or performing no operations for approximately 5 seconds. Selecting "No" cancels i-appli stand-by display. Note that when the power is turned ON by Auto power ON, the i-appli stand-by display automatically appears, without displaying the confirmation screen.
- When setting i-appli that performs communication to i-appli stand-by display, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions etc.
- In All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Privacy mode (when i-appli is "Authorized access") or when 2in1 is in Dual mode or B mode, the i-appli stand-by display is temporarily canceled and the default image is displayed.
- When an error that cancels the i-appli stand-by display occurs, a canceling confirmation screen for the i-appli stand-by display appears. If you select "Yes", it is canceled and recorded in Abnormal exit hist.

◆ Quitting i-appli and returning to the i-appli stand-by display

1 While running i-appli, ▶ "End"

 or  on the top of the display changes from orange to gray.

The procedure to exit i-appli and return to the i-appli stand-by display depends on the i-appli.

- When selecting "Cancel", the i-appli stand-by display is canceled.  or  on the top of display disappears.

✓INFORMATION

- Canceling operation from Software list : → "i-appli display" → "Cancel"

Managing i-appli

◆ Upgrading

When the i-appli is updated, upgrade is available.

- (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-appli ▶ ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When upgrading i-appli, data such as game scores stored in i-appli may be erased.
- Some i-appli may inquire the DOCOMO server about the availability depending on the length of time of use and number of times of use. If the server notifies you there is upgraded i-appli, you can upgrade it.
- Some i-appli is automatically upgraded.

◆ Creating/Deleting folders

- Up to 20 items can be registered.
- Stored folders by default cannot be deleted.

<Example> Creating folders

- (1 sec. or more)

-

Changing a folder name : Move the cursor to the folder ▶

Changing the order : Move the cursor to the folder ▶ or

Deleting folders :

- Move the cursor to a folder ▶

- When i-appli is saved in the folder, authentication is required.
- "Yes"
 - For some i-appli saved in the folder, a confirmation screen for deleting i-appli or mail folder appears. → P259 Step 3 in "Deleting i-appli".

- Enter the folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶

◆ Moving i-appli to another folder

- (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder

- Move the cursor to i-appli ▶ ▶ -

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .

- Select a folder to move to ▶ "Yes"

◆ Deleting i-appli

- For some Osaifu Keitai compatible i-appli, the data in the IC card needs to be deleted by activating or redownloading i-appli before being deleted.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be deleted.

- (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder

- Move the cursor to i-appli ▶ ▶ -

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to i-appli.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

- "Yes"

- When attempting to delete Message i-appli, a deleting confirmation screen for the message folder appears.

- "Yes" : Deletes the message folder and all messages stored in the folder.

- "No" : Deletes i-appli only.

However, if there is any protected mail in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-appli or mail folder even if "Yes" is selected.

- If i-appli to be deleted by "Selected items" or "All items" includes Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which needs to delete data in the IC card beforehand, a confirmation screen for deleting other i-appli appears.
- When deleting i-appli set in Program guide key setting or Map setting, a deleting confirmation screen appears.
- When deleting i-appli that uses data of microSD card, a deleting confirmation screen for data of microSD card may appear.
 - "Yes" : Deletes the data of microSD card.
 - "No" : Deletes i-appli only.

◆ INFORMATION

- When the mail folder used for Message i-appli is not deleted, the mail can be displayed from the submenu of the mail folder list. → P148
- When the folder for Message i-appli to be deleted is being used (including displaying list), the i-appli may not be deleted.

◆ Sorting i-appli <Sort software>

1  [i-appli] 3 1 ▶ 1 - 5

◆ INFORMATION

- Operations from the Software list :  9
- If one- and two-byte characters/alphanumeric are included in the name of i-appli, the result of sort "By name" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- The access frequency is carried over when upgrading the i-appli version.
- The access frequency does not include the number of starts as i-appli stand-by display.
- Selecting "By software size" sorts the i-appli from large to small.

◆ Displaying Abnormal exit history

When an error that cancels i-appli stand-by display or prevents a widget application from running on the widget application list screen occurs, the i-appli name, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1  [i-appli] 4 2

- To delete histories, press  and select "Yes".

Using various i-appli functions

- i-appli that supports each function is required.
- Some i-appli may need different operation or be unavailable.

◆ Making a call from i-appli

1 Select a phone number ▶ Set a condition for dialing 

Making a call under set conditions → P64

◆ Using camera function from i-appli

1 Operate i-appli to use camera function

◆ INFORMATION

- When activating Camera from i-appli, the still image/movie is saved in i-appli (in "i-mode" or "Deco-mail picture" folder of My Picture, "i-mode" folder of i-motion or added album). In some cases, automatically sent to the server.

◆ Using bar code reader from i-appli

1 Operate i-appli to read a bar code (JAN code, QR code, NW7 code, CODE39 code or CODE128 code)

- The scanned data is used by i-appli and saved.
- To read CODE128, downloading compatible i-appli is required.

◆ Using infrared communication from i-appli

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other party's device even if it has infrared communication function.

1 "Yes" on a confirmation screen of infrared communication

- i-appli can also be executed by receiving i-appli starting data via infrared communication.

◆ Using ToruCa from i-appli

From i-appli, you can save ToruCa, use or search ToruCa in the folder.

<Example> Saving

1 Select "Yes (NewEntry)" on a confirmation screen of saving the ToruCa

The ToruCa is saved to "ToruCa" of ToruCa content.

Overwriting ToruCa : "Yes (OverWrite)" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa to be overwritten

Displaying : "Preview"

i-Widget

i-Widget is a convenient function that allows you to easily access frequently-used contents (widget applications) such as calculator, clock and stock price information with an i-Widget button ().

Widget application can be added by downloading from sites provided by IP (Information Provider) etc. Up to 8 widget applications can be pasted to make customized screen.

Widget application can be added by downloading from websites. → P262

- When i-Widget screen is displayed, multiple widget applications may communicate.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to download widget application or display i-Widget screen.
- The packet communication fee during international roaming is not included in Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double.
- For details of i-Widget, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Preinstalled i-appli below are compatible with i-Widget.
 - ウォーキングチェッカー (Walking checker) → P253
 - Start! i ウィジェット (Start! i-Widget) → P253
 - iW ウォッチ (iW Watch) → P253
 - 地図アプリ (Map Application) → P276
 - 楽オク☆アプリ (Rakuoku☆ auctioning application) → P254
 - マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application) → P254
 - 株価アプリ (Stock Prices Application) → P255
 - Google モバイル (Google Mobile) → P255
- i-appli other than "楽オク☆アプリ", "マクドナルド トクするアプリ" are pasted on i-Widget screen.

Using i-Widget

<Example> Displaying an operation screen for the widget application

1 



i-Widget screen



Widget application list screen

- i-Widget screen appears when widget applications are pasted on i-Widget screen. The widget application list screen appears when no application is pasted.
Widget application operation screen can be started by selecting widget application on Software list, (→ P243), i-Widget screen or widget application list screen.
- To paste on i-Widget screen, press  to display i-Widget screen from an operation screen for the widget application. When 8 items are already pasted, exit other widget application and then paste.
- On the widget application list screen, "ACTIVE" is added to the widget application pasted on i-Widget screen, and "NEW" is added to the widget application downloaded within 48 hours.
- To use overseas, a screen of i-Widget roaming set appears on the first activation or when a different UIM is installed. → P262
- The operations below are available on i-Widget screen.
 -  : Move the cursor
 -  : Display an operation screen for the widget application at the cursor position
 -  : Display the widget application list screen
 -  : Shuffle (when 2 or more items are pasted)

- : Return to the stand-by display
- "YES" : Exit a widget application at the cursor position (delete from i-Widget screen)
- The operations below are available on the widget application list screen.
 - / : operate same as i-Widget screen
 - : Display i-Widget screen when widget applications are pasted. Return to the stand-by display when no application is pasted.
- When selecting "全てのアプリ (All applications)" on the widget application list screen, i-appli folder list is displayed.

2 Select a widget application



Widget application operation screen
(e.g. : Walking checker)

- The operations below are available on an operation screen for the widget application (some widget applications can be operated with other than the keys below).
 - : Display i-Widget screen
 - "YES" : Exit a widget application (When pasted on i-Widget screen, deleted from i-Widget screen, too.)

The next procedure → P243 Step 2 in "Starting i-appli"

✓ INFORMATION

- When no operation is performed for approximately 3 minutes while displaying i-Widget screen or the widget application list screen, stand-by display automatically reappears.
- When you execute Delete all data or replace UIM, the status of pasting to i-Widget screen returns to the default. However, updated, deleted or re-downloaded widget application cannot be pasted.

◆ Setting i-Widget sound effect <i-Widget sound effect>

You can set if you play a sound effect when activating i-Widget by pressing .

- The volume follows the setting of Sound effect volume.

1 [i-appli] ► or

◆ Setting communication method during international roaming <i-Widget roaming set>

You can set if you allow a widget application to communicate when activating a widget application with i-Widget during international roaming.

1 [i-appli] ► "Yes" or "No"

Downloading widget application

You can download the widget application from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- For precautions on downloading, see "Downloading i-appli". → P242
- Using downloaded widget application → P261

1 Display a site ► Select a widget application

A widget application is downloaded.

2 "Yes" or "No"

When selecting "Yes", widget application starts and an operation screen for the widget application appears. Select "No" to return to the site display.

Using Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai	264
iC transfer service	265
Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli	265
Checking owner information of IC card	Check IC owner 265
Preventing use of IC card function	IC card lock 266

Using ToruCa

ToruCa	267
Receiving ToruCa	ToruCa download 268
Displaying ToruCa	ToruCa list 269
Setting ToruCa functions	270

Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai is equipped with IC card and allows you to pay money only by holding FOMA terminal over the IC card reader in stores etc.

Moreover, by using communication, you can credit electronic money in a bank account and check the balance or usage history, etc. Various security systems* are also equipped for your safe usage. For details of Osaifu-Keitai, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

* Omakase Lock and IC card lock can be used. → P115, 266

To use Osaifu-Keitai compatible service, you are required to download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli from Osaifu-Keitai compatible site*, and make settings.

* iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→"おサイフケータイ (Osaifu-Keitai)"

- The data (including electronic money, points, etc.) in the IC card may be lost or modified because of the malfunction of FOMA terminal (When we take your Osaifu-Keitai for repair etc., as we cannot take it with data remained, you are required to erase the data by yourself). For support such as reissuance, restoration, temporary preservation or transfer of data except transfer by iC transfer service, confirm with Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider. For important data, be sure to use a service with backup service.
- If the data in the IC card is lost, modified or damaged by any means related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible service such as malfunction or model change, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.
- If FOMA terminal is stolen or misplaced, immediately contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider for an advice.

◆ Using Osaifu-Keitai

Step 1

Downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli→P242

iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application), DCMX クレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit service application), モバイルSuica 登録用 i アプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-appli) and マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application) are stored by default. Press  [Osaifu-Keitai]  to connect to the site for downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

Step 2

Make initial settings of the service by starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli→P265

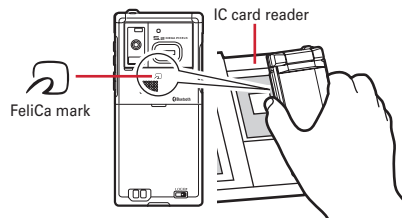
After starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli and make settings following the instruction on the screen, you can charge (credit) money or check the balance or the usage history using the mobile phone.

Step 3

Holding a mark over IC card reader

You can use the i-mode terminal as electronic money to purchase, or use as a passenger ticket by placing  mark of Osaifu-Keitai over the IC card reader. This function can be used without starting the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

* No communication fee is charged.



✓ INFORMATION

- With IC card light of Light alert set to "ON", when holding  mark over the IC card reader scanning area, the light blinks.
- If the recognition is not performed successfully by scanning  mark of FOMA terminal with the IC card reader, shift the mark back and forth or right and left when scanning.
- Even when the power is turned OFF or battery is exhausted, you can use the functions of Osaifu-Keitai by holding  mark over the IC card reader. Note that, when the battery pack is not installed, or even when the battery pack is installed, if it has not been used for a long time or if it was left alone after battery alarm sounded without charging, Osaifu-Keitai may not be used.
- You cannot start the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to read/write data in the IC card or download ToruCa with the power OFF.
- i-appli may be started when holding  mark over the IC card reader.
- When scanning  mark with the IC card reader, take care not to give a strong shock to FOMA terminal.

iC transfer service

iC transfer service*¹ is a service that, when replacing Osaifu-Keitai in such cases as model change or repair, transfers data in an IC card collectively*² to a new Osaifu-Keitai*³.

After data in IC card is transferred, Osaifu-Keitai compatible services can be continuously used only by downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli*⁴. iC transfer service is available at a sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop near you. For details of iC transfer service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- *1 Both the source and the destination of the data need to be iC transfer service compatible FOMA terminal. For using iC transfer service, visit available sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop near you.
- *2 Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible services are not covered by iC transfer service, so only the Osaifu-Keitai compatible data saved in IC card covered by iC transfer service can be transferred.
- *3 As this service is "transfer", not "copy", the data saved in IC card does not remain in the original FOMA terminal. There may be a case that you cannot use iC transfer service, use the backup service for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service etc.
- *4 i-appli downloading and settings require packet communication fee.

Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

- When first starting or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, UIM in use is registered as the owner (IC owner) of the IC card in the Osaifu-Keitai. After that, IC card function cannot be used unless the UIM registered as the IC owner is installed. Note that, when replacing UIM with another one, IC card function cannot be used unless the IC owner is changed.→P265

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 1

The next procedure→P243 Step 3 in "Starting i-appli"

✓INFORMATION

- When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is running, Osaifu-Keitai may be unavailable by placing  mark over the IC card reader.
- Active Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli may be interrupted in the cases below. In that case, the data being read/written may be discarded.
 - When there is a call or PushTalk call
 - When Lock on close or Auto keypad lock is activated
 - When the date specified in the watching/recording reservation of 1Seg, countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
 - When the function is switched over to another function
- When you are out of service area or the saved data cannot be used, some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli may not start or not operate correctly.
- Press  [Osaifu-Keitai]  to activate DCMXクレジットアプリ (Credit service application).

Check IC owner

Checking owner information of IC card

You can check if the UIM in use is registered as the owner (IC owner) of the IC card in the Osaifu-Keitai.

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 6

- If not registered, install a UIM registered as IC owner, or select "How to reset IC owner" and change IC owner.→P265 Step 2 in "Changing IC owner"

◇Changing IC owner

To change IC owner, IC owner requires to be reset. By resetting, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli other than iD設定アプリ (iD setting application) are deleted. Note that, for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli that the data in IC card is saved, the data in IC card needs to be deleted by activating or redownloading i-appli before being reset. After reset, if starting or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, it is registered as IC owner.

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 7

2 "Reset IC owner" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

Preventing use of IC card function

- Activation of IC card lock disables using IC card, obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader, downloading/using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, resetting IC owner or iC transmission.
- To activate both IC card lock and All lock, first start IC card lock and then start All lock.

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"

When activating IC card lock,  or  (for individual IC card lock) appears on the stand-by display.

Canceling :  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Authenticate

❖ Activating/Canceling with the FOMA terminal folded

- When canceling, use Fingerprint authentication.

1 While displaying clock on sub-display,  ▶ Move the cursor to "Lock IC card" using   

When IC card lock is activated, a message "IC card locked." appears and the light turns on in blue for approximately 3 seconds.

Canceling : While displaying clock on sub-display,  ▶ Move the cursor to "Unlock IC card" using    ▶ Authenticate

When IC card lock is canceled, a message "IC card unlocked." appears and the light blinks in blue for approximately 3 seconds.

- In a state waiting for authentication, the light turns on in red. If pressing any of ,  or , Unlock IC card is disabled and the light turns off.
- When failing in authentication, "Authorization failed." appears and the light blinks in red for approximately 1 second.

✓INFORMATION

- This function can also be activated/canceled from Multitask menu in flip style. →P44
- When removing the battery pack or activating Omakase Lock, IC card functions are unavailable regardless of the IC card lock settings.
- During IC card lock, deletion of some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli may be disabled.

◆ Setting functions related to IC card lock

Lock preference : You can set so that only the IC card function for specified Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is locked when activating IC card lock (Individual IC card lock).

Timed lock : You can set to activate IC card lock automatically after the specified time elapses.

IC lock(power-off) : You can select if you continue the IC card lock state before turning the power OFF or lock all IC card functions.

1   [Osaifu-Keitai] **4**

2 Perform necessary operation

Performing Lock preference :   ▶ Select Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli ▶ 

- To lock all the IC card functions, press  .
- For selected Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli,  appears on IC card content. →P243
- The selecting targets are Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli that the service is already registered in the IC card and the service is available.

Performing Timed lock :  ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- If the power is turned OFF manually or due to exhaustion of the battery while this function is "ON", IC card lock is activated before the specified time.
- When locking time comes while using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, IC card lock is activated upon termination of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

Performing IC lock(power-off) :  ▶ Authenticate ▶  or 

❖ Canceling IC card lock at specified time <Programed activation>

You can set so that you can use IC card only in the specified period of time in IC card lock.

- Up to 7 items can be registered.
- This function operates only while the power is ON.

1 [MENU] [Osaifu-Keitai] [4] [4] ▶ Authenticate ▶ [1] - [7]

Setting/Canceling : Move the cursor to the title ▶ [MENU]

- While this function is set,  appears on the left of the title.

2 Set required items ▶

Time : Enter the start time and end time (it can be set to the following day over 24 o'clock) to deactivate IC card lock.

Repeat : When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press .

Title : Up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters can be entered.

✓INFORMATION

- When the end time for canceling IC card lock comes while using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, IC card lock is activated upon termination of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.
- IC card lock can be started in the period for which IC card lock is deactivated, but cannot be automatically activated by Timed lock.

ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be obtained using Osaifu-Keitai; it can be used conveniently as a flier, restaurant card, coupon ticket, etc.

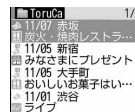
ToruCa can be downloaded from the IC card reader, site, etc. and can be easily exchanged using mail, infrared communication/iC transmission or microSD card.

- For details of ToruCa, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

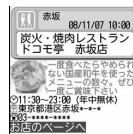
❖ Flow of using ToruCa



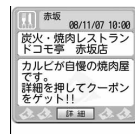
Hold Osaifu-Keitai over the IC card reader to obtain ToruCa



Select ToruCa from ToruCa list



ToruCa (Details)

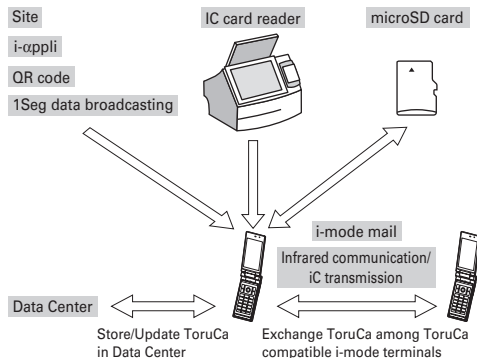


Press the "詳細 (Details)" button to download detailed information

Receiving ToruCa

- The savable size of each ToruCa is 1 Kbyte. The maximum size of each ToruCa (Details) is 100 Kbytes.

ToruCa download method



- The procedure for obtaining from IC card reader is the same as Step 3 in "Using Osaifu-Keitai".→P264
- Saving/Updating ToruCa in Data Center→P129
- Attaching to i-mode mail/saving→P140, 147
- Downloading from a site→P178
- Reading QR code→P210
- Obtaining from 1Seg data broadcasting→P225
- Saving from i-appli→P260
- Moving/Copying to microSD card→P302
- Infrared communication/iC transmission→P313, 314

✓INFORMATION

- When obtaining ToruCa with an IC card reader, operations are performed according to the settings of ToruCa from IC card, ToruCa alert, ToruCa auto-read, ToruCa receive of Light alert in Light alert and ToruCa receive alert of Adjust volume.
- The obtained/downloaded ToruCa is saved in "ToruCa". However, if ToruCa is obtained from IC card reader, it is saved according to ToruCa sort rule.
- When Auto-display of ToruCa from IC card is "ON", if ToruCa is obtained from IC card reader, a confirmation screen for connecting to the site to download details may appear. If no key operations are made during automatic display, ToruCa is saved under unread state.
- ToruCa that are obtained by receiving i-mode mail, downloading from a site, reading QR code and receiving read ToruCa via infrared communication/iC transmission are saved as read ToruCa.
- When ToruCa (Details) is attached to mail, moved/copied to microSD card or sent via infrared communication/iC transmission, a screen may appear indicating that the detail information is not included or saved.
- For some ToruCa, updating, moving/copying, transmission through mail attachment or infrared communication may be disabled.
- Checking memory space→P311
- When exceeding the savable number/area→P312

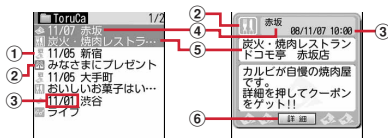
Displaying ToruCa

1 [ME] [Osaifu-Keitai] [3] ▶ Select a folder

- (gray) : No ToruCa (blue) : No unread ToruCa
 : Unread ToruCa exists (gray) : No used ToruCa
 (blue) : Used ToruCa exists

Displaying all ToruCa : on the folder list

2 Select ToruCa



① Status icon

: Unread : Read

② Category icon

③ Download date

④ Index

⑤ Title

⑥ "詳細 (Details)" button

Displayed when there is detail information. Detail information can be downloaded from a site.

Deleting : Move the cursor to ToruCa ▶ [ME] [3] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to ToruCa.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- To delete ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder, move the cursor to the ToruCa, press and select "Yes".

Moving to another folder : Move the cursor to ToruCa ▶ [ME] [4] [1] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "Yes"

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .
- ToruCa cannot be moved to "Used ToruCa" folder.

Changing order (sorting) : [ME] [5] [2] ▶ [1] - [5]

- They are sorted temporarily. When the one- and two-byte characters are mixed in the titles of ToruCa, the sort result by "By title" and "By index" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- When selecting "By name", the ToruCa list is sorted in the order of ID included as data in ToruCa (ID cannot be displayed).

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to ToruCa ▶

- Operations for attaching to mail→P141 Step 1 in "Attaching a file"

❖ Operations while displaying ToruCa (Details)

Updating the display : [ME] [1] ▶ "Yes"

Adding phone number or mail address to phonebook : Move the cursor to the phone number or mail address ▶ [ME] [4] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ [1] or [2]
Phonebook new entry→P82

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Registering URL in bookmark : Move the cursor to the URL ▶ [ME] [4] [3]

▶ Select a destination folder

The next procedure →P175 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

Saving image : [ME] [4] [4] ▶ Select the image

- Press [ME] [4] [5] to save a background image.

The next procedure→P178 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

Using location information : Select location information

The next procedure→P181 Step 2 in "Using location information"

Replaying Flash graphics or GIF animation : [ME] [7]

Uploading image or movie/i-motion : "View"

The next procedure→P179 Step 2 in "Uploading image or movie/i-motion to sites"

✓ INFORMATION

- For some ToruCa, an expiration date is set. After expiration, the background of the ToruCa list is displayed in different color.
- If ToruCa includes phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To and Web To functions can be used.
- Category marks specific to ToruCa issuers may appear on the ToruCa list and ToruCa (Details) (they are not included in category marks in "Category", searching and/or ToruCa sorting method).
- When Flash graphics are not in place within ToruCa (Details), the operation starts when they are in place within the display by scrolling.
- ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be displayed.
- A packet communication fee is required for downloading detail information.
- ToruCa (Details) may not be received even if the receiver's device is compatible with ToruCa.

◆ Searching ToruCa

- ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be searched for.

<Example> Searching by category

- [MENU] [Osaifu-Keitai] [3] ▶ [MENU] [1] ▶ Select Search method field**
- [1] ▶ Select Category field ▶ [1] - [5]**



Searching by title : [2] ▶ Enter a part of the title in the entry filed for Search text (up to 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters)

Searching by index : [3] ▶ Enter a part of the index in the entry filed for Search text (up to 7 two-byte (15 one-byte) characters)



- To search in the folder, press [MENU] [2].

◆ Creating/Deleting folders

- Up to 20 folders can be created in addition to "ToruCa" and "Used ToruCa" folders.
- "ToruCa" and "Used ToruCa" folders cannot be renamed, sorted or deleted.

<Example> Creating folders

1 [MENU] [Osaifu-Keitai] [3]

2 [MENU] [2]

Changing a folder name : Move the cursor to the folder ▶ [MENU] [4] ▶ Go to Step 3

Changing the order : Move the cursor to the folder ▶ [MENU] [9] or [0]

Deleting : Move the cursor to the folder ▶ [MENU] [3] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

3 Enter the folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶ [OK]

◆ Checking the number of ToruCa <Check No. of items>

- ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder are not included in the number of saved items.

1 [MENU] [Osaifu-Keitai] [3] ▶ [MENU] [6]

- To check the number of items in the folder, press [MENU] [5] [1].

Setting ToruCa functions

◆ Setting operation for obtaining ToruCa <ToruCa from IC card>

You can set if you obtain ToruCa from IC card reader or via iC communication and the operations for obtaining from IC card reader.

1 [MENU] [Osaifu-Keitai] [5] [2] ▶ Set required items ▶ [OK]

ToruCa receive : When setting to "ON", ToruCa is obtained from IC card reader or received by iC communication.

Duplication check : When setting to "ON", a new ToruCa is not downloaded if it is duplicated with the existing one.

Auto-sort : When setting to "ON", sort ToruCa according to ToruCa sort rule.

Auto-display : When setting to "ON", downloaded ToruCa is automatically displayed for 15 seconds only when the stand-by display is active.

◆ Setting operations for checking completion of obtainment <ToruCa alert>

You can set lighting and/or sound volume for notifying completion of ToruCa obtaining from the IC card reader.

- This setting also applies to ToruCa receive of Light alert in Light alert and ToruCa receive alert of Adjust volume.

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 5 1 ▶ Set required items ▶

Light alert : Set if you make the light blink when obtaining is completed.

Light color : Set the lighting color of the light.

Receive alert volume : Set the volume of the alert activated when obtaining ToruCa has completed.

◆ Using ToruCa auto-read <ToruCa auto-read>

You can set if you automatically read enabled ToruCa when using it by placing FOMA terminal over an IC card reader. When set to "ON", enabled ToruCa is automatically recognized and moved to "Used ToruCa" folder. If not setting this function to "ON", some ToruCa may not be able to use.

- Up to 20 ToruCa can be stored into "Used ToruCa" folder. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 5 3 ▶ 1 or 2

✓INFORMATION-----

- When this function is "OFF", if you hold FOMA terminal over an IC card reader, a confirmation screen for using ToruCa auto-read or a screen indicating that ToruCa auto-read is disabled may appear. When using ToruCa, set to "ON".

◆ Setting sort method <ToruCa sort rule>

You can set sort method of ToruCa obtained with an IC card reader to specified folders.

- Up to 20 items can be registered.
- To execute this function, Auto-sort of ToruCa from IC card should be "ON".
- "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be specified to the folder to sort.

<Example> Sorting by category

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 5 4

List of methods is displayed. Registered sort methods are displayed in order of priority.

: Category : Title : Index No icon : No method

2 ▶ Select Sort by: field

Checking sort methods : Select a sort method

Changing : Move the cursor to a sort method ▶ 2 ▶ Select Sort by: field ▶ Go to Step 3

Deleting : Move the cursor to the sort method ▶ 3 or 4 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a sort method.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

Changing sort priority : Move the cursor to a sort method ▶ 5 ▶ Go to Step 5

3 1 ▶ Select Category field ▶ 1 - 5

Category selection screen → P270

Sorting by title : 2 ▶ Enter a part of the title in the field for Enter text (up to 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters)

Sorting by index : 3 ▶ Enter a part of the index in the field for Enter text (up to 7 two-byte (15 one-byte) characters)

Sorting by no method : 4

4 Select Location: field ▶ Select a folder ▶

5 Select a priority

Sort method is added above the selected row.

- When registering the first sort method, select "Add to last" (When changing a registered method, "Move to last" is displayed).

Map/GPS Function

Using GPS Function	274
Read map	274
Checking your location	274
Using GPS compatible i-appli	276
Providing your current location information when requested	281
Notifying your current location information	284
Displaying history of checked location information	285
Setting i-appli and operations for reading map	285
Setting GPS	286

Using GPS Function

- This function is unavailable as a navigation device for aircraft, vehicles or persons or as high-precision location surveying GPS. DOCOMO is not liable to any purely economic damages including troubles, if any, caused by missing opportunities of viewing positioning results or making communications due to failures or malfunctions of FOMA terminal or external events such as power interruption (including battery exhaustion) in using FOMA terminal for purposes including but not limited to the above.
- Because GPS is managed by U.S. Department of Defense, GPS wave conditions may be controlled (accuracy degraded or wave stopped) for security reasons of the U.S. And, wave conditions differ by satellite locations; therefore, positioning operations in the same location under the same environmental conditions may not yield the same result.
- GPS uses waves transmitted from satellites and it may be disabled or become hard to receive waves in the conditions below, causing to have an error of 300 m or more in location information.
 - Under or inside forest, on street of large buildings or in an area packed with many houses
 - Inside or beneath a building
 - Underground, in a tunnel or underwater
 - Near a high-voltage cable
 - Inside an automobile, train, etc.
 - Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
 - Covered with hand etc., or placed in a bag etc.
 - FOMA terminal closed
 - FOMA terminal surrounded by obstacles or persons
- When using Location request and Notify location functions, check instructions and precautions given in website of GPS service providers and NTT DOCOMO. And, you may be charged for using these functions.
- The GPS function except Position location is not available in out of service area or overseas.

Map

Read map

You can start GPS compatible i-appli set in Select Map in Map setting to display maps.

- By default, "Map" starts and you can view a map of your current location or another specified location. → P276

1  [LifeKit]  

- When Map activate setting in Map setting is set to "ON", your current location is determined, then a map is displayed.
- If GPS compatible i-appli is not set, the Map setting screen appears.

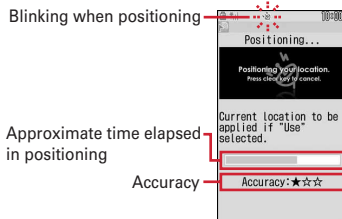
Position location

Checking your location

- No packet communication fee applies for Position location. Note that a packet communication fee is required separately with map displayed using location information.
- Positioning is unavailable while positioning with Location request or Notify location.
- Even out of service area or overseas, positioning may be enabled in a location with a wide view, but it may function abnormally, e.g., taking long time or positioning disabled under certain environmental conditions.

1  [LifeKit]  

Positioning starts.



- Accuracy icon definitions.
 - ★★★: Nearly accurate location information (with an error of less than 50 m)
 - ★★☆: Comparatively accurate location information (with an error of less than 300 m)
 - ☆☆☆: Approximate location information (with an error of 300 m or more)
 Accuracy is merely approximate indication. Actual accuracy may vary by the environmental wave and other conditions.
- When positioning, press **[CLR]** or **[END]** to stop it.
- To use the location information currently acquired, press **[OK]**.

2 Select a function from Use location info menu after positioning

Operating Use location info menu→P275 "■ Location information usage menu"

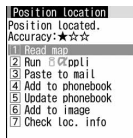
✓INFORMATION

- A message may appear indicating that positioning takes time. Select "Yes" to continue positioning which takes time. Select "Retry" to retry positioning in Quality mode regardless of the setting of the positioning mode. "Retry" does not appear when using overseas.

◆ Using location information

■ Location information usage menu

This menu appears after performing Position location, selecting "Use location" from the submenu of Loc. history, selecting "Detail info"→"Use location" from the submenu in displaying image or selecting the location information on the details screen of phonebook or User information.



1 On the menu screen, **[1]** - **[7]**

Read map: **[1]**

GPS compatible i-appli set in Select Map in Map setting starts and a map is displayed using location information.

Run i-appli: **[2]** ▶ **Select i-appli**

i-appli starts.

Paste to a mail: **[3]**

A mail creation screen with a Location information in the form of URL entered in the mail message is displayed.

- When the mail creation screen is displayed from Position location or Loc. history, "位置メール (Location mail)" is entered in the subject field.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, this is not available.
- A Location information URL pasted to a mail can be displayed only on i-mode compatible terminals.

Add to phonebook: **[4]**

A new phonebook entry screen is displayed.

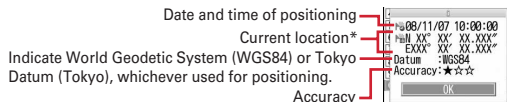
Update phonebook: **[5]** ▶ **Select phonebook entry to update**

Location information is added to the selected phonebook entry and an entry screen is displayed.

Adding to image: **[6]** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image** ▶ **"Yes"**

Checking location information: **[7]**

Display the screen shown below.



- * The information is shown in degrees (°), minutes ('), and seconds ("). "N", "S", "E" and "W" indicate a north latitude, south latitude, east longitude and west longitude, respectively.

■ Paste/Attach/Send location menu

Displayed for pasting/attaching/sending Location information of individual items in the cases below.

Paste location menu: Selecting "Quote phrase/passw"→"Paste location" after pressing **[ME]** while entering message text or editing a signature

Attach location menu: Selecting "Location info" on the new data entry, data edit or User information edit screen of FOMA terminal phonebook, pressing **[ME]** while displaying image to select "Detail info"→"Attach location", or pressing **[ME]** on the screen after shooting still image to select "Attach location"

Send location info menu: Selecting a link item for sending location information from i-mode or ToruCa



From Paste/Attach/Send location menu, [1]-[5]

Using Location information of Position location : [1] ▶ "Yes" from a confirmation screen after activating Position location

Using Location information of Loc. history : [2] ▶ Select Loc. history ▶ "Yes"

Using Location information of phonebook : [3] ▶ Select a phonebook entry from FOMA terminal phonebook list with Location information entered ▶ "Yes"

Using Location information of User information : [4] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

Using Location information entered to an image : [5] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ "Yes"

◆ Setting actions to be taken after Position location <Post-Position task>

Set actions after Position location when pressing [8] for 1 second or more on stand-by display (the setting of Shortcut menu in default state) or starting Position location from Shortcut icons.

- It is also applicable when Custom menu settings are changed and Position location is assigned to another keypad (the first level).

[ME] [LifeKit] [7] [6] [1] ▶ [1]-[6]

Read map : GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select Map in Map setting starts and a map is displayed using positioned location information.

Run Map/GPS appli : Display a list of GPS compatible i-αppli.

Paste to mail : A mail creation screen appears, with "位置メール (Location mail)" entered in the subject field, and with a Location information in the form of URL entered in the message text.

Add to phonebook : Display a screen for selecting "Add to phonebook" or "Update phonebook". You can add new phonebook entry with location information set or update location information to an existing phonebook entry.

Add to image : Display image folder list. Positioned location information can be added to an image.

Confirm each time : Display accuracy and location information menu. → P275

Using GPS compatible i-αppli

- Using GPS compatible i-αppli sends location information to the Information Provider of the i-αppli to be used.
- When using the GPS function with GPS compatible i-αppli, "Location usage setting" of i-αppli to be used must be set to "Yes".
- "地図アプリ (Map Application)" and "モバイルGoogleマップ (Mobile Google map)" are stored by default as GPS compatible i-αppli.

[ME] [LifeKit] [7] [3] ▶ Select GPS compatible i-αppli to start

- To exit GPS compatible i-αppli, use the procedure specified for each i-αppli.

◆ Using 地図アプリ (Map Application)

By the preinstalled "地図アプリ", using GPS function and map, you can look up your current location or the map of specified place, search information around the place, perform navigation to the destination by vehicle, on foot or by car.

- A packet communication fee is required separately. It is recommended to use Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double for this software.
- In case of deleting it, you can download it from "i エリアー周辺情報 - (i-area - Peripheral information -)" site.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, this is not available.
- DOCOMO gives no assurances of accuracy, immediacy, etc. of the map or routing information. Please be forewarned.
- Make sure that other than the driver operate this software while driving.
- This application supports the motion tracking.
- The display shown here is an example. Screens are given only for information purposes and may differ from actual displays.

◆ Basic services and additional services

There are 2 services below for this software.

Basic service : The services DOCOMO offers without charge.

Additional service : The services ZENRIN DataCom offers with charge.

- All functions except traffic information are free till the 60th day from the first activation. To use the additional services on or after the 61st day, you are required to subscribe (charged) to "ゼンリン 地図+ナビ" provided by ZENRIN DataCom.
- If you subscribe to this software after you start using it, you do not need to download the software again. You can use this software without modification.

■ Service contents (Menu)

Menu	Description	On or after the 61st day
フリーワード検索 (Free word search)	Search local area from facilities, address, phone number or postal code and display map.	Free
Map	- Using GPS function, display map of your current location or display map from address list, phone number entry etc. - By entering address in a voice, you can see the map easily.	Free
	- Check the map of the places you registered in this software, a server, or places you searched before. - If you save a place in the server, the saved place is shared with PC.	Charged
Local Search	- Search information of shops, facilities or iD-accepting stores at your current location or around the specified place, and obtain coupons from Gourmet information. - Confirm the parking availability information around the place. - By entering in a voice, you can search the peripheral information easily.	Free
Navigation	- Perform the total navigation to the destination by vehicle, on foot or by car altogether. - Perform navigation easily to your registered home. - Check the traffic jam information of the whole country.	Charged
Transfer	- Check transfer information or timetable of the railway system. - Check railway route on the map, and set the alarm before departure. - By entering in a voice, you can get transfer information easily.	Charged

Menu	Description	On or after the 61st day
Utility	- Paint and display the map of the city/village you have positioned before by GPS function on a prefectural basis. - Using GPS function, leave your footprint on the current position, and display the trail of your movement. - Change the mode to not only a normal map, but also to various types of maps such as a map moving by declining FOMA terminal, a 3D map, a map emphasizing railroads.	Free
	- Using 地図トーク (Map talk) to invite your company, you can view the company's position on a map and exchange messages. - Check 足あと (footprints) also on a PC by sending "足あと" data saved in microSD card to the server. - Back up the areas you have positioned before using GPS function to the server.	Charged
Emergency	- Search the facilities helpful in case of disaster. - A communication-free i-appli linked to map application for disaster can be activated.	Charged
Setting/Help	Check settings or usage of map display or navigation display.	Free

❖ Screen and operation of "地図アプリ (Map Application)" Top menu

Menus appear on TOP screen. If you close a menu by **CLR**, the map previously displayed appears.

- At the first time you use this application, the Terms of Service and the instructions for use appear.

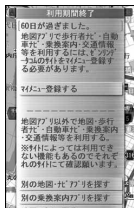


TOP menu screen

■ When 60 days have passed since subscription

When you use this application for the first time on or after the 61st day, a message indicating that the usable functions are limited and the inquiry message for subscription appear. Also, when you select an additional service menu, similar messages appear.

- Access the site of "ゼンリン[®]地図+ナビ" from this software when subscribing.



❖ Map screen and operation



©2008 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.

Map display screen

- The operations below are available on the map display screen.

ME : Display of TOP menu screen

 : Press and hold the key to display wide area by zooming out

 : Press and hold the key to display details by zooming in

 : Display of the quick access menu

 : Scroll the map on the left, right, up and down

CLR : Close the menu, return to the first search result

 : Rotate the map counterclockwise

0 : Display the map with the north upward

 : Rotate the map clockwise

- The operations below are available by the quick access menu.

   : Search the peripheral information centering around the point currently displayed on a map

   : Search the route from the specified point to the center of the displayed map

   : Display menu of 地図トーク (Map talk) / 送信 (Send) (Select **1** to invite your company and display them on a map, select **2** to send URL of the displayed map via mail)

  : Register the location information of the center of the map to this software, the server or phonebook (If registered in the server, you can share the registered point with a PC)

 : Check detail information

◆ Screen and operation of the search result of the peripheral information

- These are the screen and operation for the case that the search result is displayed by a map, not for the case they are selected on the list.



©2008 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.

Search result screen of peripheral information

- The operations below are available on the search result screen.

- 1** : Select the previous 10 search results
- 3** : Select the next 10 search results
- 4** : Select the previous search result
- 5** : Search again centering around the displayed point
- 6** : Select the next search result
- NE** / / / / / / / : Operate same as the map display screen

◆ Guide (navigation) to the destination by voice and display by searching route

Search the route by setting the starting point and the destination. Display the route on foot, by public transportation system and by car. After searching the route, guide (navigation) to the destination by voice and display.

- On TOP menu screen, "ナビ (Navigation)" ▶ "ナビをする (Navigate)"
- Select **出発地 (Starting point) field** ▶ Set starting point from each item

現在地 (Current position) (GPS) : Position and set the current position
フリーワード検索 (Free word search) : Search by keyword and set
地図上で指定 (Plot on the map) : Set the starting point on the map

TEL / 〒検索 (Phone number / 〒 (Postal code) search) : Search by phone number or postal code and set

住所一覧から (From address list) : Select and set the address

ジャンルから (From category) : Select the category and set

履歴から (From history) : Set from the map searched before

登録地点から (From registered point) : Set from the location information saved in this software, the server or phonebook

自宅 (Home) : Set the location information of your home

出発地の確認 (Check the starting point) : Check the information of the starting point

3 Select 目的地 (Destination) field ▶ Set destination from each item

- Set with the same operation as Step 2.

4 Select 時間指定 (Time specifying) field ▶ Select from each item

現時刻で指定 (Specify by current time) : Search the route by current time

出発時刻指定 (Specified departure time) : Search the route by specifying the departure time

到着時刻指定 (Specify arrival time) : Search the route by specifying the arrival time

終電を利用 (Use the last train) : Search the route by using the latest train of the day

5 Select 条件設定 (Condition setting) field ▶ Set required items ▶ "上記で設定 (Set as above)" ▶ "OK"

乗換条件 (Transfer condition) : Select the priority criteria of transfer from "早い (Early)" "安い (Cheap)" "楽々 (Comfortable)"

徒歩ルート (Walking route) : Select the priority criteria from "おまかせ (Up to you)" "屋根多い (Many roofs)" "階段少ない (Few stairs)"

特急利用 (Using express) : Select if you use express even if the total distance of the route is less than 100 km

通常利用車種 (Car type for ordinary use) : Select the car type for use

6 "🚗🚗🚗で検索 (Search by 🚗🚗🚗)" or "🚗のみで検索 (Search only by 🚗)"

You can search the route only by "🚗🚗🚗で検索 (Search)" for total navigation and "🚗のみで検索 (Search only)" for car only. The routes (up to 6 routes) are displayed as a result of the search. When a transfer route by a different transportation system exists, the characteristics of the route is displayed by icon.

早 (Early) : Require less time
 安 (Cheap) : Fare is cheap
 楽 (Comfortable) : Few transfers
 オススメ (Recommended) : Meeting all conditions of 楽/早/安
 有料 (Charged) : Route of car using toll road by priority
 一般 (General) : Route of car using general road by priority

7 Select the route ▶ "ナビ・ルート確認 (Check the navigation route)"

Registering the route : "ルート登録 (Register the route)"

8 "ナビ開始 (Start navigation)"

Start the navigation to the destination.

Checking the route : "ルート確認 (Check the route)"

Simulate the route : "シミュレート (Simulate)"

■ Screens and operations of Route (car)/Navigation (car) display



Route to destination

Current position or the direction

©2008 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.

Navigation (car) display screen

- The operations below are available on the navigation screen.

[ME] : End the navigation and display TOP screen

[IR] : Switch to the intersection mode

[5] : Stop/Resume navigation

[CLR] : Return to the current position

[Map icons] : Operate same as the map display screen

- The operations below are available on the quick access menu.

[Search icon] : Search the parking areas around the destination

[Result icon] : Display the search result (time, fare, etc.) or set the navigation

[Add icon] : Search the route by adding up to 3 way-stops to the route to the destination

[Refresh icon] : Search again the route from the current position to the destination

[Detail icon] : Check detail information

✦ Using "音声入力 (Voice entry)"

By 音声入力 (Voice entry) menu, by entering in a voice, you can easily check peripheral information, get transfer information or see the map.

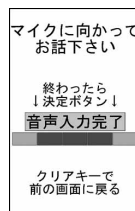
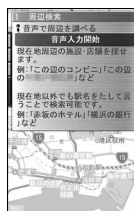
<Example> Using "音声入力 (Voice entry)" of Local Search

1 While this software is active, [ME] ▶ "Local Search" ▶ "音声入力 (Voice entry)"

The way of voice entry is displayed.

2 "音声入力開始 (Start voice entry)"

After the voice entry screen is displayed, enter the peripheral information to search by voice.



When "この辺のコンビニ (Peripheral convenience store)" are entered by voice entry

By recognizing the voice, a confirmation screen appears.

- If the recognition is wrong, enter again.

❖ Using 地図トーク (Map talk)

Using 地図トーク, you can view the company's position on a map and exchange messages with them. Locations of up to 5 companies are displayed including the owner (the person who invite).

■ Inviting

- Only a subscriber can be the owner after the 61st day, but even a non-subscriber can be the guest (the person whom invited).

- On TOP menu screen, "便利ツール (Utility)" ▶ "地図トーク"
- Enter a nickname (up to 4 characters) ▶ "ひとりをお誘い (Invite one company)" or "ふたり以上をお誘い (Invite more than one company)" ▶ "OK"

- When using 地図トーク by more than 3 companies including the owner, it is necessary to set 4 digits password by numeric character by the owner.

3 Editing mail ▶

■ Joining

The person whom invited to 地図トーク receive a invitation mail to 地図トーク. Access from URL in the message text to the site, and start a map application.

- When joining to 地図トーク for the first time, register a nickname for 地図トーク.
- For 地図トーク with more than 3 companies including the owner, 4 digits password set by the owner is required. Confirm it with the owner beforehand.

■ Screen and operation of 地図トーク



©2008 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.

Using 地図トーク screen

- The operations below are available on the screen while using 地図トーク.

 : Send a message with photo

 : Switch the person displayed at the center

 : Send a message

 /  /  /  : Operate same as the map display screen

- The operations below are available on the quick access menu.

 ▶  : Exit 地図トーク

 ▶  : Set the meeting place (displayed for only owner)

 ▶  : Invite more companies (displayed for only owner)

 : Display message log

❖ Using 設定／ヘルプ (Set/Help)

1 While this software is active, ▶ "設定・ヘルプ (Set/Help)"

- The operations below are available.

各種設定 (Various settings) : Basic setting of software, setting of navigation, setting of home, setting of the nearest station from home, deleting all logs, initializing the software

ヘルプ・規約 (Help/Terms) : Check viewing procedure of PC site "いつでもガイド (Anytime guide)", 使いかたの説明 (Explanation of usage), よくある質問 (FAQ) or 利用規約 (Terms of service)

会員情報確認 (Check the subscription) : Check the subscription to "ゼンリン (ZENRIN) 地図+ナビ (Map + navigation)"

Ver確認更新 (Check the version/Update) : Check the version of software or updated information, upgrade

お知らせ (Information) : Check the latest news or information about service

Location request

Providing your current location information when requested

This is a service related to Location request; you can set so that location information is provided upon request from other set parties.

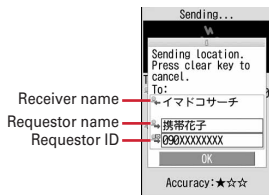
- To use a service related to Location request, a subscription to the service provider may be required. You may be charged for using the service.
- To use a service related to Location request, you must set Request permit/deny to "Always permit" or "Deny unsaved contact". And, you may be required to make usage settings by services.

◆ When Location request is issued

<Example> When "許可 (Permit)" is set for usage settings by services

Location request starts. blinks, the light turns on, the GPS alert sounds, and vibrator operates.

- Press **[CLR]** or **[END]** to stop Location request. Location information is sent under some timing.



- When the requestor ID matches a phonebook entry, the requestor name saved in phonebook appears. Note that, when the requestor ID matches the user information, the requestor name does not appear.
- Requestor ID may not be displayed.
- When "毎回確認 (Check each time)" is set for usage settings by services, a screen shown below appears. Select "Yes" to start Location request.



✓ INFORMATION

- Sending Location information requires no charge.
- Location request is unavailable while positioning with Position location or Notify location, while FOMA terminal is out of service area or during Self mode, i-mode communication with i-appli or infrared communication/iC transmission. If the battery is exhausted or Omakase Lock is activated while positioning, it is stopped.
- Information is not delivered to the other party under some wave conditions.

- If "毎回確認 (Check each time)" is set for usage settings by services when Location request is issued during Public mode (Drive mode), location information is not sent. If "許可 (Permit)" is set, a screen appears and location information is sent, but the GPS alert sound is not emitted, and the light or vibrator does not operate.
- When using 2in1, Location request for Number A is available regardless of mode of 2in1.
- When you are required to provide the location information by a party using imadocokantan search, it operates as below.
 - Every time you are required, a confirmation screen for location information appears. If you select "Yes", a rough positioning result is immediately notified to the other party. After the positioning, high-precision positioning results are notified to the other party.
 - Even if the location request is interrupted after selecting "Yes" on the confirmation screen of location request, a rough positioning result is notified to the other party. In this case, although it is recorded in the Loc. history, the location information is not displayed.

◆ Setting whether to permit/deny Location request <Request permit/deny>

You can set if you provide location information when there is a request from other parties.

- This can also be set in Initial setting.→P54

1 **[Menu] (LifeKit) [7] [7] [2] [1] ▶ Authenticate**
 2 **[1] or [3] ▶ "No"**

- When "Always permit" is specified, any Location request is permitted. Without performing operations, Location information may be sent, and the searcher may be given information.
- When "Deny unsaved contact" is set, a location request is permitted, however, the location request from a phone number that is not saved in phonebook or User information is automatically rejected.

Canceling Location request or Deny unsaved contact : [2]

Setting permission period : [1] or [3] ▶ "Yes" ▶ Set required items ▶ [Camera icon]

Start : Set time for starting Location request.

End : Set time for ending Location request.

- You can set the next day exceeding 24:00.

Repeat : Set repetition of operation of the set time.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select the day of the week to perform Location request and press **[6]**.

Date : Set a period of time to perform Location request. When "Specify start date" or "Specify start/end" is set, the items below can be set.

Start : Set day for starting Location request.

End : Set day for ending Location request.

-  (blue) appears on the stand-by display when "Always permit" or "Deny unsaved contact" is set. When permission period is outside a valid period,  (gray) appears.

❖ Operations of Location request with Permission period set

When Permission period is set, location information provided periods listed below.

- The column titled Location provided period shows periods with years omitted in which location information provided is active if Permission period is set at 9:00, 25.11.08.
- If Repeat is set to "Day of week", the function is activated only on the specified day of the week in the period specified in the field for Location provided period.

■ When time after the current time is set as Start

<Example> Start : "10:00", End : "18:00"

Repeat	Date	Location provided period
None	—	11/25 10:00-18:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	After 11/25 10:00-18:00
	Start : 2008/11/01	After 11/25 10:00-18:00
	Start : 2008/12/01	After 12/01 10:00-18:00
	Start : 2008/11/01 End : 2008/11/30	11/25-11/30 10:00-18:00
	Start : 2008/12/01 End : 2008/12/31	12/01-12/31 10:00-18:00

■ When time before the current time is set as Start

<Example> Start : "08:00", End : "18:00"

Repeat	Date	Location provided period
None	—	11/25 09:00-18:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	11/25 09:00-18:00 After 11/26 08:00-18:00
	Start : 2008/11/01	11/25 09:00-18:00 After 11/26 08:00-18:00
	Start : 2008/12/01	After 12/01 08:00-18:00
	Start : 2008/11/01 End : 2008/11/30	11/25 09:00-18:00 11/26-11/30 08:00-18:00
	Start : 2008/12/01 End : 2008/12/31	12/01-12/31 08:00-18:00

■ When time after the current time is set as Start and one on the next day over 24 o'clock is set as End

<Example> Start : "10:00", End : "02:00"

Repeat	Date	Location provided period
None	—	11/25 10:00-11/26 02:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	After 11/25 10:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2008/11/01	After 11/25 10:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2008/12/01	After 12/01 10:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2008/11/01 End : 2008/11/30	11/25-11/30 10:00-02:00 next day (until 12/01 02:00)
	Start : 2008/12/01 End : 2008/12/31	12/01-12/31 10:00-02:00 next day (until 01/01/2009 02:00)

■ When time before the current time is set as Start and one on the next day over 24 o'clock is set as End

<Example> Start : "08:00", End : "02:00"

Repeat	Date	Location provided period
None	—	11/25 09:00-11/26 02:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	11/25 09:00-11/26 02:00 After 11/26 08:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2008/11/01	11/25 09:00-11/26 02:00 After 11/26 08:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2008/12/01	After 12/01 08:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2008/11/01 End : 2008/11/30	11/25 09:00-11/26 02:00 11/26-11/30 08:00-02:00 next day (until 12/01 02:00)
	Start : 2008/12/01 End : 2008/12/31	12/01-12/31 08:00-02:00 next day (until 01/01/2009 02:00)

◆ Making settings for using service <Service settings>

1  [LifeKit]    

- For next procedure, contact a related service provider.

❖ Changing host of service usage setup site <Service host URL>

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

1 [LifeKit] ▶ Set required items ▶

Host : Select a host.

- When "User setting" is selected, the items below can be set.

User host : Enter up to 99 one-byte characters for the host.

User host URL : Enter up to 100 one-byte characters for URL.

Notify location

Notifying your current location information

You can notify current location information to others (service providers applicable to Notify location function).

- To use Notify location, a subscription to a service provider applicable to Notify location function may be required. And, you may be charged for using the service.
- Notify location requires usage fee.
- Notify location is unavailable while positioning with Position location or Location request, when FOMA terminal is out of service area or in Self mode. Notification by entering a service client is unavailable in Keypad dial lock.

<Example> Notifying by entering a service client

1 [LifeKit] 2 ▶ Enter a service client ID (up to 12 one-byte characters) ▶

When positioning,  blinks and the light turns on. The GPS alert sound is emitted and the vibrator operates on completion of positioning.

- Positioning is stopped when  is pressed while a message is being displayed indicating that a location and phone number are sent or  or  is pressed while positioning.
- Even if positioning is interrupted, the location information is notified under some timing.

Notifying to saved service client :  ▶  -  ▶ 

3 Check send result ▶

❖ Saving service client to LCS clients list

For Notify location, a service client can be selected from a list of those saved, if any. You can also set so that your current location is notified to saved service client ID of a specified party by making a voice/videophone call.

- Up to 5 items can be saved.
- No LCS client can be saved, edited or deleted with UIM not inserted.

1 [LifeKit] ▶ "<New LCS client>"

- When checking a service client already saved, select the service client to check and press  to edit.
- Press  and select "Delete" to delete a service client already saved. You can also save it to phonebook, send it via infrared or iC transmission, or copy it to microSD card from a submenu.

2 Set required items ▶

- While "Quote phonebook" is selected from the submenu, a service client name and phone number can be quoted from a phonebook.

Service client name : Enter the service client name in up to 16 two-byte (32 one-byte) characters.

Service client ID : Enter a number specified by a service provider you subscribed to in up to 12 one-byte characters.

- Numerals, "#", and "*" can be entered.

Phone number : Enter a phone number of the other party in up to 26 one-byte characters.

- Numerals, "P", "T", "+", "#", and "*" can be entered. You can set Notify when calling when a phone number is entered.

Notify when calling : Set if you notify your location to a saved service client ID when making a voice/videophone call to that client.

- Set to "ON" to notify the location when making a call.
- Set to "Confirm each calling" to display a confirmation screen asking if you notify the location when making a call.

✓INFORMATION

- Information is not delivered to the other party under some wave conditions.
- Even with Notify location set in LCS clients list, location cannot be notified in the cases below.
 - When a call is made without notifying caller ID
 - When call is not connected because the other party is busy or out of service area
- When using 2in1, location information is notified as Number A regardless of mode of 2in1.

Displaying history of checked location information

You can display histories of positioning performed by Position location, Location request or Notify location function. Using location information in the log, you can save location information in phonebook or create a message containing location information URL.

- Up to 50 location histories are saved. When exceeding the limit, items are overwritten chronologically.

1 [ME] [LifeKit] [7] [4]

- Icon definitions.
 : Position location (gray) : Location request/positioning failure
 (gray) : Notify location/positioning failure

2 Select a history to display

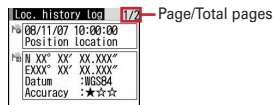
Using Location information : Move the cursor to the history to use ► [ME] [1]

The next procedure → P275 "Location information usage menu"

Deleting : Move the cursor to a history ► [ME] [2] ► [1] - [3] ► "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a history.
- To delete selected items, select them ► . To delete all items, authentication is required.

◆ Reading Loc. history log details screen



Loc. history log details screen for Position location

- : Positioning date/time and function
- : Receiver name for Location request/Service client name for Notify location
- : Service client ID for Notify location : Location information : Requester's name of Location request
- : Requestor ID for Location request

- From a submenu, you can display the Use location menu to use location information or delete histories. When phone number or mail address information of the requestor ID is contained in Location request history, the information can be saved to phonebook.

✓INFORMATION-----

- When positioning with Position location is stopped or fails, it is not saved in history. And, location information is unavailable from histories of failing positioning with Location request or Notify location.
- When failed in positioning in Location request or Notify location, the location information is not displayed.
- Location information, if any, saved in histories of Location request or Notify location is not sent to a service provider under some wave conditions.
- When the requestor ID of a Location request matches a phonebook entry, the requestor name saved in phonebook appears.
- The location information recorded in the Loc. history differs from the location information that was sent to the provide of the location or LCS client by wave conditions etc.

Map setting

Setting i-appli and operations for reading map

You can specify i-appli and its operations when it is started to read a map.

◆ Setting i-appli to be used <Select Map>

1 [ME] [LifeKit] [7] [8] [1] ► Select i-appli



Graphical display

- Icon definitions
 : Available to be set as map viewer i-appli/Activated
 : i-appli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.

: Unable to start because 2in1 is in B mode

: Individual IC card locked

: Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

: GPS compatible i-appli

: Message i-appli : i-appliDX

(orange) : i-appli

/ / : Search for i-appli from i-mode site→P242

- Each time you press , the view switches in the order of graphical display
→list display→thumbnail display.

◆ Setting whether to position when starting <Map activate setting>

1 [LifeKit] or

Setting GPS

◆ Setting positioning mode <Position accuracy>

- In "Standard mode", positioning is performed in a short period of time.
- "Quality mode" takes time for positioning. As a result, it may provide higher accuracy than "Standard mode".

<Example> Setting positioning mode for Position location

1 [LifeKit]

Setting positioning mode for Notify location : [LifeKit]

Setting positioning mode for Location request : [LifeKit]

2 or

◆ Setting actions in positioning <Positioning alert>

<Example> Setting actions for Position location

1 [LifeKit]

Setting operation for Notify location : [LifeKit]

Setting operation for Loc. request-accept : [LifeKit]

Setting operation for Loc. request-verify : [LifeKit]

2 Set required items

Ring alert : Set if you sound melody.

- When "Melody" is set, select a melody.

Vibrate alert : Set a vibrator operation pattern.

Ring time (sec) : Set time in range of 0-30 seconds.

- Set time in range of 0-20 seconds for Loc. request-verify.

Light alert : Set a lighting or blinking pattern and color of the light.

- "Sync melody" cannot be selected. "OFF" cannot be selected for the case of Loc. request-accept or Loc. request-verify.
- When setting "Light pattern 1" or "Light pattern 2", light color cannot be selected.

✓INFORMATION-----

- When positioning is made again or retried with Position location due to wave conditions etc. only lighting/blinking of the light occurs.

Making full use of image

Displaying image	288
Editing still images	290

Making full use of movie/i-motion

Playing movie/i-motion	292
Editing movies/i-motion	295
Moving i-motion to microSD card	Compatible with contents transfer 296

Making full use of Machi-chara

Displaying Machi-chara	297

Making full use of Chara-den

Displaying Chara-den	298

Making full use of melody

Playing a melody	298

Making full use of microSD card

microSD card	300
Exchanging data between the FOMA terminal and microSD card	302
Displaying data in microSD card	304
Backing up data saved in the FOMA terminal all at once	305
Managing microSD card	306
Operating data of microSD card in the FOMA terminal from a PC	USB mode settings 307

Managing various data

Using folder or album	308
Viewing/Editing data detail information	Detail information/Edit detail information 309
Deleting data	311
Sorting data	Sort 311
Checking storage space of the FOMA terminal	Memory status 311
When exceeding the savable number/area	312

Making full use of infrared communication/iC transmission

Using infrared communication/iC transmission	312
Sending data by infrared communication/iC transmission	Send Ir data or iC transmission 313
Receiving data by infrared communication/iC transmission	Receive Ir data or iC transmission 314
Using infrared remote control function	315
Setting operations for data exchange	Data exchange settings 316

Displaying PDF data

Displaying PDF data	My Document 316

Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files

Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files	Other 317

Displaying recording data of 1Seg

Viewing recorded video or still images	318

Displaying image

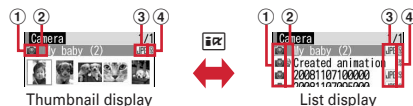
- Images (JPEG or GIF format), animations (GIF animations or Flash graphics), and created animations can be displayed. Note that, images with horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) sizes larger than 480×864 in GIF format or larger than 1944×2,592 in JPEG format cannot be displayed.
- You can operate from flip menu.→P40

ME [Data Box] 1

- The folder contents are as given below.

- Camera** : Images shot with Camera or cut out of movies/i-motion or PDF data
- i-mode** : Images downloaded from sites, websites, i-mode mail or i-appli or saved by MUSIC Player
- Deco-mail picture**: Images stored by default, downloaded from sites, websites, mail or i-appli, or read with Bar code reader
- Deco-mail pictogram** : Images stored by default or Deco-mail pictogram downloaded from the site
- When obtaining an image conforming to the standard of Deco-mail pictogram (image size is 20×20, the file size is up to 90 Kbytes, permitted to attach to mail or output from FOMA terminal and JPEG or GIF format), it is stored to this folder. Images not conforming to the standards cannot be saved.
- Item** : Frame images stored by default or frame or stamp images downloaded from sites
- Preinstalled** : Images stored by default
- Data transfer** : Images read with Bar code reader or acquired from microSD card or external devices
- My album** : Images moved from another folder
 - Appears when album is added.→P308
 - When secret attribute is set, is displayed.
- Search by i-mode** : Searching images from i-mode sites→P177

2 Select a folder



① Originated

- Preinstalled
- i-mode, Full Browser, Mail, i-appli
- Camera, Frame, Stamp, Data transfer
- Searching images from i-mode sites→P177

② Type of image

- No icon : Still image
- GIF animation/Flash graphics
- Image with location information

③ File format

- No icon : Create animation
- JPG : JPEG image
- GIF : GIF image, GIF animation
- SWF : SWF (Flash graphics)

* If unavailable due to UIM operation restriction, appears below and to the right of the icon.

④ File restriction

- File restricted/unrestricted

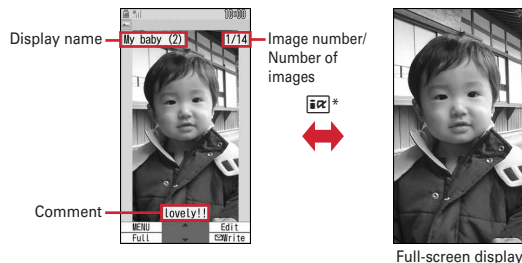
- For thumbnail display, the display name of the image at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the image size and file size appear at the bottom of the display. And, when thumbnail display is unavailable, the icons below are displayed.

No preview image

Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

Switching to microSD card list :

3 Select an image



- * On the full-screen display, press any of **[MENU]**, **[BACK]**, **[CLR]**, **[MAIL]** to return to the previous display.
- Press **[X]** or **[D]** to switch to previous/next image.
- While playing animation or created animation, press **[STOP]** to pause/play, press **[MENU]** **[7]** to play from the beginning (except in full-screen display). Also, while created animation is stopped or while playing created animation after a stop, press **[SLOW]** to play it in slow motion.

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to an image ▶ **[MAIL]**

Operations for attaching files→P141 Step 1 in "Attaching a file"

- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the mail text appears.

Using location information attached to an image : Move the cursor to an image ▶ **[MENU]** **[3]** **[3]** (**[MENU]** **[2]** **[3]** on the microSD card image list)

The next procedure→P275 "■ Location information usage menu"

Adding location information to an image : Move the cursor to the image ▶ **[MENU]** **[3]** **[4]** (**[MENU]** **[2]** **[4]** on the microSD card image list) ▶ Add location information ▶ Select a JPEG image to attach the location information ▶ **[OK]** ▶ "Yes"

Pasting location information→P275 "■ Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

Deleting location information added to an image : Move the cursor to the image ▶ **[MENU]** **[3]** **[5]** (**[MENU]** **[2]** **[5]** on the microSD card image list) ▶ Select an image to delete location information from ▶ **[OK]** ▶ "Yes"

✓ INFORMATION

- If the still image is larger than the display area, it is scaled to fit the area.
- An image with vertical and horizontal (or vice versa) size of less than 240×432 dots is displayed with its size doubled. If the image is larger than the display area when enlarged, the image is displayed being adjusted to the display area. Press **[ZOOM]** to display in the actual size. Press **[ZOOM]** to restore the double-size display.
- You can use zooming in or out to view a JPEG image larger than the screen size by moving the cursor to the image on the image list and pressing **[MENU]** **[O]**, or pressing **[ZOOM]** on the image display screen. When an image is zoomed in or out, press **[X]** to scroll, **[MENU]** to zoom out by 20 %, **[ZOOM]** to zoom in/out by 20 %, **[ZOOM]** to show/hide the guide area and **[STOP]** to restore the actual size view. Press **[MENU]** to restore actual size from enlarged size.
- You can save images using Data Security Service.→P128

◆ Setting operating conditions of image

1 **[MENU]** **[Data Box]** **[1]** ▶ **[MENU]** **[6]** ▶ Set required items ▶ **[OK]**

View thumbnails : Set if you use thumbnail display on the image list.

Display title/Display number/Display comments : Set if you display name/image number and number of images/comment on the image display screen.

Scale up image : Set if you zoom in on an image to fit the display maintaining the image aspect ratio.

Scale down image : Set if you zoom out from an image to fit the display maintaining the image aspect ratio.

Sound effect : Set whether to play sound effects set to an image (except slide show).

Auto scroll mode : Set whether to automatically scroll the display if a still image is smaller than full-screen display.

- While scrolling, use **[STOP]** to pause/play and **[X]** to show/hide the scroll bar.

Slideshow speed : Set how quickly switch images.

Slideshow random : Set whether to display slides randomly.

Slideshow effect : Set effects on the slide show.

◆ Displaying slide show

Display images in a folder sequentially in a full-screen.

1 **[MENU]** **[Data Box]** **[1]** ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ **[MENU]** **[7]**

- When display of all images is complete or you press one of **[CLR]**, **[MENU]**, **[BACK]**, **[MAIL]**, the folder list screen reappears.

◆ Setting images to the stand-by display or phonebook

<Example> Setting to the stand-by display

1 [Data Box] 1 Select a folder Move the cursor to an image
 2

2 1 "Yes"

- For an image smaller than the screen size that can be enlarged, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)".
- If i-appli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-appli stand-by display appears.

Adding to phonebook : 2 or 3

Phonebook new entry → P82

- To update the phonebook, select a phonebook entry to add.

Setting as Calling image : 4 1 or 2

Setting as Video-phone image : 5 1 - 7

- Animations, still images in size larger than 176×144 or images that cannot be output from FOMA terminal can be set only for outgoing/incoming call image.

Setting as Mail image : 6 1 - 4

- The images set to Mail image also appear when Message/R/F or SMS is sent or received.

Setting as Basic menu icon : 7 Select a function or "Background"

- Flash graphics, images in "Item" folder or created animation cannot be set.
- When the displayed menu is set to other than Basic menu, a confirmation screen for switching to Basic menu appears.

◆ Creating animation

You can select up to 9 still images smaller than 480×864 from the same folder and create an animation.

- Still images saved cannot be displayed or edited individually. Also, unless canceled, they cannot be saved to microSD card or external device or attached to i-mode mail to send.

1 [Data Box] 1 Select a folder

2 4 1

Canceling : Move the cursor to a created animation 4 2

3 Select images to save to Create animation

Selected images are numbered ①-⑨ in the order of selections.

: Deselect the target : Deselect all

4 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters)

Editing still images

1 [Data Box] 1 Select a folder Move the cursor to a still image

2 Perform necessary operations

Changing display size by specifying the size : 1 1 - 8

- If the aspect ratio is different from that of the original image, a blue frame appears. Press to change to the specified size without saving the aspect ratio, and press to save the aspect ratio and put the image within the specified size. If moving the frame by and pressing , the image can be cut out by the specified size.

Changing display size by zooming in/out : 1 9 Zoom out or in by

- Press / to zoom out/in by 20 %. By the display on the upper right of the screen, the size after the change and the rate of zooming out/in can be checked.
- Zooming in up to 864×864 and zooming out up to 8×8 are possible.

Playing movie/i-motion

- In the formats below, movies/i-motion with image size of 48×48 - 640×480 can be played.

File format (Extension)	Encoding format	
MP4 (MP4, 3GP)	Movie	MPEG4, H.263 ^{*1} , H.264
	Sound	AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus
ASF (ASF)	Movie	MPEG4 ^{*2}
	Sound	G.726

*1 Supported to the image size of 128×96, 176×144 and 352×288 only.

*2 Supported to the image size of 176×144, 320×240 and 640×480 only.

- You can also operate from flip style.→P40

1 [ME] [Data Box] 4

- The folder contents are as given below.

Playlist : Playlist→P294

Camera : Movie recorded by camera, sound recorded with Sound recorder and movie memo

i-mode : i-motion downloaded from sites or mail, i-motion cut out of i-motion or music data and i-motion compatible with contents transfer moved from microSD card

Preinstalled : Movies stored by default

Data transfer : Movie/i-motion (except i-motion compatible with contents transfer) acquired from microSD card or external device

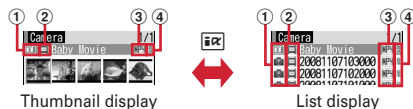
My album : Movies/i-motion moved from other folders

- Appears when album is added.→P308

- When secret attribute is set, is displayed.

Search by i-mode : Searching i-motion from i-mode sites→P186

2 Select a folder



1 Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode, Mail, i-appli

: Camera : Data transfer : Videophone

: Searching i-motion from i-mode sites→P186

2 Replay restriction

: No restriction

/ / : Restriction on the number of times/expiration/period

3 File type

(white)/ (yellow) : MP4/MP4 with bookmark

: Replay unavailable due to replay restriction

: MP4 partially saved

: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

(white)/ (yellow) : ASF/ASF with bookmark

4 File restriction

/ : File restricted/unrestricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the movie at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the image size and file size appear at the bottom of the display. And, when thumbnail display is unavailable, the icons below are displayed.

: Movie/i-motion containing only sound, recorded voice

: Movie/i-motion with thumbnail images unavailable

: Replay unavailable due to replay restriction

: i-motion partially saved

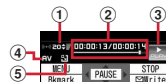
: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

- Only i-motion compatible with contents transfer can be displayed

Switching to microSD card list :

3 Select movie/i-motion

- When movie/i-motion is started for the first time, a confirmation screen appears asking to play in full-screen. Select "Yes" and press to play on horizontal display (full-screen), "No" to play on vertical display. Settings are saved in Play starting mode of Settings.
- You can check the playing status on the vertical display. Descriptions of the screens are as below.



① Play volume

- (◁⊞) is displayed with orange when Surround in Settings is "ON".

② Play time/Total time and the play position indicator

③ Play state

: In play : In stop : In pause

④ File type

: Sound : Movie

⑤ Zooming in/out display

: Zoomed in display : Zoomed out display

- For the movie/i-motion with a bookmark set, the confirmation screen appears for playing from the bookmark. Select "No" to play from the beginning or play stopped position.
- While playing, the operations below are available.
 - , : Adjust volume
 - : Reverse/Fast play
 - : Pause/Play/Play from the beginning (In stop)
 - "Yes" : Set a bookmark
 - To cancel, press during pause.
 - A bookmark cannot be set to i-motion with replay restriction.

: Stop

: Return to list screen

: Rewind for 10 seconds (Starting playing from the beginning if the time from it is less than 10 seconds)

: Fast forward for 30 seconds (Starting playing from a point approximately 1 second before the end position if the time to the end position is less than 30 seconds)

/ : Play from the beginning of previous/next chapter

: Switch horizontal and vertical displays (for an image size of 320×240 or 640×480, horizontal display (full-screen)→horizontal display (full-screen)→vertical display)

: Play the selected chapter

* Enabled only for movie/i-motion with chapter information

- In pause, press to display a tab for specifying position on the play position indicator. Move by and press to play from the specified position. Tab for specifying position moves by 1 minute each time you press , but movie/i-motion longer than approximately 20 minutes can be moved by 5 minutes by pressing it for more than 2 seconds.

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to movie/i-motion ►

✓INFORMATION

- For some i-motion on which "----" may appear as the full play duration on the play screen, fast-forwarding/rewinding, playing operation from the bookmark or play stop position, or playing using chapter information or tab for specifying position is unavailable.
- When i-motion with replay restriction set is selected, the replay restriction state appears. When replay is unavailable due to the replay restriction, a message appears for confirming deletion (except before the replay period). When replay period or expiration is restricted, replaying is not available by changing the date and time of FOMA terminal.
- When i-motion failed or interrupted in downloading and partially downloaded is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading the remaining data appears. When it cannot be downloaded by retry, partially saved data is deleted. For partially downloaded i-motion that the replay period or replay expiration expired, a confirmation screen for deleting appears and redownloading is unavailable.
- When playing is stopped by pressing or while playing or by other functions, the stop position is saved and used for the next playback. The stop position information for movie/i-motion is saved up to 5 items in each of FOMA terminal and microSD card. When new information is saved, old information is deleted chronologically. When playing while downloading data or in preview play, the stop position cannot be saved.

◆ Setting operating conditions of movie/i-motion

[Data Box] ► ► Set required items ►

View thumbnails : Set whether to use thumbnail display on the movie/i-motion list.

Size adjustment : Set whether to zoom in/out an image to fit the display area maintaining the image aspect ratio.

Repeat play : Set whether to repeat playing when playing playlist.

Display light time : Set light operations during playback. When setting to "Phone setting", backlight operates according to the setting of Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light. This setting is also applied to Display light time (i-motion) of Display & Key light and Backlight of movie/i-motion as well as Display light time of Music&Video channel.

Volume : Set the sound volume during playback.

Surround : Set whether to enable surround effects when Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone (optional) with switch is connected. This setting also applies to Movie (i-motion) in Stereo sound effect.

Play starting mode : Set whether to play in horizontal display (full-screen) or vertical display. Even when "Play horizontally" is selected, audio only movies/i-motion are played in vertical display.

◆ Creating/Playing playlists

Saving and managing the titles of movie/i-motion.

- 100 titles can be saved in 1 playlist.
- Movie/i-motion saved in microSD card, i-motion partially saved, i-motion titles restricted by Replay restriction option, or movie/i-motion title unavailable due to UIM operation restriction cannot be registered.

◆ Creating/Deleting playlist

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select "Playlist" folder

2

When no playlist is created : "Yes"

Changing name : Move the cursor to playlist ▶ ▶ Enter a name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶

Deleting : Move the cursor to playlist ▶ ▶ - ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a playlist.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

3 Enter a name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶

- "PlaylistYYYYMMDD (year, month and day of creation)" is preset.

4 Select a folder ▶ Select a movie/i-motion ▶ ▶ "Yes"

◆ Adding/Deleting titles of movies/i-motion to/from playlist

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select "Playlist" folder ▶ Select a playlist

2

Canceling : Move the cursor to a title ▶ ▶ - ▶ "Yes"

- To cancel 1 item, move the cursor to a title.
- To cancel selected items, select them ▶ . To cancel all items, authentication is required.

3 - ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a movie/i-motion ▶ ▶ "Yes"

- To add one item, pressing is not required after selection.

✓INFORMATION

- Removing a title of movie/i-motion in a playlist does not delete the data itself. When movie/i-motion is deleted or moved to microSD card, they are removed from the playlist.

◆ Playing playlist

You can continuously play movies/i-motion starting from the selected title.

- Fast forwarding/Rewinding, operation of playing from the bookmark or play stop position, playing using chapter information or tab for specifying position is unavailable.

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select "Playlist" folder ▶ Select a playlist

2 Selecting title to play first

- On the screen for playing, the icons (/) indicating the settings of Repeat play appear beside ones normally appear.

- While playing, the operations below are available.

: Adjust volume

: Pause/Play/Play from the beginning of the current title (when paused)
 (1 sec. or more) : Play from the beginning of data (Press within 3 sec. from playing to play previous data)

: Stop

(1 sec. or more) : Play next data

: Return to list screen

Sorting play order : ▶ Move the cursor to a title ▶ or

▶

◆ Setting movie/i-motion to stand-by display or the phonebook

Some types of movie/i-motion can be used for the settings below.

○ : Supported X : Not supported

Type	Stand-by display	Phonebook	Ring alert	Alert image
Sound + Movie	○	X	○*	X
Movie only	○	○	X	○
Sound only	X	X	○	X

* Excluding P-Talk ring alert, i-concier ring alert

- i-motion that Replay restriction is set, or movie/i-motion whose file size is larger than 10 Mbytes are unavailable.

- The movie/i-motion below are unavailable for phonebook, ring alert or incoming call image.
 - Other than the image size of 128×96, 176×144 or 320×240
 - ASF format
 - With ticker (text)
 - Those transferred to external devices and then returned to FOMA terminal
 - Those moved or copied from microSD card to FOMA terminal (including those moved or copied from FOMA terminal to microSD card and then returned) except i-motion compatible with contents transfer
- Movie/i-motion for which Receive display of Detail information is "Unavailable" is not applicable to phonebook or incoming call image. And, movie/i-motion that Ring alert is "No" is not applicable to ring alert.

<Example> Setting to the stand-by display

1 [Data Box] **4** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a movie/i-motion ▶ **2**

2 **1** ▶ "Yes"

- Select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)" depending on the image size.
- If i-appli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-appli stand-by display appears.

Adding to phonebook : **2** or **3**

Phonebook new entry→P82

- To update the phonebook, select a phonebook entry to add.

Setting to ring alert : **4** ▶ **1** - **9**

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry ▶ Press

Setting to alert image : **5** ▶ **1** - **3**

Editing movies/i-motion

- The movie/i-motion below cannot be edited. Downloaded i-motion may not be edited by encoding formats.
 - Movie/i-motion with File restriction set to "File restricted" (except movie set to "File restricted" on the local terminal)
 - i-motion with replay restrictions
 - Movie in ASF format
- Edited movie/i-motion is saved as new data to the folder where the original data is saved. The cut out data is saved in "Camera" folder of My Picture. It also applies when movie/i-motion is attached to mail after editing.

◆ Cutting out still image (Capture)

Specify a range and cut out as a still image.

- The size of the still image cut out is same as the display size when it is played.

1 [Data Box] **4** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a movie/i-motion

2 At the position to cut out, **4** ▶

- Pressing resumes a play.

Attaching to mail : At the position to cut out, **4** ▶

Operations for attaching files→P141 Step 1 in "Attaching a file"

- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the mail text appears.

◆ Cutting out movie/i-motion (Custom edit)

Cut out from the beginning to the specified location.

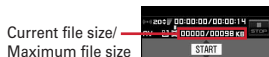
- Movie/i-motion that the file size is 11–2,048 Kbytes can be edited.

1 [Data Box] **4** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a movie/i-motion ▶ **4** **1**

appears below a replay time.

- When data containing a ticker (text) track is cut out, the ticker (text) is deleted.

2 at the cutting position



: Retry

- For a file larger than 500 Kbytes, press and select "Msg attachment S" to cut out a file of 500 Kbytes, press and select "No settings" to cut out a file approximately 1,000 bytes smaller than the maximum size. For a file of 2,048 Kbytes, press and select "Msg attachment L" to cut out a file of 2,047 Kbytes.
- When data is cut out up to the end without pressing , the end point is set at the position approximately 1,000 bytes smaller than the maximum file size.

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters)

Playing :

Attaching to mail :

◆ Specifying file size for cutting out movie/i-motion (Edit by size)

Cut out a specified file size from the beginning.

- Movie/i-motion that the file size is 11–2,048 Kbytes can be edited.

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a movie/i-motion ▶

- When data containing a ticker (text) track is cut out, the ticker (text) is deleted.

2 Enter size to cut out

- For a file larger than 500 Kbytes, press and select "Msg attachment S" to enter 500, or press and select "Msg attachment L" to enter 2047.

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters)

Playing :

Attaching to mail :

Compatible with contents transfer

Moving i-motion to microSD card

Of copyrighted i-motion items downloaded from a site, you can move those compatible with contents transfer to microSD card. It cannot be copied.

- i-motion compatible with contents transfer can be moved only when Moved to microSD in detail information is set to "Yes" or "Yes (Same model only)".

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select "i-mode" folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-motion ▶ ▶ -

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .

2 Move the cursor to the destination folder ▶ ▶ "Yes"

- When saving to a subfolder, select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to the destination subfolder ▶ Press . When a folder with no subfolders is selected, a selecting screen for moving to current position or creating a folder appears.
- If i-motions incompatible with contents transfer are included in Selected items or All items, a message appears to notify that only encrypted files to be moved to specified folder. If you select "Yes" to move them, i-motion incompatible with contents transfer is saved in "Movie" or "Other movie" folder on microSD card.

✓INFORMATION

- If data is moved to a created folder, it may not be checked from other FOMA terminals.
- While moving data, do not remove microSD card or turn the power OFF. It may make all data compatible with contents transfer in microSD card unavailable.

❖Moving to folder in the FOMA terminal or others

Moving i-motion compatible with contents transfer saved in microSD card

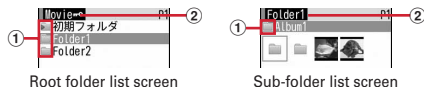
- Moving is available only when installing the same UIIM as when obtaining from the site or moving to microSD card (the model also must be the same for some i-motion).

1 [LifeKit] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-motion ▶ ▶ or

2 1-3 ▶ "Yes"

- To move selected items, select them ▶ . To move all items, authentication is required.
- To move to another folder, move the cursor to a folder ▶ Press .
- When moving to the terminal, i-motion is saved in "i-mode" folder in i-motion.

❖ Folders to store i-motion compatible with contents transfer in the micro SD card



① Folder

: Folder : Home folder

- The folder in pink is the initial folder. The initial folder is in light pink if it has no data. The folders in light blue are the ordinary folders. They are in light grey if they have no data. Initial folder is created when "Movie" folder is displayed for the first time. The folder name can be changed.

② Folder name

- "Movie" is a root folder.

Switching to folder list of FOMA terminal : On the root folder list, .

Setting as home folder : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ ▶ "Yes"

Moving to home folder :

Displaying Machi-chara

You can display a character to be set on the stand-by display, menu screen, etc.

- Setting Machi-chara→P102

1 [Data Box]

- The folder contents are as given below.

i-mode : Machi-chara downloaded from sites

Preinstalled : Machi-chara stored by default

My folder : Machi-chara moved from other folders

- Appears if a folder is added.→P308

Search by i-mode : Searching Machi-chara from i-mode sites→P178

2 Select a folder



① Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode

: Searching Machi-chara from i-mode sites→P178

② File type

: Machi-chara (upper half is gray) : Partially saved Machi-chara

: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

③ File restriction

: File restricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of Machi-chara at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appears at the bottom of the display. If thumbnail display is not available, an icon with the same design of "② File type" appears.

3 Select Machi-chara

- When partially saved Machi-chara is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading appears. Select "Yes" to start downloading. When downloading is unavailable, Machi-chara partially saved may be deleted.

◆ Setting operating conditions of Machi-chara

1 [ME] [Data Box] [8] ▶ [ME] [5] ▶ [1] or [2]

- When setting to "Display icons", the thumbnail display is used on Machi-chara list.

Displaying Chara-den

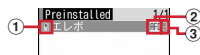
You can display a character instead of camera image during videophone call.

- Using Chara-den during videophone call→P71

1 [ME] [Data Box] [9]

- The folder contents are as given below.
 - i-mode** : Chara-den downloaded from sites
 - Preinstalled** : Chara-den stored by default
 - My folder** : Chara-den moved from other folders
 - Appears if a folder is added.→P308

2 Select a folder



① Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode

② File type

AFD / : AFD/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

③ File restriction

: File restricted

3 Select Chara-den

- While displaying Chara-den, the operations below are available.

: Large size/Same size

[1] - [9] : Perform applicable action

[0] : Stop action

: List actions

(1 sec. or more) : Switch Action/Action of Parts

- The current action type is indicated with icons below appearing in the lower-left corner in the screen.

: Action : Action of Parts

Making a videophone call : Move the cursor to Chara-den ▶ ▶ Enter a phone number or press to select from phonebook ▶

- To make a videophone call specifying conditions, enter a phone number and press [ME].→P64

Setting as Substitute image : Move the cursor to Chara-den ▶

◆ Setting operating conditions of Chara-den

1 [ME] [Data Box] [9] ▶ [ME] [5] ▶ Set required items ▶

Display size : Set whether to zoom.

Display light time : Set light operations during playback. When "Terminal settings" is set, it operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of settings of Display & Key light.

Playing a melody

- Melody in SMF or MFi format can be played.

1 [ME] [Data Box] [5]

- The folder contents are as given below.

: Melody downloaded from a site or a mail

: Melodies for ring tone stored by default→P401

: Melodies for mail attachment stored by default→P401

: Melody read with Bar code reader or acquired from microSD card or external devices

: Melodies moved from another folder

- Appears when album is added.→P308

: Searching melodies from i-mode sites→P178

2 Select a folder



① Originated

- / : Preinstalled, Mail attach melody/3D sound supported
- / : i-mode, mail/3D sound supported
- / : Data transfer/3D sound supported
- : Searching melodies from i-mode sites→P178

② File type

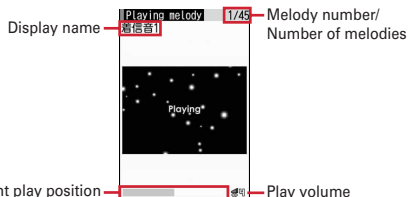
- MF / : MF/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction
- SMF / : SMF/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

③ File restriction

- / : File restricted/unrestricted

Switching to microSD card list :

3 Select a melody



- While playing, the operations below are available.

- , : Adjust volume
- , (1 sec. or more) : Play previous/next melody
- . : Return to the list screen

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to a melody ▶

◆ Setting melody for ring alert

- Melodies in "Mail attach melody" folder cannot be set as ring alert.

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a melody ▶ ▶ -

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry ▶ Press .

◆ Setting operating conditions of melody

1 [Data Box] ▶ ▶ Set required items ▶

- When Light pattern is set to "Light pattern 1", "Light pattern 2" or "Sync melody", the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set. Even if Light pattern is set to "Sync melody", some patterns are not synchronized with melodies.
- When Play position is set to "Play portion", the melody is partially played. Note that some melodies are not played partially.
- When setting Play background to "Select", you can select an image saved in Image folders.
- Stereo/3D sound settings are enabled only when Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone 01 with switch (optional) is connected. This setting also applies to a melody of Stereo sound effect.

microSD card

You can save data such as still images, movies or melodies or make a backup of data such as phonebook or schedule to microSD card. Movies created with external devices can be saved in microSD card and played with FOMA terminal (→P418) or the data can be operated from a PC with microSD card in FOMA terminal recognized as a drive (→P307).

- A microSD card is required. If you have none, purchase it in an electric appliance store.
- microSD card formatted by this FOMA terminal can be used (→P306). Note that the operation of microSD card formatted by other FOMA terminal, a PC, etc., or that formatted half way is not guaranteed.
- Data in microSD card except i-motion compatible with contents transfer cannot be set as stand-by display, ring alert or incoming image.
- F-01A supports microSD card of up to 2 Gbytes, and microSDHC card of up to 8 Gbytes (as of October, 2008). For information about manufacturers or available sizes of compatible microSD cards, or latest operation check results, read "メモリーカード対応情報 (Memory card compatibility)" in "@Fケータイ応援団 (@F Mobile phone supporters)(→P311)" at i-mode, or visit the website below.
FMWORLD (<http://www.fmwworld.net/>)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→microSD対応状況 (microSD compatibility) (In Japanese only)
Note that microSD cards not listed as compatible may not work. Information provided is a result of operation check and does not guarantee all operations.

◆ Precautions for using microSD card

- Do not subject FOMA terminal to strong impact such as dropping when a microSD card is attached. Doing so may damage data.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the microSD card.
- The terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same condition as out of service area) while data is being copied, moved, backed up/restored or deleted, or microSD card is being formatted, information is being updated or microSD card is being scanned.
- When write protection is set for the microSD card by other devices such as a PC, saving data into the card, deleting data and format cannot be performed.
- Data saved from other devices such as a PC into a microSD card may not be displayed or played with FOMA terminal. Also, data saved in the microSD card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- Data of file size exceeding 2 Gbytes cannot be used.
- With some microSD card, the saved movie is distorted.
- It is recommended that data saved in microSD card should be separately backed up for storage. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for accidental loss or alteration of data.

◆ Installing/Removing microSD card

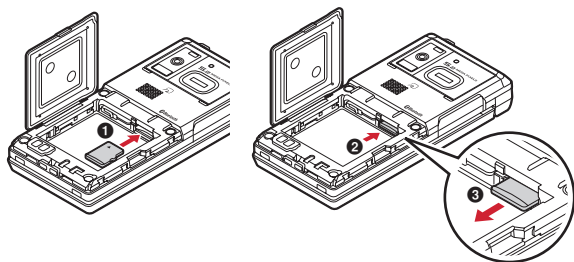
- Be sure to turn the power off and remove the battery pack beforehand.→P49
- In the microSD card slot, do not install anything except microSD card. Do not install microSD card with scratches, deformation or stain. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Install the microSD card correctly into FOMA terminal. You cannot perform operation such as copying or backing up data, if you have not installed microSD card correctly.
- Be careful to avoid touching metal connectors of microSD card.
- When installing/removing the microSD card, it may pop out of the slot occasionally.

■ Installing

Insert microSD card with printed side up slowly into the slot (❶) and push the card until it clicks.

■ Removing

Press the center of microSD card lightly in the direction of ❷, and pull the ejected microSD card straight in the direction of ❸.



◆ microSD card folder structure

When data is moved/copied to microSD card from FOMA terminal or a recorded still image or video is saved directly to microSD card, a folder associated with the file is automatically created. The folder structure and file names displayed on a PC are as shown below.

To save data from a PC, use this folder structure and file names. Also, after data is saved, information on FOMA terminal must be updated.→P306

- If a folder is renamed, or a file of data for management is renamed/deleted, FOMA terminal cannot display or play data correctly.
- The savable number may be reduced depending on the size of microSD card.

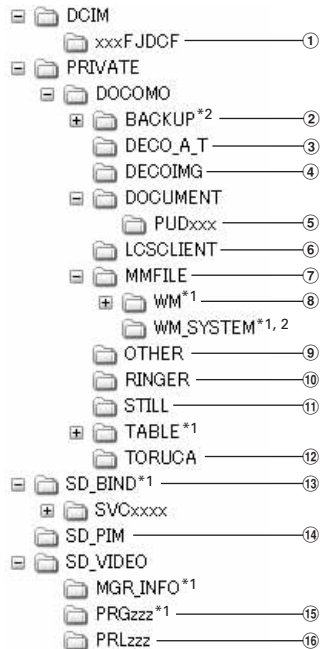
- Naming rules for folders and files are as given below. Characters to use should be one-byte characters except " * ".

"a" A-Z (Upper case), 0-9, _ (Under bar)

"xxx" 001-999 (100-999 only for "xxxFJDCF")

"xxxx" 0001-9999 "xxxxx" 00001-65535

"zzz" 001-FFF (Hexadecimal) "*" Any string



*1 Including data for management. Do not edit/delete.

*2 A hidden folder. It does not appear with some PC settings.

- ① **My Picture in Multimedia (shot still images, JPEG of DCF standard or GIF)**
File name : aaaaxxxx.JPG/GIF Savable number : 9,999 items
- ② **Backup**
- ③ **Decome-Anime template**
File name : DEATxxxx.VGT Savable number : 9,999 items
- ④ **Multimedia Deco-mail pictogram**
File name : DIMGxxxx.JPG/GIF Savable number : 9,999 items
- ⑤ **My Document (PDF data)**
File name : *.PDF Savable number : 999 items
 - A long file name format of up to 64 one-byte characters including extension is supported. If a file name is duplicated etc., the file name may be changed to "PDFDCxxx.PDF" format.
 - Files with extensions except "PDF" are also saved. Extensions have meanings given below.
 "\$DF" : PDF data failed in downloading
 "DDF" : File for managing i-mode bookmark or icon information
 "JPG" : File for thumbnail display
- ⑥ **LCS client**
File name : LSCDCxxx.LSC Savable number : 999 items
- ⑦ **Other movie of Multimedia (audio only movies/i-motion)**
File name : MMFxxxx.3GP/ASF/MP4 Savable number : 9,999 items
 - Files with extension "3GP" or "MP4" are treated as MP4 format.
 - Music data of AAC format can be saved.
- ⑧ **MUSIC of Multimedia (WMA)**
File name : *.WMA Savable number : 1,000 items
 - To save, use Windows Media Player. No information update is necessary after saving.
- ⑨ **Other (files of Word, Excel, PowerPoint, etc.)**
File name : aaaaaaaa.aaa Savable number : 999 items
- ⑩ **Melody of Multimedia**
File name : RINGxxxx.MID/MLD/SMF Savable number : 9,999 items
- ⑪ **Other image of Multimedia (JPEG out of DCF standards, GIF animation, Flash graphics)**
File name : STILxxxx.JPG/GIF/SWF Savable number : 9,999 items
- ⑫ **ToruCa**
File name : TORUCxxx.TRC Savable number : 999 items

- ⑬ **Data compatible with contents transfer (Movie→ in Multimedia, MUSIC in Multimedia (Chaku-uta full[®]), i-appli data)**
Savable number : 1,000 items for each of i-motion and Chaku-uta full[®], 1,200 items for i-appli data
- ⑭ **Folders in PIM**
File name : PIMxxxx.VBM/VCF/VCS/VMG/VNT
Savable number : 9,999 items in total
 - For management of PIM data (Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad and Bookmark), files with extension "PIM" are also saved.
- ⑮ **1Seg of Multimedia (1Seg video)**
File name : MOVzzz.MAI/MOI/SB1, PRGzzz.PGI
Savable number : 99 items
- ⑯ **Movies of Multimedia (Movie/i-motion)**
File name : MOLzzz.3GP/ASF/MP4 Savable number : 4,095 items
 - Files with extension "3GP" or "MP4" are treated as MP4 format.

Exchanging data between the FOMA terminal and microSD card

- Moving i-motion compatible with contents transfer→P296
- Moving the music data of MUSIC→P237
- Data given below can be moved or copied.
 - Image (except created animation), Deco-mail pictogram, Movie/i-motion, Melody, PDF data (except partially downloaded data), ToruCa (including Details), Decome-Anime template (except moving to microSD cards), Word, Excel, PowerPoint files, 1Seg video (only moving/copying to microSD card)
- Data given below can be copied or backed up.
 - Phonebook entries, schedule, mail, notepad, bookmarks, LCS client of GPS (only copying)

◆ Moving/Copying data from the FOMA terminal to microSD card

- You cannot move or copy data whose output from FOMA terminal is inhibited (except data with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal or data in "Data transfer").

<Example> Moving/Copying images

1 [Data Box] 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to data

2 5 ▶ 4 or 5

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. "Move/Copy" ▶ Select "Move to microSD" or "Copy to microSD". On 1Seg Video(Phone memory) list, select "Move to microSD" or "Copy to microSD", on Decome-Anime template list, select "Copy to microSD".

3 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ .
- Step 1 to 3 are not required to copy 1Seg video stored in the FOMA terminal).

✓ INFORMATION

- When data in My Picture, i-motion, Melody, 1Seg, Other or Decome-Anime template is moved/copied, the file name is automatically changed according to the rules for saving data to a PC. Also, some PDF data may be renamed. → P301
- The memory size of the moved/copied still image may become larger than the size displayed on FOMA terminal. In this case, the size displayed on microSD card is the actual size.
- TV program video that supports Dubbing+10 can be copied up to 9 times. Only moving is available in the 10th operation.

◆ Moving/Copying data from microSD card to the FOMA terminal

- When exceeding the savable number/area (data in Data Box) → P312

<Example> Moving/Copying My Document data

1 [LifeKit] 3 3

2 Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to the data

- When "Multimedia" is selected, select data type before selecting a folder.

3 3 ▶ 1 or 2

- When "ToruCa" or "Decome-Anime Template" is selected, press 2.

4 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ .
- Data is saved in the folders below on FOMA terminal.
My Document, Multimedia data : "Data transfer" folder for each data
Deco-mail pictogram : "Deco-mail pict" folder in My Picture
ToruCa : "ToruCa"
Decome-Anime template : "Decome-Anime" folder in Template
Others : The top folder in Other

◆ Copying PIM data or LCS client

- You can copy PIM data (Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad and Bookmark) and LCS client of GPS.

1 [LifeKit] 3 2 ▶ 1 - 7 ▶ Move the cursor to data ▶ 1 ▶ 1 - 3

Copying LCS client : [LifeKit] 3 6 ▶ Select a folder ▶ 1 ▶ 1, 2 or 5

- If no LCS client is saved in microSD card, this operation is not available. Operate from LCS clients list on FOMA terminal.

Add to phone : Copy data from microSD card to FOMA terminal.

Update phone : Overwrite the current data on FOMA terminal with all data on microSD card.

Copy all to microSD : Save all data of selected types to microSD card collectively.

2 Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is not required for "Add to phone" of 1 item.
- If you copy an additional phonebook entry to the terminal, PushTalk phonebook registration confirmation screen appears.
- When all phonebook entries are copied to microSD card, a confirmation screen for copying User information appears.
- You can copy all to microSD card by selecting submenu below on a list screen of each data in FOMA terminal. You can also perform Copy one to microSD on a list screen.

Phonebook entry list, Day view screen of Schedule : "Copy/Store data"

Note list : "Ir/iC/microSD"

Mail list : "Move/Copy" ▶ "Copy to microSD"

Bookmark list : "Move/microSD" ▶ "Copy to microSD"

LCS clients list : "Copy to microSD"

✓INFORMATION

- Copying phonebook entry does not copy the registered movie. Still images are copied but cannot be displayed on other than FOMA terminal. If you copy one item, the secret attribute is disabled. If you copy all items, they are also copied to PushTalk phonebook.
- When you copy a mail, i-mode mail protection is canceled. The part of the attachment files in excess of 100 Kbytes including message text is not copied.
- When schedule item is copied, contact or image is not copied. When all items of schedule are copied, watching reservation/recording reservation of 1Seg are not copied.
- LCS client with the same phone number as existing LCS client on FOMA terminal cannot be saved on the terminal.

Displaying data in microSD card

- Playing the music data of MUSIC→P235
- Viewing backed-up data→P306
- 1Seg display→P318
- Update information when data cannot be correctly displayed in FOMA terminal due to change, addition or deletion of data from microSD card by other devices.→P306

1 [LifeKit] ▶ -

2 Select a folder

- When you select "Multimedia" or "PIM", select a folder after you select data type.
- "Movie" folder (i-motion compatible with content transfer)→P296

Switching to FOMA terminal folder list :

- Only folders of Multimedia, My Document, ToruCa, and Other can be operated.

3 Select data

Displaying all copied data in PIM and LCS : Select all copied data ▶ Select data

- The icon of all copied data is displayed as overlapping icons.

Switching between thumbnail and list view :

- Only Multimedia (except Melody) and My Document data can be operated.

Jumping by specifying a page :

- Press without entering a page number to jump to page 1 (except i-motion compatible with contents transfer, i-appli data).

Attaching to mail :

- You can control only Multimedia (except i-motion compatible with content transfer), Phonebook, Schedule, Bookmark, My Document, ToruCa, and Other folders.

Searching data : ▶ Enter date ▶

- You can control only Multimedia (except i-motion compatible with content transfer) and My Document folders.
- The same operation is available by pressing in PIM data list or pressing in Decome-Anime template list.

Setting i-motion compatible with content transfer as the stand-by display :

Move the cursor to data ► ► "Yes"

- Select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)" depending on the image size.
- If i-αpli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-αpli stand-by display appears.

Setting i-motion compatible with content transfer as ring alert : Move the

cursor to data ► ► - ► "Yes"

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry ► Select "Yes".

Setting i-motion compatible with content transfer as Movie alert : Move the

cursor to data ► ► - ► "Yes"

Playing movie/i-motion continuously :

- During continuous play, the operations below are available.

, : Adjust volume

: Pause/Play

/ , (1 sec. or more) : Play previous/next movie

: Stop continuous play

- When FOMA terminal is folded during continuous play, the title of movie/i-motion being played appears on the sub-display and playing continues.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Alarm does not sound for schedules saved in microSD card even when the specified time comes.
- Detail information cannot be downloaded from the ToruCa saved in microSD card.
- i-motion compatible with content transfer can be played only when the same UIM as downloading i-motion from a site or moving to microSD card is inserted (the model also must be the same for some i-motion). Note that, when i-αpli using microSD card is set for the stand-by display, playing may be unavailable.
- When you attempt to display data of i-αpli that was used with a different model or UIM, the reason not available is displayed. When only Restricted operation is set to "Yes", downloaded i-αpli may be used.
- Checking User information or View preference is available from the submenu of the phonebook details screen.
- Changing font size, adding mail address to phonebook or updating, showing/hiding attached file or checking title is available from the submenu of the mail details screen. Replying or forwarding received message is available.
- Copying URL or adding to phonebook or updating is available from the submenu of Bookmark details screen.

Backing up data saved in the FOMA terminal all at once

You can back up Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad and Bookmark data all at once in microSD card and restore them to FOMA terminal when necessary.

- It may take time to back up/restore depending on data volume. Operate after you check that remaining battery is sufficient.
- When there is no data to be backed up/restored, it is unavailable.

◆ Backing up in microSD card

- Data is overwritten in backing up. Note that backup data saved last time is deleted and only the latest backup data is saved.

1 ►

- Select an item to check the date and time when the data was backed up last time.

2 ► "Yes" ► Authenticate

- Step 3 is not required when no phonebook data is saved. User information cannot be backed up when no phonebook data is saved.

3 "Yes" or "No"

- When you press or to interrupt, data backed up last time is deleted and data halfway backed up is saved. Back up again to save the correct backup data.
- When a message indicating the lack of memory appears, delete unnecessary data or operate after installing another microSD card that has sufficient memory.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Movies saved in phonebook are not backed up. Still images are backed up but cannot be displayed.
- Protection of i-mode mail is canceled. The part of the attachment files in excess of 100 Kbytes including message text is not backed up.
- Contacts and images in the schedule are not backed up. Also, watching reservation/Recording reservation of 1Seg are not backed up.

◆ Restoring to the FOMA terminal

Backed-up data is restored after the Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad and Bookmark data is deleted.

- Note that the latest data in FOMA terminal is deleted when restored.
- If backup is interrupted due to turning off during backup etc., do not restore by using the backup data. Partially backup data may be restored into the FOMA terminal.

1 [LifeKit] ► ► "Yes" ► Authenticate

- When you press  or  to interrupt, FOMA terminal is restored with the data processed before the interruption.
- When the memory space in FOMA terminal is insufficient or the backup data includes data that FOMA terminal does not support, a message appears indicating there was data not restored.

◆ Displaying backup data

1 [LifeKit] ► - ► ► Select data

◆ Deleting backup data

1 [LifeKit] ► ► "Yes" ► Authenticate

Managing microSD card

◆ Checking the memory space of microSD card

1 [LifeKit] ►

✓ INFORMATION

- The actually available memory space of microSD card is smaller than the displayed memory space.
- Size of data that cannot be recognized by FOMA terminal is also included in the used memory space.

◆ Formatting microSD card

To use a new microSD card on FOMA terminal or delete all data saved in a microSD card, initialize it.

- The data is not formatted by some conditions of microSD card.

1 [LifeKit] ► ► "Quick format" or "Regular format"

Quick format : Only the data management area is formatted. Performing the minimum necessary processing is a method to shorten the format period. All the data saved is deleted. Use this method only when the microSD card is already formatted and has no problem.

Regular format : Both the data management area and data areas are formatted. All the data saved is deleted. To format a new microSD card, use this method.

2 Authenticate ► "Yes"

◆ Updating the microSD card information

Perform this operation when data cannot be correctly displayed in FOMA terminal due to change, addition or deletion of data from microSD card by other devices.

- When information update is performed, the display name of data is changed as follows.
 - Data in "My Picture", "Other image", "Deco-mail pict" or "Decome-Anime template" is renamed to the same name as the file name.
 - Data in "Melody", "Movie", "Other movie", "My Document" or "ToruCa" is renamed to the same name as the title. When no title name is set, the name is changed to the same name ("No title" for ToruCa) as the file name.
 - Single data in "LCS client" is renamed to the same name as the service client name. If service client name does not exist, the display name does not appear.
 - Data in "Other" is renamed to the name that the file name with extension added.
- Updating information causes movie/i-motion containing only sound, if any, saved in "Movie" folder not to appear in a list. It is recommended that you move the movie/i-motion with voice only in "Movie" before updating the information, or change the file name and save the file in PRIVATE¥DOCOMO¥MMFILE folder of microSD card or MUDxxx (xxx is 001-999) in MMFILE using a PC etc.

1 [LifeKit] 3 Select a data type "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- Information update is not applicable to data in "Movie ", "MUSIC", "1Seg", "i-αppli data" or "Backup/Restore".
- If microSD card has much data, updating information takes time.
- If available space becomes less than required for creating management information in FOMA terminal when data is saved in a microSD card with other devices, data saved in the microSD card may not be displayed correctly on FOMA terminal.

◆ Restoring data in microSD card <Scan card>

- The data is not restored by some conditions of microSD card.

1 [LifeKit] 3 "Yes"

USB mode settings

Operating data of microSD card in the FOMA terminal from a PC

- To connect FOMA terminal to a PC, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required.
- Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows Vista are applicable.
- For MTP mode→P233 "Saving WMA files"

1 [LifeKit] 2 6

2 2 or 3

microSD mode : Set for recognizing microSD card in FOMA terminal as a drive and operating data.

MTP mode : Set for transferring music data using Windows Media Player to microSD card.

Setting Communication mode : 1

- Make this setting for packet communication, 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting a PC.

3 "Yes"

Icons below appear on the stand-by display. Displayed in gray when microSD card is not installed.

: microSD mode : MTP mode

◆ Connecting to a PC

For connecting method to a PC, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" in the attached CD-ROM. Note that, when using in "microSD mode" or "MTP mode", installation of the FOMA communication configuration file described in "Manual for PC Connection" is not required.

- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected, appears on the stand-by display. Press and select to display USB mode settings screen. At this time, other mode than "Communication mode" may not be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when a FOMA terminal is connected.
- In microSD mode or MTP mode, the light blinks in green.
- When data is transferred using DOCOMO keitai datalink in Communication mode, the terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same state as out of service area).

✓INFORMATION

- Applying an excessive force to pull the USB cable may give damage to it. And, removing the USB cable during data transfer may cause malfunction or data loss.
- When disconnecting the USB cable from a PC in microSD mode, click in the task tray in the lower-right corner of a PC screen, click "USB大容量記憶装置デバイスドライバ (E:) を安全に取り外します (または停止します) (Safely Remove (or stop) USB Mass Storage Device-Drive (E:))" and check that message "USB大容量記憶装置デバイスは安全に取り外すことができます (The USB Storage Device can now be safely removed from the system)" appears.

* The character to be assigned to a drive varies with the system of a PC.

Using folder or album

- The fixed folders stored by default cannot be deleted. And, folder names cannot be changed except Other folders.

◆ Adding folder or album

- A folder can be added to the list below.
 - Music&Video Channel, My Document, Kisekai Tool, Machi-chara, Chara-den and Other in Data Box
 - Multimedia (except MUSIC and ISeg) of microSD card, My Document, ToruCa, LCS client, Decome-Anime template, Other.
- An album can be added to the lists of My Picture, i-motion and Melody in Data Box.
- Up to 100 items can be added to My Picture of Data Box, up to 9 items can be added to others and 10 data items of each data type can be added to other. Up to 900 items can be added to My Picture of microSD card, up to 4,095 items for movies, up to 999 items for My Document, and up to 1,000 items of each data type can be added for other.

<Example> Adding an album of My Picture

1 [Data Box] 1

2 1 (2) on Melody folder list

Deleting an album : Move the cursor to an album 2 (3) on Melody folder list) ▶ "Yes"

- When the data is saved, perform authentication.

Changing album name or secret attribute : Move the cursor to an album 3 (4) on Melody folder list)

3 Set required items

Album name : Enter an album name with up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters.

- However, up to 31 two-byte (63 one-byte) characters available for a folder (except "Movie" folder) on microSD card.

Secrecy : Set whether to display an album in Privacy mode (with "Hide secrecy album" set for My Picture).

- This option can be set only to My Picture, i-motion, My Document and Other on FOMA terminal (except default folders).

✓INFORMATION

- Deleting a folder in "Movie" of microSD card causes actions below to occur.
 - When an attempt is made to delete the initial folder, only sub-folders and data of the initial folder are deleted.
 - When a folder set as home folder is deleted, the initial folder is set as home folder.
 - If the folder to be deleted contains an invalid file (not displayed on the list screen) except i-motion compatible with contents transfer, i-motion compatible with contents transfer is deleted from the folder, but the folder is not deleted. Operate the microSD card from a PC etc. to eliminate such an invalid file and retry deleting the folder.

◆ Moving/Copying data to folder or album

❖ Moving data

- Data saved in "Preinstalled", "Deco-mail pict", "Item" or "Mail attach melody" folder cannot be moved.

<Example> Moving data of My Picture

1 [Data Box] 1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to data 5 1

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Move/Copy" ("Move" for Kisekai Tool) ▶ "Move to album" or "Move to folder". On Music&Video Channel program list, Machi-chara list and Chara-den list, select "Move". On microSD card list screen, select "Move/Copy" or "Move" ▶ "Move to folder".

3 1 - 3

- To move selected items, select them .

4 Select destination album ▶ "Yes"

- When moving data compatible with contents transfer to "Movie" on microSD card, move the cursor to the destination folder ▶ Press . When saving to a subfolder, select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to the destination subfolder ▶ Press . When a folder with no subfolders is selected, a confirmation screen for creating a subfolder appears.

❖ Restoring data to fixed folder

- Music&Video Channel, Machi-chara, Chara-den, Other data or data on microSD card cannot be restored to a fixed folder.

<Example> Restoring album data in My Picture to fixed folder

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select an album

2 Move the cursor to data ▶

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Move/Copy" ("Move" for Kisekai Tool) ▶ "Restore to folder".

3 - ▶ "Yes"

- To restore selected items, select them ▶ .

✓ INFORMATION

- Images read by bar code reader in "Deco-mail picture" folder move to "Data transfer" folder, and other images moves to "i-mode" folder.
- Data copied in album or folder moves to the fixed folder that the source data was saved.

❖ Copying data

In My Picture, i-motion or My Document, data can be copied to the same album or folder. Data in microSD card can be copied to other folders.

- The data below cannot be copied :
 - Data in "Preinstalled" folder
 - Created animation in My Picture, images in "Item" folder
 - i-motion with replay restrictions or i-motion compatible with contents transfer
 - Data with File restriction set to "File restricted" (except data set to "File restricted" on the local terminal)

<Example> Copying data of My Picture

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to data ▶

Data is saved to the same album or folder as the source.

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Move/Copy" ▶ "Copy". On microSD card list screen, select "Move/Copy" ▶ "Copy to folder".

◆ Playing album

You can play all melodies in the album collectively.

1 [Data Box] ▶ Move the cursor to an album ▶

- While playing album, the operations below are available :

- , (1 sec. or more) : Play previous/next data
- , : Adjust volume
- , : Stop

Detail information/Edit detail information

Viewing/Editing data detail information

- Details of the chapter of Music&Video Channel, program information → P230, 231
- Data information of MUSIC (Music data) → P239

◆ Viewing detail information <Detail information>

<Example> Viewing the detail information of image

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to an image ▶

- Submenu item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Detail info" ▶ "View".

◆ Changing detail information <Edit detail info>

<Example> Changing the detail information of image

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to an image ▶ ▶ Set required items ▶

- Submenu item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Detail info" ▶ "Edit".

◆ List of display items and changeability

Detail information contains items given below. Data detail information saved on microSD card may differ from the information displayed on FOMA terminal.

Display name : Title displayed on FOMA terminal

- Decome-Anime template can be edited within 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters, Melody within 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters, 1Seg within 50 characters, and others within 36 characters.
- For microSD card data, movie **→** can be changed within 36 characters, 1Seg within 50 characters and other within 31 two-byte (63 one-byte) characters. Note that, if moving/copying to FOMA terminal, the characters exceeded the limit of number of characters for changing the display name on FOMA terminal are deleted.

Title : * : Original title of data

- If no title is set, "----" appears.

File name : File name displayed when attaching to mail

- Only for image, movie/i-motion or melody, up to 36 one-byte characters including alphanumeric characters, ".", "-" and "_" can be changed. A dot "." is not allowed for the first character of a file name.

File restriction : For a file sent by mail attachment, you can set restriction of transfer from the receiver mobile phone to another mobile phone.

- You can change only image, movie/i-motion and melody. However, you cannot change movies exceeding 2 Mbytes or downloaded files.

Move to microSD/phone* : Restriction of transfer between FOMA terminal and microSD card

File type */format : File type

- It appears as "----" for Flash graphics.

Display size* : Display size of data

Size (Bytes), Size on disk (Bytes) : Data file size, size of memory used for data saving

- For PDF data, files for managing i-mode bookmarks and icon information are included.
- The actual memory size of the same data in FOMA terminal and microSD card may be different.

Saved date & time/Created date & time : Date and time when data is saved/created

Originated : Data source

* Do not appear for some data types.

■ Items displayed for Kisekai Tool

Font : Font information

Receive : Complete receiving/Uncompleted download

■ Items displayed for image and Chara-den

Comment : Data description, etc.

- You can change within 100 characters.

■ Items displayed for an image

Type : Type of image

Msg attach size(Bytes) : Attachment size of data that can be attached to mail

Use as frame, Use as stamp : Indicate whether they can be pasted as a frame or stamp.

- You can change only JPEG or GIF images. However, an image composed with an image in "Item" folder cannot be changed to "Yes". Also, an image exceeding 480×864 used as a frame, and an image exceeding 480×864 used as a stamp cannot be changed to "Yes".
- Even setting to "Yes", the image is saved in the original folder, not in "Item" folder.

Location info : Indicate whether the location information is set

■ Items displayed for movie/i-motion

Creator*1 : Creator information

- For movie recorded with the local terminal, the name of User information appears. If no name is saved, "----" appears.

Copyright*1 : Author's name/Release date etc.

Description*1 : Data description

Sound : Sound data type

Video picture : Codec type

Ring alert*2 : Indicate whether it can be set for a ring alert

- Movie recorded with Recording Type set to "Voice only", movie recorded with Recording Type set to "Video + Voice" with image size of 320×240 or less, or movies cut out of these movies are set to "Available".

Receive display*2 : Indicate whether it can be set for an incoming image

- For movie recorded with the local terminal with Recording Type set to "Video only" or a movie cut out of it is set to "Available".

Replay restriction : Restriction on replay

*1 Can be edited within 256 characters. Note that some data such as movies in ASF format cannot be edited.

*2 For i-motion compatible with contents transfer, the item which is "Unavailable" in microSD card may become "Available" after moving to FOMA terminal.

■ Items displayed for Machi-chara

Receive : Complete receiving/Uncompleted download

■ Items displayed for a melody

Playing time : Data play time

■ Items displayed for Other

Extension : File extension

- Not displayed on FOMA terminal.

■ Items displayed for video

TV station name, Program name : Names of a TV station and a program

Recorded time : Recorded time

Copy restriction : Copy permit

- It is not displayed in video (microSD).

Deleting data

- Deleting MUSIC (Music data)→P237
- Data saved in "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture, Melody or Kisekai Tool cannot be deleted.

<Example> Deleting data in My Picture

- 1 [Data Box] ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Move the cursor to data ▶ ▶ - ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to data.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens. Select "Delete" and operate. Also on microSD card list screen, you can select "Delete" and operate.

✓INFORMATION

- If you delete created animation, the composing original images are also deleted.
- If data set for stand-by display or ring alert is deleted, each setting returns to default or standard setting. When data set to phonebook is deleted, the operation depends on the settings of the ring alert or incoming/outgoing image.
- "OFF" is set when you delete Machi-chara already set.
- Deleting a Kisekai Tool already set returns items related to it to default states.

- If you delete data stored by default, you can download the software from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site.
"@Fケータイ応援団 (@F mobile phone supporters)" (as of October 2008)
iMenu → メニューリスト (Menu list) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → @Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)

QR code for
site access



* The access method may be changed without previous notice.

Sort

Sorting data

- Sorting MUSIC (Music data)→P238

<Example> Sorting data of My Picture

- 1 [Data Box] ▶ Select a folder
- 2 ▶ Set required items ▶

- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens. Select "Sort".
 - By** : Select a sort type. Available items vary depending on data.
 - If changing to "Display name", they are sorted in the Unicode order. May not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.
 - If changing to "File format", sorting is performed in the order of Word→Excel→PowerPoint when the Sorting order is "Ascending".
 - If changing to "Originated", sorting is performed in the order of Preinstalled→i-mode→Camera→Data transfer when the Sorting order is "Ascending".
- Order** : Select sorting order.

Memory status

Checking storage space of the FOMA terminal

- 1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Move the cursor to a data type

: Change unit

- "Total: " indicates the space of the common area shared by the entire data.

When exceeding the savable number/area

When exceeding the savable number (→P438) or shared memory space size (up to 111 Mbytes in total) by downloading or data saving, delete unnecessary saved data following instructions on the screen.

You can operate in the same way when exceeding the savable number (→P301) or memory space is insufficient to save 1 item of some data in microSD card.

1 On a deletion confirmation screen, "Yes" or "Delete"

Delete data from screen appears, showing the size that requires to be deleted and the size currently used for each data type. For microSD card, the size or number of items that requires to be deleted is displayed.

- When exceeding the number savable on FOMA terminal, Delete data from: screen does not appear. Go to Step 3.
- When you delete data on FOMA terminal while recording 1Seg video (when storing to "Phone memory"), a message appears indicating that data cannot be deleted. Select "Yes" to stop 1Seg recording and the data can be deleted.

2 Select data type

3 Select a folder ▶ Select a file ▶ "Yes"

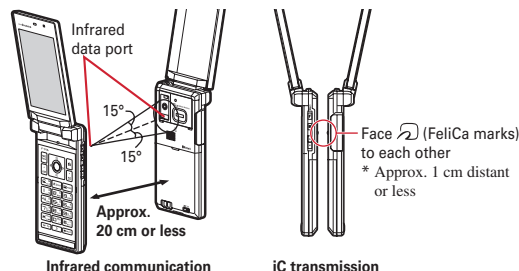
Using infrared communication/iC transmission

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals or mobile phone, PCs equipped with infrared communication function or send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals equipped with iC transmission function by placing  mark close to each other. And, i-appli compatible with Infrared communication/iC transmission is also available.

- Packet communication, 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting with a PC cannot be used simultaneously.
- During infrared communication or iC transmission, or while INBOX data is being used, the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same state as out of service area).
- The infrared communication function of FOMA terminal conforms to IrMC™ 1.1. Even if the other party's terminal conforms to IrMC™ 1.1, data is not received/sent for some data type.

◆ Using infrared communication/iC transmission

- The communication range for infrared communication is about 20 cm or less, and the infrared ray radiation angle is 15 degrees or less from the center. Keep FOMA terminal pointing at the other device's infrared data port and do not move it until data sending/receiving completes.
- When doing iC transmission, make  marks of the sender and receiver terminals face close to each other with a distance of about 1 cm or less. Do not move FOMA terminals before data sending/receiving completes.



✓INFORMATION

- When placing  marks close to each other for iC transmission, do not give a strong shock to FOMA terminal.
- If communication is not started by facing  mark of both terminals over each other for iC transmission, shift the facing position approximately 5-10 mm.
- Infrared communication may not be performed in areas exposed to direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.
- It is difficult to exchange data with some terminal of the other party.

Send Ir data or iC transmission

Sending data by infrared communication/iC transmission

You can send data individually or collectively by data types.

- The data below can be sent.

Data types	Precaution
Phonebook/User information	- Images are not sent by some other parties' terminals. And, when Contact image sending is "OFF" for Data exchange settings, images are not sent for sending all data items. - When all data items are sent, PushTalk phonebook and User information (except My phone number) are also sent. Secret attribute of a phonebook group is canceled, and individual phonebook entries are sent with secret attribute set.
Schedule	- Birthday or watching reservation/Recording reservation of 1Seg cannot be sent. - i-schedule cannot be sent. - When sending one schedule event, it is regarded as an i-schedule-independent event.
Received/Sent/Unsent messages	- The link items, attached to a mail, that can activate i-appli are deleted. - The whole title is not received with some other receiving terminals.
Decome-Anime template	—
Note	—
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)	Folder settings do not apply to some other parties' terminals.
LCS client	—
ToruCa	- Sending is unavailable by some settings of IP (Information Provider). - ToruCa (Details) is not sent to some other parties' terminal.
Image	A display name with up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters is sent with excessive characters deleted.
Movie/i-motion	Data larger than 500 Kbytes cannot be sent when sending one item.
Melody	—

Data types	Precaution
PDF data	You cannot send PDF files that are partially saved or failed in downloading or PDF data with a file size larger than 512 Kbytes except i-mode bookmarks and icon information.
	- You cannot send data whose output from FOMA terminal is inhibited (except data with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal or data in "Data transfer" folder). - When data is sent to i-mode terminal except F-01A or to infrared communication device, items that cannot be saved by the receiving side are discarded. - When data containing pictograms is sent to a terminal except i-mode terminal, the data may not be displayed correctly. If the receiving terminal is an i-mode terminal not supporting Pictogram 2, Pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly.

◆ Sending single data

- For infrared communications, the device of the other party must be ready for communications.

<Example> Sending a phonebook entry

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶  **8 ▶ 1 or 3 ▶ "Yes"**

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Send Ir data" or "iC transmission" and operate. For some screens, select "Send via Ir/iC" or "Ir/iC/microSD" and then select "Send Ir data" or "iC transmission".
- On LCS clients list, select "Send Ir data" or "iC transmission" ▶ "Send".

Sending User information :  **0 ▶**  **or**  **▶ "Yes"**

◆ Sending all data

You can send all data of selected items.

- Enter the same authentication password on the sending and receiving sides. Decide a 4-digit authentication password in advance.
- For infrared communications, the device of the other party must be ready for communications.
- All items of Decome-Anime templates, images, movies/i-motion, melodies or PDF data cannot be sent via iC transmission.

- 1 [LifeKit] or ▶ Select an item to send ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter a 4-digit authentication password ▶ "Yes"

- The order of the data may change in the receiver's data folder.

Receive Ir data or iC transmission

Receiving data by infrared communication/iC transmission

You can receive data individually, or collectively by data types.

- Data cannot be received in iC transmission with other functions activated. Perform reception operation on the stand-by display.
- The data below can be received.

Data types	Storage after reception
Phonebook/User information	Phonebook • For receiving single data item, data is saved to the smallest free phonebook entry number. • For receiving all data items, PushTalk phonebook entry and User information (except My phone number) are also overwritten.
Schedule	Scheduler
Received/Sent/Unsent messages	Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages • The folder name set by the other terminal is not used even when all mail messages are received from F2102V, F2051.
Decome-Anime template	"Decome-Anime" of Template
Note	Notepad
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)	Bookmark of i-mode/Full Browser
LCS client	LCS clients list
ToruCa	"ToruCa" of ToruCa content
Image	"Data transfer" folder of My Picture "Deco-mail pict" folder of My Picture for Deco-mail pictogram
Movie/i-motion	"Data transfer" folder of i-motion
Melody	"Data transfer" folder of Melody
PDF data	"Data transfer" folder of My Document

- Images, movies/i-motion or melodies, if any, received from terminals except FOMA F series may be saved as notes.
- When receiving all items of bookmarks (i-mode/Full Browser), ToruCa, images, movie/i-motion, melodies and PDF data, the data is received including folders created on other party's terminal. The folder with no data cannot be received. Also, the data saved in "Camera" folder or "i-mode" folder is additionally saved to "Camera" or "i-mode" folder of each data.

◆ Receiving single data

- You cannot receive data larger than 512 Kbytes.

◆ Receiving a data item via infrared communication

- 1 [LifeKit] ▶ "Yes" ▶ A data item is sent from the sender side

The next procedure→P314 Step 2 in "Saving received data"

◆ Receiving a data item via iC transmission

- 1 Send a data item from sender ▶ Display the stand-by display on the receiver and place marks close to each other

The next procedure→P314 Step 2 in "Saving received data"

◆ Saving received data

- You can save received data stored temporarily in INBOX to FOMA terminal.
- Up to 800 Kbytes can be saved in INBOX.

- 1 [LifeKit]

- Icon definitions :

: Phonebook, User information : Mail
 : Decome-Anime template : Notes
 / : Bookmark (i-mode)/(Full Browser)
 : ToruCa : LCS client : Image : SWF (Flash graphics)
 : Movie/i-motion : Melody : PDF data

2 Select data ▶ "Yes"

Deleting : Move the cursor to data ▶ ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.

- After phonebook is saved, a confirmation screen for adding to PushTalk phonebook appears. You can select "Yes" and select a phone number to add to PushTalk phonebook.

◆ Receiving all data

You can receive data collectively by data type.

- The data saved at the receiving side is deleted, and only the received data is saved.
- Enter the same authentication password on the sending and receiving sides. Decide a 4-digit authentication password in advance.
- All items of Decome-Anime templates, images, movies/i-motion, melodies or PDF data cannot be received via iC transmission.

◆ Receiving all data via infrared communication

- 1 [LifeKit] ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ Enter 4-digit authentication password ▶ "Yes" ▶ Send all data from sender ▶ "Yes"

◆ Receiving all data via iC transmission

- 1 Send all data from sender ▶ Display the stand-by display on the receiver and place marks close to each other ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ Enter a 4-digit authentication password ▶ Place marks again ▶ "Yes"

✓ INFORMATION

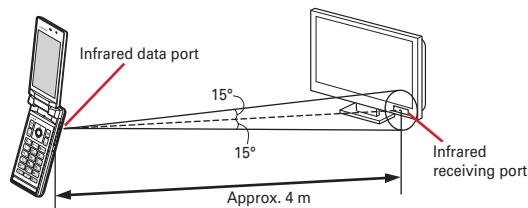
- ToDo data (list function to manage errands) cannot be saved to FOMA terminal. If all items of ToDo and schedule are received, only the schedule is saved.
- Receiving time differs by the type or number of received data items. If you receive large size data or a lot of data items, receiving may take time.
- For some sizes of data saved, the number that can be received becomes fewer than the savable number of FOMA terminal.
- When exceeding the savable number/area (data in Data Box) → P312
- Mail messages received from a device that can save messages by folder may be saved in the folder for Message i-appli. Move the cursor to the folder for Message i-appli and press → to check saved mail.

Using infrared remote control function

- Download i-appli applicable to each model for Infrared remote control. Operations differ by i-appli.
- If activating preinstalled i-appli Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) (→P249), FOMA terminal can be used as infrared remote control for TV.
- Even devices compatible with infrared remote control may not work. Communication may also be affected depending on the supported device used or ambient luminance.

◆ Remote control

To use remote control, point the infrared data port of FOMA terminal at the infrared receiver of the supported device. Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and distance is up to approximately 4 m. However, the allowable angle and distance depend on the operated device or ambient luminance.



Setting operations for data exchange

Operations for data exchange via infrared communication, iC transmission or packet communication or 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting with a PC can be set.

1 [ME] [LifeKit] 2 5 ▶ Set required items ▶ [6]

End alert : Set whether to sound the end tone at the end of communications.

Auto authentication : Set whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party for packet communication, 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting a PC.

- To set to "ON", perform authentication and enter 4-8 digit Auth code: terminal (FOMA terminal) and Auth code: PC (the other party) and press [6].

Ph.book image sending : Set whether to send images saved in phonebook with all phonebook entries.

My Document

Displaying PDF data

- You can operate from flip style. → P40

1 [ME] [Data Box] 6

- The folder contents are as given below.

i-mode : PDF data acquired from a site or mail

Preinstalled : PDF data stored by default

Data transfer : PDF data acquired from microSD card or external device

My folder : PDF data moved from other folders

- Appears if a folder is added. → P308
- When secret attribute is set, is displayed.

2 Select a folder



① Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode, Full Browser, mail

: Data transfer (including data attached to mail acquired by data transfer)

② File type

/ : PDF data/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

: PDF data partially saved

: PDF data failed in downloading

③ File restriction

/ : File restricted/unrestricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the file at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appears at the bottom of the display. And, when thumbnail display is unavailable, the icons below are displayed.

: PDF data not displayed after downloading or unable to acquire thumbnail images

: PDF data partially saved and the thumbnail cannot be displayed

: PDF data failed in downloading

: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

Switching to microSD card list :

3 Select PDF data

- When PDF data with password set is selected, a password entry screen appears. Enter a password and press [6].
- When a PDF data failed in downloading is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading remaining data appears.
- At the bottom of the display, the current page number/total number of pages and magnification are displayed.

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to PDF data ▶

❖ Operation while displaying PDF data

Scrolling : (Continuous scroll while pressing down)

Displaying key function help :

- Key operation is available while help is being displayed. Press to return to the original screen.
- When full-screen display is set by pressing , press to restore the original display.
- An image cut out by pressing is saved in "Camera" folder of My Picture in JPEG format. An image may not be cut out for some security settings of PDF data. The image size of cut out image is the same as the image area in PDF data. PDF data setting is applied when attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal.

Using toolbar : 



- In the toolbar, icons indicating functions that can be activated by pressing keypad numbers appear. Function description contains a function of the icon at the cursor position and the corresponding keypad number.
- Press **[CLR]** to disable toolbar operations.

Searching for a character string : **[5]** ▶ **Enter a character string (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters)** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

- A matched word is highlighted in green. Press **[ir]** /  to move to the previous/next option, press **[ME]** to restore the original display.

Using a link item : **[8]** ▶ **Move the cursor to a link item**

- A link item is surrounded with a blue frame (a red frame for the item at the cursor position). Press **[ME]** to restore the original display.
- The next procedure → P180 Step 2 in "Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/SMS To/Web To/Media To function"

Changing pages : **[ME]** **[1]** ▶ **[1]** - **[5]**

- When "Specified page" is selected, enter a page to move to and press .

Saving changed information : **[ME]** **[2]** ▶ 

Moving using a bookmark : **[ME]** **[4]** **[1]** ▶ **Select a bookmark**

Displaying page from i-mode bookmark : **[ME]** **[4]** **[2]** **[1]** ▶ **Select an i-mode bookmark**

Changing information of i-mode bookmark : **[ME]** **[4]** **[2]** **[1]** ▶ **Move the cursor to an i-mode bookmark** ▶ **[ME]** **[1]** ▶ **Enter information (up to 64 two-byte or 128 one-byte characters)** ▶ 

Registering i-mode bookmarks : **[ME]** **[4]** **[2]** **[2]** on a page to add ▶ **Enter information (up to 64 two-byte or 128 one-byte characters)** ▶ 

- Display magnification, rotation direction and display range on each page is registered. Up to 10 items can be saved for each PDF data.

Deleting i-mode bookmarks : **[ME]** **[4]** **[2]** **[3]** ▶ **Select the target bookmark** ▶  ▶ **"Yes"**

Displaying pages from mark : **[ME]** **[4]** **[2]** **[4]** ▶ **Select a mark**

Registering marks : **[ME]** **[4]** **[2]** **[5]**

-  is registered in the center of the screen when a mark is registered. Up to 10 items can be saved for each PDF data.

Deleting marks : **[ME]** **[4]** **[2]** **[6]** ▶ **Select the target mark** ▶ **"Yes"**

Zooming in/out the display : **[ME]** **[6]** **[2]** ▶ **[1]** - **[3]**

Specifying the display magnification : **[ME]** **[6]** **[3]** ▶ **Enter the magnification**

Rotating display : **[ME]** **[6]** **[4]** ▶ **[1]** - **[3]**

Changing the layout of the page : **[ME]** **[6]** **[5]** ▶ **[1]** - **[3]**

Setting whether to display scroll bar etc. : **[ME]** **[7]** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

Downloading the remaining of partially saved PDF : **[ME]** **[8]**

✓INFORMATION-----

- Some PDF data such as one containing a lot of images may take extra time to appear. When unsupported format, complicated design, etc. is included, it may not be displayed correctly.
- When an attempt is made to display a page that is not downloaded due to page jump or other operations while PDF data partially saved is being displayed, a confirmation screen appears for downloading data not downloaded.
- Registered i-mode bookmark or marks may not be displayed on a PC.

◆ Setting operating conditions of PDF data

1 **[ME]** **[Data Box]** **[6]** ▶ **[ME]** **[6]** ▶ **[1]** or **[2]**

- When setting to "Display icons", the thumbnail display is used on the data list.

Other

Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files

- File requiring password or file of Word 2007, Excel 2007 or PowerPoint 2007 cannot be displayed.
- You can operate from flip style. → P40

1 **[ME]** **[Data Box]** **[0]**

- There is a folder by default. Folders can be added. → P308
- When secret attribute is set to the additional folder,  is displayed.

2 Select a folder



① Originated

i-mode, Full Browser, mail

Data transfer (including data attached to mail acquired by Data transfer)

② File type

Word file Excel file PowerPoint file

* If unavailable due to UIM operation restriction, appears below and to the right of the icon.

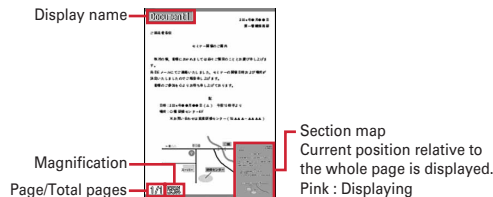
③ File restriction

File unrestricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the file at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appears at the bottom of the display. When thumbnail display is unavailable since the data is never displayed after downloading or UIM operation restriction is set, icons of the same design as in "② File type" appear.

Switching to microSD card list: [Icon]

3 Select data



Attaching to mail: Move the cursor to data [Icon]

◆ Operation while displaying Word, Excel, PowerPoint files

Scrolling: [Icon] (Continuous scroll while pressing down)

Displaying key function help: [Icon]

- Key operation is available while help is being displayed. Press [Icon] to return to the original screen.
- Data is displayed in the screen size for a PC when "PC mode (full scale)" is set by pressing [9], and displayed adjusted to the lateral size of FOMA terminal display when "Mobile mode" is set. It can be set to Word files only.
- When full-screen display is set by pressing [Icon], press [Icon] to restore the original display.

- Press [0] to set whether to display the display name etc. Each time you press it, the display switches in the order of hiding the display name→hiding current page/total pages and display magnification→hiding all→displaying all. The settings remain even when finished.
- Pressing [Icon] hides section map and moves current page, total pages, and display magnification to right. Press [Icon] again to restore the original display. The settings remain even when finished.

Searching for a character string: [5] ▶ Enter a character string (up to 16 two-byte (32 one-byte) characters) ▶ Set required items [Icon]

- A matched word is highlighted in light blue. Press [Icon] / [Icon] to move to the previous/next option, press [ME] to restore the original display.

Changing pages: [ME] [1] ▶ [1]-[5]

- When "Specified page" is selected, enter a page to move to and press [Icon].

Specifying the display magnification: [ME] [3] [3] ▶ Enter the magnification

- It does not operate if specifying a magnification smaller than that for Fit page.

Rotating display: [ME] [4] ▶ [1]-[3]

✓ INFORMATION -

- Some data such as one containing a lot of images may take extra time to appear. When unsupported format, complicated design, etc. is included, it may not be displayed correctly.

◆ Setting operating conditions of Word, Excel and PowerPoint

1 [ME] [Data Box] [0] ▶ [ME] [5] ▶ [1] or [2]

- When setting to "Display icons", the thumbnail display is used on the data list.

Viewing recorded video or still images

- You can operate from flip style.→P40

1 [ME] [Data Box] [Icon]

- The folder contents are as given below.

[Icon] Video (microSD) : Video recorded in microSD card

[Icon] Video(Phone memory) : Video recorded in FOMA terminal

[Icon] Image(Phone memory) : Still image (JPEG format image) saved in FOMA terminal

2 1-3



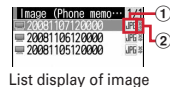
Thumbnail display of video



List display of video



Thumbnail display of image



List display of image

① File format

MPEG (white)/MPEG (yellow) : MP2 (video)/MP2 (video) available for continuous play

JPG : Image in JPEG format (image)

② File restriction

File restricted

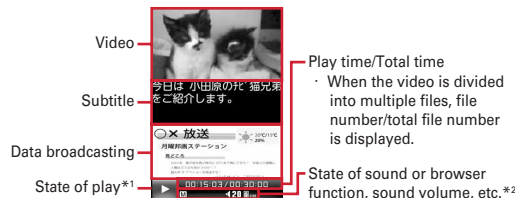
- Videos (on microSD) cannot be displayed as thumbnails. Also, file restriction icon does not appear.
- For thumbnail display, the display name of the file at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and recorded date/time of video, image size and file size appear at the bottom of the display.

3 Select data

- When a still image is selected, it is enlarged and a display name and image number/total number of images appear at the top of the display. Press [OK] to display in the actual size and [Back] to return to the enlarged display. Press [Left] or [Right] to switch to previous/next image.
- If a video that was stopped after being partially played the last time is selected, a confirmation screen to play from where it stopped appears. Note that, video is not displayed if its total time is within approximately 15 seconds or if the previous play time was within 5 seconds.
- When selecting a video divided into multiple files recorded with another FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen appears indicating that fast forwarding/rewinding cannot be performed.

Video screen and operation while displaying video

- Details about data broadcasting and Settings are the same as for 1Seg watching.



- *1 The icons below appear for some playing conditions.

> : Playing [Pause] : In pause or playing completed

<< / <<< / <<<< : Reverse playing in slow speed/normal speed/fast speed

>> : Fast playing in 1.3 times speed

>>> / >>>> : Fast playing in slow speed/normal speed/fast speed

- *2 Sound or browser function state, volume icon definitions→P216

Switching auto skip setting : [Menu] [2] [4]

- Usually, "Auto Skip On" is enabled for skipping the video picture section that is incomplete due to recording condition. Switch to "Auto Skip Off" if you do not want to skip the incomplete section. Select "Auto Skip On" again or exit 1Seg data list to get it enabled again.

Switching to the previous/next video : [Menu] [3] or [4]

Checking program information : [Menu] [5]

Using data broadcasting : [Menu] [6]

Setting operations : [Menu] [7]

Displaying key function help : [Menu] [8]

- Key operation is available while help is being displayed. Press [Back] to return to the original screen.
- To rewind, each press of [Left] switches in the order of slow speed→normal speed→fast speed, and to fast forward, each press of [Right] switches in the order of 1.3 times speed (with audio)→slow speed→normal speed→fast speed.

◆ Using Remote controller with microphone F01 <Remote controller with microphone>

You can use Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional) to operate video watching.

- You cannot operate it when the menu or panel is displayed in flip style.

 : Pause*/Play

 (1 sec. or more) : Exit video play

  : Adjust volume

 (1 sec. or more)*/ (1 sec. or more)* : Fast forward/Rewind (except when stopped)

 (Slide in the direction of ▲) : Disable ,  and  keys.

 (Slide in the opposite direction of ▲) : Enable unavailable keys

* This is available while data broadcasting site is displayed in full-screen mode.

◆ Setting operating conditions of recorded still image

1  [Data Box]  3   4  Set required items 

View thumbnails : Set whether to use thumbnail display on the data list.

- The data list of the Video (phone memory) is displayed according to this setting.

Display title : Set whether to display the display name on the display screen.

Display number : Set whether to display the image number/number of items in the folder on the display screen.

Convenient Functions

Multiaccess	322
Multitask	322
Searching with a simple operation	Quick search 323
Turning power ON/OFF automatically	Auto power ON/OFF 324
Setting the timer with a simple operation	Countdown timer 324
Ringing alarm clock at specified time	Alarm clock 325
Turning power ON at the set alarm time	Alarm auto power ON 326
Managing schedules	Scheduler 326
Starting often-used function quickly	Shortcut icons 331
Registering often-used function	Custom menu 332
Setting a function to be activated by pressing and holding a side key	Side key shortcut 333
Using FOMA terminal light as a small light	Simple light 333
Saving your own name	User information 333
Pretending to be receiving a call and talking	Fake call 334
Recording voice/image	Voice memo/Movie memo 335
Checking call duration/charge	Call duration/Call cost 335
Using the FOMA terminal as calculator	Calculator 337
Creating notes	Notepad 337
Using Dictionaries	Dictionaries 339
Counting the steps	Pedometer 339
Using earphone/microphone with switch	Earphone/Microphone with switch 341
Using Bluetooth function	Bluetooth 342
Confirming current settings of functions	Confirm 348

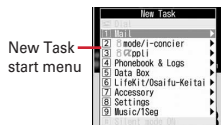
Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that enables you to use voice call and i-mode/data communications simultaneously.

- Combinations of Multiaccess functions→P414
- You are charged separately for each communication when using the Multiaccess function.

<Example> Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

1 During a voice call, [MULTI] [2] [1]



- You can talk while displaying the site screen.
- Press [END] to end the current function on the display.

Multitask

Multitask allows you to perform multiple functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- Up to 2 functions can be performed at the same time. However, Dial, User information, Dictionaries or Silent mode ON/OFF may be started even while 2 other functions are active.
- Combinations of Multitask functions→P416

◆ While performing a function, perform another function

<Example> Saving schedule during a call

1 During a call, [MULTI] [7] [1] ▶ Save schedule

- You can talk while displaying the schedule screen.
- Press [END] to end the current function on the display.
- Press [MULTI] [END] and select "Yes" to terminate all running functions.

✓INFORMATION

- If many functions are performed at a time while playing movie, operating camera, playing Flash graphics, watching/recording 1Seg, playing Music&Video Channel program or playing tune by MUSIC Player, the movements displayed on the screen may not perform smoothly or the sound may be distorted during play.

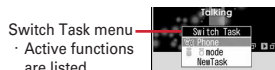
◆ Switching tasks to operate

Displaying the Switch Task menu allows you to operate while switching screens.

- Some items in the Switch Task menu are different from the names of the menu item.

<Example> Switching from a voice call screen to site screen

1 During a voice call, [MULTI] ▶ "i-mode"



- Press [ME] on Switch Task menu to switch New Task start menu and Switch Task menu.

Searching with a simple operation

You can use search functions by pressing  on the stand-by display or while running functions.

- Some running functions may not allow search result display function to be activated at the same time, and search may be unavailable. → P416
- You can search in the middle of the operation to copy/cut characters. → P355
- For some search operation or connecting condition, search may be unavailable or the search result may not be displayed correctly.

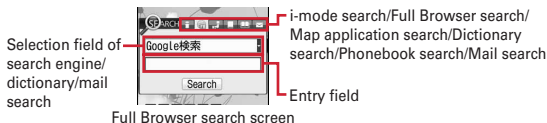
<Example> Searching on Full Browser screen

1 

- If you searched at previous time, the search screen you performed immediately before is displayed. If not searching the entered keyword, displayed with the keyword entered.

2  to switch to Full Browser search ▶ Select the search service selection field ▶  -  ▶ Enter the keyword in the entry field (up to 35 two-byte (70 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search" ▶ "Yes" or "Yes(Always)"

Full Browser starts, and the search result screen on the selected search service site is displayed.



Searching by i-mode :  to switch to i-mode search ▶ Enter the keyword in the entry field (up to 35 two-byte (70 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

i-mode starts, and the search result screen by the i-mode search is displayed.

- If selecting "Connect to iMenu", iMenu is displayed.

Searching by map :  to switch to map search ▶ Enter the keyword in the entry field (up to 35 two-byte (70 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

GPS compatible i-appli set in Select Map in Map setting starts, and the search result screen appears.

- For some GPS compatible i-appli, you can enter multiple keywords (insert a space between keywords) to search.
- Selecting "Read map" activates the GPS compatible i-appli selected in Select Map from Map setting.

Searching by dictionary :  to switch to dictionary search ▶ Select dictionary selection field ▶  -  ▶ Enter the keyword in the entry field (up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

Dictionary starts, and the search result screen appears.

Searching phonebook :  to switch to phonebook search ▶ Enter a keyword in entry field (up to 9 one-byte characters) ▶ "Search"

The search result screen of name search appears.

- If selecting "Search in phonebook", phonebook search screen appears.

Searching mail by title/message text :  to switch to mail search ▶ Select mail search selection field ▶  or  ▶ Enter a keyword in entry field (up to 35 two-byte or (70 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

Mails that match the search criteria are listed.

- You can enter multiple keywords (insert a space between keywords) to search.
- Select "Advanced search" to search under more detailed conditions. → P152

Searching mail using phonebook :  to switch to mail search ▶ Select mail search selection field ▶  or  ▶ Enter a keyword in entry field (up to 9 one-byte) ▶ "Search"

Mails that match the search criteria are listed.

Switching searching function : After entering the keyword,  ▶ "Search"

- i-mode search, Full Browser search, map search and dictionary search can be switched using as a common keyword, and phonebook search and mail search (one-byte title/message text and phonebook reading) can be switched using as a common keyword.

Using key word history : to switch to the function to search - ▶ "Search"

- Up to 5 records are logged in a shared history for i-mode search, Full Browser search, map search and dictionary search, and up to 5 records (For mail search (title/message text), the log with two-byte character is also counted) are logged in another shared history for phonebook search and mail search (one-byte title/message text and phonebook reading). When the maximum is exceeded, older logs are overwritten first.
- To delete keyword histories, press and select "Yes". To delete from Full Browser search, press .

Pasting copied character in the entry field : to switch to the function to search ▶ ▶ "Search"

- Phonebook search and mail search cannot be pasted.

◆ Managing search service of Full Browser

- Up to 10 services can be registered.

<Example> Adding search service

1 ▶ to switch to Full Browser search

2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select a search service

Changing the title name :

① ▶ Move the cursor to a search service ▶

② Enter the title (up to 36 characters) ▶

- To reset to the original title, select "Restore original".

Deleting : ▶ Move the cursor to a search service ▶ ▶ "Yes"

Switching the order : ▶ Move the cursor to a search service ▶ or

3 "Save" ▶ Enter the title (up to 36 characters) ▶

- When exceeding the savable number, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

Auto power ON/OFF

Turning power ON/OFF automatically

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ or ▶ Set required items ▶

✓INFORMATION

- Even when Auto power OFF is set to "ON", the power is not turned OFF while using other functions.
- In addition to turning FOMA terminal OFF, keep Auto power ON set to "OFF" in areas where use of a mobile phone is prohibited, such as in airplanes, medical facilities or hospitals.

Countdown timer

Setting the timer with a simple operation

On the stand-by display, you can enter and set the time (minutes) to elapse before the timer sounds.

1 Enter time (1-60 minutes) ▶

The countdown starts.

- When FOMA terminal is folded during countdown, the remaining time before the timer starts sounding appears on the sub-display.
- When or is pressed during the countdown, a screen for confirming the end appears.

❖When the specified time has elapsed

"Timer Countdown ended" appears on the display, and the timer sounds at Alarm clock sound of Adjust volume. Actions are taken according to the settings to Alarm Clock in Vibrate alert/effect or Call in Light alert.

When FOMA terminal is folded, "It'sTime Countdown ended" appears on the sub-display.

- Press to stop the timer.
- When no operation is performed for approximately 1 minute, any key except or is pressed or FOMA terminal is double-tapped when folded, the timer stops.

✓INFORMATION

- When the specified time comes during a call or PushTalk session, a warning sound is emitted and a timer screen appears.
- When the specified time comes during a fake call, the timer does not sound and the vibrator operates in "Pattern A".
- The timer is activated at the set time or after current operations are terminated for a call or PushTalk call is being made/received/called, when 64K data communication is being made/received, in the data transfer mode, or when Infrared remote control is in use.

Ringing alarm clock at specified time

- You can set 1Seg to start after Alarm clock sounds.
- Up to 9 items can be set.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ 1 - 7

Setting/Canceling : Move the cursor to a set alarm clock ▶ .

-  appears at the left of the time when Alarm clock is set.

2 Set required items

Time : Enter the time to sound an alarm clock.

Repeat : When setting Repeat,  appears at the right of Snz in the alarm clock list.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press .

Message : Up to 7 two-byte (14 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Snooze(Snz) : Set whether to use snooze (alarm sounds for approx. 1 minute and stops) for approx. 30 minutes with the specified intervals.

3 to switch to Set sound screen ▶ Set required items

Alarm sound : When this is set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Alarm clock sound of Ring alerts & Sounds.

Setting Music→P91

Volume : If you set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Alarm clock sound of Adjust volume.

4 to switch to 1Seg alarm screen ▶ Set required items

Activate 1Seg : When this is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts when Alarm clock is deactivated or stopped (including paused when snooze is activated) (1Seg alarm clock).

Volume : When this is set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Alarm clock sound of 1Seg alarm sound.

Channel : Set the channel to start with.

Time out : When the set time elapses, 1Seg is terminated.

5 to switch to Set others screen ▶ Set required items

Vibrate alert : Setting "Phone setting" applies to Alarm clock in Vibrate alert/effect.

Light pattern : If setting Light pattern to "Light pattern 1", "Light pattern 2" or "Sync melody", the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set.

Light color : Set the lighting color of the light.

6

- When alarm clock is set,  or  (when a schedule reminder is also set) appears on the stand-by display.

❖ When the specified time arrives

The message and time appears on the display and the settings apply to the operation.

When FOMA terminal folded,  and time appear on the sub-display.

- Press  to terminate the alarm clock. When Activate 1Seg is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts.
- If no operation is performed for approximately 1 minute, any key except  or  is pressed or FOMA terminal is double-tapped when folded, the alarm clock stops or snooze starts. When Activate 1Seg is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts.
- While alarm clock is stopped with snooze operation activated, "スヌーズ中 Snooze" appears on the display and the light blinks slowly.
- While alarm clock is stopped, press  or  to deactivate it. While alarm clock is stopped with snooze operation activated, press  to deactivate.

✓ INFORMATION - - - - -

- With movie/i-motion set for Alarm sound, movie/i-motion appears on the screen when the alarm clock operates.
- When starting 1Seg, a program not specified may be displayed.
- If alarm clock and a schedule reminder are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock sounds, succeeded by notification of the schedule reminder.
- In Personalized silent mode, 1Seg alarm clock operates according to Alarm clock sound in Personalized silent mode.
- Countdown timer operation is made at the specified time during a call, PushTalk session, fake call, while making/receiving/disconnecting a call or PushTalk call, making/receiving 64K data communication, in data transfer mode or while using infrared remote control.

Alarm auto power ON

Turning power ON at the set alarm time

1 **[MENU]** [Settings & NW services] **[7]** **[1]** **[5]** **[▶]** **[1]** or **[2]**

✓INFORMATION

- This function does not operate if power supply to FOMA terminal is stopped in a way except power OFF operation or Auto power OFF settings (e.g. by removing the battery pack).
- In addition to turning FOMA terminal OFF, keep this function set to "OFF" in areas where use of a mobile phone is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities or airplanes.

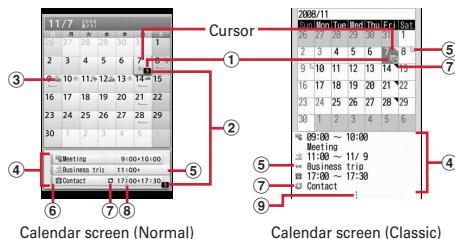
Scheduler

Managing schedules

- Scheduler displays vary depending on Scheduler type in Scheduler view type. To use the scheduler that can display i-schedule etc. downloaded from i-concier, set "Normal". To use the traditional scheduler, set "Classic".
- Displaying and operating i-schedule→P330

◆ Displaying calendar

1 **[📅]**



Calendar screen (Normal)

Calendar screen (Classic)

- While displaying a calendar screen, the operations below are available.

[📅] : Moving of the cursor

[⏮] / **[⏭]** : Switch previous/next month

- When **[📅]** is pressed in "Normal", i-schedule list is displayed.→P330
- When **[MENU]** **[7]** **[2]** is pressed in "Classic", Key function help is displayed.
- Reading the screen is described below.

① Schedule event exists

- In "Normal", **[📅]** (light blue) appears when a normal schedule (including birthday, watching/recording reservation of 1Seg) is registered, **[📅]** (orange) appears when a schedule in i-schedule is registered.
- In "Classic", an item icon of schedule event set for the earliest time is displayed. **[📅]** appears for saved watching reservation of 1Seg and **[📅]** appears for saved recording reservation.

② Number of Schedule events

③ Weather report for a week

- If you subscribe to i-concier, the weather report for the next 8 days (at longest) will be distributed.

④ List of schedule events saved for the date at the cursor position

- In "Normal", in addition to saved schedules, schedules in i-schedule and birthdays saved in phonebook are displayed.

⑤ Long-term schedule

⑥ Normal schedule (including birthday, watching/recording reservation of 1Seg) (light blue)/schedules in i-schedule (orange)

⑦ Repeat schedule

⑧ Schedule reminder set

⑨ 4 or more schedules exist

Specifying a particular date to display <Move dates> : **[MENU]** **[4]** **[2]** **[▶]** Enter the date

- Press **[MENU]** **[4]** **[1]** to restore the current date.

✓INFORMATION

- The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.
- Holidays of Calendar are based on "The Public Holiday Law and the Law to Amend Parts of Old-age Persons' Welfare Law (Up to No.43 of 2005)". Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ since the dates of them are announced by the government gazette on February 1 of the previous year (As of October, 2008). Note that the above laws came into effect as of January, 2007, and some of the national holidays and compensating holidays by 2006 are not displayed as the dates before the amendment.
- Operations such as displaying item by type, copying, mail operation, setting secret attribute are not available for a birthday or watching/recording reservation of 1Seg. Also, the birth day is not included in the number displayed in No. of items.

- Data Security Service is available. → P128

◆ Setting Scheduler display

1 ► **6** **1** ► Set required items ►

Scheduler type : When "Classic" is selected, you can set Scroll mode and Zoom style.

Display mode : Specify the first day of a week (displayed at the left).

Scroll mode : Set whether to switch the screen by a month or scroll by week when is pressed.

Zoom style : Set to "Weekly zoom" for enlarging based on weeks in 4 levels, and "Daily zoom" for enlarging based on days in 7 levels.

- The registered schedule information is displayed by zooming it in (vary by the zoom style and scale factor).

◆ Setting days off/weekly off/holidays <Days off/Day off of week/Holiday settings>

- Up to 30 items can be set for days off.
- Up to 5 items can be set for holidays.

1 ► **6** ► Perform necessary operation

Setting days off to a fixed day/every year : **2** ► Move the cursor to a day on Holiday settings screen ► or

- When moving the cursor to the holiday on Holiday settings screen, "Day off" or "Day off-EveryYr" appears at the right of the date.
- Each time you press , every year/fixed holiday can be switched.

Canceling day off : Move the cursor to the holiday on Holiday settings screen ►

- Press and select "Yes" to cancel all items on the holiday setting screen.

Setting weekly off : **3** ► Set required items ►

- Press **3** to restore the original setting.

Setting holiday : **4** ► ► Set required items ►

- Up to 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters can be entered for a holiday name.
- Set Mark on calendar to "ON" to display a holiday name on the calendar screen or Day view screen.

Changing holiday : **4** ► Select a holiday ► Set required items ►

- Holiday names set by default cannot be changed.
- Select "Change" in Date field and enter a date to change the date of a holiday set by default.

Deleting a holiday : **4** ► Move the cursor to a holiday ► ► "Yes"

- Holidays set by default cannot be deleted.

◆ Saving schedules

1 ► **1**

2 Set required items

: Select an item icon. A schedule event corresponding to the selected item icon appears in the entry field. It can be changed with up to 300 two-byte (600 one-byte) characters.

All day : To set all day schedule without specifying the hour, select "ON".

Start date and time : Enter a start date/time.

End date and time : Enter an end date/time. Enter a date that is after the Start time to register as a Long-term schedule.

Place : Up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Details : Up to 300 two-byte (600 one-byte) characters can be entered.

3 to switch to Schedule contact screen ► "<Add contact>" ► Select a contact from the phonebook

- Up to 5 items can be saved.
- To delete an item, move the cursor to it and press .

4 to switch to Reminder screen ► Set required items

Alarm : To set a reminder, select "Yes" and select an alarm sound (schedule reminder).

- If you set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Schedule reminder of Ring alerts & Sounds.
Setting Music → P91

Alarm before time : Set the time to sound alarm prior to the schedule event with 0-99 minutes.

5 to switch to Other settings screen ► Set required items

Repeat : The schedule event is registered as repeated one except when "None" is selected.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press .

- When a "31st" day or "February 29" in a leap year is set as the start date and "Every month" or "Every year" is selected for repeat, the schedule is repeated on the last day of the same year/month instead of the specified date (that is, "30th" or "February 28").

Alarm image : To change the schedule reminder screen, select "Yes", select "Image" and select the image.

6



- When a schedule event with Alarm set is saved, or (when alarm clock is also set) appears on the stand-by display.

◆ Saving schedule events from stand-by display <Quick schedule>

You can save schedule events with simple key sequence without using calendar screen.

1 Enter date/time in 8-digit number

Main (New) screen of schedule appears.

- For 10:00 on November 7, enter **1 1 0 7 1 0 0 0**.
- When 4 digits (2 digits for hour and 2 digits for minute) are entered, Main (New) screen for the current day (or the next day if the entered time is before the current time) appears.

The next procedure → P327 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

◆ When the specified date and time come

The image, date/time and schedule appears on the display and the timer starts sounding at a Schedule reminder set in Adjust volume. Actions are taken according to the settings to Schedule reminder in Vibrate alert/effect or Call in Light alert. With FOMA terminal folded, the alarm start time and schedule appear on the sub-display.

- Press to stop the alarm.
- When no operation is performed for approximately 1 minute, any key except or is pressed or FOMA terminal is double-tapped when folded, the alarm stops.
- While the alarm is stopped, press to display the details screen.

◆ INFORMATION

- The schedule with All day set to "ON" operates the schedule reminder at 0 o'clock on the specified day.

- With Movie/i-motion set for schedule reminder, movie/i-motion appears on the screen when the schedule reminder operates.
- When multiple schedule reminders are set for the same date and time, the contents of other schedules can be checked by pressing after stopping the alarm.
- If a schedule reminder and alarm clock are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock sounds, succeeded by notification of the schedule reminder.
- Countdown timer operation is made at the specified date and time during a call, PushTalk session, fake call, while making/receiving/disconnecting a call or PushTalk call, making/receiving 64K data communication, in data transfer mode or while using infrared remote control.

◆ Setting default value for schedule reminder <Reminder option>

1 **6** **5** ▶ Set required items ▶

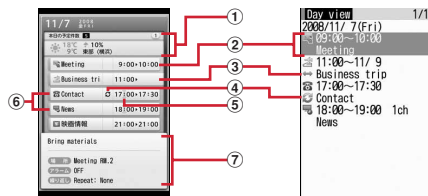
Set by scheduler : Set default values for saving a schedule event from the calendar screen.

Set by quick-schedule : Set default values for saving by quick-schedule.

◆ Checking registered schedule

- Schedules in i-schedule can also be displayed, but submenu operations etc. are different or restricted. → P330

1 ▶ Select the saved schedule day



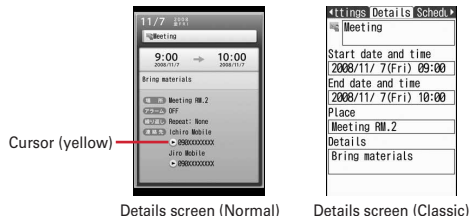
Day view screen (Normal)

Day view screen (Classic)

- Press to switch the date.
- Descriptions of the screen are as below.
 - The number of schedule events, weather report for a week**
 - When displayed in Display by type, "本日のフィルタリング後の予定件数 (Number of today's schedules after filtering)" is displayed.

- ② **Item icon, Schedule, Start time-End time**
 - For watching/recording reservation of 1Seg, watching/recording reservation icon, program name, start time-end time, channel ("Classic" only) are displayed.
- ③ **Long-term schedule**
- ④ **Repeat schedule**
- ⑤ **Schedule reminder set**
- ⑥ **Normal schedule (including birthday, watching/recording reservation of 1Seg) (light blue)/schedules in i-schedule (orange)**
- ⑦ **Schedule details**

2 Select a schedule event



Changing : Move the cursor to a schedule event ► **ME** **2**

The next procedure → P327 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

Deleting : Move the cursor to a schedule event ► **ME** **3** ► **1** - **5** ► "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a schedule.
- To delete selected items, select them ► . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- When Long-term schedule events including the selected date have been saved and "One day" or "Before date" is selected, a confirmation screen to delete the Long term schedule events appears.

Displaying after specifying an item <Display by type> : **ME** **4** **2** ► **Select an item icon.**

The selected item icon appears in the upper-right corner of the calendar or Day view screen and only the schedule for the item icon appears.

- Press **ME** **4** **1** to restore the display.

Copying and pasting : Move the cursor to a schedule

event ► **ME** **6** **1** ► **CLR** ► Move the cursor to the date to paste ► **ME** **5**

- Only the latest copied schedule event is retained until the Scheduler is ended, allowing the pasting of the event to other dates repeatedly.

Creating mail : Move the cursor to a schedule event ► **ME** **7** **1** ► **1** - **3**

- It is entered to the message text in the Date To format.
- When the schedule to be entered exceeds the number of characters that can be entered in the message text, the excessive part is deleted.

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to a schedule event ►

Searching mail : **ME** **7** **2** ► **1** or **2**

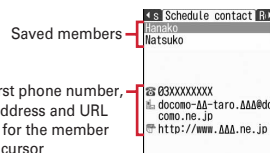
✓ INFORMATION -

- If the displayed schedule data includes phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To or Web To functions can be used.
- To check Alarm image on the details screen of "Normal", press .
- You can make a call or send mail to the birthday person on the birthday details screen.
- When displayed in Display by type, only the displayed items are deleted or informed via mail.

◆ Using schedule contact

In "Normal", select the phone number or mail address from the contact items in the detail screen. In "Classic", perform operations below.

- 1 ► **Select the saved schedule day** ► **Select a schedule** ► to display the schedule contact



The first phone number, mail address and URL saved for the member at the cursor

- 2 **Move the cursor to a contact** ► **Perform necessary operation**

Making calls : or

- Press **ME** **4** to make a call specifying conditions. → P64

Attaching to mail :

- Press **[ME] [5] [2]** to send mail to all contacts.

Creating a mail : **[ME] [7] [1]**

- It is entered to the message text in the Date To format.

Displaying the site : **[ME] [6] [▶]** "Yes"

- Press **[iR]** after **[6]** to display with Full Browser.

✓INFORMATION

- To use the second or subsequent phone number or mail address saved in phonebook, select a contact from Schedule contact screen and display the target phone number or mail address from the phonebook details screen. However, if you create mail from the phonebook details screen, the schedule event is not attached or entered.

◆ Protecting secret schedules <Secret attribute>

Set secret attribute to a schedule. In Privacy mode ("Hide set schedule" set for Schedule), the schedule with secret attribute does not appear.

- Operation setting of Privacy mode→P118

1 ▶ Select the saved day of schedule ▶ Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ **[ME] [0]**

-  blinks when secret attribute is set.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

◆ Checking number of saved schedule items <No. of items>

1 ▶ **[ME] [7] [1]**

◆ Displaying/Operating i-schedule

Multiple schedules are included in an i-schedule (schedules in i-schedule). i-schedule is updated when a new schedule is downloaded or the data saved in Data Center is updated/restored.

- Individual schedules in i-schedule are not deleted. To delete them, delete i-schedule.

1 ▶

The i-schedule list is displayed.

- If no i-schedule is registered, the description of i-schedule is displayed.
- Select "To i-schedule list" to connect to the i-schedule site.

2 Move the cursor to i-schedule ▶

The schedule list in the i-schedule is displayed.

Overviewing i-schedule : **Select i-schedule**

Deleting i-schedule : **Move the cursor to i-schedule** ▶ **[ME] [1] [3] [▶]** "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to i-schedule.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

3 Select a schedule in i-schedule

The schedule details screen in the i-schedule is displayed.

Copying and editing : **Move the cursor to a schedule in i-schedule** ▶  ▶ "OK"

The next procedure→P327 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

- It is saved as a normal schedule.

Attaching to mail : **Move the cursor to a schedule in i-schedule** ▶ 

- It is attached as a normal schedule.

Creating mail : **Move the cursor to an event in i-schedule** ▶ **[ME] [2] [1]**

- It is entered to the message text in the Date To format.

✓INFORMATION

- Operations such as displaying item by type, copying, mail operation, setting secret attribute are not available for i-schedule. Some operations such as setting secret attribute are not available for events in i-schedule.
- When Scheduler is activated from i-concier or exceeding the savable number by downloading i-schedule, select "Yes" on the confirmation screen for deleting and perform one of the operations below.
 - Select unnecessary schedule in Day view screen (Press **[iR]** in Day view screen to display the details screen)
 - Press  and select unnecessary i-schedule in the i-schedule list (Press **[iR]** in the i-schedule list to display overview)
 - To delete i-schedule in "Classic", press **[ME] [3] [3]** to switch to "Normal", press  and select unnecessary i-schedule on the i-schedule list

Starting often-used function quickly

Frequently-used functions, folders, files, etc. can be pasted as icons on the stand-by display (shortcut). You can activate quickly by selecting the shortcut.

- Shortcuts are not displayed in flip style.

◆ Pasting shortcuts

When pasting shortcuts of functions, operate from the function selecting screen. When pasting shortcuts of folders, files, etc., operate from the list screen of folders, files, etc.

- Up to 15 items can be pasted. If pasting a shortcut, it is added to Shortcut icons list.

<Example> Pasting shortcuts of functions

1 [ME] ▶ Move the cursor to a shortcut ▶ [ME]



- Icons displayed on the stand-by display
- Title (function name, folder name, file name, data name, etc.)
 - When moving the cursor to the shortcut on stand-by display, it is displayed as a balloon.
- Icons set in Ph.book 2in1 setting (with 2in1 in Dual mode)
 - On the stand-by shortcut list, press [ME] to check the pasting method.

2 [ME] ▶ Move the cursor to a function on the function selection screen ▶ [ME]

- A function without menu on lower levels can be pasted also by selecting the function.

<Example> Pasting shortcut of folder of My Picture

1 [ME] [Data Box] 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [ME]



When the folder, file, data, etc. at the cursor position can be pasted, after pressing [ME] to display submenu, "Add icon" is displayed on the guide area.

- When pasting phone number or mail address, display phone number or mail address on the details screen of FOMA terminal and press [ME] to display "Add icon".
- When pasting alarm clock, display alarm clock list to display "Add icon".

2 [ME]

✓ INFORMATION -

- If the name of function or data to paste exceeds 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters, exceeded characters are deleted and before registration.
- Also when saving i-mode mail, SMS or a screen memo, you can paste shortcuts. → P142, 164, 176
- When 15 functions including ones that secrete attribute is set are pasted, if pasting in Privacy mode, hidden shortcut is deleted and a shortcut is newly pasted.

◆ Activating from shortcut

1 [ME] ▶ Select a shortcut



When shortcuts other than displayed ones exist (displayed by [ME])

Title registered in the shortcut icons list (shortcut title at the cursor position is displayed with a balloon), icon

◆ Editing a shortcut

1 [ME] ▶ Move the cursor to a shortcut ▶ [ME]

2 Move the cursor to an item ▶ Perform necessary operation

Sorting the order: [ME] 2 ▶ [ME] to move to the destination ▶ [ME]

Changing the icon: [ME] 3 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an icon

- You can select a square image in JPEG or GIF format less than 20×20-40×40 dots (images less than 39×39 dots are enlarged). Images in "Deco-mail pict" folder of My Picture can be selected.
- Press **[ME] [3] [2]** to restore to the original icon.

Changing the title : **[ME] [4] ▶ Enter the title (up to 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters) ▶ [OK]**

Deleting an item : **[F2] ▶ "Yes"**

Setting display of shortcut <Shortcut icon setting> : **[ME] [6] ▶ [1] or [2]**

- When "Press to display" is selected, press **[OK]** to display shortcuts only in Focus mode.

✓ INFORMATION

- When deleting a folder or file, the shortcut is also deleted.
- Even after changing or deleting a phone number or mail address in phonebook, the information you registered to a shortcut remains. Note that, if a phonebook entry is deleted or overwritten, the shortcut is deleted.
- Even if deleting a shortcut, its functions or folders are not deleted.
- Activation is available from a shortcut even if a file is moved, but activation becomes unavailable if moved to microSD card or UIM, and its shortcut is deleted.
- Even if the title of a shortcut is changed, the name of folder or file is not changed. And, if the name of a folder or a file is changed after pasting the shortcut, it does not apply to the title.

Custom menu

Registering often-used function

You can register frequently used functions and make your own menu.

- Functions of the first level of Custom menu can be activated by pressing the corresponding keypad (**[1] - [9]**), for 1 second or more on the stand-by display. However, a function with menus in its lower level, person or group registered cannot be activated.

◆ Creating Custom menu

- Up to 9 menu items can be registered in 1 layer.

1 [ME] ▶ [OK]

2 Perform necessary operation

Adding a function to item : **[ME] [1] [1] ▶ Move the cursor to a function ▶ [OK]**

- A function without menu of lower levels can be registered also by selecting the function.

Adding a person to item : **[ME] [1] [2] ▶ Select a person from phonebook**

- The image (except Flash graphics and movies/i-motion) or character icon registered in the phonebook appears on the menu screen.

Adding a group to item : **[ME] [1] [3] ▶ Enter a group name (up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters) ▶ [OK]**

Adding to a group :

No group can be added to the third level.

① Select a group.

② [ME] [1] [1] - [3] ▶ Perform registering operation

- When no menu items are registered to a group, select one from "Save (Person)" - "Save (Menu group)".

Replacing menu item : **Move the cursor to a menu item ▶ [ME] [2] [1] - [3] ▶ Perform registering procedure**

- When replacing a group, a screen for confirming the overwrite appears.

◆ Using Custom menu

1 [ME] ▶ [OK] ▶ Select a menu item

- When a function is selected, the function is activated or menu items in lower levels appear.
- When a group is selected, the menu items registered in the group appear.

◆ Using person

1 [ME] ▶ [OK]

2 Move the cursor to a person ▶ Perform necessary operation

Making calls* : **[F2] or [F3]**

- Select a person and press **[1]** to make a call specifying conditions. → P64

Creating mail* : **[F4]**

Creating SMS* : **[F5] (1 sec. or more)**

Displaying site : **Select a person ▶ [4] ▶ "Yes"**

- Press **[F2]** after **[4]** to display with Full Browser.

Display detail information : **Select a person ▶ [5]**

- * When 2 or more phone numbers or mail addresses are saved, select a phone number or mail address to use from the phonebook details screen after the operation.

◆ Editing Custom menu

- Reset to default.→P105

1 ▶

2 Move the cursor to a menu item ▶ ▶ Perform necessary operation

Replacing menu items : ▶ Select the destination ▶ "Yes"

Changing icon : ▶ Select an icon

- Press to restore to the original icon.

Renaming a group : ▶ Rename a group ▶

Deleting menu item : ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a menu item.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

Side key shortcut

Setting a function to be activated by pressing and holding a side key

You can set a function so that it is activated by pressing one of for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal folded.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Set required items ▶

Simple light

Using FOMA terminal light as a small light

- Operate FOMA terminal in folded state.

1 While the clock of the sub-display is displayed, and move the cursor to "Quick light" ▶ .

The light turns on for approximately 30 seconds.

- When FOMA terminal is opened or any of , or is pressed, the light turns off.
- With "Simple light" set in Side key shortcut, pressing the key set for "Simple light" for 1 second or more while the light is on extend the lighting time for about 30 seconds.

User information

Saving your own name

In addition to the phone number, you can also save your name and mail addresses.

1 [User information]

- For My phone number, the subscribing terminal phone number appears.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, you can press to switch User information between Number A and B.

2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶

Setting items→P82 Step 2 and the following steps in "Adding to phonebook" (None of phonebook number or group can be set.)

- My phone number appears in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

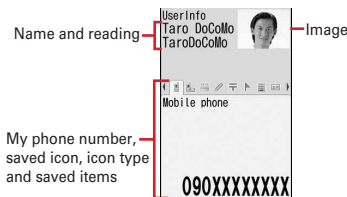
✓INFORMATION-----

- My phone number is saved to UIM and other items to FOMA terminal.
- Changing the mail address in User information does not change your i-mode mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode mail address does not change the mail address in User information.

◆ Checking user information details

1 [User information] ▶ ▶ Authenticate

- Each time you press , the details screen is switched.
- When the saved phone number has Caller ID settings, appears at the top of the details screen.



User information details screen

Displaying User information :

The phone number, mail address, etc., of the first entry appear.

Switching display of details screen : ▶ -

Editing the saved data : ▶ Edit and

Resetting the saved data : ▶ "Yes"

- When using 2in1, only the displayed user information is reset.

◆ Using user information details

1 [User information] ▶ ▶ Authenticate

2 Perform necessary operation

Making call : Display the phone number details screen ▶ or

- Calls cannot be made to My phone number.

- Press to make a call specifying conditions. → P64

Setting Call ID settings : Display the phone number details screen ▶ ▶ -

Creating mail : Display the mail address details screen ▶

Changing the mail address order : ▶ Select a mail address to be set as the first one.

Creating SMS : Display the phone number details screen ▶

Displaying a site : Display the URL details screen ▶ ▶ "Yes"

- Press after to display with Full Browser.

Copying a saved data : ▶ -

- To copy the second phone number/mail address or later, display the details screen for them, press and press or .

Displaying a map from an address : Display the Postal code/Address details screen ▶

GPS compatible i-appli set in Select Map in Map setting starts.

Using location information : Display the location information details screen ▶

The next procedure → P275 "■ Location information usage menu"

◆ Obtaining Number B

With 2in1 activated and Number B displayed, you can obtain Number B.

<Example> Operating in B mode

1 [User information] ▶ ▶ Authenticate ▶ ▶ "Yes" ▶

- In Dual mode, press to display Number B before pressing .

Fake call

Pretending to be receiving a call and talking

Fake call is a function that allows you to pretend you are receiving a call or calling.

- Since voice line is not used, it can be used regardless of the radio wave conditions. And, the call cost is not charged.

◆ Setting Fake call

1 [Accessory] ▶ Set required items ▶

- When setting Call start time to other than "Ring now", a countdown screen appears when you start a fake call. The incoming operation is performed when the specified time elapses.

◆ Starting Fake call

1 [Accessory]

Ring alert sounds according to Alert&Time settings, and the incoming fake call screen appears. And, it operates according to Call in the Light alert of Light alert (blinks in "OFF").

- If pressing while receiving Fake call, it operates in silence.
- You can start from the menu in the sub-display. → P35

2

The fake call talking screen appears and the fake call guidance follows. And, even if Call session light of Light alert is "OFF", the light blinks according to Light color of Call session light.

- Press to end.

✓INFORMATION

- When starting a fake call by using sub-display menu or pressing the key set in Side key shortcut for 1 second or more with Call start time of Alert&Time settings set to other than "Ring now", vibrator operates before countdown starts.
- In Silent mode, the ring alert does not sound and the vibrator operates in "Pattern A". If pressing , the vibrator stops.
- The ring alert is heard from the speaker even in Public mode (Drive mode) or when Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected.
- You can receive Fake call by pressing -, , .
- Fake call can be terminated by folding FOMA terminal.
- If there is any of operations below during a fake call, ring tone or alarm sound is not sounded, and vibrator operates in "Pattern A".
 - A call or PushTalk call is received
 - Mail or MessageR/F is received
 - At the set date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or Schedule
 - At the specified time for 1Seg watching reservation (except when Alarm setting is set to "No")

Voice memo/Movie memo

Recording voice/image

You can record voice or images while talking over a call or in stand-by mode.

- Up to 4 voice memo while talking or voice memo in stand-by can be recorded in total, with up to 30 seconds for each memo.
- Movie memos up to 30 seconds each can be recorded.
- Some guidances cannot be recorded.
- The recording of the voice memo while talking or movie memo may be distorted or the image may be blurred if the radio waves are poor.
- Playing of voice memo→P71
- Playing of movie memo (saved in "Camera" folder of i-motion.)→P292

◆ Recording the other party's voice/image during a call

1 During a call, (1 sec. or more)

Recording starts. When the remaining time is about 5 seconds, two short beeps indicating the end of recording sound. A long beep sounds at the end of recording.

- While recording, elapsed recording time appears at the bottom of the screen.
- During movie memo recording, the image is sent to the other party according to the settings of Movie memo image in Image setting (videophone image).
- During movie memo recording, pressing  switches display between lapse of the recording time and call duration.
- To stop in the middle of recording, press  for 1 second or more.

◆ Recording your own voice during stand-by

- Operate FOMA terminal in open state.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶

After about 3 seconds, a long beep sounds and recording starts. When the remaining time becomes about 5 seconds, 2 short beeps noticing the end of recording sound. A long beep sounds at the end of recording.

- While recording, elapsed recording time appears in the bottom of the screen.
- Press any of ,  or  to stop in the middle of recording.

Call duration/Call cost

Checking call duration/charge

Last and total call durations and costs for voice and videophone calls can be checked.

- The call durations are displayed for voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication, by the counting both outgoing and incoming calls.
- Call costs are only counted for outgoing calls. However "0 YEN" or "*****YEN" appears when a call is made to toll free numbers such as Free-dial or to Directory assistance (104).
- Because the call costs are stored on UIM, the stored total calls cost appears (totaling from December, 2004) when UIM is replaced.
- The call durations and costs displayed are approximate values and may be different from the actual durations and costs.
- The call costs displayed do not include consumption tax.

◆ Checking call duration

1  [Settings & NW services]    

Last call duration : Duration of last incoming/outgoing voice call, videophone or data session

Total calls duration (voice) : The total duration of voice calls made

Total videophone calls : The total duration of videophone calls made

Total data sessions : The total duration of data communication established

Reset:day&time(Voice) : Last date and time the total duration of voice calls was reset

Reset:day&time(VP) : Last date and time the total duration of videophone calls was reset

Reset:day&time(Data) : Last date and time the total duration of data communications was reset

Resetting total calls : On the call duration check screen,

 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶  -  ▶ "Yes"

◆ Checking call cost

1  [Settings & NW services]     

• If there is no last call cost information, "*****YEN" appears.

Last call cost: Voice : Charge for the previous voice call

Last call cost: VP : Charge for the previous videophone call

Last call cost: Data : Charge for the previous data session

Total calls cost : The total cost of voice/videophone calls or data communication

Reset: day & time : Last date and time the total duration was reset

Resetting total calls cost : On the call cost check screen,  ▶ **Enter the PIN2 code** ▶ "Yes"

◆ Automatically resetting Total calls cost <Reset call cost>

You can set whether to automatically reset Total calls cost at 0:00 on the first day of every month.

1  [Settings & NW services]      ▶ **Authenticate** ▶  or  ▶ **Enter PIN2 code**

✓INFORMATION-----

- The duration of received calls or that for establishing call with the other party is not counted.
- Transmission charge for Chaku-moji messages is not counted.
- For PushTalk, i-mode and packet communications, the communication durations or costs are not counted. For the procedure for confirming i-mode fees, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The international call fee for using WORLD CALL is counted. It is not counted for using other international call service.
- When FOMA terminal is turned OFF, the previous call cost appears as "*****YEN".
- When last or total duration for the voice/videophone call or data communication has exceeded 9,999 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds, counting restarts from 0 second.
- If voice and videophone call is switched during the call, the last call cost shows the total charge for each of voice and videophone calls. No call cost is charged while switching.
- The total of Number A and Number B appears for the total call duration and total calls cost with 2in1 subscribed.

<When Reset call cost is "ON">

- The call cost is reset after the terminal is turned ON or ending the call if the power is OFF or a call is being made at 0:00 on the first day of the month.
- The call cost is immediately reset when date and time in the next or subsequent month are set in Date & time.
- PIN2 code is required when turning the power ON or authentication is required when performing Date & time.

◆ Notifying call cost over limit <Call cost limit>

When Total calls cost has exceeded the set limit, it is notified with an alarm, icon display, etc.

- 1 [Settings & NW services]
 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶

Alert : Set this option to "ON" to be notified when the limit is exceeded.

Limit : Enter the upper limit cost in the range of 10 yen-100,000 yen omitting the one's place.

Alert method : Set to use both an alarm and icon or only an icon for notification.

Alert sound : Select a sound to be notified.

Alert time : Set the period of time to sound the alarm in the range of 1-60 seconds.

◆ When the call cost has exceeded the limit

- When the set limit cost is exceeded during a call or communications, appears at the top of the display.
- When the stand-by display reappears after completion of a call or communications exceeding the set limit cost with "Sound + icon display" set for Alert method, an alarm sounds and message "Call cost reached limit." appears on the display. However, the alarm does not sound when FOMA terminal is being folded during a call or communications or when the call ends with FOMA terminal folded.
- The alarm operates according to Call alert volume of Adjust volume.

◆ Hiding call cost icon <Hide call cost icon>

- 1 [Settings & NW services]
 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

✓ INFORMATION -----

- Even with "Sound + icon display" set for Alert method, the alarm does not sound or no messages appear when a call exceeding the call cost limit is made at 0:00 on the first day of the month with Reset call cost set to "ON".

Calculator

Using the FOMA terminal as calculator

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use the calculator from entry field of Scheduler or Notepad. → P354

- 1 [Accessory] ▶ Calculate

Functions assigned to keys appear on the calculator screen.

Deleting 1 digit from the entered number :

Copying/Pasting numbers : or

- Among the copied numbers, only the latest one remains recorded until the terminal is turned OFF, allowing you to paste to other locations any number of times.

✓ INFORMATION -----

- An error is generated and "E" appears when the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits or a divide-by-zero occurs. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded off.

Notepad

Creating notes

- 1 [Accessory] ▶ ▶ Set required items ▶

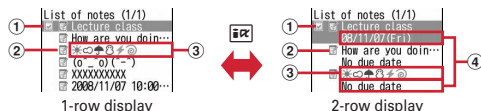
Catg icons : Select the category icon.

Note content : Up to 1,000 two-byte (2,000 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Due date : To set an expiration date, select "ON" and enter a date.

◆ Checking notes

1 [MF] [Accessory] 2



① Status icon

Indicate expiration state of a note (Completed/Uncompleted)

- ☒ (top in green) : Uncompleted (2 or more days before expiration)
- ☒ (top in yellow) : Uncompleted (The previous day or current day of expiration)
- ☒ (top in red) : Uncompleted (Past expiration)
- ☒ (check in red) : Completed No icon : No due date

② Category icon

③ Note content

④ Expiration

2 Select note

Display notepad screen appears.

- If Note content includes phone numbers, mail addresses and URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To and Web To functions can be used.

Changing : Move the cursor to a note ▶ [MF] 2 ▶ Set required items ▶ [MF]

Deleting : Move the cursor to a note ▶ [MF] 3 ▶ 1 - 4 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a note.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [MF]. To delete all items, authentication is required.
- Only the displayed notes are deleted in List by category or List by status.

Specifying a category icon to display <List by category> :

[MF] 4 2 ▶ Select a category icon

The selected category icon appears in the upper-right corner of List of notes and only the note for category icon appears.

- Press [MF] 4 1 to restore the display.

Changing Completed/Uncompleted : Move the cursor to a note with expiration set ▶ [MF]

Specifying a completion status to display <List by status> : [MF] 5 ▶ 2 or 3

- Press [MF] 5 1 to restore the display.

Sorting : [MF] 6 ▶ Set required items ▶ [MF]

Creating mail : Move the cursor to a note ▶ [MF] 7

Registering to Scheduler : Move the cursor to a note ▶ [MF] 8

A screen with note contents already entered to details field of Scheduler appears. The date of Start time and End time varies depending on note expiration settings.

The next procedure → P327 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

◆ Registering to schedule from Date To format

Date To format is formed with strings below.

<Example> 2008/11/7 17:00 ~ 2008/11/7 18:00 Lecture class

Start date Start time End date End time Description

A line feed is regarded as an entry.

- * Characters except "~" are all one-byte characters. [] represents a one-byte space.
- The year is Western calendar year and the time is in the 24-hour format. If there is only 1 digit for month, date, hour or minute, the preceding zero is not needed.
- Using Phrase simplifies entering Date To format. → P352

1 [MF] [Accessory] 2 ▶ Select a note ▶ Select a description in Date To format

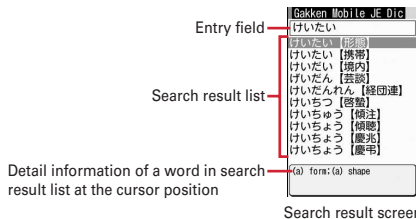
Main (New) screen of schedule appears.

The next procedure → P327 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

Using Dictionaries

1 **[MF] [Accessory] [5] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ Enter a word in entry field (up to 20 two-byte or 40 one-byte characters)**

When **[MF]** is pressed, the character entry screen is switched to the search result screen.



- When the cursor is in a search result list, press **[MF]** to enter a word.

Viewing "Today's trivia" or "Today in history" : **[MF] [Accessory] [5] ▶ [4] or [5]**

- To view another day, enter a date in Enter date field and select "Show events".
- Press **[MF]** / **[MF]** to switch the previous/next day.

2 **Select a word to be searched for from a search result list**

The details screen (meaning of the word) appears.

- To copy the text, press **[MF] [1]** on the details screen.
- To search another dictionary for a word already searched, press **[MF] [2]** and **[1] - [3]** on the search result or details screen.
- Some words may not be correctly searched for.

◆ Using search records

1 **[MF] [Accessory] [5] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ [MF] [1]**

The search records are displayed.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

2 **Select word**

The search result screen appears.

Deleting : Move the cursor to a word ▶ **[MF] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ "Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a word.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ **[MF]**. To delete all items, authentication is required.

Pedometer

Counting the steps

Counted number of steps, walked distance, consumed calories or quantity of burnt fat can be checked. And, "Brisk walk" that is a measure of aerobic exercise (exercise to use oxygen inhaled by breath effectively to improve the total body endurance and burn body fat effectively) is also measured.

- The countdown of steps is not performed in the cases below.
 - When the power is OFF
 - When power saving mode is "ON" and Full saving
 - When "Not use" is set to Pedometer settings
 - When Vibrate alert is operating
 - While updating software
- Brisk walk is automatically measured when walking continuously for 3 or more minutes at the pace of 60 or more steps per minute. And, the rest of less than 4 minutes is regarded that you continued.
- If pressing **[MF]** while displaying the number of steps or consumed calories (→ P340), description of Brisk walk can be displayed.
- The data such as the number of steps or consumed calories can be used by ウォーキングチェッカー (Walking checker) of i-appli. → P253

❖ Precautions on using Pedometer

To count steps precisely, it is recommended that you wear the pedometer correctly* and walk at the speed of 100–120 steps per minute.

- * When using FOMA terminal as Pedometer, place it in a carrying case (optional) and attach the case to the belt of your trousers etc. When putting the terminal in a bag, put it in a pocket or between partitions.
- Steps may not be counted precisely in the cases below.
 - When FOMA terminal moves randomly as the bag you put FOMA terminal in hits your legs or hip, or when hanging FOMA terminal down from your hip or bag
 - When shuffling, walking randomly wearing sandals or geta (wooden clogs), or when your walking pace was slowed down because of walking in the crowded area etc.
 - When you had a lot of up-and-down motion, shaking or horizontal movement like repeating standing and sitting, climbing up and down steep stairs or slopes, or getting on vehicles (bicycle, car, train, bus, etc.)
 - When you jogged or did some sports other than walking, or walked extremely slowly
 - When adding shake or swing to FOMA terminal due to opening/closing FOMA terminal or taking it out from a pocket

❖ Setting Pedometer

1 [LifeKit] ▶ Set required items ▶

When Pedometer is activated, appears on the stand-by display, and the number of steps for the day and walking distance are displayed on the sub-display. → P34

✓ INFORMATION

- When date and time are not set, steps and walking distance are cumulated (cannot be displayed).
- At the beginning of walking, display is not changed because the Pedometer is judging to prevent miscount whether you started walking. As a guide, when you walked 4 steps, the steps to there is displayed at a time.
- The counted steps are saved every ten minutes. If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned OFF, unsaved steps may be lost.

❖ Displaying information such as steps and consumed calories

When 00:00 AM comes with the time of FOMA terminal, information of the day such as steps are automatically saved as the log. Information for the past 32 days including the current day can be checked.

- When date and time are not set, the log is not saved.
- Use the displayed figures just as guides.

1 ▶ Select

2 Check the log by

Steps walked : Steps of the day (up to 999,999 steps)

Distance walked : Walking distance calculated from steps and stride (up to 9,999.9 km)*1

Calories burned : Consumed calories calculated from steps, walking time, set weight (up to 65,535 kcal)*2

Fat burned : Quantity of fat burnt by walking (up to 9,362 g)

Steps:Brisk walk : The number of steps of a day by Brisk walk (up to 999,999)

Time Brisk walk : Walking time of Brisk walk of the day (up to 99 hours 59 minutes)

*1 May differ from the distance calculated from the set stride since the stride is adjusted by steps per minute.

*2 When the walking distance per minute is less than 30 m, calorie calculation is not performed.

Deleting logs : ▶ "Yes"

All the logs, including the number of steps and walking distance currently measured, are deleted.

✓ INFORMATION

- When steps, walking distance or Brisk walk time exceeds the maximum value, it is displayed returning to 0.
- By malfunction, repair or other treatments of FOMA terminal, the logs of steps may be lost. And, the logs of steps are retained for about a month even with the battery removed or vacant, but they may be lost if more time passes. Note that, even if the logs of steps are lost, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility.

Using earphone/microphone with switch

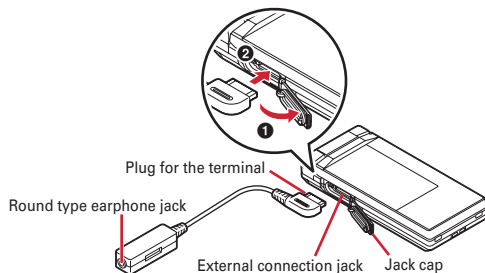
You can connect an optional Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch by plugging an optional Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 to the external connection jack. You can make voice call or receive voice or videophone call by pressing the switch.

◆ Connecting earphone/microphone with switch

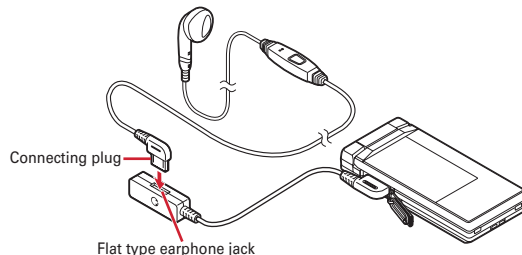
- With Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch connected in Silent mode, the sound is emitted from the earphone regardless of the settings of Alert preference. If the earphone is disconnected before completion, a melody stops. i-appli, 1Seg watching, Music, Movie/i-motion, etc., is performed and played silently. For Music&Video Channel, a confirmation screen for playback appears.

■ Connecting

- Open the jack cap (1) of FOMA terminal's external connection jack, and insert the plug for the terminal of Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal. (2)



- Insert the connection plug of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch into the flat-type earphone jack.
 - You can connect an earphone plug with diameter of 3.5 mm to the round-type earphone jack.
 - If you connect an earphone without microphone to the earphone jack, you cannot send your voice.

**■ Removing**

- Pull out the connection plug of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch from Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal
- Pull out the connector of Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal from FOMA terminal

◆ Setting switch operation of earphone/microphone <Headset key control>

You can set so that the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch allows you to make a voice call.

- ME**ND [Settings & NW services] 5 4 3 ▶ Set required items ▶

Control function : Set to "Voice call" to make a voice call.

Phonebook No. : Search the party to call with Headset quick-dial from FOMA terminal phonebook and set.

◆ Making/Receiving calls by pressing switch <Headset quick-dial/Headset quick-answer>

<Example> Making a voice call

- 1 Press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear 2 short beeps ▶ When ending the call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear a short beep

<Example> Receiving a voice call

- 1 When there is an incoming call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear 2 short beeps ▶ When ending the call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear a short beep

✓INFORMATION

- When the phonebook No. of Headset key control contains multiple phone numbers, the voice call is made to the first phone number saved.
- If an entry of Phonebook No. in Headset key control is deleted or overwritten by another entry, or its number is switched, Headset key control is canceled.
- When Call Waiting Service is active, you can answer the second incoming voice call by pressing the switch for 1 second or more. When Call waiting is active, a party you talk to can be switched by pressing the switch for 1 second or more.

<When FOMA terminal is folded during a call by connecting Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch>

- The call can be continued regardless of Close settings.
- If camera image was being sent during Videophone call, it is changed to Substitute image.

◆ Answering call automatically with earphone connected <Auto answer setting>

Set if you automatically answer if there is an incoming call while Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is connected.

- This function is unavailable to incoming calls during another call.
- This function is not available in Public mode.

- 1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Set required items ▶ 

Auto answering : Setting to "ON" allows you to automatically answer while Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is connected.

Delayed time(Sec) : Set time before automatically answering an incoming call in the range of 0-120 seconds.

✓INFORMATION

- With Delayed time set within the time of Ring alert delay, this function does not start when a call is received from a caller not saved in phonebook.

◆ Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone <Alert preference>

By connecting Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, you can set to hear the ring tone through both headset and speaker or only through the headset.

- Alert tones such as GPS alert or Alarm sound operates according to this setting.

- 1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  - 

- With "HS, + SP after 20sec" set, the ring alert is emitted from the speaker about 20 seconds after the ring alert is emitted only from the earphone.

Bluetooth

Using Bluetooth function

You can establish a wireless connection between FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device.

- Note that using a Bluetooth connection consumes much battery power.
- Wireless communication is not guaranteed for all Bluetooth devices.
- Before using a Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device.

■ Compatible version

Bluetooth standard Version 2.0+EDR*1

■ Compatible profiles*2 (Supported services)

DUN : Dial-up Networking Profile

OPP : Object Push Profile

HSP : Headset Profile

HFP : Hands-Free Profile

A2DP : Advanced Audio Distribution Profile

AVRCP : Audio/Video Remote Control Profile

*1 FOMA terminal and all Bluetooth devices are compliant with the Bluetooth standards in the way defined by Bluetooth SIG, and are authorized by Bluetooth SIG. However, operational procedures or data communication failure may occur depending on the characteristic or specifications of the connected device.

*2 Generic profiles that define the standard connection procedures suitable for each product's characteristic.

Functions available with Bluetooth

Connecting to wireless dialup connection (DUN)

You can connect FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth compatible PC to perform packet communication or 64K data transmission using FOMA terminal as a modem. Press  [LifeKit]  [5], wait until the connection from the Bluetooth device is established and perform registration. For details, refer to "Preparing for Bluetooth connection" in "Manual for PC Connection" in the attached CD-ROM.

Sending phonebook entries to a Bluetooth device (OPP)

You can send phonebook entries from the submenu of phonebook by connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device.

Talking using a headset or Hands free (HSP/HFP)

You can perform a call wirelessly by connecting FOMA terminal and Bluetooth Headset F01 (optional). You can also perform a Hands-free call by using a car navigation system etc. after connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth car navigation device etc. (commercially available).

Playing sounds with an audio device (A2DP/AVRCP)

You can play 1Seg audio and music sounds wirelessly by connecting FOMA terminal with Wireless Earphone Set 02 (optional) or a Bluetooth audio device (commercially available). However, limited devices can play 1Seg or video sounds.

Sounds output by a Bluetooth device

- Only the following functions are not supported. Also, some of them may not work properly depending on Bluetooth device.

Connected profile		HSP	HFP	A2DP
Sound to be output	Voice call dialing sound	○	○	×
	Ring alert, ring tone of voice call or the other party's voice	○	○	×
	The other party's voice being recorded to Answer machine during call.	×	○	×
	Sounds of 1Seg and video playback sounds	×	×	○
	MUSIC Player playback sounds*	×	×	○
	i-motion, PC Movie and Music&Video Channel playback sounds, PushTalk call or mail ring alert and alarm sound of Alarm clock etc.	×	×	×

* Surround and equalizer effects created by MUSIC Players are not applied to play sounds.

Caution for handling a Bluetooth device

To establish a good connection, note the points below.

- Connect with another Bluetooth device keeping the line-of-sight distance to 10 m or shorter. Distance available for connection may be shorter if obstacles exist between FOMA terminal and the Bluetooth device or depending on surrounding environment (walls, furniture, etc.). Especially, inside a reinforced concrete building, devices placed on opposite sides of reinforced walls or floors may not be connected. The connection distance described above is not guaranteed.
- Place a Bluetooth device as far as possible from other electric appliances, audio visual devices and office appliances. A microwave oven strongly affects the connection when it is operated. Keep enough distance. Connection may not be established correctly when other devices are powered on, or the connection may cause noises on TV or radio or reception difficulty (on particular UHF or satellite channels, TV pictures may be distorted).
- Move the other Bluetooth device to another location if connection cannot be established because there is a broadcasting station or radio device nearby. Under strong ambient signals, connection may not be established.
- Wireless connection is possible even when a Bluetooth device is placed in a bag or pocket. However, if your body is between FOMA terminal and the Bluetooth device, communication speed may be reduced or noise may occur.

Radio wave interference with wireless LAN

Because a Bluetooth device and wireless LAN (IEEE802.11b/g) use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz), if the device is used near a device with wireless LAN capability, radio wave interference may occur, and communication speed may be reduced, noise may occur, or connection may not be established. In this case, turn the wireless LAN device power off, or move FOMA terminal and the Bluetooth device away at least 10 m from the wireless LAN device.

Radio waves emitted by a Bluetooth device may affect electronic medical equipment.

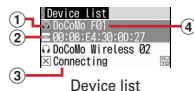
Turn off FOMA terminal and other Bluetooth devices in a train, aircraft or hospital, near an automatic door or fire alarm, and at a place where flammable gases are generated such as a gas station. Otherwise, under certain circumstances, an accident may result.

◆ Registering a Bluetooth device <Register new devices>

- Set a Bluetooth device to registration standby mode in advance.



Bluetooth devices in stand-by near FOMA terminal are searched. The number of the detected devices and the registered device list appear.



① Device type

: PC : Phone : LAN access point
 : Audio device : Peripheral device : Graphic device : Others

② Search results

: Registered device exists : No registered device
 : Unregistered device exists

③ Connection status of the service/Bluetooth address (when the device is not registered)

appears to the right if the MUSIC Player is subject to be connected automatically on activation.

④ Device name/Bluetooth address (when the device has no name)

appears when protected.

2 Select a Bluetooth device to register ▶ Enter 4-16 digit Bluetooth passkey

The registration completion screen appears, and the service selection screen (→P344) appears after approximately 2 seconds. To connect the Bluetooth device, go to Step 3 in "Connecting the FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device"

- When exceeding the savable number, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears. When "Yes" is selected, unprotected Bluetooth device with the oldest communication date is overwritten first.
- For the Bluetooth passkey, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device (Bluetooth passkey is not required to register Wireless Earphone Set 02).
- If the Bluetooth device name exceeds 16 two-byte characters (or 32 1-byte characters), the truncated device name is registered.

◆ Connecting the FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device

You can connect a registered Bluetooth device.



2 Select a Bluetooth device to connect



Service selection screen

: Connected : Connection stand-by : Unconnected (service exists)
No display : Unconnected (no service)

- The connect/stop screen appears unless all of the services are online/offline. Press **[1]** (or **[2]**) to stop).

Search a Bluetooth device : ▶

- If an unregistered Bluetooth device is found, select the device to register.
- If you, after the search, select a detected Bluetooth device which is already registered, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

Protecting/Unprotecting : Move the cursor to a Bluetooth device ▶ **[1]** ▶ **[1]** or **[2]**

Displaying registered device information : Move the cursor to a Bluetooth device ▶ **[2]**

- Press on the registered device information screen to edit the device name. Enter up to 16 two-byte or 32 one-byte characters and press .

Deleting a registered device : Move the cursor to a Bluetooth device ▶ **[3]** ▶ "Yes"

Disconnecting : Move the cursor to a Bluetooth device ▶ **[4]** ▶ "Yes"

3 Select a profile to connect ▶

appears, and (blue) blinks at the top of the screen when a connection with the Bluetooth device is established. If no communication is performed with the Bluetooth device for certain time, Power saving mode starts and (gray) blinks.

Canceling the connection : Select a profile ▶

Reconnect a profile :

✓INFORMATION

- If a Bluetooth device is turned off or not responding while connection is being established or terminated, the process may take time.
- If the connection is terminated from a Bluetooth device while Headset Profile, Hands-free Profile, Advanced Audio Distribution Profile or Dialup Network Profile is connected, the profile status goes to connection stand-by. When FOMA terminal is turned off while a profile is connected or connection stand-by, the profile is in stand-by next time the terminal is turned on.
- When "Please re-register." is displayed in the service connection status in Device list, select a Bluetooth device and select "Yes" to register again.
- When you perform Step 1 with a Bluetooth device not registered, a confirmation screen for searching appears. Select "Yes" to place the Bluetooth device in connection stand-by and press  to start searching.
- Even if selecting Dialup Network Profile, the Bluetooth device may not be connected due to no service on the target device.

◆ Activating/Deactivating Accept registered

Connection from the registered Bluetooth device can be waited or canceled.

1  [LifeKit]  4 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ Select a profile ▶ 

✓INFORMATION

- Connection does not start when a Bluetooth device is in connection stand-by. Connect from FOMA terminal.
- When Accept registered is activated with multiple Bluetooth devices registered, unregistered Bluetooth devices may be connected. Be sure to confirm the device connected.

◆ Turning Bluetooth on/off <Bluetooth ON/OFF>

When "ON" is set,  (blue) appears, and a service becomes able to accept a registered Bluetooth device. Set "OFF" to exit a Bluetooth function.

1  [LifeKit]  1 ▶ "Yes"

- You can operate from the sub-display menu. → P35

◆ Sending phonebook to a Bluetooth device

1  ▶ Phonebook search ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶  8 ▶  5 or  6

2 Select a Bluetooth device to connect ▶ "Yes"

- When "Send all via BT" is selected, perform authentication after the Bluetooth device is selected. When Bluetooth settings is "With password", enter the same authentication password on the sender and receiver. Decide a 4-digit authentication password in advance.
- The terminal is in the data transfer mode (same state as out of service area) during data transmission.

◆ Talking using a Bluetooth

You can talk wirelessly by connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device using Headset Profile (HSP) or Hands-free Profile (HFP).

- To dial using Headset service, it operates according to Headset key control.

1 Connecting a Bluetooth device with Headset Profile or Hands-free Profile

Connecting a Bluetooth device → P344

2 Making/Receiving a call using a Bluetooth device

- During a communication with Headset Profile,  appears, and with Hands-free Profile,  appears.
- For operations of the Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device.

Switching between calls with FOMA terminal and Bluetooth : During a call  (for 1 sec. or more)

- The same operation is available while making/receiving a call, calling/on hold, recording message/voice memos or movie memos.
- During a call with FOMA terminal connected with Headset Profile, the call can be switched only from the Bluetooth device.
- For operations from the Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device.

✓INFORMATION

- When a call is received while a Bluetooth device is connected with Headset Profile or Hands-free Profile, even when Call alert volume is set to "Silent" on FOMA terminal or in Silent mode, a ring alert sounds from the Bluetooth device. In this case, the ring alert operates according to Forward ring alert in Bluetooth settings.
- The volume should be adjusted on the Bluetooth device while talking through a Bluetooth device.

<During a call using a Bluetooth device>

- The call can be continued regardless of Close settings.
- With FOMA terminal folded, when a call is switched from a Bluetooth device to FOMA terminal, the call continues in mute.
- When you disconnect the Bluetooth device, the call ends.

◆ Playing 1Seg audio using a Bluetooth device

By connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device with Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), you can output 1Seg or MUSIC Player audio from the Bluetooth device.

1 Connecting a Bluetooth device with Advanced Audio Distribution Profile

Connecting a Bluetooth device→P344

2 Watch 1Seg or play music

- 1Seg sound is output according to Sound setting of User setting in 1Seg.
- If a confirmation screen for outputting sound to a Bluetooth device appears, select "Yes" or "Yes (Confirm once)". When you select "Yes (Confirm once)", Voice output to BT of Sound setting in User setting in 1Seg is set to "Auto output to BT". When "No" is set, sound is output from FOMA terminal speaker.
- When Start MUSIC Player of Bluetooth settings is set to "ON", MUSIC Player automatically starts when connected from a Bluetooth device with advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), and music is played from the device. In this case, the tune that was selected when MUSIC Player is used last time is played. If there is no previous information, the first tune in the "All music" folder is played.
- For operations of the Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device.

✓INFORMATION

- 1Seg sound can be played only with a A2DP compatible Bluetooth device that supports SCMS-T Copyright Protection.
- The volume should be adjusted on the Bluetooth device while playing through a Bluetooth device.
- Even when MUSIC Player is running in background, a Bluetooth remote control is available.
- When MUSIC Player is activated with no Bluetooth device connected, the Bluetooth device that was connected when MUSIC Player was used last time is connected.
- When Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set (optional) or Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, audio cannot be played with a Bluetooth device.
- If music or sound stops or MUSIC Player terminates during playback with a Bluetooth device, possible causes are as described below.
 - When a connection with the Bluetooth device is disconnected
 - When making/receiving a call or transferring phonebook
 - When mail, MessageR/F or location request of GPS is received
 - When PushTalk is received
 - When an alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or 1Seg watching reservation sounds

◆ Checking connected Bluetooth devices <Connecting devices>

1  [LifeKit]  7

◆ Bluetooth Multi services

Available combinations to connect concurrently are as shown below.

- FOMA terminal cannot be connected with Dialup Network Profile.
- An external device cannot be connected with Object Push Profile (OPP).

○ : Available to connect/Available concurrently
 △ : Available to connect/Not available concurrently
 × : Not available to connect/not available to operate

Profile to connect		Profile being connected				
		DUN	OPP	HSP	HFP	A2DP
DUN	External device	—	△*1	○	○	△*2
OPP	FOMA terminal	△*1	—	△*1	△*1	△*1
HSP	FOMA terminal	○	×	—	×	△*3, 4
	External device	○	△*1	—	×	△*3, 4
HFP	FOMA terminal	○	×	×	—	△*4, 5
	External device	○	△*1	×	—	△*4, 5
A2DP	FOMA terminal	△*2	×	△*3, 4	△*4, 5	—
	External device	△*2	△*1	△*3, 4	△*4, 5	—

*1 Object Push Profile (OPP) precedes

*2 DUN precedes

*3 Headset Profile (HSP) precedes

*4 Not available to connect with a different Bluetooth device

*5 HFP precedes

◆ Setting Bluetooth <Bluetooth settings>

Time-out to search : Set the duration to search for Bluetooth devices.

Bluetooth info : Display information of Bluetooth functions of FOMA terminal

Set authentication : Set whether to require authentication to send phonebook via Bluetooth. When Yes, set whether to encode data.

- When profiles other than Object Push Profile is activated, entires are sent after authentication and encoding regardless of this setting.

Forward ring alert : Set whether to send phone ring alert to a connected headset or handsfree device.

- When "Forward" is set, it operates according to Alert preference while connecting with Headset Profile. Ring tone set to FOMA terminal with a Bluetooth device is emitted while connecting with Hands-Free Profile.

Session number : Set whether to enter authentication password to send all phonebook entires.

Start MUSIC Player : Set whether to automatically start MUSIC Player when an audio device is connected.

- This setting is also applied to Bluetooth auto-start in MUSIC Player settings.

1 [LifeKit] **6**

2 Perform necessary operation

Setting Time-out to search : **1** ▶ Enter the search time (1-20 seconds) ▶

Displaying Bluetooth info : **2**

- To edit a device name, ▶ Enter a device name (up to 16 two-byte or 32 one-byte characters) ▶ Press . Entered pictograms may not be displayed correctly on the other party's Bluetooth device.

Setting Set authentications : **3** ▶ Set required items ▶

Setting Forward ring alert : **4** ▶ **1** or **2**

Setting Session number : **5** ▶ **1** or **2**

Setting Start MUSIC Player : **6** ▶ **1** or **2**

Confirming current settings of functions

1  [Settings & NW services]      to check the settings

✓INFORMATION

- In Personal data lock, the set conditions for locked items are displayed as "---".
- In Privacy mode ("Authorized access" set for My Picture or i-motion), authentication is required.

Character Entry

Entering characters	350
Entering characters using 5-touch input method	5-touch input method 351
Entering characters using useful entry function	352
Saving fixed phrase	Save phrase 354
Copying/Cutting and pasting characters	355
Entering characters using KUTEN code	KUTEN code input 355
Saving often-used words	Save word 355
Registering passwords in advance	Password manager 356
Using downloaded dictionary	DL dictionary 356
Entering characters using 2-touch input method	2-touch input method 357
Setting input method	Text input method 357
Entering characters in flip style	Touch entry 358

For details of Kuten Code List, refer to "Kuten Code List" (PDF version) in the attached CD-ROM or on NTT DOCOMO website.

To view PDF version of "Kuten Code List", Adobe® Reader® is required. If not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

Entering characters

Procedures for entering characters below.

- There are 2 methods for entering characters : 5-touch input method and 2-touch input method. → P351, 357
- The font types below can be entered. Two-byte characters (hiragana/kanji/katakana/alphabetic characters/numbers/symbols/pictograms) and one-byte characters (katakana/alphabetic characters/numbers/symbols). 1 two-byte character, space or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. Voiced sound and semi-voiced sound one-byte characters are also counted as 1 character.
- A total of 6,355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a simplified form.
- In this manual, "enter" means entering characters and pressing .

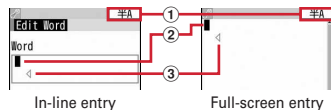
Character entry screen

There are 2 kinds of character entry screens : in-line entry mode and full-screen entry mode.

In-line entry : Move the cursor to the field without switching screens and enter characters directly.

Full-screen entry : Select the field to display the full-screen entry area.

- When fixed phrases pasted or entered exceed the allowable number of entered characters, the excessive characters are deleted.



① Input mode

② Cursor (blinking)

Indicate location where characters are entered or inserted.

③ Entry range

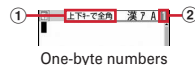
This icon indicates limitation of entry area.

- For the field to enter date and time etc., you may be able to enter numbers by pressing .

Changing input modes

1 On the character entry screen,

- Each time you press, the input mode switches as 1 (one-byte numbers) → 漢 (hiragana/kanji) → 7 (one-byte katakana) → A (one-byte alphabets).



- It shows that switching two-byte/one-byte characters is available by pressing .

- The item at the cursor is highlighted.

- You can also press  to switch the input mode.

2 Move the cursor to the item to switch

Available items and input modes

Items		Input mode	
5-touch input method	2-touch input method		
漢	漢	Hiragana/Kanji character	漢
7	7	One-byte katakana	半7
A	A	One-byte alphabetic characters	半A
	A*		
1	1*	One-byte numbers	半数
ア	ア	Two-byte katakana	全ア
A	A	Two-byte alphabetic characters	全A
	A*		
1	1*	Two-byte numbers	全数

- * Even in 2-touch input, it becomes 5-touch input operation.

- The available input modes vary by the character entry screen.
- 全あ appears when entering readings of a saved word.

5-touch input method

Entering characters using 5-touch input method

In 5-touch input method, multiple characters are assigned to each key and the character is switched every time a key is pressed.

- List of character assignments → P402
- When characters are entered, the cursor moves rightward after approximately 1 second. The number of seconds before moving the cursor can be changed in Text input method. → P357

◆ Entering characters in hiragana/kanji

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)" in phonebook

1 [Phonebook & Logs] twice to switch to the kanji/hiragana mode ▶ Enter "ろっぽんぎ" ▶

"ろ": (5 times)
 "っ": (3 times) ▶
 "ぼ": (5 times) ▶ (twice)
 "ん": (3 times)
 "ぎ": (twice) ▶

- During character entry, the operations below are available.
 : Return to the previous character.
 (e.g.: お→え→う→い→あ→お→え→…)
 : Cancel entered characters.
 : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (only after the entry is fixed).
 (e.g.: ほ→ぼ→ほ→ほ→…, つ→っ→づ→つ→…)
- You can also press to convert text when an option selection list is not displayed.
- Press to restore the entry before conversion.
- To leave hiragana unconverted, go to Step 2 without pressing .

Displaying conversion options list :

When pressing fails to display the preferred character, a conversion options list appears by pressing or pressing again.

Displaying kana options list :

While entering hiragana characters, press to display a list of kana characters, dates, times, etc.

- When there are multiple pages, press or to switch pages. Press the key for the option or press to select options.

2 ▶ "閉じる (Close)"

Inserting characters :

Press to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

Deleting characters :

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string
 (eg.: ドコモ太郎)
 - Press to delete 1 character at the cursor position.
 - Press and hold for 1 second or more to delete the character at the cursor position and all other characters after the cursor position.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string
 (eg.: ドコモ太郎)
 - Press to delete 1 character to the left of the cursor.
 - Press and hold for 1 second or more to delete all entered characters.

Entering line feed :

Move the cursor to the location to insert a line feed and press . When the cursor is at the end of entered characters, you can also press to insert a line feed.

- Some fields may not permit a line feed.

Restoring the character string to the previous state :

Press for 1 second or more.

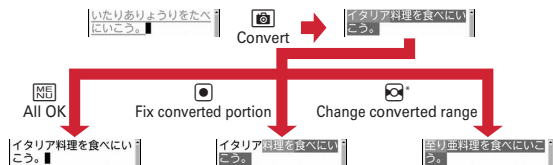
✓ INFORMATION

- Pressing after entering voiced/semi-voiced sound does not bring back the previous character.
- When the cursor has been moved rightward by pressing during character entry, the operations below are unavailable.
 : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound and switch upper/lower case.
 : Return to the previous character.
- You can enter readings in hiragana and convert them to alphabetic characters, Greek characters, etc. → P408

❖ Converting multiple clauses at a time

- Converted within 24 two-byte characters.

<Example> Entering "イタリア料理を食べにいこう。(Let's go to eat Italian food.)"



* The screen shows the example of .

◆ Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function displays a list of the word selection options that match first part of the reading of the entered characters when entering characters in hiragana/kanji mode. Input prediction function automatically saves previously entered characters in the option selection list as Predict dict. data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

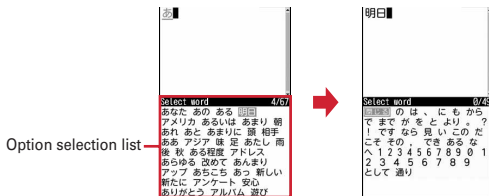
- The words below appear in addition to the Predict dict. data.
 - Words stored by default, words saved as words
 - Words selected from DL dictionary
- Input prediction function can be used only in the hiragana/kanji mode with full-screen entry.

<Example> Selecting and entering "明日 (asu)"

1 Enter "あ (a)" on the character entry screen

- The option selection list appears. Options change as entered characters increase.

2 ▶ Select the option ▶ ▶ "閉じる (Close)"



- When there are multiple pages, press or to switch pages.

❖ Resetting prediction

You can reset data saved as Predict dict. data in the options selection list to default.

1 **[MENU]** **[Settings & NW services]**
[7] **[2]** **[3]** **▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"**

Entering characters using useful entry function

You can enter pictograms, symbols or fixed phrases, or quote data from the submenu of the character entry screen.

- The submenus do not appear before characters are set or while Deco-mail decoration icons are displayed. On the in-line entry screen, the submenu appears when the entry is fixed.

◆ Entering fixed phrases

1 On the character entry screen, -

- After fixed phrases are saved, **9** becomes available.
- Press **ME** **5** **1** on the message text entry screen.

2 Select a fixed phrase

◆ Entering pictogram and symbol

- Pictogram list→P403

<Example> Entering Pictogram D

- 1 Press on the entry screen of message text or signature editing



① Input log field

Displayed on the first page of the pictogram list of Pictogram D, Pictogram 1 and Pictogram 2, and on the first page of the symbol list of one-byte/two-byte symbols.

② Pictogram and symbol list

Only supported symbols appear.

- Each time you press , the pictogram list switches in the order of Pictogram D→Pictogram 1→Pictogram 2. On a pictogram list of Pictogram D, images saved in "Deco-mail pict" folder are displayed. Select a Deco-mail pictogram to enter it. Note that, you can switch only Pictogram 1 and 2 each time you press except on the entry screen of message text or signature. Downloading Deco-mail pictogram→P177
- Press to enter symbols. Each time you press the key, switches two-byte and one-byte symbols.
- When there are multiple pages, press or to switch pages.

2 Select a pictogram

Press to close the pictogram list.

- In the input log field, up to 10 items from the latest entry are displayed and characters can be selected from the list.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Pictograms and symbols can be converted also by entering readings.→P403, 408
- Pictograms and symbols transferred via infrared communication may not appear correctly.
- A pictogram or symbol can be entered also by selecting "Pict/Symbol/Smiley" → "Pictogram" or "Symbol" on the submenu of the character entry screen. At this time, press to display a continuous input field above the input log field, and up to 10 pictograms, 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) symbols can be selected continuously. Note that no continuous input field is displayed for Pictogram D.
- If "Deco-mail pict" folder contains no images, a blank pictogram list appears when trying to display Pictogram D on the entry screen of message text or signature editing.
- Deco-mail pictogram can be inserted also by pressing on the entry screen of message text or signature editing, and selecting "Decorate mail" → "Insert image" → "Phone memory" or "microSD".
- When selecting "Pict/Symbol/Smiley" → "Symbol" on the submenu of character entry screen, selecting a left parenthesis (such as {) causes the associated right parenthesis (such as }) to be automatically entered.

◆ Entering smileys

- Smiley list→P411

1 On the character entry screen, ► -

- Press on the message text entry screen.
- Pressing displays a list of up to 18 items beginning with the latest one entered from input log of smiley list.

2 Select Smileys

◆ Quoting data to enter characters

Characters can be entered by quoting password saved in Password manager, phonebook entry, user information, the calculation results on Calculator or character string of the data scanned with Bar code reader.

- Other data can be quoted except when a character entry screen and quoted data have the same function (such as phonebook entry on a phonebook character entry screen).

◆ Quoting password data

1 On the character entry screen, ► Authenticate

- Press on the message text entry screen.

2 Select password data to quote

❖ Quoting phonebook entry

1 On the character entry screen, ▶ Select phonebook entry to quote

- Press    on the message text entry screen.

2 Select the data to quote

❖ Quoting user information data

1 On the character entry screen, ▶ Authenticate

- Press    on the message text entry screen.

2 Select the user information data to quote

❖ Quoting calculation results on Calculator

1 On the character entry screen of Notepad or Scheduler, ▶ Make a calculation ▶

❖ Quoting data scanned with Bar code reader

1 On the URL entry screen, ▶ Scan a code ▶

- They can be used from the character entry screen during i-mode or Full Browser connection.

Save phrase

Saving fixed phrase

- Up to 50 items can be saved.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ "<New phrase>"

Deleting the saved fixed phrases : Move the cursor to the fixed phrase ▶  ▶ "Yes"

- To check the fixed phrase already saved, move the cursor to the phrase to check and press . Edit it by pressing .

2 Enter the fixed phrases (up to 64 two-byte (128 one-byte) characters) ▶

Phrases are saved in "My phrases".

- When editing a saved fixed phrase, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to replace or "No" to cancel the operation.

❖ Saving words during character entry

1 On the character entry screen,

- Press    on the message text entry screen.

2 Select the start point

Selecting a whole sentence :  ▶  ▶ Go to Step 4

- On the message text entry screen, press  to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

3 Select the end point

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the edit phrase screen.

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence :  ▶ 

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence :  ▶ 

4

✓INFORMATION

- If a blank is included in the character string in the selected range, the operation below is performed.
Blank spaces only : Cannot be saved as a fixed phrase.
Blank spaces before and after a character string : Only character string is available.
Blank spaces between characters : Blank spaces are also available.
- To save a new phrase when 50 fixed phrases are already saved, delete or edit one of the saved fixed phrases in the list.

Copying/Cutting and pasting characters

- Only the last item of the copied or cut characters are recorded until the power is turned OFF, and they can be pasted any number of times.

◆ Copying/Cutting characters

1 On the character entry screen, 1 or 2

- On the message text entry screen, press 3 1 to copy or 3 2 to cut.

2 Select the start point

- Selecting the whole sentence :** ●
- On the message text entry screen, press to select the whole sentence.

3 Select the end point

The characters in the selected range are copied or cut.

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence : ●

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence : ●

Searching the specified character : Move the cursor to the end position

Quick search starts.

- Operation is unavailable on the message text entry screen.

◆ Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the permitted number of characters, a message appears indicating not all characters can be pasted. Select "Yes" to paste the phrase with excessive characters deleted.

1 On the character entry screen, move the cursor to the position to paste characters 3

The characters are inserted at the cursor position.

- Press 4 on the message text entry screen.

✓ INFORMATION

- When the type of the copied/cut characters matches with the character type used of the paste destination field, pasting is available. Hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address entry field.
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into the entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

KUTEN code input

Entering characters using KUTEN code

Characters, numbers and symbols on the Kuten code list can be entered using 4-digit code.

- For "Kuten Code List", refer to PDF version "Kuten Code List" in the CD-ROM attached.

<Example> Entering "〒" (code number 0209)

1 On the character entry screen, 4 2 Enter the 4-digit Kuten code (0 2 0 9) ●

- Press 5 2 on the message text entry screen.

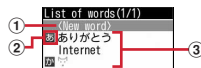
Save word

Saving often-used words

Saving frequently used words makes it easy to produce them during character conversion.

- Up to 200 items can be saved.

1 [Settings & NW services] 7 2 1 " <New word>"



① Select when saving new word

② Icon indicating the beginning of the line

③ Saved words

Listed in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

- To check the saved word, move the cursor to the word and press . Edit it by pressing .
- To delete a word, move the cursor to the word and press , and select "Delete". Select "Delete all" to delete all saved words.

2 Enter the word to register in the word field (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters)

3 Enter the reading in the reading field (up to 8 characters in hiragana)

- The word with the characters below entered at the beginning cannot be saved.

- を, ん, あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, む, よ, わ, ° (Voiced sound), ° (Semi-voiced sound), — (Long vowels)

- Any blank spaces entered are deleted after saving.



- When editing a saved word, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Overwrite" to overwrite to the original word or "New" to save as a new word leaving the original word.

❖ Saving words during character entry

1 On the character entry screen, [ME] [6] [1]

- Press [ME] [7] [1] on the message text entry screen.

2 Select the start point

Selecting a whole sentence : [ME] ▶ [] ▶ Go to Step 4

- On the message text entry screen, press [] to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

3 Select the end point

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the word entry field.

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence : [ME] ▶ []

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence : [] ▶ []

4 Enter the reading ▶ []

✓ INFORMATION

- To save a new word when 200 words are already saved, delete or edit one of the saved words in the list.
- When a character string containing a line feed is selected, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

Password manager

Registering passwords in advance

With authentication information such as user names and passwords registered, you can quote and enter saved information to a site or website that requires such information.

- Fingerprint authentication must be available to use Password manager. → P112
- Quoting registered password → P353
- Up to 50 items can be registered.

1 [ME] [Settings & NW services] [4] [8] ▶ Authenticate



Deleting : Move the cursor to a password ▶ [ME] [2] [4] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the password.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [].

Changing the order : Move the cursor to the password ▶ [ME] [5] or [6]

3 Enter the title in the title field (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters)

4 Enter the password in the password field (up to 64 two-byte (128 one-byte) characters)



❖ Saving words during character entry

You can select entered characters and save them as a password.

1 On the character entry screen, [ME] [6] [3]

- On the message text entry screen, press [ME] [7] [3].

2 Select the start position

Selecting a whole sentence : [ME] ▶ [] ▶ Go to Step 4

- When selecting the whole sentence from the message text entry screen, press [] , perform authentication and go to Step 4.

3 Select the end position ▶ Authenticate

The characters in the selected range are displayed in the password entry field.

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence : [ME] ▶ []

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence : [] ▶ []

4 Enter a title name ▶ []

- Passwords are displayed in the order they are saved.

DL dictionary

Using downloaded dictionary

You can set words saved in downloaded dictionaries for conversion to Japanese to be displayed as conversion options.

- Up to 5 items can be used simultaneously.

- Downloading dictionaries → P178

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Select the dictionary to use

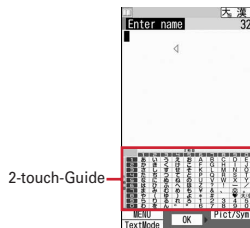
2-touch input method

Entering characters using 2-touch input method

- Set the input method to 2-touch input. → P357
- Even with 2-touch guide set to "ON", no guidance appears during in-line entry or 1Seg display. And, guidance does not appear by some functions.

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)" in phonebook

1 [Phonebook & Logs] twice to switch to the kanji/hiragana mode ▶ Enter "ろっぽんぎ" ▶



"ろ":
 "っ":
 "ぽ":
 "ん":
 "ぎ":

- During character entry, the operations below are available.
 : Switches between upper and lower cases.
 : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (only after the entry is fixed).
- Some fields may not permit a line feed.
- A blank is entered in part in 2-touch guide.

2 ▶ "閉じる (Close)"

Text input method

Setting input method

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Set required items ▶

Input method : Set to "5-touch" or "2-touch".

Input prediction : Set if you display the option selection list.

Auto cursor : Set the time period before the cursor to move to the right automatically.

- Setting "OFF" disables automatic movement of the cursor.
- Setting "Slow" moves the cursor in approx. 1.5 seconds.
- Setting "Normal" moves the cursor in approx. 1 second.
- Setting "Fast" moves the cursor in approx. 0.5 seconds.

2-touch guide : Set if you display 2-touch guide.

❖ Changing settings during character entry

- The settings cannot be changed before fixing characters or while Deco-mail decoration icons are displayed.
- During in-line entry, you can switch input modes or input methods, and change Auto cursor.

1 On the character entry screen, ▶ -

- can be selected during 2-touch input.
- Press on the message text entry screen.
- To switch "Use 2-touch" and "Use 5-touch", press .
- To switch Prediction ON/OFF, press .
- To set the time period before Auto cursor moves, press and set the time by pressing - .
- To switch 2-touch guide ON/OFF, press .

✓ INFORMATION -

- When entering 2 characters both assigned to the same key successively with Auto cursor set to "OFF", enter the first character, press to move the cursor rightward and enter the next character. To enter "あい", press .

Entering characters in flip style

You can enter characters by touch operation in flip style.

- Touch operation and basic operations→P40, 41
- In-line entry mode is not supported. And, even if setting an option selection list to be displayed, the option selection list is not displayed.
- Only the character entry screens below are available.
 - Full Browser screen, authentication screen for user name, password, etc.
 - Terminal security code entry screen

◆ Entering characters on Full Browser screen

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)" in the character entry field

1 Touch the character entry field of Full Browser screen

The character entry screen appears.

Touch entry guide screen
Some characters entered
may switch the screens.



Switching input modes :

When [TextMode] is touched, the input mode list is displayed, and touch any of [Kana] [Alphameric] [Num] [Katakana] [Symbol S] [Symbol L] to switch the input mode.

2 Touch [TextMode]▶[Kana] to switch kanji/hiragana mode▶Touch character buttons

- The character button only shows the first letter of each line in Japanese syllabary.

"ろ": [ら9]▶[ろ]

"っ": [た4]▶[っ]

"ぼ": [は6]▶[°] (twice)▶[ぼ]

"ん": [わ0]▶[ん]

"ぎ": [か2]▶[°]▶[ぎ]

- During character entry, the operations below are available.

[A/A] : Switch two-byte/one-byte character

[A/a] : Switch upper/lower case

[Back↵] : Return to the first level of each input mode on the character entry screen

[PrevPage←]/[NextPage→] : Display previous/next symbol list

3 Touch [Convert]

- You can also touch [▲] or [▼] to convert.
- Touch [Clear] or press [↵] to restore the state before conversion.
- Not to convert, do not touch [Convert] and go to Step 4.

Displaying conversion options list :

When the desired character is not displayed by touching [Convert], touch [▲] or [▼], or touch [Convert] again to display the conversion options list.

- When there are multiple pages, slide quickly right or left on the display to switch pages.

4 Touch [OK]

Inserting characters :

Press any of [▲][▼][◀][▶] to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

Deleting characters :

Touch [Clear] or press [↵] to delete 1 character at the cursor position. When the cursor is at the end of an entered character, 1 character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

Deleting all the characters entered :

Touch [MENU] and [DelAll] in order.

Pasting characters :

Touch [MENU] and [Paste] in order.

- You can paste the copied characters, if any.

Inserting a line feed :

Move the cursor to the position to insert a line feed and touch [↵].

- For Kana, touch [わ0] and [↵] in order.
- For Alphameric, touch [↵] in second level of each character button.
- Some fields may not permit a line feed.

5 Touch [OK]

✓INFORMATION

- Some two-byte symbols can be entered. For pictograms, only pictograms to be displayed in a conversion options list can be entered.

◆ Entering terminal security code

When the terminal security code entry screen appears, enter the terminal security code by touching corresponding numeric keys.

- When the fingerprint authentication screen appears, fingerprint authentication is available. → P114

1 Touch a terminal security code to be entered

2 Touch [OK]

- Touch [Clear] or press  to delete 1 character to the left of the cursor.

Voice Mail service	362
Call waiting	363
Call Forwarding Service	363
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	364
Caller ID Request Service	364
Dual Network Service	364
Switching language for voice prompts English guidance	364
Service Numbers	365
Set arrival act	365
Selecting actions for an incoming call during a call Arrival call act	365
Setting remote control Remote control	365
Multi Number	366
2in1	366
OFFICEED	369
Registering new network services Additional service (Register USSD)	369

Network services available

- You can use the DOCOMO network services below with FOMA terminal.

Service	Application	Monthly charge
Voice Mail service	Required	Charged
Call Waiting	Required	Charged
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Not required	Free
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged
English guidance	Not required	Free
Multi Number	Required	Charged
2in1	Required	Charged
OFFICEED	Required	Charged
Public mode (Drive mode)→P69	Not required	Free
Public mode (Power OFF)→P69	Not required	Free
Melody Call→P93	Required	Charged

- Network services are not available out of service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.
- Contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for applications and inquiries.
- "OFFICEED" is a service requiring subscription. For details, refer to DOCOMO's business website (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>).
- This manual describes the outline of network services from the aspect of the operation procedure using Menu on FOMA terminal. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Voice Mail service

If there is an incoming voice or videophone call while FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is powered OFF or if you do not answer the call within the specified ring time, this service answers the caller with a reply message and stores a voice message for you.

- To give priority to Voice Mail service over Answer machine, set ring time for Voice Mail service shorter than a response time for Answer machine.
- When voice or videophone call is not answered with Voice Mail activated, it is recorded as a missed call and  (the number indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display.
- Make a voice call to "1412" to change the activity on receiving a videophone call in Voice Mail service.
- When connected to the Voice Mail service center using Chara-den, DTMF operation is unavailable. Operate by switching to Send DTMF from submenu.→ P63
- When using 2in1, activation, deactivation, check setting, playing message and setting of Voice Mail service can be set for Number A and B respectively. You can configure settings for Number A in A mode, and for Number B in B mode, and select one of them in Dual mode. Other items are common for both.
- For Play messages and Voice Mail service, select either a voice or videophone call first. Other items are common for both.

❖ Basic flow of Voice Mail service

Step 1 : Activate the service.

Step 2 : The caller leaves a voice message.

Step 3 : Play the voice message.

1  **[Settings & NW services]**   ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

<Voice Mail service>

[Activate] :   ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ **Enter ring time**

- When ring time is set to "0 Sec", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- For B Number, only Activate can be set.

[Set ring time] :   ▶ "Yes" ▶ **Enter ring time**

- When this is set to "0 Sec", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.

[Deactivate] :   ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] :   ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.
- For Number B, Activate/Deactivate can be checked.

[Play messages] :   ▶  or  ▶ "Yes" ▶ **Follow the voice prompts to operate**

-   indicates the number of new messages that the voice prompts presents when they are played. This number does not include saved messages.

[Voice Mail setting] :   ▶  or  ▶ "Yes" ▶ **Follow the voice prompts to operate**

[Set V.phoneVoiceMail] :   ▶ "ON" or "OFF"

[Check messages] :   ▶ "Yes"

<Tone/Vibration message notification>

[Ring/Vibrate Msg.Alert] :  ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

An alert sounds when a new message is recorded. The terminal vibrates according to the setting in Call Vibrate Alert in Vibrate effect.

- Set Voice Mail alert to "ON" and select a notification melody.

<Notify missed call>

[Activate] :   ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" or "No"

If a call is received with the terminal turned OFF or out of service area, you are notified by SMS of the call when the terminal is turned ON or moved into service area.

- Selecting "Yes" notifies you of only incoming calls with Caller ID, and selecting "No" notifies you of all incoming calls.

[Deactivate] :   ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] :   ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.

<Hide Voice Mail icon>

[Hide Voice Mail icon] :  ▶ "Yes"

The voice message icon disappears from the stand-by display.

Call waiting

When there is another incoming voice call during a voice call, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current voice call on hold and then answer the other voice call. You can also make a call to another party, putting the current call on hold.

- Call waiting does not start when a Videophone call is received during a call, however, it is recorded as a missed call.
- To use Call waiting, set Arrival call act to "Answer" in advance. Otherwise, the call waiting does not answer another incoming voice call during a call, even if it is activated.
- To answer the other incoming voice call during a voice call, perform the operations below.
 -  : Put the current call on hold and answers the incoming call.
 -  : The current call is disconnected and the calling screen of the incoming call appears. Press  and answer the call.
- During Call waiting, you can switch the party to talk to by pressing .
- When making a voice call to another party during a current voice call, press  and select "Dial up".

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate] :  ▶ "Yes"

[Deactivate] :  ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] :  ▶ "Yes"

Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service forwards voice calls and videophone calls to the phone of your home or office when there is an incoming voice/videophone call while FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is powered OFF or you do not answer the call within the specified ring time.

- To make Call Forwarding Service override Answer machine when both are activated, set ring time for Call Forwarding Service shorter than response time for Answer machine.

- If an incoming voice or videophone call is not answered with Call forwarding activated, it is recorded as a missed call and  (the number indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display.
- When using 2in1, activation, deactivation, and check setting of Call Forwarding Service can be set for Number A and B respectively. You can configure settings for Number A in A mode, and for Number B in B mode, and select one of them in Dual mode. Other items are common for both.

❖ Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step 1 : Activate Call Forwarding Service.

Step 2 : Register the phone number of forwarding destination.

Step 3 : Call comes in to FOMA terminal.

Step 4 : Unanswered calls are forwarded to the previously specified destination.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate] :  ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the forwarding number ▶  ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time

- When ring time is set to "0 Sec", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- For B Number, only Activate can be set.
- You can select a phone number from phonebook with , from Received calls with , and from Redial with .

[Deactivate] :  ▶ "Yes"

[Register The Forwarding Number] :  ▶ Enter the forwarding number ▶   or  ▶ "Yes"

- You can set Register The Forwarding Number when the service is active, and set Register The Forwarding Number as well as Activate when the service is inactive.
- For B Number, only Register The Forwarding Number can be set.
- To select a phone number, use the same procedures as to activate Call Forwarding service.

[Set if forwarding number busy] :  ▶ "Yes"

A call is answered by Voice Mail if the forwarding number is busy.

[Check setting] :  ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.
- For Number B, Activate/Deactivate can be checked.

◆ Setting whether to give guidance for Call forwarding

1 1 4 2 9 ▶ ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Nuisance Call Blocking Service

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, calls from the registered phone number are answered with a call rejection announcement or announcement and image, and automatically disconnected.

- If a call is received from a caller set to reject calls from, the ring alert does not ring and the call is not recorded in Received calls.

1 [Settings & NW services] 8 9 3 ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Register the caller]: 1 ▶ "Yes"

Register the phone number of the last call you answered as a nuisance caller.

- You cannot register a call you did not answer such as a missed call.

[Register selected No]: 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ ▶ "Yes"

Register the specified phone number as a nuisance caller.

- You can select a phone number from phonebook with , from Received calls with , and from Redial with .

[Delete all entries]: 3 ▶ "Yes"

[Delete last entry]: 4 ▶ "Yes"

Delete one phone number registered last. Repeating this step enables you to delete the most recently registered phone numbers one by one.

[Check the number of entries]: 5 ▶ "Yes"

Caller ID Request Service

An incoming call without the caller ID is answered with an announcement or announcement and image requesting caller ID, and automatically disconnected.

- An incoming call rejected by Caller ID Request Service is not recorded in Received calls and 2 (the digit indicates the number of missed calls) does not appear on the stand-by display.

1 [Settings & NW services] 8 4 2 ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate]: 1 ▶ "Yes"

[Deactivate]: 2 ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting]: 3 ▶ "Yes"

Dual Network Service

You can use the mova terminal with the same phone number on FOMA terminal. In a location out of the FOMA service and inside the mova service area, you can communicate with others by using mova terminal.

- FOMA terminal and mova terminal cannot be used simultaneously.
- Operation to switch Dual Network Service is performed from FOMA terminal/mova terminal not using the service.

1 [Settings & NW services] 8 9 5 ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Dual network switching]: 1 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the network security code

You can switch the network to use with your FOMA terminal.

[Check setting]: 2 ▶ "Yes"

English guidance

Switching language for voice prompts

You can set to display in English the guidance for setting network services such as Voice Mail service and voice guidance notifying out of service area etc.

1 [Settings & NW services] 8 9 4 ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Guidance setting]: 1 ▶ "Yes" ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ 1-3

- Select the language for the guidance played to the caller, then select the language for the receiver.

[Check setting]: 2 ▶ "Yes"

Service Numbers

You can make a call to DOCOMO-specified repair office or to general inquiries.

- The item varies or is not displayed by some UIM types.→P48
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, the caller ID selection screen is displayed.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[ドコモ故障問合せ]:  ▶ "Yes" ▶ 故障お問い合わせ(DOCOMO repair office) is dialed

[ドコモ総合案内・受付]:  ▶ "Yes" ▶ General Inquiries is dialed

Set arrival act

You can activate/deactivate or check the Arrival call act settings.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate]:  ▶ "Yes"

[Deactivate]:  ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting]:  ▶ "Yes"

Arrival call act

Selecting actions for an incoming call during a call

If subscribing to Voice Mail service, Call Forwarding Service and/or Call Waiting, you can set how to answer voice/videophone calls and 64K data communications received during a call.

- Unless you subscribe to Voice Mail service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting, you cannot answer calls received during a call.
- To use Arrival call acts, set Set arrival acts to Activate in advance.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Answer]: 

- When Call Waiting Service is activated, the service starts. When it is deactivated, you can answer a voice call after terminating a voice call or 64K data communication. Also, you can select actions from the submenu when a voice call is being received.→P67

[Voice Mail]: 

- The received voice/videophone calls are connected to Voice Mail service.

[Call Forwarding]: 

- The received voice/videophone calls and messages via 64K data communication are forwarded to the registered phone number. However, data received via 64K data communication during another data communication is not forwarded.

[Call Rejection]: 

- All calls are rejected.

Remote control

Setting remote control

You can access services such as Voice Mail service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone land-line phones, DOCOMO mobile phones, payphones, etc.

- When using Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service overseas, Remote control must be activated in advance.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate]:  ▶ "Yes"

[Deactivate]:  ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting]:  ▶ "Yes"

Multi Number

In addition to Basic Number, you can add and use up to 2 more numbers as phone numbers of FOMA terminal : Additional No.1 and No.2.

- Removing or replacing UIM may cause Multi Number settings (name, phone number, etc.) saved in FOMA terminal to be deleted. In this case, save the settings again.
- The name of Default phone number or Additional phone number is displayed on the incoming/outgoing call screen, Redial or Received calls screen.
- When making a call from Redial/Received calls, a name of Multi Number used for the previous call is displayed and that number is used.

[ME] [Settings & NW services] [8] [9] [7] ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Set Multi Number] : [1] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] : [2] ▶ "Yes"

[Phone Number Setting] : [3] ▶ Set required items ▶ [6]

- Enter the name and phone number of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2.
- The name and phone number set in Default phone number is the one from User information.
- When Multi number call is "Enable", you can select a Multi number to make a call from the submenu for outgoing calls.

[Incoming calls melody setting] : [4] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ Set required items ▶ [6]

- When Individual setting is set to "ON", you can specify Arrival call acts for each Additional number. Setting operations are the same as the one for Call alert.

◆ Selecting a phone number and making a call

- When Multi number call of Number Settings is "Disable", Multi number cannot be selected.

[Enter a phone number ▶ [ME] [4] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ [ME] or [i]]

- When Caller ID from Call option is set to "Unspecified", the Caller ID from Set multi number is applied.

2in1

This service allows you to use 2 phone numbers/mail addresses for 1 mobile phone; you can use FOMA terminal as if you have two different mobile phones by using the specific mode function.

- For details of 2in1, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".
- With 2in1 ON, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF then set it to ON again to obtain the correct Number B, or obtain Number B from User information.→P334

Also, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 non-subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF so that the user information is updated correctly.

■ Modes for 2in1

- Operation of each mode for 2in1→P367

A mode : Allow to use your phone number (Number A) to make calls, send/receive i-mode mails (Address A) and view the related data.

B mode : Allow to use the 2in1 phone number (Number B) to make calls, access to a site where WEB Mail (Address B) is available and view the related data.

Dual mode : Allow to use functions of both A and B.

✓INFORMATION-----

- Address B is used to send/receive mails to/from dedicated WEB Mail site.→P144
- With i-mode subscribed, B mode is also available for i-mode services.
- In B mode, Mail To and SMS To functions are unavailable.
- All data is deleted regardless of the 2in1 mode in the cases below.
 - Deleting all items of recorded messages, voice memos, redial, received calls, phonebook entries, mail logs
 - Deleting operation except "One item" or "Selected items" for Inbox
 - Deleting mail folder and/or phonebook group
 - Deleting all data
- When making a call in Dual mode with an external device connected, Number A is used.
- i-Channel ticker can be set for each mode.

◆ Setting 2in1

Set each option with 2in1 ON.

1 [Settings & NW services]
 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Yes" ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

- If 2in1 is already ON, 2in1 setting screen appears after the authentication.

<2in1 Mode switching>

[2in1 Mode switching]: -

<2in1 setting>

[2in1 setting]: ▶ **Select a mode** ▶ **Phonebook** ▶ **Select a phonebook entry** ▶ ▶ "Yes"

Phonebook display depends on the mode you selected.

- For "Common", Phonebook entries appear in both A and B modes.

: Phonebook entries in A mode : Phonebook entries in B mode

: Phonebook entries in both A and B modes

<Stand-by for mode>

[For Dual mode]: ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image** ▶ "Yes"

[For B mode]: ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image** ▶ "Yes"

<Set call/receive No.>

[Ring alert for No.B]: ▶ -

- Setting operations are the same as the one for Ring alerts & Sounds.
- Ring alert sounds according to this setting regardless of the setting of Notify/Not notify of caller ID.

[Identification mark]: ▶ **Set required items** ▶

Text strings such as "発信中 (Dialing)" in Identification mark with Mark set to ON is decorated on the incoming/outgoing call or calling screen.

- The setting of Number A also applies to Identification mark.

<2in1 function OFF>

[2in1 function OFF]: ▶ "Yes"

<Receive avoidance>

[Change rcv. avoidance]: ▶ **Set required items** ▶

Incoming calls from the number with Receive avoidance applied is restricted in any mode.

- Mode link for avoid. should be deactivated.

[Check rcv. avoidance]: ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.

[Mode link for avoid.]: ▶ "Yes"

When activated, only Number A is accepted in A mode and so is Number B in B mode.

- When activated, 2in1 mode switching is unavailable out of service area.

[Rcv. avoidance(Int.)]: ▶ "Yes"

- You need to deactivate Mode link for avoid.
- If operated overseas, an international call fee for the country where you stay is charged.

✓ INFORMATION

<2in1 mode switching>

- Even when 2in1 is OFF, you can set 2in1 to ON and activate 2in1 mode switching by holding down for 1 second or more and performing authentication. When 2in1 is ON, you can activate 2in1 mode switching in the same way.

<2in1 setting>

- When you subscribe to 2in1 for the first time, all saved phonebook entries at the time are set to "A". If you re-subscribe to 2in1, the previous 2in1 setting is used.

❖ 2in1 function in each mode

Only items with different actions depending on modes are listed (items with same actions as in A mode are excluded).

	Service	A mode	B mode	Dual mode
Voice/ Video Calls	Call	Number A	Number B	Select when dialing ^{*1}
	Receive ^{*2}	Depend on Receive avoidance		
Phonebook	Display ^{*3}	"A" "Common"	"B" "Common"	All
	Name conversion ^{*4}	"A" "Common"	"B" "Common"	All
	New entry	"A"	"B"	"A"
	Receive all items via infrared communication or iC transmission	Depend on Ph.book 2in1 setting at sending side ^{*5}		
	Receive 1 item via infrared communication/iC transmission	"A"	"B"	"A"
	Copy all items from microSD card	Depend on 2in1 setting when copying ^{*5}		

Service		A mode	B mode	Dual mode
	Copy 1 item from microSD card	"A"	"B"	"A"
	Copy to UIM phonebook	"Common" (Ph.book 2in1 setting is not set)		
	Copy from UIM phonebook	"A"	"B"	"A"
Display redial/received calls		Call from/Receive to Number A	Call from/Receive to Number B	All calls/receptions
Mail/SMS	Display	Mail/SMS sent or received to/from Address A/Number A	Mail/SMS received to Address B ^{*6} /Number B	All
	Send	Address A/Number A	Unavailable	Address A/Number A ^{*7}
	Receive ^{*8}	All		
	WEB Mail site	Unavailable	Available	Available
	Receive all items via infrared communication/iC transmission	Sender's state is taken over		
	Receive 1 item via infrared communication/iC transmission	Address A/Number A		
	Copy all items from microSD card	State at the time of copying is taken over		
	Copy 1 item from microSD card	Address A/Number A	Unavailable	Address A/Number A
	Move/Copy to UIM (SMS only)	Move/Copy after deleting the information of your number		
	Move/Copy from UIM (SMS only)	Move/Copy all as Number A	Unavailable	Move/Copy all as Number A
PushTalk	Call	Number A	Unavailable	Number A ^{*9}
	Receive	Number A		
	Display PushTalk phonebook	"A" "Common"	Unavailable	"A" "Common"

Service	A mode	B mode	Dual mode
i-αpli	Available	Available ^{*10}	Available ^{*11}
Display User information	Number A/Address A	Number B/Address B	All

- ^{*1} You can select also when calling to a party in the schedule or a party of custom menu. When calling from phonebook, the call is made from Number A to the party you set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting, and the call is made from Number B to the party you set to "B". The same applies to Quick dial and Headset quick-dial.
When calling from recorded messages voice memo while talking, redial, received calls or mail logs, the call is made according to the number at sending/receiving.
Note that, when calling from Call option, you can select either "Number A" or "Number B".
- ^{*2} Specified caller, Ring alert delay or Unregistered caller is not influenced by Ph.book 2in1 setting.
- ^{*3} Privacy mode operations take precedence when Secret attribute is set.
- ^{*4} If the phone number or mail address is saved in the phonebook, the name saved in the phonebook is displayed while calling/receiving/ringing/talking, as the sender of received mail, as the receiver of sent/unsent mail, as the requestor name of Location request or the location history log screen of GPS.
- ^{*5} If the sender or the terminal used for copying all items is incompatible with 2in1, all items in Ph.book 2in1 setting are set to "A".
- ^{*6} Messages saved to terminal from WEB Mail site, new arrival notification messages, alarm notification messages.
- ^{*7} Note that Address A is used to send mail and Number A is used to send SMS also to parties set as "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting.
Logs for Address B/Number B in the received message log cannot be used for sending.
- ^{*8} When a message is received to Address B/Number B in A mode, or to Address A/Number A in B mode, mail ring alert, light and vibrator do not operate.
- ^{*9} You cannot make a PushTalk call to a party set as "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting.
- ^{*10} i-αpli using mail function and i-αpli stand-by display are unavailable.
- ^{*11} i-αpli stand-by display is unavailable.

OFFICEED

"OFFICEED" is an intragroup flat-rate service provided with specified IMCS (Inbuilding Mobile Communication System). This service requires a separate subscription to use.

For details, refer to DOCOMO business website

(<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>). (In Japanese only)

1  [Settings & NW services] **8** **6** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Area display setting] : **1** ▶ **1** or **2**

-  appears on stand-by display in the OFFICEED area with this option set to ON.

[Activate forwarding] : **2** ▶ "Yes"

[Deactivate forwarding] : **3** ▶ "Yes"

[Check fwd setting] : **4** ▶ "Yes"

Additional service (Register USSD)

Registering new network services

When a new network service is introduced by DOCOMO, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.

1  [Settings & NW services] **8** **9** **1** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Register USSD] : **1** ▶ Move the cursor to a number ▶  ▶ Enter USSD code ▶ Enter a name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶ 

- USSD code is a service code given by DOCOMO and is used to set network services etc. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal.
- To use an additional service, select the service.
- To delete an additional service, move the cursor to the service and press , select **1** or **2** and select "Yes".

[Record reply message] : **2** ▶ Select a number ▶ Enter USSD code ▶ Enter a reply message (up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters) ▶ 

- When the additional service is executed, this message appears if the registered code was returned by the service center as a response.
- To delete a registered message, move the cursor to the message and press , select **1** or **2** and select "Yes".

Overview of international roaming service (WORLD WING)	372
Available services overseas	373
Preparing and checking for overseas use	374
Making a call from overseas	376
Receiving a call from overseas	376
Setting a search method for network	Network search mode 377
Setting telecommunications carrier to preferentially connect to	PLMN setting 377
Switching networks	3G/GSM setting 377
Displaying current Area service status	Area service status 377
Setting stand-by display for international roaming	378
Setting roaming guidance	Roaming guidance 378
Setting reception for international roaming	378
Using network service during international roaming	Network Service 379

Overview of international roaming service (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that allows you to make voice calls and access i-mode using network of affiliated telecommunications carriers even overseas, outside FOMA network services area.

- If you subscribed to FOMA service on or after September 1, 2005, separate subscription is not required to use WORLD WING. If you declined to use WORLD WING at subscription to FOMA service or canceled it, you need subscription again.
- If you subscribed to FOMA service on or before August 31, 2005 but not to WORLD WING, separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.
- There are some charging plans unavailable.
- UIM (not blue) compatible with WORLD WING must be installed in FOMA terminal.
- For available areas, charges and other details, refer to DOCOMO's "International service web page".

■ Overseas network

There are 3 types of networks overseas, W-CDMA (3G), GPRS and GSM.

Network	Description
W-CDMA(3G)	Third generation mobile communications network compliant with world standard 3GPP ^{*1} .
GPRS^{*2}	A 2.5th mobile communication network that high speed packet communication using GSM communication method is available.
GSM^{*3}	Second generation mobile communications network in digital method most prevailing worldwide.

*1 Abbreviation of 3rd Generation Partnership Project. 3GPP is an area standardization organization established to develop standard technology specifications for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

*2 Abbreviation of General Packet Radio Service. By speeding up GSM, data communication such as packet communication is facilitated.

*3 Abbreviation of Global System for Mobile Communications. The world's most prevailing mobile network system.

■ Country code of major countries

For international calls or Int'l call assist, use country codes listed below.

Area	Code	Area	Code
Australia	61	Macau	853
Austria	43	Malaysia	60
Belgium	32	Maldives	960
Brazil	55	New Caledonia	687
Canada	1	New Zealand	64
China	86	Norway	47
Czech	420	Peru	51
Egypt	20	Philippines	63
Fiji	679	Russia	7
Finland	358	Singapore	65
France	33	Spain	34
Germany	49	Sweden	46
Greece	30	Switzerland	41
Holland	31	Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689
Hong Kong	852	Taiwan	886
Hungary	36	Thailand	66
India	91	Turkey	90
Indonesia	62	United Kingdom	44
Italy	39	USA	1
Japan	81	Viet Nam	84
Korea	82		

- For country codes, refer to DOCOMO's "International service web page".

Available services overseas

Available communication services vary by the telecommunications carrier and the network of the country you stay.

- For information about countries, areas, telecommunications carriers and other details applicable to the service, refer to DOCOMO's "International service web page".
- Call and stand-by durations available may be nearly halved for some network or other conditions in the country you stay.

◆ Network and available communication services

- Some services may be unavailable depending on the telecommunications carrier or area.
- A packet communication fee overseas differs from the one in Japan.

Communication services	Network		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
Voice call ^{*2}	○	○	○
Videophone call ^{*2, 3}	○	×	×
i-mode communication ^{*4}	○	○	×
i-mode mail	○	○	×
SMS	○	○	○
i-Channel ^{*5}	○	○	×
i-Widget	○	○	×
i-concier	○	○	×
Position location of GPS ^{*6}	○	○	○
Data communication (Packet communication) ^{*7}	○	○	×

*1 When  (red) appears, sending/receiving a voice call/SMS and position location of GPS are available.

*2 When using 2in1, Number B is not available for making calls.
When using Multi Number, additional numbers are not available for making calls.

*3 Make and receive international videophone calls to/from parties using certain overseas 3G telecommunications carriers or those using FOMA terminals overseas.

*4 Connections from Full Browser and TVlink list to the data broadcasting site are included. Note that Activate 1Seg is unavailable overseas.

Preinstalled i-appli, "日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)" and "日中版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-C Speech Translation for F)" are available also overseas.

*5 Note that packet communication fee is charged for each reception of i-Channel (Communications allowance in Japan not applicable). The same goes for auto update of Basic channel.

*6 When connecting to a service usage setting site, connection is established, but an error screen appears and these sites are not available. A packet communication fee is charged even in this case.

*7 64K data communication connecting to a PC etc. is unavailable overseas.

■ SMS

SMS can be sent to or received from parties using overseas service providers except DOCOMO. For countries and overseas telecommunications carriers available, refer to DOCOMO's "International service web page".

- When sending SMS to FOMA terminal, enter its phone number in the same way as in Japan.
- When sending SMS to a party using an overseas telecommunications carrier except DOCOMO, enter "+" and "Country code" before the receiver's phone number. Alternatively, enter "010", "Country code" and "receiver's mobile phone number" in this order (Omit leading "0", if exists, from the receiver's phone number).
- If SMS sent to a party using an overseas telecommunications carrier contains characters incompatible with the receiver's terminal, they may not be correctly displayed. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and/or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

◆ Network Services

When subscribing to network services, you can also perform operations such as setting/canceling from overseas.

- Some network services that can be set or canceled may be unavailable depending on an overseas telecommunications carrier.
For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and/or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Preparing and checking for overseas use

- Overseas usage fees are charged together with your monthly usage fees. For some overseas telecommunications carriers used, overseas usage fees is charged in a bill of the next or subsequent month. Also, usages in the same charging period may be charged in different months.

◆ Preparing before leaving Japan

❖ Battery charge

- Handling precautions of AC adapter→P18
- Charging battery using AC adapter→P51

❖ Using i-mode

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■ Setting in Japan

i Menu→"English"→"Options"→"International Settings"→"i-mode services Settings"

■ Setting overseas

iMenu→"International Settings"→"i-mode services Settings"

❖ Using network services

When using Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service overseas, you need to subscribe to each network services and activate Remote control in advance.

◆ Usage in the country you stay

■ Connecting to network

When FOMA terminal is turned ON overseas, it is automatically connected to an available network.→P377

■ Viewing display

- The icon indicating the network in use and the operator name being connected appear.→P378
- Icon definitions are as shown below. Icons do not appear while using FOMA network.
 /  : Connected to 3G Network  : Connected to GPRS Network
 : Connected to GSM Network

■ Date/Time

When setting Auto time adjust to "ON", the time or time difference is corrected when FOMA terminal is turned ON or when time/time difference correction information is received from the network of the telecommunications carrier you are connected. When time difference is corrected, a message indicating it appears.→P55

■ Caller ID notification

Even when sending/receiving a call with Caller ID notification set, Caller ID may not be notified or incorrect Caller ID may be displayed depending on telecommunications carriers used. In this case, you cannot make a call from Received calls.

◆ Service inquiries

For loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas, see "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" or "Failures encountered overseas" on the back cover of this manual. Please be careful that you are charged also for calls and/or communications, if any, occurring after loss or theft.

- For the latest information about international call access code and international prefix number for the universal number, refer to DOCOMO's "International service web page".

■ International call access codes for major countries (table 1)

The international call access codes for major countries are as shown below.

Area	Number	Area	Number
Australia	0011	Macau	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021/0014	Monaco	00
Canada	011	New Zealand	00
China	00	Norway	00
Czech	00	Philippines	00
Denmark	00	Poland	00
Finland	00	Portugal	00
France	00	Russia	810
Germany	00	Singapore	001
Greece	00	Spain	00
Holland	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	002
India	00	Thailand	001
Indonesia	001	Turkey	00
Ireland	00	United Arab Emirates	00
Italy	00	United Kingdom	00
Korea	001	USA	011
Luxembourg	00	Viet Nam	00

■ International prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2)

The international prefix numbers for the universal number of individual countries are as shown below.

Area	Code	Area	Code
Argentina	00	Italy	00
Australia	0011	Korea	001
Austria	00	Luxembourg	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021	New Zealand	00
Bulgaria	00	Norway	00
Canada	011	Peru	00
China	00	Philippines	00
Columbia	009	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Singapore	001
Finland	990	South Africa	09
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Holland	00	Switzerland	00
Hong Kong	001	Taiwan	00
Hungary	00	Thailand	001
Ireland	00	United Kingdom	00
Israel	014	USA	011

- Some of the above numbers may be unavailable.
- Universal numbers are only available for the countries listed above.
- When a call is made from a mobile phone, a local call charge is required.
- When a call is made from a hotel, you may be charged for a phone usage fee. Before using the phone, ask the hotel about it.
- In many cases, Universal numbers are unavailable from mobile phones, pay phones or hotels.

◆ Setting after returned to Japan

When FOMA terminal is turned ON after you return to Japan, it is automatically connected to FOMA network. If not connected to FOMA network, set Network search mode to "Auto" and reset 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO".

Making a call from overseas

You can make voice and videophone calls from overseas using international roaming service.

- For countries and overseas telecommunications carriers available, refer to DOCOMO's "International service web page".
- For videophone calls, the other party's image displayed on your FOMA terminal may be disturbed or call connection may be unavailable for a reason on the connected terminal.
- If you register names and country codes of frequently-called countries by Int'l call assist (→P65), dialing operation can be performed easily.

Making an international call (including Japan)

[0] (1 sec. or more) ▶ Country code ▶ Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ [OK] or [END]

- Press **[0]** for 1 second or more to enter "+".
- Omit the leading "0" in area code (city code). However, the leading "0" is required to dial to land-line phones in Italy etc.

Selecting country code to make an international call (including Japan)

You can select a country code registered in Country code setting in Int'l call assist (→P65).

[Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ [ME] [2] ▶ Select Call type field ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ Select Int'l call field ▶ [2] ▶ Select Country code field ▶ Select Country code ▶ [ME] or [OK] ▶ "Yes"]

Leading "0" of an area code (city code) is converted to "+" and the selected country code.

- When "V.phone" is selected for "Call type", press **[OK]** to select Chara-den to display during a call.

Making an international call (including Japan) by using the phonebook

- It applies only to phone numbers beginning with "0" in phonebook.

- Country code of Auto switch of Int'l call assist (→P65) must be set to "ON", and the Country code setting must be set to the country to make a call to in advance.

[1] [Q] ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶ [OK] or [END] ▶ "Yes"

Leading "0" of the area code (city code) is converted to "+" and country code set.

Making a call inside the country you stay

- A call may be made without displaying the message.

[1] Enter a phone number ▶ [OK] or [END] ▶ "No, use original"

Using phonebook : [Q] ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶ [OK] or [END] ▶ "No, use original"

Making a call to WORLD WING user overseas

To make a call, enter "+" and Japan's country code "81" even when staying in the same country as the party to be called.

[1] [0] (1 sec. or more) ▶ 81 ▶ 90-XXXX-XXXX or 80-XXXX-XXXX ▶ [OK] or [END]

Receiving a call from overseas

You can receive an international call in the same way as in Japan.

When letting a party make a call from Japan

In the same way as when you are in Japan, let a calling party make a call by entering your phone number.

090-XXXX-XXXX or 080-XXXX-XXXX

When letting a party make a call from outside of Japan

Let a calling party make a call in the same way as making an international call to Japan, because the call is routed via Japan regardless of the country the caller stays.

Int'l access No. ▶ 81 (Country code of Japan) ▶ 90-XXXX-XXXX or 80-XXXX-XXXX

INFORMATION

- Regardless of the country the caller stays or the call is made from, the call is forwarded internationally from Japan. A caller is charged for a call fee to Japan, and a receiver is charged for a reception fee.

Network search mode

Setting a search method for network

You are reconnected to an available network when starting international roaming or FOMA terminal is placed out of the current network.

- Setting may be unavailable for some radio wave and/or network conditions.
- Telecommunications carriers other than NTT DOCOMO cannot be selected in Japan.

1 [Settings & NW services] -

- When "Auto" is set, the terminal automatically reconnects to an available network. When "Manual" is set, select a network from the connected network list that appears after available networks are searched.
- When "Network re-search" is selected, operations of each setting are executed.

✓INFORMATION

- appears for unavailable network in PLMN List, 3G appears for 3G Network and GSM appears for GSM/GPRS Network.
- In the cases below, "select net" appears in operator name field. Calls or mail may not be available until an available network is selected and the terminal is in the network.
 - When moving out of the network connected by "Manual"
 - After "Manual" is set, when the terminal is moved to a different network and turned on
 - When network connection failed

PLMN setting

Setting telecommunications carrier to preferentially connect to

- This function is enabled when Network search mode is set to "Auto".

1 [Settings & NW services]

Networks are displayed in descending order of priority. To display detail information, select a network.

2 Move the cursor to a network

Adding networks :

- Up to 20 networks can be added.

① -

- When "PLMN manual select" is set, enter country code (MCC) by 3 digits and network number (MNC) by 2-3 digits, then press . When "PLMN select by list" is set, select a country name, then select a network.
- When "Set VPLMN to PLMN" is set, move the cursor to a network and press . Go to Step 3.

② -

Deleting : Move the cursor to a network - "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a network.
- To delete selected items, select them . To delete all items, authentication is required.

3 Select a priority level

The telecommunications carrier moves to the selected priority with a different level.

- To give the lowest priority, select "<Insert last>".

3G/GSM setting

Switching networks

- When setting to "AUTO", automatically connected to an available network even when moving to a service area of a different type of network.

1 [Settings & NW services] -

✓INFORMATION

- When setting to "AUTO", if both 3G and GSM/GPRS Networks are detected, 3G Network precedes.

Area service status

Displaying current Area service status

1 [Settings & NW services]

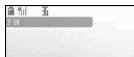
- You can use voice/videophone calls etc. by CS, and i-mode, i-mode mail, etc. by PS.

Setting stand-by display for international roaming

◆ Displaying operator name

You can display an operator name at the top of the display.

- The operator name does not appear when FOMA network is used or the terminal is out of service area.



1 [Settings & NW services] 9 2 3 ▶ 1 or 2

◆ Two time zone clocks

You can display the times of the country you stay and Japan.



1 [Settings & NW services] 9 4 ▶ 1 or 2

✓INFORMATION

- After time or time difference is corrected, time is displayed in 24 hour system.
- The time in Japan is displayed on the right. To display time in another country on the right, set this to "OFF", set the design of Clock display format to "World time clock", and set the time zone.
- Two time zone clocks are not displayed if movie/i-motion or i-appli is set for stand-by display.
- The time of the country you stay is displayed on the sub-display.

Roaming guidance

Setting roaming guidance

You can set to play voice prompts to notify the caller that the call is in international roaming.

- Set before leaving Japan.

1 [Settings & NW services] 8 5

2 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- Press 3 and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

✓INFORMATION

- Even when this setting is Deactivate, a ringing sound set by a telecommunications carrier is played.
- Even when this setting is Activate, voice prompts in a foreign language may be played depending on a telecommunications carrier.

Setting reception for international roaming

◆ Setting Bar calls at roaming

- This function may not be available depending on the overseas telecommunications carrier.
- 64K data communication connecting to a PC etc. is unavailable overseas.

1 [Settings & NW services] 9 2 4

2 1 ▶ 1 or 2

Canceling Bar calls at roaming : 2

Checking current setting : 3 ▶ "Yes"

3 "Yes" ▶ Enter the network security code

◆ Setting Notify missed call

This function notify you of the arrival information (received date and caller ID) by SMS when you are not in the area the radio waves can be reached, turn the terminal off or cannot answer the call during international roaming.

1 [Settings & NW services] 9 2 5

2 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

Checking current setting : 3 ▶ "Yes"

Setting Notify missed call oversea : 4 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

Using network service during international roaming

You can make settings from overseas for Voice Mail, Call forwarding and other services.

- For details of network services, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and/or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- Remote control must be activated in advance.
- If operated overseas, an international call fee for the country where you stay is charged.

1  [Settings & NW services]   ► Operate by selecting a menu item

<Voice Mail(Int.)>

[Activate]:  

[Deactivate]:  

[Play messages]:  

[Voice mail settings]:  

[Set ring time]:  

<Call forwarding(Int.)>

[Activate]:  

[Deactivate]:  

[Call fwd. settings]:  

[Remote control(Int.)]: 

[Caller ID request(Int.)]: 

[Roaming guidance(Int.)]: 

2 "Yes" ► Follow the voice prompts to operate

PC Connection

Data communication	382
Before using data communication	383
Flow of setup for data communication (OBEX™ communication)	384
Flow of setup for data communication	385
Using CD-ROM	385
Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink	385

For details of data communication, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF version) in the attached CD-ROM or on NTT DOCOMO website.

To see PDF version of "Manual for PC Connection", Adobe® Reader® is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

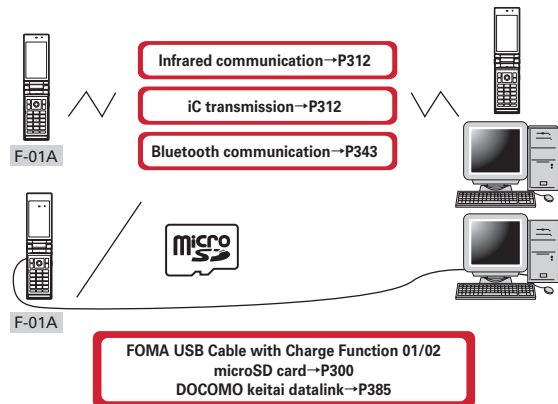
Data communication

Communications available by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC are classified to **Packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX™ communication)**.

- To make packet or 64K data communications or edit data such as the phonebook using a PC connected, installation of the software in the attached CD-ROM and various settings are required.
- For packet communication overseas, use IP connection (packet communication is unavailable with PPP connection). 64K data communication is not available overseas.
- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be performed connecting with PDA of DOCOMO, musea or sigmarion III. Note that update is required for using musea. For details of update method etc., refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

◆ Data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

This service allows you to exchange data such as image, music, phonebook, mail, etc., with other FOMA terminals or PCs.



◆ Packet communication

This option is available by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC via USB cable or Bluetooth device and configuring settings.

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication can be performed at a reception speed of up to 7.2 Mbps and a transmission speed of up to 384 Kbps by using an access point that supports FOMA packet communication such as mopera U, DOCOMO's Internet connection service. It offers by the best effort method that actual transmission speed varies by the communication environment or the severity of congestion. Note that high communication fees are charged for the large-volume data such as viewing websites containing images or downloading data (e.g. applications, music, movies, OS or update of antivirus software).

- * When connecting to an access point out of the FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area or an access point not compatible with HIGH-SPEED, or when using devices not compatible with HIGH-SPEED such as DOCOMO's PDA, musea or sigmarion III, the connection is made at the speed of 384 Kbps for both reception and transmission.
- * When performing data communication via Bluetooth function, though the communication speed of FOMA terminal is equal to HIGH-SPEED, communication may not be performed by maximum speed because the communication speed between Bluetooth devices.
- * 7.2 Mbps and 384 Kbps are the maximum speed based on the technical specification, not the actual communication speed. Actual communication speed varies depending on network congestion or communication environment.

◆ 64K data communication

This option is available by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC via USB cable or Bluetooth device and configuring settings.

Since communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, it is suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents.

Data can be sent/received by using access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U of DOCOMO's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points.

Be careful that a high cost is charged for long-time communications.

Before using data communication

◆ Operating environment

The operation environment for using data communication is as shown below. It may vary depending on PC system configurations.

Item	Requirements
Computer	PC/AT compatible computer For USB cable connection : USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) For Bluetooth connection : Compliant with Bluetooth Standard Ver. 1.1, 1.2 or 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles) More than 800×600 dots for display resolution and High Color 16 bits are recommended
OS (Japanese version)*	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista
Memory requirements	Windows 2000 : 64MB or more Windows XP : 128MB or more Windows Vista : 512MB or more
Hard disk capacity*	5MB or more free disk space

* Recommended environment to operate DOCOMO Connection Manager is as shown below.
OS : Windows 2000 SP4 or later, Windows XP SP2 or later (for details, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.)

Hard disk capacity : 15MB or more free disk space

- DOCOMO does not guarantee operations on upgraded OS.
- Utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Operation is not guaranteed in an environment except that described above nor DOCOMO assumes responsibility for pertaining to operation under such conditions.

❖ Devices required

The devices below are required in addition to FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "F-01A用CD-ROM (CD-ROM for F-01A)"
- * USB cable for PC is not available because the connector type is different.
- * If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.
- * When performing Bluetooth connection, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 or FOMA USB Cable is not required.

❖ Usage precautions

❖ Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet on a PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter referred to as Provider) is usually required. This charge is paid directly to the Provider, and is separated from the FOMA service charge. For details on usage charges, contact your Provider.

- DOCOMO's Internet connection service mopera U is available.
mopera U is a charged service requiring subscription. You can also use a plan which charges monthly fee only for a month you use this service. For Internet connection with FOMA terminal, to use mopera U applicable to broadband connections is recommended.

❖ Dialup connection (Provider etc.)

Packet and 64K data communications have different connection destinations. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is unavailable.
- For service and connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.
<http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html>

❖ Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the conditions below must be satisfied.

- You must be within the FOMA service area
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64K
- For Bluetooth connection, the PC must be compliant with Bluetooth Standards Ver. 1.1, 1.2 or 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles)
- * Even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy or the radio wave conditions are poor.

Flow of setup for data communication (OBEX™ communication)

When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional), install FOMA communication configuration file in advance.

Downloading and installing FOMA communication configuration file

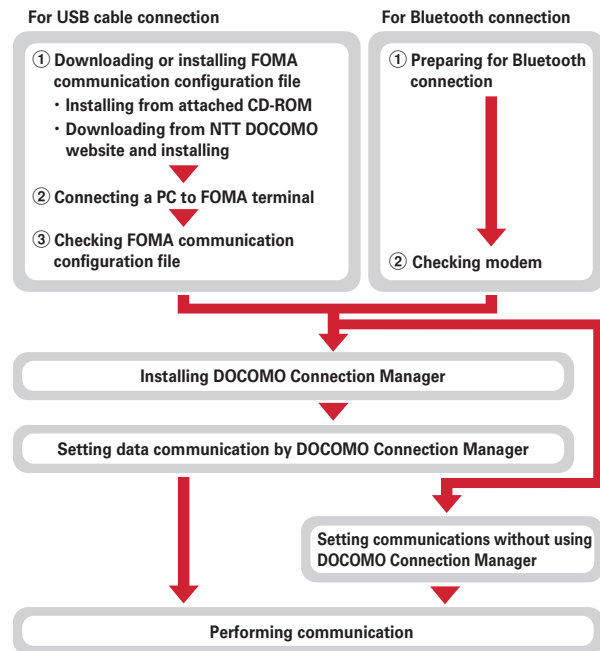
- Installing from attached CD-ROM
- Downloading from NTT DOCOMO website and installing



Data transfer

Flow of setup for data communication

This section describes the setup work needed to perform packet communication or 64K data communication by connecting the terminal to a PC via USB cable or Bluetooth device.



Using CD-ROM

Attached CD-ROM contains software for Data Communication with FOMA terminals, PDF version "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List". For details, refer to attached CD-ROM.

- When the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC's CD-ROM drive, the warning screen from Internet Explorer security setting may appear, but may be ignored. Click "Yes".

Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink

"DOCOMO keitai datalink" is a software for backing up phonebook, mail and other data in your mobile phone to a PC and edit them. It can be downloaded from NTT DOCOMO website. For details and downloading of this software, refer to the website below. You can also access to this site from the attached CD-ROM. <http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (in Japanese only)

For details including downloading procedure, data that can be transferred, operating environments, installing procedures and operations, refer to the website above. For operations after installation, see Help in the software. Using DOCOMO keitai datalink requires USB cable (optional).

Appendix/Troubleshooting

Menu list	388
Melody List	401
List of characters assigned to dial keys (5-touch input method)	402
Pictogram list	403
Special symbol list	408
Smiley list	411
Multiaccess combinations	414
Multitask combinations	416
Services available for the FOMA terminal	417
Introduction of options and related devices	417
Data interchange with external device	
Playing movie using FOMA terminal, PC, etc.	418
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting	419
If error message appears mentioned below	Error messages 422
Warranty and After-Sales Service	427
i-mode fault diagnosis site	428
Updating software	Software update 429
Protecting the FOMA terminal from harmful data	Scanning function 433
Main specifications	435
Number of saved/registered/protected items in F-01A	438
Specific absorption rate (SAR) of mobile phone	439
Export Administration Regulations	441
Intellectual Property Right	441

Menu list

- Menu list for the case Select startup menu is set to "Basic menu" is described.
- Settings of menus indicated in **red** can be restored to the default in Reset.

Mail

Menu	Default	Page
1 1 Inbox	—	148
1 2 Compose message	—	134
1 3 Compose Decome-Anime	—	137
1 4 Unsent messages	—	148
1 5 Outbox	—	148
1 6 Check new message	—	144
1 7 WEB Mail	—	144
1 8 SMS/Area Mail		
1 8 1 SMS		
1 8 1 1 Compose SMS	—	164
1 8 1 2 UIM Inbox	—	166
1 8 1 3 UIM Outbox	—	166
1 8 1 4 SMS settings	Font type : Japanese SMS report request : Not request Keep in SMS center : 3 days SMA Center : DOCOMO Address : 81903101652 Type of Number : International	166
1 8 1 5 Check new SMS	—	165
1 8 2 Area Mail		
1 8 2 1 Receive setting	YES	163
1 8 2 2 Receive entry	—	163
1 8 2 3 Beep time	Beep time (1-30 sec) : 10	163
1 9 Receive option	—	144
1 * Template		
1 * 1 Decome	—	139
1 * 2 Decome-Anime	—	139
1 0 Mail settings		

Menu	Default	Page
1 0 1 Alert settings		
1 0 1 1 Mail alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音 2 (Tone2) Light alert : In order/Aqua Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	90
1 0 1 2 MessageR alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音 2 (Tone2) Light alert : In order/Aqua Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	90
1 0 1 3 MessageF alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音 2 (Tone2) Light alert : In order/Aqua Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	90
1 0 2 Sort method	[Auto-sort ON/OFF] Inbox, Outbox auto sort : ON [Inbox sort methods, Outbox sort methods] —	155
1 0 3 Signature	[Auto add] ON [Edit signature] —	157
1 0 4 Reply setting		
1 0 4 1 Reply format	Quote : No Quote characters : >	158
1 0 4 2 Activate quick reply	ON	158
1 0 4 3 Quick reply presets	了解です (I see.) 後で連絡します (I'll contact you later.) ごめんなさいm(_ _)m (Sorry) ありがとうございます (Thank you) OK	158
1 0 5 Mail group	—	157
1 0 6 Display settings		
1 0 6 1 Display priority	Show message	159
1 0 6 2 Receive option	OFF	157
1 0 6 3 Incoming msg. attach	Select all	158

Menu	Default	Page
1 0 6 4 Attachment auto-play	Auto play	159
1 0 6 5 Message list	List style : 2 row (addr+sub) Display preview : Yes Auto status change : ON	158
1 0 6 6 Auto-display	MessageR preferred	161
1 0 6 7 Layout in flip mode	Style 1	158
1 0 7 Check msg option	Select all	157

■ i-mode

Menu	Default	Page
2 1 iMenu	—	170
2 2 Bookmark	—	175
2 3 Screen memo	—	177
2 4 Browser history	—	171
2 5 Go to location		
2 5 1 Enter URL	http://	174
2 5 2 Entry URL log	—	174
2 6 MessageR&F		
2 6 1 MessageR	—	161
2 6 2 MessageF	—	161
2 6 3 Check new message	—	144
2 6 4 Check msg option	Select all	157
2 7 i-Channel		
2 7 1 i-Channel list	—	187
2 7 2 i-Channel ticker	Show ticker : Yes Ticker speed : Moderate Text size : Medium Ticker pattern : Pattern 1	188
2 7 3 Reset i-Channel	—	188
2 8 i-mode settings		
2 8 1 Access shortcuts	—	176
2 8 2 Connection timeout	60 seconds	181
2 8 3 Display light time	Always on	182
2 8 4 i-mode arv. act:PT	PushTalk preferred	79
2 8 5 Certificate		
2 8 5 1 Manage certificate ^{*1}	CA Certificate 1-16, DOCOMO Cert1 : On	183

Menu	Default	Page
2 8 5 2 Certificate download	—	184
2 8 5 3 Certificate host	Host : DOCOMO	185
2 8 5 4 Skip password	Yes	185
2 8 6 Image & Effect	Set image display, Animation : Display Use phone information : Yes Sound effect setting : ON	182
2 8 7 i-motion	Auto replay setting : Auto Play ON	187
2 8 8 Host selection	i-mode (UIM)	181
2 9 Full Browser		
2 9 1 Home	—	192
2 9 2 Bookmark	—	192
2 9 3 Go to location		
2 9 3 1 Enter URL	http://	192
2 9 3 2 Entry URL log	—	192
2 9 4 Browser history	—	192
2 9 5 Browser settings		
2 9 5 1 Home URL	http://www.google.co.jp	196
2 9 5 2 Cookie set/delete	Cookie : Valid	196
2 9 5 3 Script setting	Script Setting : Valid Window open guard : Invalid	196
2 9 5 4 Display mode setting	PC mode(full scale)	196
2 9 5 5 Image&Effect setting	Set image display, Animation : Display Use phone information : Yes Sound effect setting : ON	196
2 9 5 6 Access setting	No	196
2 9 5 7 Referer setting	Send	196
2 9 5 8 Screen view setting	With menu icon view	196
2 9 5 9 Auto-access setting	Confirm each time	196
2 9 6 Search engine	Google検索 (Google search), Google ニュース検索 (Google news search), Google画像検索 (Google image search)	324

■ i-appli

Menu	Default	Page
3 1 Software list	—	243
3 2 i-appli call logs	—	258

Menu	Default	Page
[3][3] i-appli settings		
[3][3][1] Sort software	By access time	260
[3][3][2] Auto start	ON	256
[3][3][3] Software info disp.	OFF	243
[3][3][4] Display light time	Terminal Setting	246
[3][3][5] Vibrate effect	ON	246
[3][3][6] i-appli shortcuts	—	256
[3][3][7] Sound effect volume	Level 4	246
[3][3][8] i-Widget settings		
[3][3][8][1] i-Widget sound effect	ON	262
[3][3][8][2] i-Widget roaming set	No	262
[3][3][9] i-appli call DL set	Not Reject	258
[3][4] Display history	[Start failure hist., Abnormal exit hist., Security error hist.] —	244 257 260
[3][5] About i-appli	—	242

■ Phonebook & Logs

Menu	Default	Page
[4][1] Phonebook	Show all names	84
[4][2] Phonebook new entry	—	82
[4][3] Add group	—	84
[4][4] Phonebook(UIM) new entry	—	82
[4][5] PushTalk phonebook	—	77
[4][6] Received calls	—	61
[4][7] Redial	—	61
[4][8] Ans.Machine&Voice memo		
[4][8][1] Answer machine	OFF	70
[4][8][2] Recorded messages	—	71
[4][8][3] Record voice memo	—	335
[4][8][4] Voice memos	—	71
[4][9] Mail logs		
[4][9][1] Sent msg log	—	153
[4][9][2] Received msg log	—	153

Menu	Default	Page
[4][*] User information	Name, Mail address : — My phone number : The subscribing terminal phone number	56 333

■ Data Box

Menu	Default	Page
[5][1] My Picture	—	288
[5][2] MUSIC	—	235
[5][3] Music&Video Channel	—	231
[5][4] i-motion	—	292
[5][5] Melody	—	298
[5][6] My Document	—	316
[5][7] Kisekai Tool	—	102
[5][8] Machi-chara	—	297
[5][9] Chara-den	—	298
[5][*] 1Seg	—	318
[5][0] Other	—	317

■ Life Kit

Menu	Default	Page
[6][1] Bar code reader	—	210
[6][2] Ir/iC/PC connection		
[6][2][1] Receive Ir data	—	314
[6][2][2] Send all Ir data	—	313
[6][2][3] Send all via iC	—	313
[6][2][4] Save received data	—	314
[6][2][5] Data exchange settings	End alert : OFF Auto authentication : OFF Ph.book image sending : ON	316
[6][2][6] USB mode settings*2	Communication mode	307
[6][3] microSD	—	304
[6][4] Camera		
[6][4][1] Still camera	—	200
[6][4][2] Movie camera	—	203
[6][5] Sound recorder	—	204

Menu	Default	Page
6.6 Data Center		
6.6.1 Access Data Center	—	128
6.6.2 Synchronization log	—	129
6.6.3 Sync setting	Contact image sending : OFF	129
6.7 Map/GPS		
6.7.1 Map	—	274
6.7.2 Position location	—	274
6.7.3 Map/GPS appli	—	276
6.7.4 Loc. history	—	285
6.7.5 Notify location	—	284
6.7.6 Position settings		
6.7.6.1 Post-Position task	Read map	276
6.7.6.2 Position accuracy	Standard mode	286
6.7.6.3 Positioning alert	Ring alert, Vibrate alert, Light alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	286
6.7.7 Notify/Provide menu		
6.7.7.1 Notification setting		
6.7.7.1.1 LCS clients list	—	284
6.7.7.1.2 Position accuracy	Standard mode	286
6.7.7.1.3 Positioning alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音5 (Tone5) Vibrate alert : Pattern B Ring time (sec) : 10 Light alert : Turn light on/Amethyst	286
6.7.7.2 Request setting		
6.7.7.2.1 Request permit/deny	Always deny	282
6.7.7.2.2 Position accuracy	Standard mode	286
6.7.7.2.3 Service settings	—	283
6.7.7.2.4 Service host URL	Host : DOCOMO	284
6.7.7.2.5 Positioning alert		
6.7.7.2.5.1 Loc. request-accept	Ring alert : Melody/着信音6 (Tone6) Vibrate alert : Pattern C Ring time (sec) : 20 Light alert : Turn light on/Grape	286
6.7.7.2.5.2 Loc. request-verify	Ring alert : Melody/着信音6 (Tone6) Vibrate alert : Pattern C Ring time (sec) : 20 Light alert : Turn light on/Grape	286

Menu	Default	Page
6.7.8 Map setting		
6.7.8.1 Select Map	地図アプリ (Map Application)	285
6.7.8.2 Map activate setting	ON	286
6.8 Pedometer		
6.8.1 Steps/Calories info	—	340
6.8.2 Pedometer settings	Use Stride (30-120cm) : 60cm Weight (30-120kg) : 50kg	340
6.9 1Seg		
6.9.1 Activate 1Seg	—	216
6.9.2 Program guide	—	219
6.9.3 1Seg image/video	—	318
6.9.4 Set/Timer list	—	222
6.9.5 Recording result	—	225
6.9.6 TVlink	—	220
6.9.7 Channel list	—	215
6.9.8 User setting		
6.9.8.1 Display setting	Light setting : Auto adjust Display subtitle : In silent mode Subtitle size : Medium(Standard) Subtitle language : 1st language Display status icons : ON デロップ表示 (Show ticker) Incoming message/Receiving info. : Not display	225
6.9.8.2 Sound setting	Switch sound : 1st sound Main <-> sub sound : Main sound Voice output to BT : Prompt message	225
6.9.8.3 Data broadcasting		
6.9.8.3.1 Connection timeout	60 seconds	225
6.9.8.3.2 Image & Effect	Set image display, Animation : Display Sound effect setting : ON	182
6.9.8.3.3 ToruCa from 1Seg	ON	225
6.9.8.3.4 Restore storage area	—	225
6.9.8.3.5 Reset permit status	—	225
6.9.8.4 Close setting	Continue	225
6.9.8.5 Record setting	Record to : Phone Record time : Unspecified	225

Menu	Default	Page
6 * 1 Bluetooth		
6 * 1 Bluetooth ON/ OFF	—	345
6 * 2 Device list	—	344
6 * 3 Register new devices	—	344
6 * 4 Accept registered	—	345
6 * 5 Accept dialup device	—	343
6 * 6 Bluetooth settings		
6 * 6 1 Time-out to search	Search time (sec) : 5	347
6 * 6 2 Bluetooth info	Device name : F01A Device type : Mobile phone Device address : Depend on terminals Services : HFP, HSP, A2DP, AVRCP, DUN, OPP	347
6 * 6 3 Set authentications	Authentication : OFF	347
6 * 6 4 Forward ring alert	Forward	347
6 * 6 5 Session number	Without password	347
6 * 6 6 Start MUSIC Player	ON	347
6 * 7 Connecting devices	—	346

■ Accessory

Menu	Default	Page
7 1 Scheduler	—	326
7 2 Notepad	—	337
7 3 Alarm clock	—	325
7 4 Calculator	—	337
7 5 Dictionaries		
7 5 1 Jpn Dic (Gakken Mobile Jpn Dic)	—	339
7 5 2 JE Dic (Gakken Mobile JE Dic)	—	339
7 5 3 EJ Dic (Gakken Mobile EJ Dic)	—	339
7 5 4 Today's trivia	—	339
7 5 5 Today in history	—	339
7 6 Countdown timer	03 min.	324
7 7 Fake call		
7 7 1 Activate	—	334

Menu	Default	Page
7 7 2 Alert&Time settings	Call start time : Ring now Ring alert : Melody/着信音1 (Tone1) Alert volume : Level 4	334

■ Settings & NW services*3

Menu	Default	Page
8 1 Alerts & Sounds		
8 1 1 Ring alerts & Sounds		
8 1 1 1 Call ring alert		
8 1 1 1 1 Call ring alert	Phone : Melody/着信音1 (Tone1)	91
8 1 1 1 2 V.phone ring alert	Videophone : Melody/ハーブ (Harp)	91
8 1 1 1 3 P-Talk ring alert	PushTalk : Melody/着信音3 (Tone3)	91
8 1 1 1 4 Anonymous caller	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	126
8 1 1 2 Mail/Msg ring alert		
8 1 1 2 1 Mail ring alert	Mail : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Ring time (sec) : 10	91
8 1 1 2 2 Msg.R ring alert	MessageR : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Ring time (sec) : 10	91
8 1 1 2 3 Msg.F ring alert	MessageF : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Ring time (sec) : 10	91
8 1 1 3 i-concier ring alert	i-concier : Melody/SHORT SOUND10 Ring time (sec) : 10	91
8 1 1 4 GPS alert		
8 1 1 4 1 Positioning alert	Ring alert : OFF	91
8 1 1 4 2 Loc. notify alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音5 (Tone5)	91
8 1 1 4 3 Loc. request-accept	Ring alert : Melody/着信音6 (Tone6)	91
8 1 1 4 4 Loc. request-verify	Ring alert : Melody/着信音6 (Tone6)	91
8 1 1 5 Alarm sound		
8 1 1 5 1 Alarm clock sound	Alarm clock : Melody/目覚まし時計 (Alarm clock)	91
8 1 1 5 2 Schedule reminder	Alarm on time : Melody/時間になりました (Set time arrives)	91
8 1 1 6 System sound		
8 1 1 6 1 Keypad sound	Key sound 1	94
8 1 1 6 2 Open/Close sound	Open/close sound 1	94
8 1 1 6 3 Shutter sound	Standard	94

Menu	Default	Page
8 1 1 6 4 Movie camera sound	Standard	94
8 1 1 7 Charge alert	ON	94
8 1 1 8 Call session		
8 1 1 8 1 Status message	On-hold tone : Standard	68
8 1 1 8 2 On-hold tone	ENTERTAINER	94
8 1 1 8 3 Quality alarm	Alarm OFF	94
8 1 1 8 4 Reconnect alarm	Alarm OFF	94
8 1 1 8 5 Low Battery alert	ON	94
8 1 1 9 Melody Call	—	93
8 1 2 Adjust volume		
8 1 2 1 Alert/Call volume		
8 1 2 1 1 Call alert volume	Level 4	92
8 1 2 1 2 Listen volume	Level 4	92
8 1 2 2 Mail/Msg alert vol.	Level 4	92
8 1 2 3 GPS alert volume	Level 4	92
8 1 2 4 i-concier ring alert	Level 4	92
8 1 2 5 Alarm volume		
8 1 2 5 1 Alarm clock sound	Level 4	92
8 1 2 5 2 1Seg alarm sound	Level 15	92
8 1 2 5 3 Schedule reminder	Level 4	92
8 1 2 6 i-appli effect sound	Level 4	92
8 1 2 7 ToruCa receive alert	Level 4	92
8 1 2 8 Operation sound	Level 4	92
8 1 2 9 Melody effect sound	Level 4	92
8 1 3 Vibrate alert/effect		
8 1 3 1 Call vibrate alert		
8 1 3 1 1 Call vibrate alert	OFF	93
8 1 3 1 2 V.phone vibrate alert	OFF	93
8 1 3 1 3 P-Talk vibrate alert	OFF	93
8 1 3 2 Mail/Msg vibrate alert		
8 1 3 2 1 Mail vibrate alert	OFF	93
8 1 3 2 2 Msg.R vibrate alert	OFF	93
8 1 3 2 3 Msg.F vibrate alert	OFF	93
8 1 3 3 GPS vibrate alert		
8 1 3 3 1 Positioning vibrate	OFF	93

Menu	Default	Page
8 1 3 3 2 Loc. notify vibrate	Pattern B	93
8 1 3 3 3 Loc. request-accept	Pattern C	93
8 1 3 3 4 Loc. request-verify	Pattern C	93
8 1 3 4 i-concier vibrate alert	OFF	93
8 1 3 5 Alarm vibrate		
8 1 3 5 1 Alarm clock	OFF	93
8 1 3 5 2 Schedule reminder	OFF	93
8 1 3 6 i-appli effect	ON	93
8 1 4 Silent mode	General	95
8 1 5 Ring alert delay	Delayed ring alert : OFF	127
8 1 6 Stereo sound effect		
8 1 6 1 Movie(i-motion)	OFF	93
8 1 6 2 Melody	ON	93
8 1 6 3 MUSIC Player	OFF	93
8 1 7 BGM play	ON	240
8 2 Display		
8 2 1 Stand-by display		
8 2 1 1 Image/i-appli	Same as Kisekae Tool	96
8 2 1 2 Clock format	Style : ON/Digital 2 (terminal color : Champagne), Digital 3 (terminal color : Black), Digital+Analogue 1 (terminal color : Cyan), Digital+Analogue 2 (terminal color : Rose) Time format : 24 hour Clock layout : Top Day : English	107
8 2 1 3 Battery icon	Kisekae Tool	105
8 2 1 4 Antenna icon	Kisekae Tool	105
8 2 1 5 Info/calendar layout	—	97
8 2 1 6 i-Channel ticker	Show ticker : Yes Ticker speed : Moderate Text size : Medium Ticker pattern : Pattern 1	188

Menu	Default	Page
8 2 1 7 Shortcut icons	ウォーキングチェッカー設定 (Pedometer settings), 照明/キーバックライト設定 (Display & Key light), フィンガーポイント設定 (Pointing device), 待受ショートカットの使い方 (Using Shortcut icons), ワンセグ (1Seg), i コンシェル (i-concier)	331
8 2 1 8 Information display	Display	189
8 2 2 Menu preference		
8 2 2 1 Select startup menu	Kisekai menu	102
8 2 2 2 My shortcut	MUSIC Player, 2in1 mode switching, Fingerprint access, Lock on close, Activation option, Saving mode ON/OFF, Home, Position location	332
8 2 2 3 Reset		
8 2 2 3 1 Operation history	—	105
8 2 2 3 2 Menu design	—	105
8 2 3 Color & Action image		
8 2 3 1 Color scheme	Champagne (terminal color : Champagne), Black (terminal color : Black), Cyan (terminal color : Cyan), Rose (terminal color : Rose)	102
8 2 3 2 Call image		
8 2 3 2 1 Outgoing call	Display image : Kisekai Tool	98
8 2 3 2 2 Incoming call	Show image : Kisekai Tool	99
8 2 3 2 3 Videophone dialing	Display image : Kisekai Tool	98
8 2 3 2 4 Videophone receiving	Show image : Kisekai Tool	99
8 2 3 2 5 Contact image	ON	100
8 2 3 2 6 Anonymous caller	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	126
8 2 3 3 Mail image		
8 2 3 3 1 Outgoing message	Display image : Kisekai Tool	100
8 2 3 3 2 Incoming message	Display image : Kisekai Tool	100
8 2 3 3 3 Image message alert	Display image : Kisekai Tool	100
8 2 3 3 4 Check msg	Display image : Kisekai Tool	100

Menu	Default	Page
8 2 3 4 Videophone image	[Substitute image] Image : Default Chara-den [Answer machine image/Response hold image/On-hold image/Movie memo image] Image : Default	73
8 2 3 5 Info display & light		
8 2 3 5 1 Caller/Sender info	Main display info At call received : Name+Phone No. Ticker at mail rcvd : Name+Subject Sub-display info At call/mail received : Name	123
8 2 3 5 2 Indicator light	ON	106
8 2 4 Display & Key light		
8 2 4 1 Display light time	Normal use : 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-appli : Terminal setting i-mode session, Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion : Always on	100
8 2 4 2 Light time-out	1 min.	101
8 2 4 3 Brightness	Auto adjust	101
8 2 4 4 Keypad light	Keypad light, Call/Mail light alert : ON Light color : Rainbow (Key press)	101
8 2 5 Light alert		
8 2 5 1 Light alert	Light pattern for all items : In order Light color for Call, Videophone and PushTalk : Lime Light color for Mail, MessageR/F, i-concier and ToruCa receive : Aqua Light for ToruCa receive: Light : ON	106
8 2 5 2 Call session light	During call: Light : ON Color : Rainbow	106
8 2 5 3 GPS light alert	Light pattern for Position location : OFF Light pattern for Notifying location, Loc. request-accept and Loc. request-verify : Turn light on Light color for Notifying location : Amethyst Light color for Loc. request-accept and Loc. request-verify : Grape	106
8 2 5 4 IC card light	IC card Light : ON Color : Lemon	106

Menu	Default	Page
8 2 5 5 Open/Close light	Open/Close Light : ON Light color : Soda	106
8 2 6 Font & Language		
8 2 6 1 Font size	Medium(Standard)	107
8 2 6 2 Font style	Kanji/Alphameric : Maru_Gothic Hiragana/Katakana : Kanji/Alphameric	106
8 2 6 3 バイリンガル	Japanese	55
8 2 7 Sub-display		
8 2 7 1 Clock & alert image	Clock style : Digital 1 (terminal color : Champagne, Rose), Digital 2 (terminal color : Black, Cyan) Alert image, Incoming mail img : pattern 1 (terminal color : Champagne, Rose), pattern 2 (terminal color : Black, Cyan)	100
8 2 7 2 Auto light on	ON	100
8 2 8 Display Machi-chara	Display : ON/ひつじのしつじくん (Butler of sheep)	102
8 2 9 Power saving mode		
8 2 9 1 Saving modeON/OFF	OFF	101
8 2 9 2 Saving mode options	Standard saving	101
8 3 Kisekae/Themes		
8 3 1 Kisekae Tool	—	103
8 3 2 Style theme	—	105
8 3 3 Timed theme	—	96
8 4 Security & Locks		
8 4 1 Locks		
8 4 1 1 Lock on close	Lock on close : OFF	125
8 4 1 2 Auto keypad lock	Auto keypad lock : OFF	125
8 4 1 3 All lock	—	114
8 4 1 4 Personal data lock	OFF	117
8 4 1 5 Lock/Unlock		
8 4 1 5 1 IC card lock	OFF	266
8 4 1 5 2 Lock preference	IC card lock	266
8 4 1 5 3 Timed lock	Timed lock : OFF	266
8 4 1 5 4 Programed activation	—	267
8 4 1 5 5 IC lock(power-off)	Remain lock status	266
8 4 1 6 Keypad dial lock	OFF	118

Menu	Default	Page
8 4 2 Privacy mode		
8 4 2 1 Call/Mail privacy	Call & Logs : Hide set contact Mail & Logs : Hide secrecy fldrs Private call act. : Alert+Show No. Private mail act. : No alert/name/no. Incoming: privacy mode : OFF	119
8 4 2 2 Other item privacy	My Picture, i-motion : Hide secrecy album My Document, Other, Bookmark : Hide secrecy fldrs Schedule : Hide set schedule Notepad, i-appli, Loc. history(GPS), Screen memo : Show all	119
8 4 2 3 Activation option	Activate/Deactivate : No activation Auto start : OFF	120
8 4 2 4 Contact setting	—	122
8 4 3 Security indicator	ON	125
8 4 4 Receive display option	Main display info At call received : Name+Phone No. Ticker at mail rcvd : Name+Subject Sub display info At call/mail received : Name	123
8 4 5 UIM	[Change PIN code/Change PIN2 code] 0000 [PIN1 code ON/OFF] OFF	111
8 4 6 Code & Fingerprint		
8 4 6 1 Change security code	0000	111
8 4 6 2 Register fingerprint	—	113
8 4 6 3 Saved fingerprints	—	114
8 4 6 4 Fingerprint access	OFF	114
8 4 7 Scanning function		
8 4 7 1 Update	—	433
8 4 7 2 Set auto-update	—	433
8 4 7 3 Set scan	Scan, Message scan : Valid	433
8 4 7 4 Version	—	434
8 4 8 Password manager	—	356
8 5 Call & Answer		
8 5 1 Sound & Image		
8 5 1 1 Outgoing call	Display image : Kisekae Tool	98

Menu	Default	Page
8 5 1 2 Call alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音 1 (Tone1) Show image : Kisekae Tool Vibrate alert : OFF Light alert : In order/Lime	90
8 5 1 3 Identification mark	Identify No. : OFF	100
8 5 2 Anonymous caller	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	126
8 5 3 Any key answer	ON	67
8 5 4 Headset		
8 5 4 1 Alert preference	Headset + speaker	342
8 5 4 2 Auto answer setting	Auto answering : OFF	342
8 5 4 3 Headset key control	Control function : OFF	341
8 5 5 Reject/Accept call		
8 5 5 1 Specified caller	Reject call	126
8 5 5 2 Unregistered caller	OFF	128
8 5 6 Make/Receive call		
8 5 6 1 Priority comm mode	No Set Up	68
8 5 6 2 Prefix dialing	Prefix1 : 009130010	66
8 5 6 3 Sub address	ON	66
8 5 7 Call session		
8 5 7 1 Noise reduction	ON	66
8 5 7 2 Close settings	End the call	68
8 5 8 Self mode	OFF	116
8 6 V-phone/P-Talk		
8 6 1 Videophone		
8 6 1 1 V.phone dialing img.	Display image : Kisekae Tool	98
8 6 1 2 Videophone alert	Ring alert : Melody/ハーブ (Harp) Show image : Kisekae Tool Vibrate alert : OFF Light alert : In order/Lime	90

Menu	Default	Page
8 6 1 3 Operation	Auto redial as voice : OFF Display setting : Both sides Sub screen : My side Screen size : Large Visual preference : Normal Display light : Auto adjust Speakerphone : ON Flip mode answer image : Substitute image	73
8 6 1 4 DataSession arv. act	V.phone priority	74
8 6 1 5 Image setting	[Substitute image] Image : Default Chara-den [Answer machine image/Response hold image/On-hold image/Movie memo image] Image : Default	73
8 6 1 6 External device	Phone	74
8 6 1 7 Notify switchable mode		
8 6 1 7 1 Indication ON	—	74
8 6 1 7 2 Indication OFF	—	74
8 6 1 7 3 Check Indication	—	74
8 6 2 PushTalk (PT)		
8 6 2 1 PushTalk alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音 3 (Tone3) Vibrate alert : OFF Light alert : In order/Lime	90
8 6 2 2 PushTalk ring time	Ring time (sec) : 30	78
8 6 2 3 PushTalk auto answer	OFF	78
8 6 2 4 PushTalk arv. act	Answer	78
8 6 2 5 Setting when folded	Speakerphone	79
8 6 2 6 i-mode arv. act:PT	PushTalk preferred	79
8 6 2 7 P-Talk speakerphone	ON	79
8 7 Clock & Other		
8 7 1 Clock		
8 7 1 1 Date & time ^{*4}	Auto time adjust : ON Offset : +/-00h00m	55
8 7 1 2 Auto power ON	Auto power ON : OFF	324
8 7 1 3 Auto power OFF	Auto power OFF : OFF	324

Menu	Default	Page
8 7 1 4 Clock display format	Style : ON/Digital 2 (terminal color : Champagne), Digital 3 (terminal color : Black), Digital+Analogue 1 (terminal color : Cyan), Digital+Analogue 2 (terminal color : Rose) Time format : 24 hour Clock layout : Top Day : English	107
8 7 1 5 Alarm auto power ON	OFF	326
8 7 1 6 Timed theme	—	96
8 7 2 Text input		
8 7 2 1 Save word	—	355
8 7 2 2 DL dictionary	—	356
8 7 2 3 Reset prediction	—	352
8 7 2 4 Save phrase	—	354
8 7 2 5 Text input method	Input method : 5-touch Input prediction : ON Auto cursor : Normal	357
8 7 3 Font size	Medium(Standard)	107
8 7 4 Software update ^{*5}	[Update] — [Set auto-update] Set auto-update : Auto-update Day : Unspecified Time : 03:00	429
8 7 5 Info & Reset		
8 7 5 1 Call cost/duration		
8 7 5 1 1 Call duration	—	336
8 7 5 1 2 Call cost		
8 7 5 1 2 1 Last call cost	—	336
8 7 5 1 2 2 Call cost limit	Alert : OFF	337
8 7 5 1 2 3 Hide call cost icon	—	337
8 7 5 1 2 4 Reset call cost	OFF	336
8 7 5 2 Check remote setting	—	132
8 7 5 3 Memory status	—	311
8 7 5 4 Confirm	—	348
8 7 5 5 Battery level	—	53
8 7 5 6 Area service status	—	377
8 7 5 7 Reset	—	130

Menu	Default	Page
8 7 5 8 Delete all data	—	130
8 7 5 9 Initial setting	[Date & time] Auto time adjust : ON [Password] 0000 [Fingerprint] OFF [Keypad sound] Key sound 1 Text size : Medium(Standard) [Request permit/deny] Always deny [Pointing device] Use sensor for : F-browser/i-appli Pointer speed : Normal DoubleTap speed : Normal	54
8 7 6 Side key shortcut	Up Key: Press & hold : Silent mode ON/ OFF Down Key: Press & hold : Check new message	333
8 7 7 Pointing device	Use sensor for : F-browser/i-appli Pointer speed : Normal DoubleTap speed : Normal	45
8 7 8 Motion sensor	ON	46
8 8 NW Services		
8 8 1 Voice Mail		
8 8 1 1 Voice Mail service		
8 8 1 1 1 Activate	—	362
8 8 1 1 2 Set ring time	—	362
8 8 1 1 3 Deactivate	—	362
8 8 1 1 4 Check setting	—	362
8 8 1 1 5 Play messages	—	362
8 8 1 1 6 Voice Mail setting	—	362
8 8 1 1 7 Set V.phoneVoiceMail	—	362
8 8 1 1 8 Check messages	—	362
8 8 1 2 Tone/Vibration message notification	Voice Mail alert : ON Notification melody : 着信音1 (Tone1)	362
8 8 1 3 Notify missed call		
8 8 1 3 1 Activate	—	362
8 8 1 3 2 Deactivate	—	362
8 8 1 3 3 Check setting	—	362
8 8 1 4 Hide Voice Mail icon	—	362
8 8 2 Call waiting/forward		

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 2 1 Call waiting		
8 8 2 1 1 Activate	—	363
8 8 2 1 2 Deactivate	—	363
8 8 2 1 3 Check setting	—	363
8 8 2 2 Call Forwarding		
8 8 2 2 1 Activate	—	363
8 8 2 2 2 Deactivate	—	363
8 8 2 2 3 Register The Forwarding Number	—	363
8 8 2 2 4 Setting if forwarding number busy	—	363
8 8 2 2 5 Check setting	—	363
8 8 3 Chaku-moji		
8 8 3 1 Create message	—	62
8 8 3 2 Message display settings	Only with Caller ID	62
8 8 4 Caller ID		
8 8 4 1 Caller ID notification		
8 8 4 1 1 Activate/Deactivate	—	56
8 8 4 1 2 Check setting	—	56
8 8 4 2 Caller ID request		
8 8 4 2 1 Activate	—	364
8 8 4 2 2 Deactivate	—	364
8 8 4 2 3 Check setting	—	364
8 8 5 Roaming guidance		
8 8 5 1 Activate	—	378
8 8 5 2 Deactivate	—	378
8 8 5 3 Check setting	—	378
8 8 6 OFFICEED		
8 8 6 1 Area display setting	OFF	369
8 8 6 2 Start forwarding	—	369
8 8 6 3 Stop forwarding	—	369
8 8 6 4 Check fwd setting	—	369
8 8 7 2in1 setting		
8 8 7 1 2in1 mode switching	Dual mode	367
8 8 7 2 Ph.book 2in1 setting	—	367

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 7 3 Stand-by display		
8 8 7 3 1 For Dual mode	シティ (City)	367
8 8 7 3 2 For B mode	グリーン (Green)	367
8 8 7 4 Set call/receive No.		
8 8 7 4 1 Ring alert for No.B	[Call ring alert] Phone : Melody/着信音4 (Tone4) [Videophone ring alert] Videophone : Melody/Jam Ring [Mail ring alert] Ring alert : You've got mail Ring time (sec) : 10	367
8 8 7 4 2 Identification mark	Number A Identify No. : OFF Number B Identify No. : ON Mark : <<>>	367
8 8 7 5 2in1 function OFF	—	367
8 8 7 6 Receive avoidance		
8 8 7 6 1 Change rcv. avoidance	—	367
8 8 7 6 2 Check rcv. avoidance	—	367
8 8 7 6 3 Mode link for avoid.	—	367
8 8 7 6 4 Rcv. avoidance(Int.)	—	367
8 8 8 Melody Call	—	93
8 8 9 Other		
8 8 9 1 Additional service		
8 8 9 1 1 Register USSD	—	369
8 8 9 1 2 Record reply message	—	369
8 8 9 2 Remote control		
8 8 9 2 1 Activate	—	365
8 8 9 2 2 Deactivate	—	365
8 8 9 2 3 Check setting	—	365
8 8 9 3 Nuisance call barring		
8 8 9 3 1 Register the caller	—	364
8 8 9 3 2 Register selected No	—	364
8 8 9 3 3 Delete all entries	—	364
8 8 9 3 4 Delete last entry	—	364
8 8 9 3 5 Check the number of entries	—	364
8 8 9 4 English guidance		
8 8 9 4 1 Guidance setting	—	364

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 9 4 2 Check setting	—	364
8 8 9 5 Dual network		
8 8 9 5 1 Dual Network Switching	—	364
8 8 9 5 2 Check setting	—	364
8 8 9 6 Service numbers		
8 8 9 6 1 ドコモ故障問合せ	—	365
8 8 9 6 2 ドコモ総合案内・受付	—	365
8 8 9 7 Multi number		
8 8 9 7 1 Set Multi Number	—	366
8 8 9 7 2 Check setting	—	366
8 8 9 7 3 Number Setting	Basic Number : Name : 基本契約番号 (Basic Number) Phone number; The subscribing terminal phone number Additional No1 : Name : 付加番号1 (Additional No1) Additional No2 : Name : 付加番号2 (Additional No2) Additional No1/No2 Phone number : Not recorded Multi number call : Disable	366
8 8 9 7 4 Incoming calls melody setting	[Additional No1/Additional No2] Individual setting : OFF	366
8 8 9 8 Set arrival act		
8 8 9 8 1 Activate	—	365
8 8 9 8 2 Deactivate	—	365
8 8 9 8 3 Check setting	—	365
8 8 9 9 Arrival call act	Answer	365
8 9 Roaming/Call assist		
8 9 1 NW service(Int.)		
8 9 1 1 Voice mail(Int.)		
8 9 1 1 1 Activate	—	379
8 9 1 1 2 Deactivate	—	379
8 9 1 1 3 Play messages	—	379
8 9 1 1 4 Voice mail settings	—	379
8 9 1 1 5 Set ring time	—	379
8 9 1 2 Call forwarding(Int.)		

Menu	Default	Page
8 9 1 2 1 Activate	—	379
8 9 1 2 2 Deactivate	—	379
8 9 1 2 3 Call fwd. settings	—	379
8 9 1 3 Remote control(Int.)	—	379
8 9 1 4 Caller ID request(Int.)	—	379
8 9 1 5 Roaming guidance(Int.)	—	379
8 9 2 Int'l roaming		
8 9 2 1 Network search mode	Auto	377
8 9 2 2 3G/GSM setting	AUTO	377
8 9 2 3 Disp. operator name	Display on	378
8 9 2 4 Bar calls at roaming		
8 9 2 4 1 Bar incoming call	—	378
8 9 2 4 2 Accept incoming call	—	378
8 9 2 4 3 Check setting	—	378
8 9 2 5 Notify missed call		
8 9 2 5 1 Activate	—	378
8 9 2 5 2 Deactivate	—	378
8 9 2 5 3 Check setting	—	378
8 9 2 5 4 Notify missed call(Int.)	—	378
8 9 3 Int'l call assist		
8 9 3 1 Auto switch	Country code : ON (Country code : +81, Country name : 日本(Japan)) Int'l prefix : ON (Name : World Call, Int'l prefix No. : 009130010)	65
8 9 3 2 Country code setting	—	65
8 9 3 3 Auto assist setting	—	65
8 9 4 Two time zone clocks	ON	378

■MUSIC

Menu	Default	Page
9 1 MUSIC Player	—	235
9 2 Music&Video Channel	—	228 229

■Osaifu-Keitai

Menu	Default	Page
*[1] IC card content	—	265
*[2] DCMX	—	265
*[3] ToruCa content	—	269
*[4] IC card settings		
*[4][1] Lock/Unlock	OFF	266
*[4][2] Lock preference	IC card lock	266
*[4][3] Timed lock	Timed lock : OFF	266
*[4][4] Programed activation	—	267
*[4][5] IC lock(power-off)	Remain lock status	266
*[5] ToruCa setting		
*[5][1] ToruCa alert	Light alert : ON Light color : Aqua Receive alert volume : Level 4	271
*[5][2] ToruCa from IC card	ToruCa receive, Duplication check, Auto-display : ON Auto-sort : OFF	270
*[5][3] ToruCa auto-read	ON	271
*[5][4] ToruCa sort rule	—	271
*[5][5] ToruCa from 1Seg	ON	225
*[6] Check IC owner	—	265
*[7] Change IC owner	—	265
*[8] Search by i-mode	—	264

■User information

Menu	Default	Page
[0] User information	Name/Mail address : — My phone number : The subscribing terminal phone number	56 333

■i-concier

Menu	Default	Page
[#] i-concier	—	189

*1 All certificates saved in UIM are valid by Reset.

*2 When USB Cable is connected, default settings are not restored by Reset.

*3 For the network service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

*4 Reset causes the settings of Auto time adjust (including Time zone and Summer time) and Offset to be restored to the default.

*5 When performing Reset, Set auto-update is restored to the default settings.

When "Simple Menu" of Kisekai Tool is set

[1] 電話	[1] 電話帳検索	[5] i アプリ	[1] ソフト一覧
	[2] 電話帳登録		[2] 待受画面選択
	[3] リダイヤル		[3] i アプリ設定
	[4] 着信履歴	[6] データBOX	[1] マイビクチャ
	[5] 伝言メモ設定		[2] ミュージック
	[6] 伝言メモ一覧		[3] i モーション
	[7] プロフィール情報		[4] メロディ
[2] メール	[1] 受信メール	[7] 設定/アクセサリ	[5] マイドキュメント
	[2] 送信メール		[6] キャラ電
	[3] 未送信メール		[7] ワンセグ
	[4] 新規メール		[1] 音/バイブ
[3] ワンセグ/カメラ	[5] i モード問合せ	[0] プロフィール情報	[2] ディスプレイ
	[1] ワンセグ視聴		[3] 目覚まし
	[2] カメラ		[4] 電卓
	[3] マイビクチャ		[5] 赤外線受信
[4] i モード	[4] 待受画面選択		[6] 情報表示/リセット
	[1] i Menu		[7] 留守番電話
	[2] Bookmark		
	[3] ラストURL		
	[4] 画面メモ		
	[5] i チャンネル一覧		
	[6] テロップ表示設定		

* "Simple Menu" is disabled when the screen display is English.

Melody List

◆ Melodies for ring tone

- Melodies in **red** letters support 3D sound.

Melody List ([] is the composer)	
着信音1〜6 (Tone1-6)	でか着信音 (Loud tone)
シャボン玉 (Soap bubble) [中山 晋平 (Shinpei Nakayama) (作詞: 野口 雨情 (Lyricist: Ujō Noguchi))]	我は海の子 (Child of sea) [文部省唱歌 (Song of the Ministry of Education)]
悲愴よりアダージョ (Adagio from Pathétique) [Ludwig Van Beethoven]	水族館 (Aquarium) [Charles Camille Saint Saens]
ラデツキー行進曲 (Radetzky March) [Johan Strauss]	ツィゴイネルワイゼン (Zigeunerweisen) [Pablo de Sarasate]
Turning off	Satellite
SWEET RASPBERRY	Manhattan Blue
Joy Rhythm	Jam Ring
Just Ride	Forest
Sea	SHORT SOUND1-10
着信中! (Ringing!)	インフォメーションを受信しました (Information is received)
メールがきたあ (Mail has come)	メッセージお届け (Message delivery)
You've got mail	It's time to get up
Pool Bar	黒電話 (Black phone)
ハーブ (Harp)	目覚まし時計 (Alarm clock)
もうすぐ予定の時間です (It's almost time for the schedule)	時間になりました (It's time)
無音 (Silent)	

◆ Melodies for mail attachment

Melody List ([] is the composer)	
誕生日 (Birthday)	ウィリアムテル序曲 (William Tell Overture) [GIOACCHINO ANTONIO ROSSINI]
結婚行進曲 (Wedding March) [J L FELIX MENDELSSOHN BARTHOLODY]	祝婚歌 (Bridal March) [WILHELM RICHARD WAGNER]
運命 (Symphony No.5) [LUDWIG VAN BEETHOVEN]	ジングルベル (Jingle Bells) [JAMES PIERPONT]
タフワフワイ (TAFUWA HUWAI) [Hawaiian folk song]	さくら (SAKURA) [Japanese folk song]
紅葉 (MOMIJI) [岡野 貞一 (TEIICHI OKANO)]	雪 (Snow) [Song of the Ministry of Education]
おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade der Zinnsoldaten) [LEON JESSEL]	登場 (Appearance)
3●7拍子 (Three-three-seven beats)	Are you sleeping? [French folk song]
トッカータとフーガ (Toccata and fugue) [JOHANN SEBASTIAN BACH]	子守唄 (Lullaby) [FRANZ SCHUBERT]
蛍の光 (Auld Lang Syne) [Scottish folk song]	ハッピー (Happy) お出掛け (Be out) スキップ (Skip) メリーゴーランド (Merry-go-round) 安らぎ (Relax) 頑張れ (Cheer up) ヤッター (Goody) ファイト (Fight) 焦燥 (Impatient) 16ビート (16 beats) 忙しい (Busy) エレクトロ (Electro) ハーモニカ (Harmonica) 迷宮 (Labyrinth) タンゴ (Tango) エキゾチック (Exotic) アジアン (Asian) 中華 (Chinese) 南国 (Southern country) 琴 (Koto) 草津節 (Kusatsubushi) お祭り (Festival) 悲哀 (Sadness) 不安 (Anxiety) がっくり (Flatten) 発見 (Discovery) チャイム (Chime) お知らせ (Information)

List of characters assigned to dial keys (5-touch input method)

Key	Hiragana/Kanji mode (two-byte)	Katakana mode (two- or one-byte)	Alphabet mode (two- or one-byte)	Numeric mode (two- or one-byte)*1
1	あ い う え お	ア イ ウ エ オ 1	. / @ - : ~*2 _ 1	1
2	か き く け こ	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
3	さ し す せ そ	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
4	た ち つ て と	タ チ ツ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
5	な に ぬ ね の	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
6	は ひ ふ へ ほ	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
7	ま み む め も	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
8	や ゆ よ	ヤ ュ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
9	ら り る れ ろ	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
0	わ を ん ー	ワ*3 ヲン ー 0	0	0 +*4
↕	Change upper/lower case, add voiced/semi-voiced sound, insert a line feed.	Change upper/lower case, add voiced/semi-voiced sound, insert a line feed.	Change upper/lower case, insert a line feed.	* P*4
≡	、 。 ? ! . ■	、 。 ? ! . ■	. . ? ! ' - & () ¥ ■	# T*4
☑			* You can enter only in one-byte character. @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	

■ : One-byte space ■ : Holding down the keypad also switches upper and lower case.

*1 Characters of " * ", "#", "P", "T" and "+" can only be entered in the field that supports them.

*2 "~" is entered in the one-byte mode.

*3 Switch upper and lower cases only in two-byte mode.

*4 Press the relevant key for 1 second or more to enter the character.

Pictogram list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode.

Pictogram	Reading
♥	はーと、あい、こころ、すき、らぶ
♥	はーと、あい、こころ、ときどき、すき、らぶ、ゆれるはーと
♥	はーと、しつれん、ふられた、わかれた、しょっく
♥	はーと、あい、こころ、すき、らぶ、はーとたち
☺	かお、えが、わらう、わらい、わーい、うれしい、にこにこ
×	かお、おこる、いかり、ぶん、ちっ
∩	かお、かなしい、こまった、ごめん、がく
∩	かお、かなしい、こまった、さいあく、もうやだ
✱	かお、だめ、ふら
☹	どうぶつ、いぬ
☹	どうぶつ、ねこ
☀	てんき、はれ、たいよう
☁	てんき、くもり、くも
☂	てんき、あめ、かさ
☂	てんき、ゆき、ゆきだるま
⚡	てんき、かみなり、いかすち、いかづち、でんき
🌀	てんき、うすまき、たいふう、あらし、ぐるぐる、くるくる、めまい
☼	てんき、きり、あめ
👉	てんき、こさめ、あめ、かさ
🎵	おんぷ、おんがく、うた、るん
🎵	おんぷ、おんがく、うた、さんれんぷ、るん、むーど
🎵	おんせん、ふる、おふる、いいきぶん
💎	はな、かわい
👉	きす、きっす、くちびる、くち、ちゅ、ちゅう、ちゅー、きすまーく

Pictogram	Reading
❖	きらきら、ぴかぴか
🌀	でんきゅう、ぴか、あいであ、あいであ、ひらめき
✖	いかり、おこる、おこり、さける、むかつく、むか
🎵	がんばる、がんばれ、ばんち、ぐー、ぐう
🎵	ばくだん、ばくはつ
zzz	おやすみ、すいみん、ねる、ねむい、ぐー、すー、ぐう、ずう
!	びっくり、あつ、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
!?	びっくり、ほんと、えつ、えー、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
!!	びっくり、ちょー、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
☹	しょっく、ぐらぐら、どん
㊦	あせ、あせる、ひやあせ
㊦	あせ、あせる、ひやあせ、なみだ、だらー、たらー
㊦	いそぐ、いそげ、だっしゅ、ためいき、ふう、ふう、ふー、はしる
㊦	のばす、ちょうおん、ちょーおん
㊦	のばす、くるり、ちょうおん、ちょーおん
OK	おっけー、おーけー、おーけい、おうけい、けってい
↗	やじるし、みぎうえ、あがる、あげる、あっぱ、みぎななめうえ
↘	やじるし、みぎした、さがる、さげる、だうん、みぎななめした
↖	やじるし、ひだりうえ、あがる、あげる、あっぱ、ひだりななめうえ
↙	やじるし、ひだりした、さがる、さげる、だうん、ひだりななめした
↗	やじるし、ぐっど、あがる、あげる、ぐっと
↘	やじるし、ばっど、さがる、さげる、ばっと
GO	かお、め、からだ
👉	かお、みみ、からだ

Pictogram	Reading
	ぐー、ぐう、じゃんけん、て、こぶし、ばんち、からだ
	ちよき、じゃんけん、て、ぴーす
	ぱー、ぱあ、じゃんけん、て、ばい、さんせい
	あし、あしあと、あるく、とほ、からだ、きつく、けり、ける
	とらんぶ、はーと、あい、こころ
	とらんぶ、すべーど
	とらんぶ、だいや
	とらんぶ、くらぶ
	のりもの、こうつう、でんしゃ、れっしゃ、えき
	のりもの、こうつう、ちかてつ、えむ
	のりもの、こうつう、しんかんせん、のぞみ、ひかり、こだま
	のりもの、こうつう、じどうしゃ、くるま、たくしー、どらいぶ、せだん
	のりもの、こうつう、じどうしゃ、くるま、たくしー、どらいぶ、あーるぶい
	のりもの、こうつう、ばす
	のりもの、こうつう、ぶね、ぶえりー、こうかい
	のりもの、こうつう、ひこうき、じえっと、じえっとき、ふらいと、くうこう
	のりもの、よっと、ぶね、りぞーと
	つりー、くりすます、き
	いえ、うち、おうち、じたく
	びる、かいしゃ、しょくば、がっこう
	ゆうびん、ゆうびんきょく、ぼすと
	びょういん、びょうき、けが
	ぎんこう、ばんく
	えーていーえむ、えいていーえむ、ぎんこう
	ほてる
	こんびに、こんびにえんす、こんびにえんすすとあ

Pictogram	Reading
	がそりんすたんど、がそりん、がすた、すたんど
	ちゅうしゃじょう、ちゅうしゃ、ばーきんぐ
	しんこう、しんこうき
	といれ、かつぶる、でーと、けっこん
	しょくじ、ごはん、れすとらん、ふあみれす
	こーひー、どりんく、のみもの、かつぶ、こっぶ、きっさてん、さてん、おちゃ
	かくてる、おさけ、さけ、ぱー
	びーる、おさけ、さけ、いざかや、のみかい、こんば、かんばい
	はんぱーがー、ぱーがー、けいしょく、ふあーすとふーど
	はいひーる、ひーる、くつ、あし
	はさみ、かつと、びょういん、びょうしつ、さんばつ、とこや
	まいく、からおけ、うた、うたう
	えいが、えいがかん、しねま、かめら、さつえい、びでお
	うま、けいば、もくば、めりーごーらんど、ゆうえんち
	おんがく、おと、きく、へっどほん、へっどふおん
	え、あーと、げいじゅつ、びじゅつ、ばれっと
	えんげき、ひと、しんし、ぼうし
	いべんと、はた
	ちけっと、きつぷ
	すぼーつ、うんどう、しゃつ、たんくどつぷ
	すぼーつ、うんどう、やきゅう、そふと、ぼーる、そふとぼーる
	すぼーつ、うんどう、ごるぶ
	すぼーつ、うんどう、てにす、たつきゅう、らけっと
	すぼーつ、うんどう、さっかー、ぼーる
	すぼーつ、うんどう、すきー、すのーぼーど、ぼーど、すけーと、すのぼ、すべる
	すぼーつ、うんどう、ばすけっと、ばすけ、ばすけっとぼーる

Pictogram	Reading
	すぽーつ、うんどう、ごーる、はた、れーす、えふわん、もーたーすぽーつ
	ぼけべる、ぼけっとべる、ペーじゃー
	たばこ、しがー、しがれっと、きつえん、いっぶく
	たばこ、しがー、しがれっと、きんえん
	かめら、しゃしん、さつえい、げきしゃ
	かばん、ぼっぐ、てさげ、りょうこ
	ほん、のーと、しょしんしゃ
	りぼん、ちょうねくたい、ねくたい、あめ
	ぶれぜんと、たんじょうび、おくりもの
	ろうそく、きゃんどる、たんじょうび、ばーすでい、ばーすでー
	でんわ、くろでん、てれふおん、てれほん、てる、てれ
	けいたいでんわ、けいたい、けーたい、でんわ、びっち、ふおーん、ふおん
	めーる、てがみ
	めも、しょるい、れぼーと、しゅくだい、しけん
	てれび、がめん、ばんぐみ
	げーむ、こんとろーら
	しーでいー、あるぼむ、しんぐる、でいすく
	くつ、しゅーす、すにーかー、あし
	めがね
	くるまいす
	せいざ、おひつじざ、おひつじ
	せいざ、おうしざ、おうし
	せいざ、ふたござ、ふたご、すなどけい
	せいざ、かにざ、かに
	せいざ、ししざ、しし
	せいざ、おとめざ、おとめ
	せいざ、てんびんざ、てんびん、おもち、もち

Pictogram	Reading
	せいざ、さそりざ、さそり
	せいざ、いてざ、いて、あがる、あつぷ
	せいざ、やぎざ、やぎ
	せいざ、みずがめざ、みずがめ、なみ
	せいざ、うおざ、うお、さかな
	つき、しんげつ、まる
	つき
	つき、はんげつ
	つき、みかづき
	つき、まんげつ、まる
	でんわ、けいたいでんわ、けいたい、けーたい、ふおーん、ふおん、びっち、ちゃくしん
	めーる、てがみ、じゅしん
	ふあつくす、ふあくす、じゅしん
	あいもーど、あい、どこも
	あいもーど、あい、どこも
	どこもていきょう、でい、でー、でいー
	どこもほいんと、ほいんと、でい、でー、でいー
	えん、かね、きんがく、ねだん、りょうきん
	ただ、むりよう、じゅう、ひま、ふりー
	あいでい、あいでいー、あいでー
	かぎ、きー、ひみつ、ばすわーど、ろっく
	かいぎよう、まがる、つづく、つづき
	さくじょ、しーえる、くりあ、くーる
	さがす、しらべる、むしめがね、さーち
	にゅー、にゅー、あたらしい、しん
	はた、もくひょう、ごるふ、いちじょうほう、いち
	だいやる、だいはる、ふりーだいやる、ふりーだいはる
	しゃーぷ

Pictogram	Reading
㊦	もばきゅー、もばきゅう、しつもん、きゅう、きゅー
①	いち、すうじ、ばんごう
②	に、すうじ、ばんごう
③	さん、すうじ、ばんごう
④	よん、し、すうじ、ばんごう
⑤	ご、すうじ、ばんごう
⑥	ろく、すうじ、ばんごう
⑦	しち、なな、すうじ、ばんごう
⑧	はち、すうじ、ばんごう
⑨	きゅう、く、きゅー、すうじ、ばんごう
⑩	ぜろ、れい、すうじ、ばんごう
㇏	かちんこ、さつえい、すたーと、はこ
㇏	ふくろ、つぼ
㇏	ぺんさき、ぺん
㇏	はんこ、ひと、ひとかげ
㇏	いす、ざせき、すわる
㇏	よる、よなか、しんや、れいと
㇏	すぐ、もうすぐ、すーん
㇏	おん
㇏	おわり、えんど
㇏	じかん、じこく、たいむ、とけい
㇏	じてんしゃ、チャリ、チャりんこ、のりもの
㇏	れんち、すばな、こうぐ、どうぐ
㇏	ばそこん、ぴーしー、こんぴゅーた、こんぴゅーたー
㇏	えんぴつ、ぶんぼうぐ
㇏	くりっぶ、ぶんぼうぐ、てんぷ
㇏	やじるし、さゆう
㇏	やじるし、じょうげ
㇏	やじるし、りさいくる、かいてん、まわる

Pictogram	Reading
㇏	えぬじー、だめ
㇏	ひみつ、まるひ
㇏	きんし、げんきん、だめ
㇏	くうしつ、くうせき、くうしゃ、あき、あく、から
㇏	ごうかく
㇏	まんしつ、まんせき、まんしゃ、いっぱい、まんたん、ふる
㇏	けいこく、きけん、びっくり
㇏	こびーらいと、しー、まるしー
TM	とれーどまーく、ていーえむ
®	れじすたーどとれーどまーく、とれーどまーく、あーる、まるあーる
㇏	あいあぶり、あるふあ、あぶり
㇏	あいあぶり、あるふあ、あぶり
㇏	どるぶくろ、どる、かね、おかね
㇏	うでどけい、とけい、うおっち
㇏	すなどけい、とけい
㇏	おにぎり、おむすび、ごはん、おべんとう、べんとう
㇏	けーき、しょーとけーき、でざーと、おかし、かし
㇏	ばん、ぶれっど
㇏	どんぶり、らーめん、めん、うどん、そば
㇏	ゆのみ、おゆのみ、おちゃ、ちゃ
㇏	とっくり、おちょこ、おさけ、さけ、にほんしゅ
㇏	わいんぐらす、わいん、おさけ、さけ
㇏	ばなな、くだもの
㇏	りんご、あつぷる、くだもの
㇏	さくらんぼ、ちえりー、くだもの
㇏	くろーぱー、よつば、はっぱ
㇏	ちゅーりっづ、はな
㇏	わかば、ふたば、はっぱ
㇏	もみじ、こうよう、はっぱ

Pictogram	Reading
	さくら、はな
	かたつむり、まいまい、でんでんむし、どうぶつ、むし
	ひよこ、とり、どうぶつ
	ぺんぎん、とり、どうぶつ
	さかな、おさかな、どうぶつ
	うま、どうぶつ
	ぶた、どうぶつ、ぶー
	しゃつ、ていーしゃつ、ふく、ようふく、ていしゃつ
	ずぼん、ばんつ、じーばん、じーんず、ふく、ようふく
	けしょう、くちべに、るーじゅ、りつぷ
	ゆびわ、あくせさりー、りんぐ
	おうかん、かんむり、おうさま
	べる、ちゃべる、かね
	どあ、とびら、と
	がっこう、だいがく
	なみ、うみ、つなみ、おおなみ
	ぶじさん、やま
	すぼーつ、うんどう、すのーぼーど、ぼーど、すのぼ、すべる
	すぼーつ、うんどう、はしる、にげる
	かお、こまる、うーむ、うーん、うむ、むすっ、かながえる
	かお、ほっ
	かお、ひやあせ、たらー、だらー、あせ、あせる
	かお、ひやあせ、たらー、だらー、あせ、あせる
	かお、おこる、ぶー、ぶー
	かお、ぼけー、しらー、しらけ
	かお、はーと、らぶ、すき、わーい、うれしい
	かお、あっかんペー、ペー、いたすら
	かお、ういんく、ういんく、ぱちっ、ぱち
	かお、うれしい、わーい、きゃっ、きゃ

Pictogram	Reading
	かお、がまん
	かお、どうぶつ、ねこ
	かお、かなしい、なく、えーん、わーん、なきがお
	かお、なみだ、かなしい、ぼろり、なく、なきがお
	かお、おいしい、うまい、まんぞく
	かお、えがお、わらう、うっしっし、うしし、ししし
	かお、さけぶ、さけび、げっそり、ひゃー、むんく
	て、おっけー、おーけー、おーけい、おうけい、ぐっど、ゆび、おやゆび、ぐっと
	てがみ、めーる、らぶれたー、こいづみ
	がまぐち、さいふ、おかね、かね

Special symbol list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode.

Reading	Symbol	Reading	Symbol	Reading	Symbol	Reading	Symbol
あーる	R r アール	えっち	H h	かぶしきがいしゃ	(株) KK	くさい	ミズ
あい	I i	えぬ	N n	から	〜	ぐざい	ミズ
あすたりすく	*	えふ	F f	かるー	カ	くしー	ミズ
あすてりすく	*	えむ	M m	がんま	Γ γ	ぐらむ	グラム
あっとまーく	@	える	L l	がんまー	Γ γ	くろぼし	★
あるふぁ	A α	えん	¥	きー	X x	くろまる	●
あるふぁー	A α	おう	O o	きごう	<>@// ±々×≠÷ ≤≥∴. § \ ∞∧∈∨∩ ∃∀⊆⊇⊃ ∠⊥⊂⊃ ∪∩∅△▽ Σ≡≡≠≠≠ „ ”»«√ ∞∞∴∴∴ Å%†‡‡	けい	K k
あんだーばー	_	おー	O o		けー	K k	
あんど	&	おーむ	Ω ω		ご	⑤ V	
あんばさんど	&	おす	♂		ごうどう	≡	
いー	E e	おなじ	々 //		こめ	※	
いーた	H η	おみくろん	O o		こめじるし	※	
いおた	I i	おめが	Ω ω		ころん	:	
いこーる	=	おんぐすとろーむ	Å		さん	③ III	
いち	① I	おんぶ	♪		さんかく	△▲▽▼	
いぶしろん	E ε	かい	X x		し	④ IV	
うぶしろん	Y u	かける	×	しー	C c		
えい	A a	かっこ	「」『』【】“”” () □ □ <> 《》	じー	G g		
えいち	H h		きろ	キロ	しーしー	cc	
えー	A a		きろぐらむ	kg	しーた	Θ θ	
えす	S s	かっぱ	K k	きろめーとる	km	じーた	Z z
えっくす	X x	かぶ	(株)	く	⑨ IX	じえい	J j

Reading	Symbol
じゃー	J j
しかく	□◆◇◆
しぐま	Σ σ
しち	⑦ VII
しめ	♯
しゃーぶ	#
しゃせん	／
じゅう	⑩ X
じゅういち	(11)
じゅうきゅう	(19)
じゅうく	(19)
じゅうご	(15)
じゅうさん	(13)
じゅうし	(14)
じゅうしち	(17)
じゅうなな	(17)
じゅうに	(12)
じゅうはち	(18)
じゅうよん	(14)
じゅうろく	(16)
しょうなり	<
しょうわ	昭和
しろぼし	☆
しろまる	○
ずけい	☆★○●◎ ◇◆□■▲ ▲▽▼

Reading	Symbol
すらっしゅ	／
ぜーた	Z z
せくしょん	§
せっし	℃
ぜっと	Z z
せみころん	;
せんち	cm ㌢
せんちめーとる	cm
せんと	¢ ㄘ
だい	(代)
たいしょう	丈
だいなり	>
だいひょう	(代)
たう	T t
だが一	†
だくてん	°
たず	+
だぶりゅ	W w
だぶりゅー	W w
だぶるだが一	‡
たんい	° ' " °C ¥ \$ ¢ £ %
ていー	T t
でいー	D d
てー	T t
でー	D d
でるた	Δ δ

Reading	Symbol
てん	、……” 、……” 、……”
てんてん	… …
でんわ	TEL
ど	℃ °
どう	々 〃 全
どしー	℃
どる	\$ ドル
とん	トン
ないし	～
なぜならば	∴
なな	⑦ VII
なみ	～
なんばー	No
に	② II
にじゅう	②0
にじゅうまる	◎
にゅー	N v
のま	々
ばーせんと	% ㌦
ばーみる	%
ばい	Π π
はいふん	—
はち	⑧ VIII
ばつ	×

Reading	Symbol
はてな	?
はんだくてん	°
びー	B b
びー	P p Π π
ひく	—
ひしがた	◇◆
びっくり	!
びょう	”
ふあい	Φ φ
ふい	V v
ふいー	Φ φ
ぶさい	Ψ ψ
ぶしー	Ψ ψ
ふとうごう	<> ≤ ≥ ≠ ≪ ≫
ぶらす	+
ぶらすまいなす	±
ふらっと	b
ぶん	’
へいせい	平成
へいほうめーとる	m
べーじ	㌦
べーた	B β
べーたー	B β
へくたーる	㌦
ほし	☆★※
ぼんど	£

Reading	Symbol
まいなす	—
まる	○ ● ◎ 。 ① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫ ⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲ ⑳ ㊤ ㊦ ㊧ ㊨ ㊩
みゆー	M μ

Reading	Symbol
みり	mm ミリ
みりぐらむ	mg
みりばー	ミリ バール
みりめーとる	mm
むげん	∞
むげんだい	∞
めいじ	明治
めーとる	メートル
めす	♀

Reading	Symbol
やじるし	→ ← ↑ ↓ ⇒ ⇔
ゆう	(有)
ゆー	U u
ゆうげんがいしゃ	(有)
ゆうびん	〒
ゆうびんばんごう	〒
ゆえに	∴
ゆぶしろん	Y U

Reading	Symbol
よん	④ IV
らむだ	Λ λ
りっとる	リットル
ろー	P ρ
ろく	⑥ VI
わい	Y y
わっと	ワット
わる	÷

* Some may differ from actual displays.

* There are types of entered characters as two-byte only, one-byte only and both two/one-byte characters.

Smiley list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode. can also be converted by entering "かお" or "かおもじ".

• Greeting/Reply (19 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^_^)/	あいさつ、ばい
(^_^)/	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^_^)/	あいさつ、ばいばい
▽ (^_^) byebye!!	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^^)/	あいさつ、おーい、 じゃあ、どーも、 よろしく
(^^)/	あいさつ、おーい、 じゃあ、どーも、 よろしく
(^^)/	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^^)/	あいさつ、おーい
(//^//) f°	あいさつ、にこっ
~(°°)	あいさつ、やあ
(°^°)/	あいさつ、ちわっ
▽ (°ω°=°ω°)/	あいさつ、おはよう
(o^°)b	へんじ、ぐっ、ぐー
(≧ω≦) b	へんじ、ぐっ、ぐー
(°∇°) n	へんじ、はい
(°^°)ok	へんじ、おっけー
(°_°)ダ了解!	へんじ、りょうかい
(o_°_°)/	あいさつ、やあ
(=°ω°)/	あいさつ、やあ

• Smile/Glad (34 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^)	わらう、にこっ
(^^)v	うれしい、にこっ
(^o^)	うれしい、うほほ、 にこっ、わーい
o(^o^o	うれしい、うきうき
(o^_^o)	うれしい、にこっ
(°^_^°)	うれしい、にこっ
(°∇°)	わらう、きたー、 にこっ
▽ (^∇^)/	うれしい、わーい
∨ (°_°)ノ	うれしい、わーい
(°▽°)	うれしい、にこっ
(☆▽☆)	うれしい、きらーん
(^^)v	うれしい、やったね、 びーす、にこっ、 ぶい
(=^_^=)	うれしい、にこっ
(°∇°)	うれしい、にこっ
(≧▽≦)	うれしい
;)	わらう、にこっ、 すまいる
V(^o^)	うれしい、びーす
(^3^)/717	わらう、ちゅっ、 にこっ

Smiley	Reading
((o(^_^o))	うれしい、わくわく
(^^)	わらう、にこっ
v(^o^)	うれしい、いえい、 ぶい、びーす
(^_^)v	うれしい、やったね、 びーす、にこっ、 ぶい
(^o^)	わらう、にこっ
(^o^)	わらう、わーい
(^o^)/	わらう、おーい、 はーい
(^o^)v	わらう、やったね、 びーす、にこっ、 ぶい
)^o^(	わらう、 ほっぺがおちる
\\(^o^)/	わらう、わーい
:-)	わらう、にこっ、 すまいる
∨ (≧▽≦)/	うれしい、きゃー
d=(^o^)=b	うれしい、ぐー
ε=▽(*▽*)ノ	うれしい、きゃー
(@^o^@)	うれしい
(° 舞 °)	うれしい、むふふ

• Bashful/Angry (18 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^ゞ	てるる、ぼりぼり
f(^_^)	てるる、てへ
(#^_^#)	てるる、にこっ、 ぼっ
(°^°)	てるる、えへっ
(//▽//)	てるる、てれ
(°^°)	てるる、てへっ
(=°ω°=)	てるる、てへっ
(°^°)	てるる、こまる、 てれ
∩	てるる、てへっ
(▽)	てるる、うぶぶ
∨ (°∇°)ノ	おこる、こら、 こるあ、こるあ
o_°=○☆	おこる、ぼんち
(ノ_ノ)ノ	おこる、ちゃぶだい
(-#)	おこる、こらっ
:-)	おこる、ふまん
ψ(°◇°)ψ	おこる、こら
(ノ_△)ノ	おこる、こらっ
(●°ε°●)	おこる、ぶんぶん、 むかっ

- **Cry/Sad (19 items)**

Smiley	Reading
(>_<)	なく、あいた、 いたい、いてー、 ひえー
(T^T)	なく、うるうる
(T_T)	なく、しくしく
(/_.)	なく、しくしく
(+_+)	かなしい、びくっ
(x_x)	かなしい、がっくり
(/_._)	なく、ぐすん
(つд`)	なく、ぐすん
o _ _	かなしい、がっくり
(´・ω・｀)	かなしい、しょぼん
(D;)	なく、しくしく
(>_<_)	なく
(.:.)	なく、しくしく
(T-T)	なく、なき、 うるうる
(TOT)	なく、なき、 うるうる
(/_..)	なく、いたい
:(	なく、かなしい
(;`д`)	なく、なき、ぐすん
´_(ノд)`´	なく、えーん

- **Surprise (28 items)**

Smiley	Reading
(*_*)	おどろき、びっくり
(..?)	おどろき、めがてん
(..:)	おどろき、めがてん
(^_^)	おどろき、うーん

Smiley	Reading
(@_@)	おどろき、びくっ
(-;-)	おどろき、ぎくっ
(-☆)	おどろき、きらーん
(□□;)!!	おどろき、がーん
(' °' ;)	おどろき、ほかーん
Σ('□')!	おどろき、びっくり、 がーん、ぎく
(◇-;-)	おどろき、えっ
＼(' □' ;)ノ	おどろき、えっ
(' □')	おどろき、えっ
((((' ㏑' ;))))	おどろき、がくがく
(=.=;-)	おどろき、ぎくっ、 てつや
(.·;)	おどろき、めがてん
(' °')	おどろき、ぎくっ、 ぎょ
(' °';)	おどろき、ぎくっ、 ぎょ
(@_@。	おどろき、びくっ、 ぎょっ
(' ㏑')	おどろき、ほかーん
(' _')	おどろき、うーん
(.·;)	おどろき、めがてん
(.·;)	おどろき、めがてん
(.·;)	おどろき、めがてん
(.·;)	おどろき、めがてん
(' °')/	おどろき、おおー、 びっくり
(' °' ::	おどろき、ぎくっ
Σ(' □' ;)	おどろき、がーん

- **Doubtful/Impatient (21 items)**

Smiley	Reading
(^^)	あせり、ぎくつ、あせ
(?_?)	ぎもん、なぜ
(-_-)	あせり、ぎくつ、あせ
w=(°o°)=w	ぎもん、ばたばた
σ(^_ ^);?	ぎもん、えっ
(;-_-)ジ-	ぎもん、じー
〇(><);(><)〇	あせり、あたふた
(° Ⅱ° ; ≡ ; ° Ⅱ°)	あせり、あたふた
^^;	あせり、ぎくつ
(^^;;	あせり、ぎくつ、あせ
(^_ ^)	あせり、ぎくつ、あせ
(^_ ^;	あせり、ぎくつ、あせ
(_-_-)	あせり、ぎくつ、あせ
(¥_¥;	ぎもん、ぎくつ、あせ
(*_*;	あせり、びくつ
^_ ^;	あせり、ぎくつ、あせ
(?_?;	ぎもん、ぎくつ、なぜ
ε=τ(·_·)⊥	あせり、にげる
(° ∇° :)	あせり、ぎくつ、あせ、えっ
((〇(><)<〇))	あせり、じたばた
(° 〇°)	あせり、ぎくつ、あせ

- Others (61 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^▽^@) ♪ ♪ ♪	うたう
(^◇^)	りょうかい、 おっけー、らじゃ
m(_)m	ぺこり
_ (_) _	ぺこり
< (_) >	ありがと、おねがい、 ごめん、ぺこり
≡≡≡Λ(≡≡)/	いそぐ、にげる
(^ ^)))))))))))))))	こそこそ
p(^ ^)q	がんばれ、ふぁいと
:)	ういんく
(^ -)	ういんく
(・ v ・) イイ	いい
(^人^)	かんしゃ、 ありがと
!(^^)!	びんぼーん
ゝ (^ ^)	よしよし、おい
(≧≦m≦≧)	ぶっ
(σ・ v ・) σ	げっ
(――)	にやり
(・ v ・) つ	どうぞ
(^ ^) 旦~	どうぞ、おちゃ
(㍻ □) ㍻	きて、かもん、 おいで
♪~(¯ ¯)	くちぶえ
(¯ ¯) y. ~ ~	たばこ
(・ w ・)	しゃきーん
ㇿ(・ v ・) ㇿ	せーぶ
(-.-) y. ~ ~ ~	いっぶく
(-.-) y. ~ ~ ~	いっぶく

Smiley	Reading
(͡ ~ ͡)	うまい、たべる
(͡ 人 ͡)	おねがい
(^ ^) 人 (^ ^)	かんばい、なかま、 たっち
(i _) \ (^ _ ^)	よしよし
(^ ▽ ^) σ ̂ 〇 ̂)	つんつん
~~ (m ͡ 厶 ͡) m	たすけて
~~ (m ͡ 𐀿 ͡) m	いひひ
φ (. _ .) ✕ ✕ ✕	めもめも、かきかき

Smiley	Reading
(' ▽ ^) も ʘ ʘ	もしもし
(' □ ')	あーん
ㄣ (͡ ▽ ͡ ;) ㄣ	やれやれ
(' ^ ͡ ;)	はあ、ためいき
(; - -) = 3	ためいき
(- " -)	うーん
(' ー ')	ぶぶん、じまん
(' ㄣ ')	よだれ
(͡ ー + ͡) ㄗ	ぶっ

Smiley	Reading
(͡ _)	ほへー
(͡ 〇)	ほへー
(p _)	むしめがね
(- -)	じとっ
(- -)	じとっ
(- -) 凸	ちちち
(.)	どれどれ
[壁] _)	ちらっ
(+ 〇 +)	いたい

Smiley	Reading
(- -) zzz	ねてる、ねる
(_ _) . o O	ねむい
(' _ ㄥ ')	ぶーん
(U o U)	ねむい
(^ (I) ^)	くま
U ^ I ^ U	いぬ
♯ イツ (- _ -) ㄣ	ぼい
\ (' ▽ , °) ノ	よだれ
> ^ ')))) ㄥ	さかな

* Some may differ from actual displays.

Multiaccess combinations

Availability of operations of processes generated/performed for each operation currently in progress is shown below.

- In i-mode (i-mode connection) includes communication using i-Channel and i-concier (except information reception), Full Browser and data broadcasting site.
- i-mode mail reception includes reception of MessageR/F, i-Channel and i-concier information.

○ : New operations are available △ : New operations are available depending on the condition × : New operations are unavailable

Current status			During a voice call	During a videophone call	During a PushTalk session	In i-mode	In data communication (Packet)	In data communication (64K)
Processes that occur or are performed	Voice call	Send	△ *1	×	×	○	○	×
		Receive	△ *1, 2, 3	△ *2, 3, 4	△ *8	○	○	△ *2, 3, 14
	Videophone call	Send	×	×	×	○ *10	×	×
		Receive	△ *2, 3, 4	△ *2, 3, 4	△ *2	△ *11	△ *2, 5	△ *2, 3, 4
	PushTalk	Send	×	×	△ *9	○ *10	×	×
		Receive	×	×	×	△ *12	×	×
	i-mode	Connect	○	×	×	△ *13	×	×
	i-mode mail	Send	○	×	×	○	×	×
		Receive	○ *6	×	×	○	×	×
	SMS	Send	○	×	×	○	○	×
		Receive	○ *6	○ *6	○ *6	○	○	○ *6
	Data communication (Packet)	Send	○	×	×	×	×	×
		Receive	○	×	×	×	×	×
	Data communication (64K)	Send	×	×	×	×	×	×
		Receive	△ *3, 5, 7	△ *3, 5, 7	△ *5, 7	△ *5, 7	△ *5, 7	△ *5, 7

*1 During a call, a subscriber to Call Waiting can make or receive a call to/from another party.

*2 Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, if subscribed to, can be used.

*3 When Set arrival act is Activate, Arrival call act is used.

*4 Recorded as a missed call when Call waiting is Activate.

*5 Recorded as a missed call.

*6 The ring tone does not sound.

*7 If Call Forwarding Service is active and Ring time is "0 Sec.", it is available by Call Forwarding Service.

- *8 Operate according to PushTalk arv. act.
- *9 Only the caller can make a call for adding members.
- *10 You are disconnected from i-mode.
- *11 Operate according to DataSession arv. act.
- *12 Operate according to i-mode arv. act:PT.
- *13 Only connecting to data broadcasting site or i-concier is available.
- *14 When Call waiting is Activate, you can select either exiting current communication to answer the phone or rejecting the call.

Multitask combinations

The table below indicates whether an item in New Task start menu can be activated combined with the currently running function/group.

- Functions that can be activated may be unavailable depending on the condition of FOMA terminal.

○ : Available △ : Partilly available × : Unavailable

Menu items	Voice call	Videophone call	PushTalk	Data communication	Dial	Mail	i-mode/ i-concier	i-appli	Phonebook & Logs	Data Box	LifeKit/ Osafu-Keitai	Accessory	Settings	Music/1Seg	Silent mode ON/OFF
Executing functions/group															
During a voice call	Multiaccess Combinations → P414				×	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	×
During a videophone call					×	△	△	△	△	×	△	△	△	△	×
During a PushTalk session					×	×	×	△	△	×	△	○	△	△	×
In data communication (Packet)					○	△	×	○	○	△	○	○	○	△	○
In data communication (64K)					×	△	△	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	×
Dial	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	△	○	○	○	△	○
Mail	○	○	○	△	○	△	△	○	○	△	○	○	○	○	○
i-mode	○	○	○	△	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	○	○	△	○
i-appli	○	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	○	△	△	○
Phonebook & Logs	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	○	△	○
Data Box	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	○	△	○
LifeKit (except infrared communication/ iC transmission)	○	○	○	△	○	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△
Accessory	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	△	○	△	○	△	○
Settings & NW services	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△
MUSIC	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	○
Osafu-Keitai	○	○	○	△	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	○	○	△	○
User information	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	△	△	○	○	○	○	○
i-concier	○	○	○	○	○	○	△	○	○	△	○	○	○	○	○

Services available for the FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Directory assistance service (charged : service fee + call fee) (Not provided for those who do not require Directory assistance service)	104 (no area code)
Sending telegrams (charged : telegram fee)	115 (no area code)
Time (charged)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charged)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster recorded message service (charged)	171 (no area code)
Collect call (charged : service + call)	106 (no area code)

✓ INFORMATION

- If you use the directory assistance service (104), the call charge is billed together with a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen including tax). This service is available without charge for those visually impaired or physically disabled in the upper body. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a land-line phone (as of October, 2008).
- This FOMA terminal is applicable to "Emergency Location Report". When making an emergency call to 110, 119, 118, etc., information of your location (location information) is automatically informed to an emergency call receiving organization such as police. For some locations and/or wave reception conditions, the emergency call receiving organization cannot recognize the correct location. When location information is notified, the name of the emergency call receiving organization the information is sent to appears on the stand-by display.
When the caller ID is hidden for the call, i.e., by appending "184" to the dialed number, none of location information or your phone number is notified; however, the organization may acquire the location information and phone number regardless of your settings, if they have determined that such information is necessary for the protection of life etc. The area and timing of implementing "Emergency Location Report" vary by the preparatory state of respective emergency call receiving organizations.

- When calling to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone and give your phone number and your current location precisely since the police or fire department has to call you back for confirmation. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, do not move when making the call and do not turn OFF the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- For some areas you are calling from, you are not connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or land-line phone in that case.
- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) per call (as of October, 2008).
- Customers who use Call forwarding from a land-line phone whose forwarding destination is a mobile phone, may still hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy, out of service area or turned OFF due to the settings.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q2, Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a land-line phone or a payphone to a FOMA terminal.

Introduction of options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the area.

For details, contact a sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop. For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02*1
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*2
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Battery Pack F10
- In-Car Holder 01
- Desktop Holder F27
- Back Cover F33
- Carry Case L 01
- FOMA USB Cable*3
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01*3/02*3
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- Bluetooth Headset F01
- AC adapter for Bluetooth Headset F01
- Wireless Earphone Set P01

- Wireless Earphone Set 02
 - Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01*⁴/P02*⁴
 - Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01*⁴
 - Earphone Plug Adapter 01
 - Earphone Plug Adapter P001*⁴
 - Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*⁵/P002*⁵
 - Stereo Earphone Set P001*⁵
 - Earphone/Microphone 01
 - Stereo Earphone Set 01
 - Remote controller with microphone F01*⁴
 - Earphone Terminal P001*⁵
 - Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01
 - FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use*¹
 - FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna*⁶
 - FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)*⁶
 - Bone conduction microphone/receiver 01*⁴/02
- *¹ Charging battery using AC adapter→P51
 *² FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to use/charge F-01A by USB connection.
 *³ If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.
 *⁴ Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 is required to connect to F-01A.
 *⁵ Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 and Earphone Plug Adapter P001 are required to connect to F-01A.
 *⁶ Use this only in Japan.

Playing movie using FOMA terminal, PC, etc.

You can play movies (MP4 format) created with a PC etc. on FOMA terminal by recording it in microSD card. And, you can play movies (MP4 format) recorded with FOMA terminals on a PC by data-transferring by microSD card, mail attachment, etc.

- Movie file recorded by FOMA terminal→P198
- MP4 format that can be played on FOMA terminal→P292
- Playing data in microSD card→P304

* For compatible external devices, refer to the website below.

From a PC

FMWORLD (<http://www.fmwworld.net/>)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→動画再生機能の対応状況 (Support of movie playing function)

- To play movies recorded in microSD card, save to the specific folders using FOMA F series SD utility etc.

microSD card folder structure→P301

Updating the microSD card information→P306

* For SD utility of FOMA F series, refer to the website below.

From a PC

FMWORLD (<http://www.fmwworld.net/>)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→データリンクソフト (Data link software)

❖ Movie playing software

Playing movies on a PC (MP4 format) requires QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer, Inc. QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below.

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- Downloading software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operating procedure, refer to the website shown above.

Troubleshooting

Check for the necessity of software update first, and update the software if necessary. →P429

■ Power supply and charging

● FOMA terminal cannot be turned ON (the terminal cannot be used).

- Is the battery pack installed correctly?→P49
- Is the battery exhausted?→P50, 53
- When the FOMA terminal is active in Dual Network Service, FOMA terminal service is unavailable. Check whether FOMA terminal is active or not. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

● FOMA terminal cannot be turned OFF

By pressing  for 10 seconds or more, power can be forcibly turned OFF.

● FOMA terminal cannot be charged.

- Is the battery pack installed correctly?→P49
- Is the charging jack dirty? Clean the jack with dry cotton swab etc.
- Is the AC adapter connector securely inserted to the external connection jack of FOMA terminal or the desktop holder connection jack? Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the desktop holder? Is FOMA terminal correctly installed in the Desktop holder?→P52

● The light blinks while charging.

- If you are talking, communicating or during PushTalk session, end it immediately. Remove the AC adapter (Desktop holder) and DC adapter from FOMA terminal, then charge again in the proper way.→P50
- If the problem still persists, contact a sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop.

● All the icons on the top of the display blink and alarm sounds.

The battery is almost exhausted. Charge the battery.→P50, 53

■ Phone

● Calls cannot be made using the keypads.

Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Self mode, Keypad dial lock, Lock on close or Auto keypad lock?→P114, 115, 116, 118, 124

● After dialing a number, you hear a busy tone and cannot establish a call.

- Have you dialed the area code?
- Did you hear the dial tone before dialing?
- Is 圏外 (out of service area) displayed?→P54

● The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Call alert volume of Adjust volume set to "Silent"?→P92
- Have you activated Public mode, Silent mode, Self mode or Privacy mode?→P69, 95, 116, 118
- Is Specified caller, Anonymous caller, Ring alert delay or Unregistered caller set?→P126, 127, 128
- Is Ring time for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service "0 Sec."?→P362, 363
- Is Greeting msg resp time "0 Sec."?→P70
- Is Delayed time(Sec) in Auto answer setting "0 sec."?→P342

● During a voice call, the distant party's voice is hard to listen to or too loud.

- Has Listen volume of Adjust volume been changed?→P59, 92
- If you set Voice clear or Voice slowing to ON, the other party's voice becomes easy to hear.→P60

● When there is an incoming call, the terminal operates in a ring alert, image or light not set.

- Call ring alert, incoming call image or light alert, if any, set for multiple functions operate according to the priority levels.→P92, 99, 106
- Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode?→P114, 115, 117, 118

● When there is an incoming call, functions for displaying the name or sounding the ring alert as saved in the phonebook are not activated.

- Does the phone number of the caller match that saved in phonebook (Name displays→P82)?
- Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode?→P114, 115, 117, 118

■ Settings and operations

● The menu icon becomes a key, which cannot be selected.

When a function cannot be performed because of no UIM installed, Personal data lock, Privacy mode, etc., the icon is displayed in .→P46, 117, 118

● "Insert UIM." appears when FOMA terminal is powered on.

UIM may not be correctly installed or may be damaged.→P46

● The authentication screen appears every time FOMA terminal is opened.

Lock on close or Auto keypad lock is ON.→P124

● appears on the stand-by display and no operation can be made.

Lock on close or Auto keypad lock is ON.→P124

- **The authentication screen appears if trying to display the phonebook, mail, etc**
Have you activated Privacy mode?→P118
- **With FOMA terminal folded, the operation of pressing ,  or  has no effect.**
Side key hold is ON.→P123
- ** appears on the stand-by display.**
Side key hold is ON.→P123
- **The date and time are deleted.**
With Auto time adjust "OFF" in Date & time, removing the battery pack or leaving it exhausted for a long time may delete the date and time.→P55
- **The display is dim.**
 - Is Light time-out set?→P101
 - Is Brightness of Display & Key light changed?→P101
 - Is Power saving mode set?→P101
 - Is 1Seg ECO mode set to ON?→P217
- **Display or Keypad light does not turn on.**
 - Is Normal use in Display light time in Display & Key light "0 sec"?→P100
 - Is Keypad light set to "OFF"?→P101
 - Is Power saving mode set?→P101

- **The cursor/pointer moves or Keypad sound sounds with no operation.**
When touching the fingerprint sensor lightly with Pointing device ON, the cursor/pointer may move or Keypad sound may sound. Do not touch the fingerprint sensor or set Pointing device to "Not use" not to use pointing device.→P45
- **Double-tapping to pointing device is not recognized.**
Operate it so that a ball of the finger hits the center of fingerprint sensor.→P44

■ Mail, i-appli and data

- **Still images and movie taken with the camera are blurred.**
 - When full auto focus is set to "OFF", activate auto focus manually.→P201
 - When shooting in flip style, use Touch AF.→P202
 - When shooting an object nearby, switch to macro shooting.→P206
 - To shoot a portrait image, set the face detection function.→P206
 - Shoot in Shake reduce:Auto.→P208
- **When a mail is received, the terminal operates in a ring alert, image or light not set.**
 - Mail ring alert or light alert, if any, set for multiple functions operate according to the priority levels.,→P92, 106
 - When movie/i-motion containing sound and image is set as Mail ring alert, the set i-motion is used as the image.
 - If multiple mails are received at the same time, the terminal operates as set for the last mail received.
 - Have you activated All lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode?→P114, 117, 118

- **Names do not appear or ring alert does not sound at the time of mail reception even if they are registered in the phonebook.**
 - Does the phone number or mail address of the caller match that saved in phonebook (Name displays→P82)?
 - Have you activated All lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode?→P114, 117, 118
 - Is Receive display option set?→P123
- **The still image and movie appear as  and .**
Destroyed data cannot be displayed correctly.
- **The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.**
While transferring large-size data between FOMA terminal and microSD card, the reactions on the screen may be delayed.
- **i-appli/i-appli stand-by display cannot be activated.**
 - Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.→P47
 - Has i-appli been in suspended condition by IP (Information Provider)?
 - With i-appliDX, communication may be made to confirm the availability of i-appli regardless of the network transmission setting of i-appli. Some i-appli may not be activated until the availability confirmation finishes.
 - To activate i-appliDX, the setting of date and time may be required.→P55
 - Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode?→P114, 115, 117, 118
- **The lighting for the display does not go ON while i-appli is running.**
 - The light does not turn on when Normal use in Display light time of Display & Key light is "0 sec" and i-appli is "Terminal setting".→P100, 246
 - Even if setting Display light time of i-appli settings to "Software", the light turns off in Public mode when the time specified in Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light has elapsed.
 - Is Power saving mode set?→P101

● **Data transfer is not performed**

Are you using USB HUB? If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

■ **Other**

● **Osaifu-Keitai function is unavailable.**

- When removing the battery pack or activating Omakase Lock, IC card functions become unavailable regardless of the IC card lock settings. →P49, 115
- Have you activated IC card lock? →P266

● **At the time of authenticating or registering fingerprint, "Scan failed." appears even if your finger is not in contact with the sensor.**

The surface of the sensor may be wet or dew may have condensed on the surface. Wipe the water off with a soft cloth before use.

● **1Seg watching is unavailable.**

- Are you out of terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service area or in a place where airwave is weak?
- Is channel set? →P215

● **Fingerprint authentication is unavailable with FOMA terminal connected to a PC etc.**

When connecting FOMA terminal using a USB cable to a device which requires grounding such as a desktop PC, make sure that the device is grounded in advance. If the connected device is not grounded, fingerprint authentication may be disabled. In this case, perform fingerprint authentication while touching a metallic part (frame, external connector, etc.) of the connected device or after disconnecting FOMA terminal from the device.

● **While operating and charging, FOMA terminal, battery pack, etc. become hot.**

While operating or charging, or if you use i-appli, videophone call, 1Seg watching, etc. for a long time while charging the battery, FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (including battery charger) may become hot. It is normal and continue to use it.

● **The display has afterimages.**

- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, afterimages may remain. Remove the battery pack after turning OFF the power.
- If FOMA terminal is left open for a while with the same screen displayed, afterimages of that screen may remain even after changing the screen for a certain operation.

● **The display has some dots always lit or unlit.**

FOMA terminal displays are manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit. Note that, this shows characteristics of liquid crystal displays and not defects in FOMA terminals.

● **Difference in lighting color and/or brightness**

- Note that, the phenomena below are caused by characteristics of LEDs used for lighting, not defects of FOMA terminal :
 - The lighting color and/or brightness varies among FOMA terminals or by LEDs.
 - The actual lighting color seems to discord from the lighting color name for some FOMA terminals.
 - Though the lighting color name described indicates the major light source color of the LED, the lighting may appear in a different color because the light source settings are delicately different among functions.
- Check that the key lighting turns on in "Blueberry", "Kiwi" and "Strawberry" by Keypad light, and the light turns on in "Aqua", "Lime" and "Garnet" by Light alert. If one or more of these colors do not turn on, contact a sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop. →P101, 106

■ **Using FOMA terminal overseas**

● **國外 (out of service area) is displayed, and international roaming service is unavailable.**

- You are out of the international roaming service area or in an area with poor signal strength.
- Check whether the service area and telecommunications carrier are available, referring to international service guides such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".
- Using Network search mode, search for a telecommunications carrier available for the service. →P377
- Switch 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO" or any available network after moving from Japan to overseas. If "AUTO" is set in Japan, once turn OFF FOMA terminal and then turn it ON. →P377

● **No incoming voice or videophone calls are received.**
Is Bar calls at roaming activate? →P378

● **Videophone call, i-mode or SMS is unavailable.**

- Check whether the service area and telecommunications carrier are available, referring to international service guides such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".
- Check the settings of 3G/GSM setting. →P377

● **No caller ID is notified/A notified caller ID is different from that of the caller/Functions for using contents saved in phonebook or those using Caller ID notification do not operate.**

Even when a caller notifies its caller ID, it is not displayed on FOMA terminal unless notified from the network or telecommunications carrier used. And, a notified caller ID is different from that of the caller by some networks or telecommunications carriers used.

If error message appears mentioned below

- The "(number)" or "(xxx)" in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from i-mode Center.

- **A Network error has occurred.**

Press  to close GPS function, and retry later.

- **All locked.**

All lock is ON.→P114

- **Apply secret attribute to mail address and SMS?**

This message appears when external phonebook entries with secret attribute set are loaded or when secret attribute is set for phonebook entries.→P122

- **Authentication interrupted.**

Displayed when stopping authentication by pressing  in the authentication screen.

- **Authentication type is not supported.(401)**

The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified site or website is disabled.

- **Call cost reached limit. Call disconnected./Call cost reached limit. Call on-hold disconnected./Call cost already reached limit. Unable to call.**

Reset the total calls cost.→P336

- **Cannot execute because of other tasks.**

When updating pattern data, terminate all other functions in advance.

- **Caution! This SMS includes Phone Nos. or URLs. Be careful if you do not recognize the sender.**

• With Message scan of Set scan set to "Valid", you make an attempt to display SMS containing a phone number and/or URL description. (It does not appear when mopera mail or voice mail reception notification is received in SMS.)

- **Certificate is rejected.(tampered)**

The site certificate has been altered. Connection is suspended.

- **Cessation of broadcast.**

The selected channel is stopped.

- **Check address.**

An incorrect or no mail address was input to the mail group.

- **Check SMS center setting.**

Setting of SMS Center in SMS settings is incorrect.→P166

- **Connection failed.(403)**

Failed to connect to the site for a certain reason such as connection rejection.

- **Connection failed.(503)**

Failed to connect to the server due to the maintenance or the rate of congestion. Retry later.

- **Connection failed.(562)**

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please retry in a place with good radio wave conditions.

- **Connection interrupted.**

Please retry in a place with good radio wave conditions. If the error persists, retry later.

- **Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion.**

Download has suspended because the data exceeds savable size while downloading i-motion.→P186

- **Continue using i-appli and transmit data? Yes/ Terminate i-appli**

After "Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?" appears, an attempt was made by i-appli to make communications.

- **Corrupted data or microSD.**

Accessing microSD card is disabled due to a problem in data saved in the microSD card or the card itself. Initialize the microSD card or insert a new microSD card.→P300, 306

- **Corrupted data or microSD. Saving to phone memory.**

When "microSD" is the destination for saving still images or movies and the microSD card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switches to "Phone".

- **Corrupted data.**

i-appli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar code reader.

- **Corrupted data. Restore default setting?**

Select "Yes" to return to the default setting. Functions cannot be started without restoring the default setting.

- **Current UIM is not registered as IC owner. Unable to run/download/update. Details are given in IC owner in Osaifu-Keitai Menu**

This message appears when UIM is replaced after registering as IC owner and an attempt is made to download, update or activate Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.→P265

- **Data in IC card is full. Unable to run/download/update. Delete service?**

Memory space in IC card is insufficient when starting, upgrading or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli. Delete data from IC card according to instructions on the screen and delete the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.→P259, 265

● **Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?**

This message appears when communications using i-appli are made very frequently in a predetermined period of time. Select "Yes" to continue using i-appli, "No" to continue i-appli stopping i-appli communications or "Terminate i-appli" to stop i-appli.

● **Date and time not set. Unable to start.**

Some functions cannot be activated before date and time are set. →P55

● **Delete software and IC card data?**

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which also deletes data in the IC card is included in the i-appli. Select "Yes" to delete the i-appli and the data in the IC card.

● **Dial callout restricted.**

This prohibited operation is unavailable in Keypad dial lock ON. →P118

● **Error in IC card data. Unable to delete software.**

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli containing errors in the IC card data cannot be deleted.

● **Error in image. Does not work correctly.**

Unable to display the Flash graphics due to image error.

● **Error in storage area. Unable to use password manager. Quitting.**

Password save/quote is disabled due to an error in Password manager memory space.

● **Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls.**

This message appears when a call is made selecting 5 or more members. Make a call after selecting 4 or less members.

● **Failed to activate.**

Activate 1Seg could not be activated due to an error in activation or station selection process.

● **Failed to read/clear call cost information.**

UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. →P46

● **i-appli stand-by display terminated due to security error.**

The i-appli stand-by display has been closed due to an unpermitted operation or i-appli action.

● **Infrared/Bluetooth/iC transmission Connection interrupted.**

An error occurred during infrared communication/Bluetooth communication/iC transmission. Do not move FOMA terminal from the right location before data sending/receiving completes. →P312, 343

● **Infrared/Bluetooth/iC transmission Failed to connect via authentication.**

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. →P313, 345

● **Infrared/Bluetooth/iC transmission No response. Retry data exchange?**

A certain period of time elapsed in infrared communication/Bluetooth communication/iC transmission state, but no communicating parties are found. Locate your and the other party's FOMA terminals or Bluetooth devices correctly. →P312, 343

● **Infrared/iC transmission No UIM, requested software failed to start.**

Even if an i-appli To is set to data received by infrared communication/iC transmission, it is not activated due to UIM operation restriction. →P47

● **Input error (205)**

Input data for the site or website is incorrect.

● **Insufficient memory.**

Operation interrupted due to insufficient memory. If it appears frequently, once turn OFF FOMA terminal and then turn it ON.

● **Insufficient memory. Quitting application.**

Insufficient memory. The application is terminated stopping operation.

● **Invalid data.**

The data contains an error and cannot be downloaded.

● **Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)**

Cannot be connected because of the error in the site or website. Make sure the URL.

● **Invalid data. Unable to save.**

Data received through infrared communications/iC transmission cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.

● **Invalid data.(xxx)**

- The specified site or website does not support i-mode.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
- Sending auto-send message failed.

● **Invalid microSD. Unable to use DRM function.**

Accessing the authentication area in microSD card is disabled for a certain reason. Data compatible with data transfer cannot be saved to microSD card with errors.

● **Invalid UIM. Requested service not available.**

Operation is disabled by UIM operation restriction. →P47

● **Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.**

i-appli cannot start by UIM operation restriction. →P47

● **Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?**

Select "Yes" and set ToruCa auto-read to "ON".

● **以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした (561) Mails could not be sent to following address.(561) ○ @△△△.ne.jp**

Sending i-mode mail to the following address failed : Press  to display the receiver address of the failed message sending. Check the receiver address and retry sending in a place with good radio wave conditions. Mail addresses displayed in the message vary by the destinations.

● **Message kept in center.**

SMS have already been sent.

● **No content is available.(204)**

Could not find data at the specified site.

● **No response.(408)**

Unable to receive a response from a site or website within the specified time and the communication is disconnected. Retry later.

● **Omakase Lock activated.**

Omakase Lock is ON.→P115

● **Out of 1Seg service area.**

- Reception fails because you are out of broadcasting service area. Retry the operation in a place with good radio wave conditions.
- Reception fails because the channel is chargeable or for a certain reason.

● **Out of service area.**

Unable to perform because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

● **Page is not found.(404)**

Make sure the URL is correct.

● **Password is not correct.(401)**

The user name or password entered on the authentication screen of sites or website is incorrect.

● **Play limit reached. Unable to retrieve.**

When the replay restriction set to a Music&Video Channel program is exceeded, downloading cannot be resumed.→P231

● **Please wait.**

- Failure in the voice line/packet communications facilities or congestion in voice line network/packet communications network. Retry later.
- A call can be made to 110, 119 and 118. However, the connection is not established by some conditions.

● **Please wait for a while (Packet)**

Failure in the packet communications facilities or congestion in packet communications network. Retry later.

● **PUK blocked.**

Contact a sales outlet such as DOCOMO Shop.

● **Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.**

Unable to receive all SMS because an error occurred during reception. Please perform the Check new message function for SMS in a place with good radio wave conditions again.→P165

● **Registration is in progress.(554)**

User registration with i-mode is in process. Retry later.

● **Remotely Controllable services are not subscribed.**

Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service that you tried to control remotely has not subscribed yet. A subscription is required separately.

● **Replay period has not yet started.**

Replaying is disabled as it is still before the replay period set to Music&Video Channel, music data or i-motion. Check the program information or the detail information.→P309, 231, 239

● **Requested software unavailable.**

i-appli cannot be started because of an error in i-appli. Starting i-appli To is disabled if there is a problem in i-appli settings or start-up conditions.

● **Root certificate has expired. Connect?**

The CA certificate has expired. (→P183)
This may appear when date and time are not set or wrong.→P55

● **Root certificate is not valid.**

FOMA terminal certificate is invalidated by setting. To connect, change the setting.→P183

● **Run software and delete data in IC card. Then delete software.**

Deleting the data in the IC card is required. Start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli and delete the data in the IC card in advance to delete the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.→P259, 265

● **Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.**

Infrared communication/iC transmission INBOX is full. Save the data from INBOX into FOMA terminal or delete it.→P314

● **Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download/update. Delete a service?**

Download or update of similar Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is disabled before deleting the existing one. Select "Yes" and delete saved Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

● **Service is not subscribed.**

- You are not an i-mode subscriber. You need to subscribe to use the service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power OFF and then turn ON.

● **Service unavailable.**

SMS service is unavailable.

● **Services are full. MUSIC of overwritten service is unable to play. Overwrite?**

The service of Uta-hodai that can be saved exceeds the limit. Select "Yes" to overwrite from services with the oldest replay expiration. Also, music data downloaded from overwritten services becomes unavailable.

● **Size of this page is not supported.**

- The size of site or Web page was larger than the limit. Press  to display the data already acquired normally.
- The downloading data was larger than the limit size.

● **Software terminated due to security error.**

i-appli ended due to an unpermitted operation or i-appli action.

● **Software already updated.**

The i-appli has already been upgraded to the latest version.

- **Some data need to update replay period. Send phone/terminal and UIM ID, and connect to site?**
This appears if there is expired Uta-hodai when an attempt is made to play music with MUSIC Player. Select "Yes" to update music data (Packet communication for updating the data is charged). When "No" is selected, expired Uta-hodai becomes unavailable.→P235
- **SSL session cannot be established.**
SSL session was interrupted due to a session error or an authentication error on the server side.
- **SSL session failed.**
A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL session. Session is suspended.
- **SSL/TLS session cannot be established.**
SSL/TLS session was interrupted due to a session error or an authentication error on the server side.
- **SSL/TLS session failed.**
A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL/TLS session. Session is suspended.
- **The data cannot be saved. Download?**
The data cannot be saved. Select "Yes" to download.
- **This certificate has expired. Connect?**
The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. →P183
This may appear when date and time are not set or wrong.→P55
- **This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?**
CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name.→P183
- **This data may not be replayed.**
i-motion or movie file format is not supported on FOMA terminal.
- **This site is not certified. Connect?**
The site certification is not supported by FOMA terminal.
- **This software contains an error.**
Unable to import because i-appli data contains an error.
- **This software is currently unavailable for use.**
Using i-appli is stopped by the IP (Information Provider).
- **This UIM cannot be recognized.**
UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty.→P46
- **Time out**
The i-mode Center is busy. Retry later.
- **Time reset. Unable to download/play data. Set auto time adjustment ON in Date & Time and restart phone.**
With Auto time adjust "OFF" in Set date and time, removing the battery pack or leaving it exhausted for a long time may cause the date and time to be deleted.→P55
- **Too many applications running. Quit some applications and try again.**
Function cannot be started due to a lack of memory space. Retry after quitting other functions.
- **Too much data was entered.**
Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of the site or Web page. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.
- **Too much text entered. Entry uncompleted.**
An attempt is made to save an item containing characters exceeding the limit selected from a site etc. to phonebook. Press  to display the phonebook registration screen with excess characters erased.
- **Transmission failed.(552)**
Failed to transmit the i-mode mail because of an error of the i-mode Center. Retry later.
- **UIM full.**
UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete or move SMS in UIM to FOMA terminal.→P167
- **Unable to check new messages.**
Please retry in a place with good radio wave conditions. If the error persists, retry later.
- **Unable to delete some applications in IC card. Delete others?**
i-appli items to be deleted include Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli that cannot be deleted because its related data cannot be deleted from the IC card. To delete other i-appli items, select "Yes".
- **Unable to play. Connect phone to PC and start application to update music if necessary.**
The music data cannot be replayed because it already expired, its replay expiration cannot be confirmed or information specific to FOMA terminal is changed due to a trouble, repair or replacement of the terminal. To play, check that it does not expire using a PC and connect FOMA terminal to the PC for synchronization.→P233
- **Unable to retrieve the requested URL.(504)**
Failed to connect to the specified site etc. for a certain reason.
- **Unable to save specified image.**
Failed to save because the image contains error.
- **"○○○.ne.jp"宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません (555) Unable to send. "○○○.ne.jp" is not available temporarily.(555)**
i-mode Center is busy. Please wait for a while and retry. The domain name displayed in the message varies by the receiver.
- **Unable to shoot serially.**
You cannot shoot serially because of insufficient memory space. Continuous shoot is canceled automatically.

- **Work area full. Quit other applications.**
For the lack of memory space for operation, quit other applications.
- **Unable to switch to data transfer mode.**
As FOMA terminal is performing communication, data transfer mode cannot be set. Try again after the communication ends.
- **Unable to update pattern definitions.**
Updating the pattern definitions has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with good radio wave conditions.
- **Unable to use data type.**
Data in a file format incompatible with FOMA terminal cannot be moved/copied from a microSD card to FOMA terminal or searched for.
- **Unable to use this function**
With 2in1 in B mode, messages cannot be created.
- **Unmatched to saved fingerprint.**
Retry fingerprint authentication or perform authentication operation with terminal security code. Note that authentication with terminal security code is disabled when Fingerprint access is "ON". →P110, 114
- **URL address changed.(301)**
The site or website automatically performs URL transfer or the URL was changed.
- **URL address is not valid.(xxx)**
Make sure the URL.
- **Usage is currently restricted. Try again later.**
This message appears when a very large volume of data was sent or received in a predetermined period of time with the i-mode packet flat-rate service used. Connection may be disabled for a predetermined period of the time; use i-mode after a while.
- **Unable to start fingerprint sensor.**
Failure in Fingerprint sensor. Contact the numbers for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
- **You have no certificate. Connect?**
The user certificate has not been downloaded.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

◆ Warranty

- FOMA terminal is provided with a written warranty. Make sure that you receive it. Check the written contents and items such as "shop name/date of purchase" and keep it in a safe place. If it does not contain the necessary information, immediately contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Since troubles, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal may cause contents in the phonebook etc. to be modified or deleted. DOCOMO recommends making a copy of the phonebook data etc., in case. And, in repairing etc. of FOMA terminal, information downloaded through i-mode or i-appli is not transferred to repaired FOMA terminal with some exceptions according to the copyright law.
 - * The data of phonebook, i-motion or data used by i-appli in FOMA terminal can be saved in microSD card.
 - * This FOMA terminal allows you to save phonebook and other data in Data Center by using Data Security Service (a charged service requiring subscription).
 - * If a PC is available, you can use DOCOMO keitai datalink (→P385) and FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) to transfer stored contents in phonebook etc. to the PC and store.

◆ After-Sales Service

■ When problems occur

Before requesting repair, read the section on "Troubleshooting" (→P419). If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

■ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office. Be sure to check the opening hours of the office before you go. Note that you must bring the warranty.

■ In the warranty period

- FOMA terminal is repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber is charged for the repair of items not covered in the warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident, neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.

- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DOCOMO-specified.
- The subscriber is charged for the repair of the color LCD or connector if broken after purchase.

■ Be careful that repairs may not be possible in the cases below.

- When judged as malfunction due to moisture at the repair office (e.g. when detected in a moisture seal reaction)
- When corrosion due to moisture, condensation, perspiration, etc. is detected, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed (repairs may not be possible if external connection jack, earphone/microphone jack or liquid crystal panel is damaged, or the terminal outer case is lifted)
- * Even in case that a repair is possible, since those conditions are outside the range of the warranty, a repair is charged.

■ After expiration of the warranty

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

■ Replacement parts

- Replacement parts (parts required to maintain the product functions) are basically kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. However, repair may not be possible due to lack of repair parts etc. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Call the contacts listed on the back of this manual, "Repairs".

■ Notes

- Do not modify FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - May cause fire, injury or damage.
 - Modified FOMA terminals etc. are repaired only after the customer accepts that the modified parts are to be restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
- The cases below may be regarded as modifications.
 - A sticker etc. is put on the LCD or keypad part
 - FOMA terminal is embellished with adhesive material etc.
 - Exteriors are replaced with other than DOCOMO's genuine parts
- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification is charged even during the warranty period.

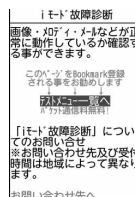
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to FOMA terminal. The inscription stickers certify that FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that, if stickers are removed intentionally or reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- Function settings and information such as total calls may be cleared (reset) by malfunctions, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal. Should that happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece, speaker, etc. of FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- This terminal is waterproof, however if inside of FOMA terminal becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring the terminal to the repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of FOMA terminal.

▲Phonebook, and downloaded data, etc. ▼

- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility whatsoever for changes of information or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be changed or lost when changing models or repairing FOMA terminal. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for such incidents. DOCOMO may, at its option, replace your mobile phone instead of repairing it. Data downloaded to FOMA terminal including images and ring tones and data you created is transferred only at repairing (Some data may not be transferred. Also cannot be transferred depending on the failure level).
- Depending on the size of data saved in FOMA terminal, transfer may take a time or be disabled.

i-mode fault diagnosis site

Using your FOMA terminal, you can check whether sending/receiving of messages and downloading of images and melodies are normally performed.



TOP screen



Screen of テストメニュー一覧 (test menu list)

- Access method to "iモード故障診断サイト" (In Japanese only)
iMenu→お知らせ (Notice)→サービス・機能 (Services/Function)→iモード(i-mode)→iモード故障診断 (i-mode fault diagnostic site)

QR code for site access



- The access method may be changed without previous notice.
- Packet communication for iモード故障診断 is free. However when accessing from overseas, packet communication fee is charged.
- Test items vary by FOMA terminal models. And test items are subject to change.
- Before checking operations using individual test items, carefully read the precautions given in the site.
- When connecting to iモード故障診断サイト or conducting message transmission test, information specific to your FOMA terminal (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode fault diagnostic server). DOCOMO does not use the received information for purposes except iモード故障診断.
- When FOMA terminal is assumed to have malfunctions as the result of the diagnosis, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

Updating software

This function makes network connection to check for the necessity of updating FOMA terminal software and, when necessary, downloads a part of the software through packet communication* to update the software.

When software update is required, the information is posted in "お知らせ (Notice)" on NTT DOCOMO website or iMenu.

* Packet communication for software update is free.

- Software may be updated in the 3 methods below.

Automatic update : Download new software automatically, and overwrite at the time specified in advance.

Immediate update : Updates on the spot as preferred.

Reserved update : Specifies the day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time-slot.

✓INFORMATION

- Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. The update may fail.
- Software update can be done even when various data, such as a phonebook registered in FOMA terminal, camera images, downloaded data, are remaining; note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DOCOMO recommends backing up necessary data. However some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.
- Software update is available even when Host selection is other than "i-mode (UIM)".
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power (→P53).
- Software cannot be updated in the cases below.
 - When UIM is not inserted
 - When the battery is not fully charged
 - When the power is OFF
 - When 圏外 (out of service area) is displayed
 - When date and time are not set
 - While using other functions
 - When PIN code is being entered
 - When PIN is blocked
 - In Omakase Lock
 - In Self mode
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If software update is executed when PIN1 code ON/OFF is "ON", PIN code entry screen does not appear at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating.

- Making/Receiving calls, communications functions and other functions are disabled during software update. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- To update software, an SSL session to our site is performed. Validate the SSL certificate using Manage certificate. This is set to Valid by default. →P183
- It is recommended that software update be executed in good radio wave conditions with three bars of the antenna icon displayed (→P54) and the terminal not moved. If radio wave conditions become weaker during software download or the download is stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave conditions.
- An icon indicating stored mail in i-mode Center disappears after software update. Also, when Receive option is "ON" and mail is received during software update, the screen that notifies arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update is completed. →P144
- When updating software, your private information concerning FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software update managed by DOCOMO). DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes except software update.
- When software update has failed, "Rewrite failed" appears and all operation becomes unavailable. In that case, please bring FOMA terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- Software cannot be updated overseas.

◆ Updating software automatically <Set auto-update>

You can set if you update automatically or to be notified that software update is necessary.

- 1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Set auto-update" ▶ Set required items ▶



- When setting Set auto-update to "Auto-update", set Day and Time to perform Auto-update. When "Disable" is set, select "Yes" on a confirmation screen of auto-update disability.

◆ When update is necessary

- When setting Set auto-update to "Auto-update", the update file is downloaded automatically, and (rewrite notice icon) appears on the stand-by display. If you select (update notification icon), the start time of update can be confirmed or changed.
- When setting Set auto-update to "Only notification", (update notification icon) appears. → P430 "Starting Software update"

<Example> Confirm the time of update

- 1 ▶ Select (rewrite notice icon)

The day of the week and the time to update are displayed. Select "OK" to return to the stand-by display, and (update notification icon) disappears.



Changing time : "Change" ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶

Rewriting immediately : "Now rewrite" ▶ Authenticate

The next procedure → P431 Step 2 and the following steps in "Updating software immediately"

❗ INFORMATION

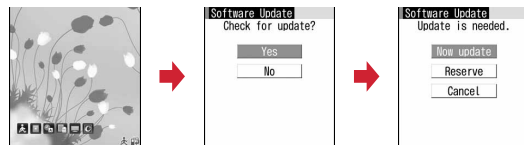
- (rewrite notice icon) appears in the cases below.
 - When the downloading of the update file is completed
 - When update was unavailable since other functions were activated
 - When update is canceled, or update start time is changed
- (update notification icon) appears in the cases below.
 - When there is notification from DOCOMO
 - When the software update screen appears
 - When reserved update failed, or reserved update is canceled

◆ Starting Software update

You can start software update in two ways : selecting (update notification icon) on the stand-by display or pressing an item number from menu.

<Example> Start by selecting update notification icon

- 1 ▶ Select (update notification icon) ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate



Software update screen

- When "No" is selected, a clearing confirmation screen of update notification icon appears.

Starting from Menu : [Settings & NW services]

- ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Update"

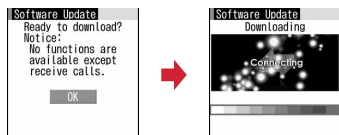
- When update is necessary, "Update is needed" is displayed. Select "Now update (→ P431)" or "Reserve (→ P431)".
- When update is not necessary, "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before." is displayed. Press and continue using.

◆ Updating software immediately <Immediate update>

- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

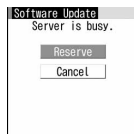
1 "Now update" on Software Update screen ► After about 5 seconds, download starts automatically

Pressing  starts downloading immediately.



- To cancel downloading, press .

When the server is busy :



- Select "Reserve" and enter the date for update.→P431

2 Download is complete and after about 5 seconds, software updating is automatically started

Pressing  starts rewriting immediately. While rewriting, only the operation of pressing  for 10 seconds or more to turn OFF the power is available.



3 Automatically reloaded after the completion of update ►



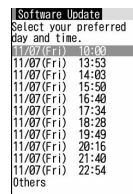
◆ Updating software at pre-specified time <Reserved update>

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

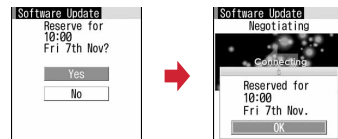
<Example> Selecting from displayed options

1 On Software Update screen, "Reserve"

Available dates for reservation are shown by the time of the server.



2 Select preferred day and time-slot ► "Yes"



Reserving from other than displayed options :

① "Others"

② Select preferred day

Reservation availability for each time period is displayed. Press  to display description.

③ Select preferred time-slot

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

④ Select preferred day and time-slot ► "Yes"

3



When the setting of the reservation is completed,  (reservation icon) appears on the stand-by display.

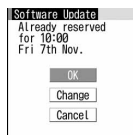
❖ Checking/Changing/Canceling reservation

<Example> Checking the day and time-slot reserved for software update

1

 [Settings & NW services]

  ► Authenticate ► Update ► Check the contents



- Select "OK" to stop checking.

Changing the reservation : "Change"

The selection screen of preferred day appears.

The next procedure→P432 Step ② and the following steps in "Reserving from other than displayed options"

Canceling reservation : "Cancel" ► "Yes" ►

❖ When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the screen below appears and, after about 5 seconds, the terminal automatically starts software update. (Pressing  starts software update immediately). Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the stand-by display. When downloading is completed, software rewriting is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel Software update, press  and select "Yes".

✓INFORMATION-----

- Reservation of software update may be canceled in the cases below.
 - When the battery pack is removed, or exhausted battery has not been charged
 - When Delete all data
 - When reserved date/time comes while activating Omakase Lock
- Note that the software update may not start during software update, or if any other functions are used at the reserved date and time. At the reserved date and time, if packet communication is in progress, the software update starts after the packet communication is completed.

Protecting the FOMA terminal from harmful data

Update pattern definition first, then keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or programs that are imported to FOMA terminal by downloading from a website, mails, this function detects data and deletes data or inhibits activation of applications that may cause troubles.

- Pattern definition used for the check is upgraded as needed for a new problem.
When Set auto-update is "Enable", pattern definitions are automatically downloaded and updated when they are upgraded.
- The Scanning function provides a certain countermeasure against invasion of data which causes some trouble in the mobile phone, when viewing website, receiving messages, etc.
Note that, if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent those troubles from occurring.
- Different pattern definition is used for different mobile phone models. Also, note that DOCOMO may stop distribution of pattern definition for models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- During pattern definition update, unique information about your FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the Scanning function managed by DOCOMO). DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scanning function.
- When the correct date and time are not set on FOMA terminal, the pattern definitions cannot be updated.
- Updating pattern definition is stopped by a voice call arrived.

◆ Setting Scanning function <Set scan>

With this option set to "Valid", data and programs are checked automatically when they are executed. If hazardous data is detected, a warning is displayed in 5 levels.
→P434

1 [Settings & NW services] 4 7 3 ▶ Set required items ▶ ▶ "Yes"

Scan : Set whether to enable Scanning function.

Message scan : Set whether to enable the scanning function when SMS is displayed.

◆ Updating pattern definition automatically <Set auto-update>

- When the Auto-updating pattern definitions is completed, appears on the stand-by display. Select the icon, check the message and press .

1 [Settings & NW services] 4 7 2

2 "Enable" ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶

- Select "Disable" if you do not use auto-update.

◆ Updating pattern definition

When Set auto-update is "Disable" or (Auto-update of the latest pattern definition data failed) appears on the stand-by display, manually update the pattern definitions data.

1 [Settings & NW services] 4 7 1 ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes"

Downloading and updating of the pattern definitions are started.

2

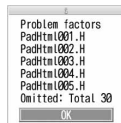
- When updating of pattern definition is not necessary, "Pattern definitions are up-to-date." is displayed. Press and continue using.

◆ Displaying scan results

■ Displaying problem element scanned

① "Detail" while displaying a warning level screen

When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem names are omitted and the total number of the detected problem elements is displayed.



■ Displaying scan results

Warning level	Handling method
Warning level 0 	"OK" : Continue processing of the started application "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements
Warning level 1 	"Yes" : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles "No" : Continue processing of the started application "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements
Warning level 2 	"OK" : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements
Warning level 3 	"Yes" : Delete data that may cause troubles "No" : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements

Warning level	Handling method
Warning level 4 	"OK" : Delete data that may cause troubles "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements

✓INFORMATION-----

- When the problem factor is detected while downloading Music&Video Channel program and FOMA terminal is turned OFF without checking the warning message, the warning level screen appears next time you display Music&Video Channel screen.
- When a problem element is detected on i-appli set for the stand-by display and the starting i-appli is stopped, i-appli stand-by display is canceled.
- For some problem elements, "Detail" button may not appear.

◆ Displaying pattern definition version

1  [Settings & NW services]   

Main specifications

Phone

Product name		F-01A
Size		Approx. 111 (H)×Approx. 50 (W)× Approx. 17.5 (T) (Maximum thickness : Approx. 19.4)(Unit : mm)
Weight		Approx. 142 g (with battery)
Continuous stand-by time^{*1, 2, 3}	FOMA/3G	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 620 H Moving (Auto) : Approx. 340 H Moving (3G static) : Approx. 360 H
	GSM	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 310 H
Continuous call time^{*2, 3, 4}	FOMA/3G	Voice call : Approx. 230 min. Videophone call : Approx. 100 min. (using substitute image : Approx. 130 min.)
	GSM	Approx. 220 min.
1Seg watching time^{*2, 5}		Approx. 310 min. (1Seg ECO mode : Approx. 360 min.)
Charging time^{*6}		AC adapter : Approx. 150 min. DC adapter : Approx. 150 min.
LCD	Type	Display : Color TFT 16,777,216 colors Sub-display : Organic EL one color (white)
	Size	Display : Approx. 3.2 inch Sub-display : Approx. 1.4 inch
	Number of pixels	Display : 414,720 pixels (480×864) Sub-display : 11,136 pixels (174×64)
Image pickup device	Type	CMOS
	Size	1/3.2 inch
	Number of effective pixels	Approx. 5,200,000 pixels
Camera section	Number of recording pixels (Max.)	Approx. 5,000,000 pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Up to approx. 16.0×

Recording section	Savable still images^{*7}	Up to approx. 780 (default) Up to approx. 2,000 (after preinstalled images that can be deleted are deleted)
	Continuous shooting of still images	2-9
	File format for still image	JPEG
	Movie recording time^{*8}	Up to approx. 61 (save to phone/default) Up to approx. 106 min. (save to phone/after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted) Up to approx. 57 min. (saved to 64 MB microSD card)
	Movie file format	MP4
	1Seg recording time	Up to approx. 37 min. (to phone/after preinstalled data that can be deleted is deleted) Up to approx. 640 min. (saved to 2 GB microSD card)
Playing music	Continuous play time	i-motion : Approx. 1,629 min. ^{*9} Chaku-uta full : Approx. 4,675 min. ^{*9, 10} WMA file : Approx. 4,712 min. ^{*10} Music&Video Channel (sound) : Approx. 4,675 min. ^{*10} Music&Video Channel (movie) : Approx. 413 min.
Recording size	Chaku-uta[®]/Chaku-uta full[®]	Approx. 111 MB

^{*1} Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated time when FOMA terminal is folded and able to receive radio waves normally. Stationary continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time FOMA terminal is folded and able to receive radio waves normally remains stationary. Moving continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time when FOMA terminal is folded and able to receive radio waves normally with a combination of "stationary", "moving", and "out of service area" status.

^{*2} Call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced to about half, or 1Seg watching time may be reduced due to battery pack charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, radio wave conditions in the area of use (the radio waves are weak or absent), etc.

- *3 The call, communication or stand-by times are reduced by making i-mode communications, creating i-mode mail, activating downloaded i-appli, making i-appli stand-by display settings, downloading or playing Music&Video Channel program, playing tune with MUSIC Player, activating or recording 1Seg, etc.
- *4 Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated time that FOMA terminal can send/receive radio waves normally.
- *5 1Seg watching time indicates the estimated watching time with using Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01 (optional) that FOMA terminal can receive radio waves normally.
- *6 Charging time indicates the estimated time for charging an empty battery with FOMA terminal turned OFF. Charging with FOMA terminal turned ON requires longer time.
- *7 The number of savable still images is based on a image size "QCIF (176×144)", quality "Standard" and file size 10 Kbytes.
- *8 The movie recording time means allowable time for one movie. The number is based on Image size "QCIF (176×144)" and Quality "Standard". Varies depending on the movie to be recorded.
- *9 AAC format files.
- *10 Background playing is available.

■ Battery Pack

Quality	Battery Pack F10
Battery used	Li-ion battery
Nominal voltage	3.7V
Nominal capacity	870mAh

❖ Number of still images saved

The number of savable still images varies by Image size, Size restrictions, settings of Quality or saving destination (→P205) or shooting states.

- The table below indicates the number to be displayed in the counter of the still image shooting screen.

■ Number of savable still images (approximate by quality) in F-01A FOMA terminal, microSD card

- "Phone" indicates the number after you delete the preinstalled data that can be deleted. Also, "microSD" indicates a card with capacity of 64 Mbytes.

Image size	Save to	Economy (Approx.)	Standard (Approx.)	Fine (Approx.)
QCIF (176×144)	Phone	2,000	2,000	2,000
	microSD	3,870	3,870	1,935
QVGA* (240×320)	Phone	2,000	2,000	2,000
	microSD	1,935	1,935	1,290
VGA* (480×640)	Phone	1,996	1,538	855
	microSD	967	774	430
Stand-by (WVGA)* (480×864)	Phone	1,778	1,339	790
	microSD	967	645	430
WXGA* (768×1280)	Phone	790	595	323
	microSD	430	322	175
FullHD* (1080×1920)	Phone	517	395	200
	microSD	276	215	107
3.7M* (1440×2592)	Phone	259	182	88
	microSD	138	99	47
5M* (1944×2592)	Phone	200	159	75
	microSD	107	86	40

* Horizontal and vertical can be switched. →P206

❖ Recording time of movies

The movie recording time available varies by Size restrictions, Quality, Image size, Recording Type, settings of saving destination (→P205) or recording conditions.

- The table below indicates the time to be displayed in the counter of the movie recording screen.

■ Savable recording time at a time (approximate by quality)

- Restriction size for Msg attach: Large/Small → P208
- Each recording time is the same regardless of the saving destination.
- With Size restrictions set to None, the recording time each time is the same as set as the time limit (→P203). However, if the total recording time is shorter than the time limit, the recording time for one time is the same as the total recording time.

Size restrictions	Image size	*	LP (Approx.)	STD (Approx.)	HQ (Approx.)	XQ (Approx.)
Msg attach:Small	QCIF (176×144)		50 sec.	28 sec.	18 sec.	10 sec.
			63 sec.	32 sec.	21 sec.	11 sec.
	QVGA (320×240)		28 sec.	15 sec.	10 sec.	4 sec.
			32 sec.	16 sec.	11 sec.	4 sec.
	VGA (640×480)		10 sec.	5 sec.	3 sec.	1 sec.
			11 sec.	5 sec.	4 sec.	1 sec.
Msg attach:Large	(Sound only)		—	242 sec.	121 sec.	—
	QCIF (176×144)		205 sec.	114 sec.	74 sec.	40 sec.
			258 sec.	129 sec.	86 sec.	43 sec.
	QVGA (320×240)		115 sec.	61 sec.	40 sec.	16 sec.
			129 sec.	65 sec.	43 sec.	17 sec.
	VGA (640×480)		42 sec.	21 sec.	14 sec.	5 sec.
			43 sec.	22 sec.	14 sec.	6 sec.
	(Sound only)		—	16 min.	495 sec.	—

* Video type : Video + Voice : Video only : Voice only

■ The total recording time of movies (approximate by quality) in F-01A FOMA terminal, microSD card

- The value with Size restrictions set to "None". When Size restrictions is set, the total savable recording time may differ.
- "Phone" indicates the number after you delete the preinstalled data that can be deleted. "microSD" indicates a card with capacity of 64 Mbytes.

Save to	Image size	*	LP (Approx.)	STD (Approx.)	HQ (Approx.)	XQ (Approx.)
Phone	QCIF (176×144)		190 min.	106 min.	68 min.	36 min.
			239 min.	119 min.	79 min.	39 min.
	QVGA (320×240)		106 min.	56 min.	36 min.	14 min.
			119 min.	60 min.	40 min.	15 min.
	VGA (640×480)		38 min.	19 min.	13 min.	306 sec.
microSD	(Sound only)		—	920 min.	458 min.	—
	QCIF (176×144)		103 min.	57 min.	37 min.	20 min.
			130 min.	65 min.	43 min.	21 min.
	QVGA (320×240)		57 min.	30 min.	20 min.	487 sec.
			65 min.	32 min.	21 min.	502 sec.
	VGA (640×480)		20 min.	10 min.	425 sec.	166 sec.
			21 min.	10 min.	438 sec.	168 sec.
	(Sound only)		—	500 min.	249 min.	—

* Video type : Video + Voice : Video only : Voice only

Number of saved/registered/protected items in F-01A

- The display of the data in FOMA terminal file size may contain some error depending on the function that handles the data.

Type	Savable/Recordable number	Protectable number
Phonebook ^{*1}	Up to 1,000	—
UIM phonebook	Up to 50	—
Kisekai Tool ^{*1}	Up to 50	—
Bookmark (i-mode)	Up to 100	—
Bookmark (Full Browser)	Up to 100	—
Screen memo ^{*1}	Up to 100	Up to 50
DL dictionary	Up to 10	—
Downloaded fonts ^{*2}	Up to 5	—
MessageR ^{*1}	Up to 100	Up to 50
MessageF ^{*1}	Up to 50	Up to 25
Mail	Received messages ^{*1, 3, 4}	Up to 1,000
	Sent messages ^{*1, 3}	Up to 500
	Unsent messages ^{*1, 3}	Up to 200
	Decome-Anime templates ^{*1}	Up to 300
	Deco-mail templates ^{*1}	Up to 300
Area Mail	Up to 30	Up to 15
SMS in UIM ^{*5}	Up to 20	—
i-appli ^{*1, 6}	Up to 100	—
ToruCa ^{*1}	Up to 200	—
Channel list	Up to 10	—
TVlink	Up to 50	—
Images ^{*1}	Up to 2,000	—
Movie/i-motion/sound recorded with Sound recorder ^{*1}	Up to 200	—
Playlists of movie/i-motion	Up to 100	—
Chara-den ^{*1}	Up to 50	—

Type	Savable/Recordable number	Protectable number
Machi-chara ^{*1}	Up to 50	—
Melodies ^{*1}	Up to 500	—
PDF data ^{*1}	Up to 100	—
Word, Excel, PowerPoint ^{*1}	Up to 100	—
Recorded programs ^{*1}	Video	Up to 10
	Image	Up to 100
Programs of Music&Video Channel ^{*1}	Up to 10	—
Music ^{*1}	Up to 100	—
Scheduler ^{*7}	Up to 2,600	—
Notepad	Up to 50	—
Bluetooth devices	Up to 10	Up to 10

*1 Depending on the size of data or usage status of common memory space, the actual number of items that can be saved and recorded may be fewer.

*2 The number of fonts (プリティー桃) recorded by default is included.

*3 The total number of i-mode mail and SMS.

*4 The number of "オススメBEST[6]" (Recommendation), "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Early warning "Area Mail" information)" and "Welcomeデコメアニメ (Decome-Anime) 絵文字" mails is included.

*5 The total number of sent and received SMS. SMS report request is not included.

*6 Total number of i-appli and Message i-appli. Up to 5 items of Message i-appli can be saved.

*7 Total number of schedules, schedules in i-schedule and watching/recording reservation. Up to 100 items of watching/recording reservation in total can be saved.

Specific absorption rate (SAR) of mobile phone

◆ SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA F-01A meets the MIC's^{*1} technical regulation governing exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)^{*2} averaged over 10 grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP.^{*3}

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this FOMA F-01A is 0.498 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC). The test for SAR was conducted according to the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value. For further information about SAR, please see the websites below.

World Health Organization (WHO) :

<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP :

<http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC :

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm>

TELEC :

http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DOCOMO :

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/>

FUJITSU LIMITED :

<http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/sar/>

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications.

*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection.

◆ Declaration of Conformity

The product "F-01A" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found at <http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/doc/>.

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves. Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR^{*} limits^{**} for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR^{*} value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.415 W/Kg. While there may be differences between the SAR^{*} levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet^{***} the EU requirements for RF exposure.

* The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

** The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/Kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

*** Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operation positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

◆ Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions :
 - ① this device may not cause harmful interference, and
 - ② this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications made in or to the radio phone, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, will void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

◆ Industry Canada (IC) Notice

- Operation is subject to the following two conditions :
 - ① this device may not cause interference, and
 - ② this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

◆ FCC and IC RF Exposure Information

This model phone meets the U.S. Government's and Canadian Government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

This model phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. This model phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the FCC of the U.S. Government and IC of the Canadian Government. These limits are part of comprehensive guidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC and IC is 1.6 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions as accepted by the FCC and IC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output level of the phone.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to prove to the FCC and IC that it does not exceed the limit established by the U.S. and Canadian government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC and IC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC and IC, when tested for use at the ear, is 0.362 W/kg, and when worn on the body, is 0.339 W/kg. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC and IC requirements).

While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the U.S. and Canadian government requirements. The FCC and IC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC and IC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Equipment Authorization Search section at <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/> (please search on FCC ID VQK-F-01A).

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC and IC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory designated for this product or when used with an accessory that contains no metal and which positions the handset at a minimum distance of 1.5 cm from the body.

* In the United States and Canada, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the general public is 1.6 Watts/kg (W/kg), averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.

◆ Important Safety Information

AIRCRAFT

Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers flight mode or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board.

DRIVING

Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

HOSPITALS

Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.

PETROL STATIONS

Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.

INTERFERENCE

Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

Pacemakers

Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15 cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pace maker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and does not carry it in a breast pocket.

Hearing Aids

Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

For other Medical Devices :

Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories may be under coverage of the Export Administration Regulations of Japan ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Laws" and the related laws and regulations). And, they are also under coverage of Export Administration Regulations of the U.S. When exporting and reexporting this product and its accessories, take necessary procedures on your responsibility and expense. For details, contact Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry of Japan or US Department of Commerce.

Intellectual Property Right

◆ Copyrights and portrait rights

Except for the case protected by copyright laws such as personal use, use of FOMA terminal to reproduce, alter, or publicly transmit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted text, images, music or software downloaded from websites without the copyright holder's authorization is prohibited.

Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

Avoid taking pictures of others with FOMA terminal without their consent or disclosing recorded pictures of others without their consent to general public through Internet websites etc., because they may infringe on portrait rights.

◆ Trademarks

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-appli", "i-motion mail", "i-shot", "DoPa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Chaku-motion (Movie ringtone)", "Deco-mail", "V-live", "visualnet", "i-area", "Chara-den", "i-appliDX", "i-Channel", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "sigmarion", "Security Scan", "musea", "Public mode", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "ToruCa", "iD", "2in1", "DCMX", "OFFICEED", "IMCS", "Chokkan Game" and logos of "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-appli", "Music&Video Channel", "DCMX", "iD" and "HIGH-SPEED" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO.
 - Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Vista®, Windows Media® and PowerPoint® are trademarks or registered trademarks of "Microsoft Corporation" in the US and other countries.
 - Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. In this manual, they may be described as Excel and Word.
 - "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
 - "Catch Phone (Call Waiting Service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
 - Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
 - Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
 - This product contains NetFront Browser, NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- NetFront®**
- ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan, US and other countries.
Copyright© 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2008 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
- JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ and Adobe Reader® LE technology of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Adobe Flash Lite Copyright© 2003-2008 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Adobe Reader LE Copyright© 1993-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Adobe, Adobe Reader, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- FlashFX® Pro™ is a registered trademark of DATALIGHT, Inc.
- FlashFX® Copyright 1998-2008 DATALIGHT, Inc.
U.S. Patent Office 5,860,082/6,260,156
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
 - microSDHC Logo is a trademark.
 - FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
 -  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
 - Word, Excel and PowerPoint file display technologies are powered by Pícsel Technologies.
- pícsel**
- Pícsel, Pícsel File Viewer and the Pícsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pícsel Technologies, Pícsel File Viewer.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
 - G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
 - QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the US and other countries.
 - ATOK + APOT of Justsystem Corporation is installed in this product as Japanese character conversion function.
- "ATOK" "APOT (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology)" are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.
- This product contains software licensed by Symbian Software Ltd © 1998-2008.
- symbian**
- Symbian and Symbian OS are trademarks of Symbian Ltd.
- "Round Gothic", "Ryumin" and "Round Fork" are provided by Morisawa&Company Ltd., and these names are their trademarks or registered trademarks, and the copyrights of these font data belong to them.
 - "Privacy mode" is a registered trademark of FUJITSU LIMITED.



- Bluetooth® and its logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and NTT DOCOMO uses them under license. Other trademarks and names inhere to their respective owners.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- Google is registered trademark of Google Inc.
- "日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)" and "日中版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-C Speech Translation for F)" are trademarks of ATR-Trek.
- Other company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
- The abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) below are used in this manual.
 - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise and Ultimate).
 - Windows XP indicates the Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
 - Windows 2000 indicates the Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

◆ Others

- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is equipped with the technologies of GestureTek, Inc. Copyright© 2006–2008, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- "学研モバイル国語辞典 (Gakken Mobile JpnDic)", "学研モバイル和英辞典 (Gakken Mobile JE Dic)", "学研モバイル英和辞典 (Gakken Mobile EJ Dic)", "今日は何の日 (Today's trivial)" and "今日の歴史 (Today in history)" are copyrighted by GAKKEN CO., LTD.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the cases below.
 - Recording movies and i-motion that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA
 For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390	5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754	5,416,797
5,490,165	5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261	5,568,483	5,414,796	5,659,569
5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054	5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420	5,710,784
5,778,338						
- Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM) to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When downloading licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a "Revocation List" with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you cannot access a content that requires the upgrade.

MEMO

Index/Quick Manual

Index	446
Quick Manual	456

Index

Using Index

You can also use this index listing function names and keywords as "Alphabetical keyword reference". For functions such as "Save" and "Delete", first search by a function name of the first level (**bold**) and then by an index item of the second layer.

<Example> Downloading Chara-den

Chara-den	71, 298
Adding/Deleting folder	308
Deleting	311
Detail information/Edit detail information	309
Downloading	178
Moving	308

A	
AC adapter	52
Accept/Reject call	126
Access shortcuts	176
Activate/Deactivate	56
Add icon	331
Additional service (Register USSD)	369
Adjust volume	92
After-Sales Service	427
Alarm auto power ON	326
Alarm clock	325
1Seg alarm clock	325
Alarm clock sound	91
Alarm sound	91
Album	308
Adding/Deleting	308
Moving/Copying data	308
Playing album	309
Alert by contact	83
Alert preference	342
Alert/Image by group	84
All lock	114

Anonymous caller	126
Answer machine	70
Quick answer machine	70
Antenna icon	105
Any key answer	67
Area Mail	162
Receiving	163
Arrival call act	365
Arrival information	39
Attaching/Removing battery pack	49
Attachment	140, 146
Changing/Removing	141
Attachment auto-play	159
Authentication	
Fingerprint authentication	112
Terminal security code	110
Auto answer setting	342
Auto keypad lock	124
Auto power ON/OFF	324
Auto-send	142
Auto-sort	155

B	
Backup	305
Bar code reader	210, 260
Basic menu	36
Battery	
Charging	50
Charging time	50
Operation time	51
Battery icon	105
Battery level	53
BGM play	240
Bluetooth	342
Accept dialup device	343
Accept registered	345
Bluetooth ON/OFF	345
Connecting	344
Connecting devices	346
Device list	344
Multi services	347
Register new devices	344
Responding/Calling/Dialing	345
Sending phonebook	345

Sound/Playing audio	346
Bluetooth settings	347
Bookmark	175
Access shortcuts	176
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail)	146
Browser history	171
Browser settings	196

C

CA Certificate	183
Calculator	337
Calendar → Scheduler	
Call alert	90
Call cost	335
Call cost limit	337
Hide call cost icon	337
Reset call cost	336
Call duration	335
Call Forwarding Service	363
Call light	27
Call option	64
Call ring alert	91, 239
Call waiting	363
Caller ID Request Service	364
Caller ID (Notify/Not notify)	
Call option	64
Caller ID settings	86
186/184	63
Camera	27, 198
Adjusting flicker	207, 209
Auto focus	201
Auto timer	206
Brightness	207
Compatible mode	207
Continuous shooting	202
Face detection	206
File details	198
Frame	207
Full auto focus	201
Grid	207
Image quality	208

Image size	208
Light	205
Macro shooting	206
Movie camera	203
Movie recording time	437
Panorama	202
Quality	208
Recording settings	205
Restoring default setting	209
Savable number of still images	436
Sense orientation	206
Shake reduce	208
Shooting mode	207
Shutter sound	94
Size restrictions	208
Skew correction	208
Still camera	200
Still image settings	205
Touch AF	202
White balance	207
Zoom	205
4 frames shooting	202
Certificate	183
Downloading	185
Certificate download	184
Chaku-moji	62
Chaku-uta full®	233
Change i-mode password	174
Character entry	350
Conversion options list	351
Copying characters	355
DL dictionary	356
Fixed phrase	352
Full-screen entry	350
In-line entry	350
Input mode	350
Input prediction	352
Kana/Kanji conversion	351
KUTEN code input	355
Line feed	351
Password manager	356
Pictogram	353

Quoting data	353
Reset prediction	352
Save phrase	354
Save word	355
Smiley	353
Symbol	353
Text input method	357
Touch entry	358
2-touch input method	357
5-touch input method	351
Chara-den	71, 298
Adding/Deleting folder	308
Deleting	311
Detail information/Edit detail information	309
Downloading	178
Moving	308
Settings	298
Sorting	311
Charge alert	94
Charging	50
Charging jack	27
Charging time	50
Check IC owner	265
Check msg	100
Check msg option	157
Check new message	144
Check No. of msgs	151
Check remote setting	132
Clock display format	107
Close settings	68
Color scheme	102
Compatible with contents transfer	296
Confirm	348
Connecting FOMA terminal and PC	307
Connecting to SSL page	171
Connection timeout	181
Contact image	100
Countdown timer	324
Custom menu	36, 332

D	
Data broadcasting	219
Data Center → Data Security Service	
Data communication	382
Data exchange settings	316
Data Security Service	128
Data session arv. act	74
Data transfer	
OBEX™ communication	382
Data transfer mode ON	30
Date To format	338
Date & time	55
DC adapter	53
Deco-mail	
Creating	135
Deco-mail picture	135
Decome-Anime	
Creating	137
Default search setting	85
Default setting	54
Delete all data	130
Delete all WMAs	240
Desktop holder	52
Dictionaries	339, 356
Downloading	178
Directory assistance service	417
Display	26, 30
Color scheme	102
Display & Key light	100
Guide area	33
Task area	32
Display in English	55
Display Machi-chara	102
Display priority	159
Display & Key light	100
Brightness	101
Display light time	100
Keypad light	101
Light time-out	101
Displaying address	151
Displaying battery level	53

Displaying own phone number	56
DL dictionary	356
DOCOMO Cert	183
DOCOMO keitai datalink	385
Dual Network Service	364

E	
Early warning "Area Mail"	162
Earphone/Microphone with Switch	341
Earpiece	26
English guidance	364
Excel → Word, Excel, PowerPoint	
Export Administration Regulations	441
External connection jack	27
External device	74

F	
Fake call	334
FeliCa	264
FeliCa mark (mark)	27
File restriction	178, 310
Fingerprint access	114
Fingerprint authentication	112
Authentication	114
Deleting	114
Registering	113
Fingerprint sensor	27
FirstPass	171, 184
Flash	173
Flip menu	40
Flip style	29, 39
Focus mode	39
Folder	308
Adding/Deleting	308
Font	
Downloading	178
Font size	107, 159
Font style	106
Full Browser	192
Frame	194
Multi window	194

Pointer	193
Searching	194
Full Browser screen	192

G	
GPS	
Location information usage menu	275
Location request	281
Loc. history	285
Map	274
Map setting	285
Notify location	284
Position accuracy	286
Position location	274
Positioning alert	286
Post-Position task	276
Request permit/deny	282
GPS alert	91
GPS compatible i-appli	276
Greeting msg resp time	70
Guide area	33

H	
Headset key control	341
Headset quick-dial/Headset quick-answer	342
Host selection	181

I	
i-appli	242
Abnormal exit history	260
Auto start	256
Count software	243
Creating/Deleting folders	259
Deleting	259
Display light time	246
Downloading	242
i-appli call	257
i-appli call DL set	258
i-appli call log	258
i-appli call setting	245

i-appli To	258	Creating animation	290	Font size	159
IC card content	243	Data Security Service	128	Forwarding	145
i-Widget	261	Deleting	311	Inserting signature	134
Location usage setting	245	Detail information/Edit detail information	309	Mail group	157
Map setting	245	Displaying	288	Mail logs	153
Motion tracking	246	Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail)	146	Message list	158
Moving	259	Downloading	177, 195	Moving	151
Preinstalled i-appli	246	Editing	290	Number of messages in folder	151
Program guide key setting	245	Moving/Copying	308	Phone call	155
Security error history	244	Settings	289	Protecting	152
Set auto start info.	256	Slideshow	289	Quick mail	142
Set NW transmission	245	Sorting	311	Quick reply presets	158
Setting volume	246	Uploading	179, 194	Reading screens	148
Software description	245	Using images	290	Receive option	144
Software info disp.	243	Image message alert	100	Receive option attachment file	145
Software list	243	Image & Effect	182	Receiving	143
Software settings	245	Immobile sensor	125	Replying	144
Sort software	260	i-mode	170	Saving	142
Start failure history	257	Display light time	182	Searching	152
Starting	243	Entering URL	174	Sending	134
Trace information	244	Entry URL log	174	Sort method	155
Upgrading	259	Switch encode	174	Sorting	152
Vibrate effect	246	i-mode fault diagnosis site	428	i-mode password	110
i-appli stand-by display	97, 258	i-mode mail	134	i-mode settings	181
Canceling	258	Activate quick reply	158	i-motion	187
IC card lock	266	Add bookmark	155	i-motion mail	140
IC lock(power-off)	266	Adding address (Simultaneous sending)	135	i-motion → Movie/i-motion	
iC transfer service	265	Adding to phonebook	155	In-Car Hands-Free	66
iC transmission	312	Address type	135	Incoming call image	99
Receiving	314	Attachment	140, 146	Incoming msg. attach	158
Sending	313	Auto-send	142	Indicator light	106
i-Channel	187	Changing read/unread state	152	Information display	189
i-Channel ticker	188	Check new message	144	Infrared communication	312
Icon list	30, 32	Copying	154	Data exchange settings	316
i-concier	188	Creating	134	Receiving	314
Data Security Service	128	Creating/Deleting folders	151	Remote control function	315
Information	189	Data Security Service	128	Sending	313
Information display	189	Deleting	153	Infrared data port	27
i-concier ring alert	91	Display by type	159	Initializing remotely	130
Identification mark	100	Display priority	159	International call (WORLD CALL)	64
Image	288	Displaying mail address	151	International roaming	
Adding/Deleting album	308	Editing	142	Area service status	377

Bar calls at roaming	378
Disp. operator name	378
Making a call/videophone call	376
Network search mode	377
Network service	379
Notify missed call	378
PLMN setting	377
Receiving a call/videophone call	376
Roaming guidance	378
Two time zone clocks	378
3G/GSM setting	377
International roaming (WORLD WING)	372

Internet connection

Full Browser	192
i-mode	174
Int'l call assist	65

i-schedule

Displaying/Operating	330
Downloading	178

ISP connection communication

i-Widget	261
i-Widget roaming set	262
i-Widget screen	261
i-Widget sound effect	262
Widget application list screen	261
Widget application operation screen	262

K

Keypad dial lock	118
Keypad sound	94
Kisekæ menu	36
Customizing	104
Kisekæ Tool	102
Adding/Deleting folder	308
Changing	103
Checking content	104
Deleting	311
Detail information/Edit detail information	309
Downloading	178
Moving	308
Sorting	311

Special mode	104

L

Layout in flip mode	158
Light	27
Light alert	106
Listen volume	59, 75, 92
Lock on close	124
Lock preference	266
Low Battery alert	94

M

Machi-chara	297
Adding/Deleting folder	308
Deleting	311
Detail information/Edit detail information	309
Downloading	178
Moving	308
Settings	298
Sorting	311
Mail address	56
Mail alert	90
Mail auto receive	143
Mail creation screen	134
Mail group	157
Mail image	100
Mail light	27
Mail logs	153
Mail settings (FOMA terminal)	155
Mail template	138
Deleting	140
Downloading	139
Mail To	180
Mail/Msg ring alert	91, 239
Map Application	
Map display screen	278
TOP menu screen	278
Media To	180
Melody	298
Adding/Deleting album	308
Deleting	311

Detail information/Edit detail information	309
Downloading	178
List	401
Melodies for mail attachment	401
Moving/Copying	308
Playing/Saving (i-mode mail)	146
Settings	299
Sorting	311
Using melody	299
Melody Call	93
Memory status	311
Menu	36
List	388
Message i-appli	
Downloading	243
Message list	158
MessageF alert	90
MessageR alert	90
MessageR/F	160
Auto-display	161
Check new message	144
Deleting	161
Display by type	161
Display priority	159
Displaying	161
Displaying/Saving attachment	162
Font size	161
Protecting	161
Reading screen	161
Sorting	161
Microphone	26
microSD card	300
Adding/Deleting folder	308
Backup	305
Displaying data	304
Folder structure	301
Formatting	306
Installing/Removing	300
Memory status	306
Moving/Copying	303, 308
Moving/Copying data to FOMA terminal	303
Operating from PC	307

Scan card.....	307	Display image and lyrics.....	240	On hold.....	59
Sync data info.....	306	Displaying detail information.....	239	One-key shortcut i-appli.....	256
Missed calls.....	62	Folder list screen.....	234	On-hold.....	68
Motion sensor.....	45, 46	Introduction playing.....	236	On-hold tone.....	94
Movie memo.....	335	Managing music data.....	237	Open/Close sound.....	94
Movie playing software.....	418	Music data list screen.....	234	Options and related devices.....	417
Movie recording screen.....	199	Playing/Operating.....	235	Original certificate.....	183
Movie ringtone.....	91	Playlist.....	237	Osaifu-Keitai.....	264
Movie/i-motion		Playlist list screen.....	234	Other → Word, Excel, PowerPoint	
Adding/Deleting album.....	308	Replay restriction.....	236	Out of service area.....	54
Capturing.....	295	Saving music.....	233	Outgoing call image.....	98
Custom edit.....	295	Settings.....	236		
Deleting.....	311	Music&Video Channel.....	228		
Detail information/Edit detail information.....	309	Adding/Deleting folder.....	308		
Downloading.....	186	Chapter list.....	230		
Edit by size.....	296	Deleting.....	231, 311		
Editing.....	295	Moving.....	308		
Moving/Copying.....	308	Playing/Operating.....	229		
Playing.....	292	Replay restriction.....	230		
Playing/Saving (i-mode mail).....	146	Saving.....	231		
Playlist.....	294	Set program.....	228		
Recording.....	203	Sorting.....	311		
Settings.....	293	Music&Video Channel player screen.....	229		
Sorting.....	311	Music&Video Channel screen.....	228		
Uploading.....	179, 194	My Document → PDF data.....			
Using movie/i-motion.....	294	My Menu.....	173		
Multi Number.....	366	My phone number.....	56		
Call option.....	64	My Picture → Image.....			
Multi window (Full Browser).....	194				
Multi window (1Seg).....	220				
Multiaccess.....	322				
Combination of functions.....	414				
Multitask.....	322				
Combination of functions.....	416				
Music					
Background play.....	228, 232				
Chaku-uta full®.....	233				
Ring alert.....	239				
Uta-hodai.....	232				
WMA file.....	233				
MUSIC Player.....	232, 235				
Delete all WMAs.....	240				

N

Network security code.....	110
New Task start menu.....	322
Noise reduction.....	66
Normal style.....	29
Notepad.....	337
Notify switchable mode.....	74
Nuisance Call Blocking Service.....	364

O

OFFICEED.....	369
Omakase Lock.....	115

P

Packet communication.....	382
Password manager.....	356
Pause ("P").....	63
PDF data.....	316
Adding/Deleting folder.....	308
Deleting.....	311
Detail information/Edit detail information.....	309
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail).....	146
Downloading.....	178, 195
Moving/Copying.....	308
Settings.....	317
Sorting.....	311
Pedometer.....	339
Displaying information.....	340
Setting.....	340
Personal data lock.....	117
Personalized silent mode.....	95
Phone	
Call option.....	64
Incoming call image.....	99
Making a call.....	58
Operation while receiving a call.....	67
Outgoing call image.....	98
Receiving a call.....	67
Phone To (AV Phone To).....	180
Phonebook.....	82
Adding.....	82
Call option.....	64

Total calls duration	336
User information	334
Reset i-Channel	188
Ring alert delay	127
Ring alerts & Sounds	91

S

SAR	439
Savable/Recordable/Protectable number	438
When exceeding	312
Scanning function	433
Set auto-update	433
Set scan	433
Schedule	
Data Security Service	128
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail)	146
Downloading	178
Schedule reminder	91
Scheduler	326
Calendar screen	326
Copying/Pasting/Deleting/Editing/Operating mail	328
Day off of week	327
Day view screen	328
Days off	327
Details screen	329
Holiday settings	327
i-schedule	330
No. of items	330
Quick schedule	328
Reminder option	328
Saving	327
Schedule reminder	327
Scheduler display settings	327
Screen memo	176
Search message	152
Secrecy search	85
Secret attribute	87, 330
Security codes	110
Security indicator	125
Security Scan → Scanning function	

Select language	55
Select startup menu	102
Self mode	116
Send DTMF	63
Sent mail → i-mode mail	
Service Numbers	365
Set arrival act	365
Set greeting message	70
Set random image	96
Shooting indication light	27
Shortcut icons	331
Shortcut icons settings	331
Shortcut operations	37
Shutter sound	94
Side key hold	123
Side key shortcut	333
Signature	
Inserting	134, 164
Setting	157
Silent mode	95
Personalized silent mode	95
Simple light	333
Simultaneous sending	135
Site	
Adding to phonebook	180
Copy URL	180
Operating	172
Smiley list	411
SMS	164
Add bookmark	155
Adding to phonebook	155
Check new SMS	165
Composing/Sending	164
Deleting (FOMA terminal)	153
Display priority	159
Displaying (FOMA terminal)	148
Displaying (UIM)	166
Editing	164
Moving/Copying (to UIM)	166
Quick mail	142
Reading screens	148
Receiving	165

Setting	166
Sort method	155
SMS report request	166
SMS To	180
Software update	
Auto-update	430
Immediate update	431
Reserved update	431
Set auto-update	430
Software update screen	430
Sort method	155
Sound recorder	204
Speaker	27
Speakerphone function	59
Special mode	104
Special symbol list	408
Specified caller	126
Stand-by display	54, 96
Antenna icon	105
Battery icon	105
Clock display format	107
i-appli stand-by display	97
Info/calendar layout	97
Status message	68
Stereo sound effect	93
Still image	
Displaying	288
Editing	290
Shooting	200
Still image shooting screen	199
Style theme	105
Sub address	66
Sub-display	34, 100
Auto light on	100
Clock & alert image	100
Displaying detail information	35
Menu	35
Submenu operation	38
Super clear-voice 2 → Voice clear	
Switch encode	174
Switch Task menu	322
System sound	94

T	
Task area	32
Terminal security code	110
Terminal security code change	111
Timed lock	266
Timed pause ("T")	63
Timed theme	96
Tone signal (Send DTMF)	63
ToruCa	267
Check No. of items	270
Creating/Deleting folders	270
Data Security Service	128
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail)	146
Downloading	178
Moving/Deleting/Sorting/Attaching/Displaying	269
Obtaining	268
Searching	270
ToruCa alert	271
ToruCa auto-read	271
ToruCa from IC card	270
ToruCa sort rule	271
Touch operation	40
Touch panel	26, 39
Two-key shortcut i-appli	256

U	
UIM	
Installing/Removing	46
Operation restriction	47
Security codes	47
Type	48
Unblocking PIN lock	112
Unregistered caller	128
Unsent mail → i-mode mail	
USB mode settings	307
User Certificate	183
User information	
Checking	56, 333
Details screen	333

V	
Vibrate alert/effect	93
Videophone	58
Auto redial as voice	73
Chara-den	71
Display setting	73
Image setting	72
Making a call	58
Receiving a call	67
Videophone alert	90
Videophone image	73
Videophone settings (Operation)	73
View preference	62, 86, 154
Voice clear	60
Voice Mail service	362
Voice memo	335
Voice memos	
Playing/Deleting	71
Voice slowing	60

W	
Walking checker (i-appli)	253
Warranty	427
WEB Mail	144
Web To	180
Website	174, 192
WMA file	233
Word, Excel, PowerPoint	317
Adding/Deleting folder	308
Deleting	311
Detail information/Edit detail information	309
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail)	146
Downloading	195
Moving/Copying	308
Settings	318
Sorting	311
WORLD WING	48

Numeric	
1Seg	214

Channel setting	215
Creating Channel list	215
Data broadcasting	219
Deleting recorded data	311
Detail information/Edit detail information of recorded data	309
Displaying recorded data	318
Multi window	220
Operation settings for recorded still image	320
Operations while watching TV	217
Program guide i-appli	219
Recording	221
Recording reservation	222
Recording result	225
Reservation list screen	223
Sorting recorded data	311
Storage area	214
Subtitle	216
Time shift	218
TVlink	220
User setting	225
Watching	216
Watching reservation	222
1Seg ECO mode	216
1Seg watching screen	216
2in1	366
2in1 setting	367
3G-324M	58
5-touch input method	
List	402
64K data communication	383

Quick Manual

◆ How to use Quick Manual

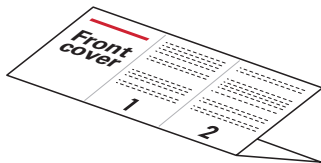
The "Quick Manual" appended to this manual briefly describes the basic screen displays and operating procedure of FOMA terminal. Cut along the cutoff line and fold up the manual as shown below.

For the use of international roaming service (WORLD WING), please refer to "Quick Manual (Overseas Use)".

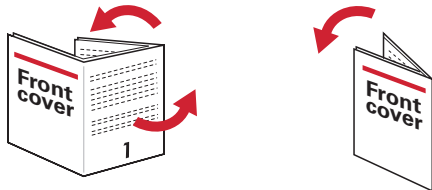
1 Cut along the cutoff line

Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting.

2 Fold once horizontally



3 Fold the left and the right so that the front cover faces outward



Quick Manual

❖ General Inquiries <docomo Information Center>

<In English>

☎0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Available from land-line phones, mobile phones and PHSS.

<In Japanese only>

☎0120-800-000 (toll free)

No prefix 151 (toll free)

* Available only from mobile phones and PHSS.

❖ Repairs

<In Japanese only>

No prefix 113 (toll free)

* Available only from mobile phones and PHSS.

☎0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Available from land-line phones, mobile phones and PHSS.

Please check on the number before dialing.

Entering characters

❖ Switching input modes

On the character entry screen,  (several times) · While displaying items to switch, use  to switch one-byte/two-byte characters.

Input mode

漢 : Hiragana/Kanji character

半7 : One-byte katakana

半A : One-byte alphabetic characters

半数 : One-byte numeric characters

全7 : Two-byte katakana

全A : Two-byte alphabetic characters

全数 : Two-byte numeric characters

❖ Entering pictograms, symbols and fixed phrases

Entering pictograms

On the character entry screen,   Select pictogram

Entering symbols

On the character entry screen,    Select symbol

Entering fixed phrases

On the character entry screen,    
(   on the message text entry screen)  Select fixed phrase

❖ Copying/Pasting characters

Copying characters

On the character entry screen,   (   on the message text entry screen)  Select the start position  Select the end position

❖ Entering/Converting characters (5-touch method)

Operations available before conversion

The characters are inserted at the cursor position.

  : Select input mode and press keys successively to change characters to input. : Change characters to Kana : Return to the previous character

(e.g. : お→え→う→い→あ→お→え→…)

 : Cancel entered characters : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (only after conversion).

(e.g. : ほ→ほ→ほ→ほ→…, つ→つ→づ→つ→…)

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)"

1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode

"ろ" :  (5 times)"っ" :  (3 times)  "ぼ" :  (5 times)   (twice)"ん" :  (3 times)

Pasting characters

On the character entry screen, move the cursor to the position to paste   (  on the message text entry screen)

Phonebook

❖ Adding to FOMA terminal phonebook

1  (1 sec. or more)  Enter a name  Set required items  

· Phonebook No.

· Reading

· Select/Shoot image

·  Group·  Phone number·  Mail address·  Birthday·  Note·  Postal Code/Address·  Location info

- : Company name
- : Job title
- : URL

Adding to UIM phonebook

- 1 [Phonebook & Logs] **4** ▶ Enter a name ▶ Set required items ▶

Adding from redial list or received call list

- 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶ **5** **1**
 - Update phonebook: **5** **2**
- 2 **1** (FOMA terminal phonebook) or **2** (UIM phonebook)
 - To update phonebook, select the party to save.
- 3 Set required items ▶

6

❖ Editing the phonebook

- 1
 - Switching phonebook:
- 2 Move the cursor to a party ▶ **3** **1**
 - For UIM phonebook, **3**.
- 3 Edit ▶
 - An overwriting confirmation screen appears.

❖ Searching the phonebook

- 1 [Phonebook & Logs] **1**
 - Switching phonebook:
- 2 **1** - **6**
 - For UIM phonebook, **1** - **3**.

7

Camera function

Shooting still images

- ▶ Point the camera at the object and ▶

Recording movies

- (1 sec. or more) ▶ Point the camera at the object
 ▶ ▶

Displaying image

- [Data Box] **1** **1** ▶ Select an image

Playing movie

- [Data Box] **4** **2** ▶ Select a movie

Operation available in playing movie

- , : Adjust volume
 : Reverse/Fast play/Play from the beginning (when paused)
 : Pause/Play
 : Stop

8

Videophone

❖ Making videophone calls

- 1 Enter a phone number ▶
- 2 Talk with the other party
 - Putting a call on-hold:
 - Switching earpiece/speaker:
 - Switching image to send:
- 3 When ending the call,

❖ Receiving videophone calls

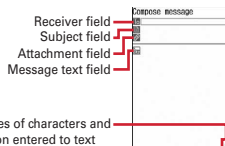
- 1 A call comes in ▶ or
 - On hold: while receiving a call
 - Operation during a call is the same as Step 2 in "Making videophone calls".
- 2 When ending the call,

9

i-mode mail

❖ Creating/Sending i-mode mail

- 1 (1 sec. or more)



- 2 Select ▶ Select input method ▶ Enter or select the receiver
- 3 Select ▶ Enter the subject
- 4 Select ▶ Enter message text
 - Creating Deco-mail: ▶ Select a decoration icon ▶ Decorate

10

❖ File attachment

- 1 Select on the mail creation screen
 - Removing attachment: ▶ "Yes"
- 2 Select the type of the file to attach ▶ Select the attachment source ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a file

❖ Displaying received/sent mail

- 1 **1** or **5**
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Select a mail

11

✦ Editing/Sending i-mode mail

<Example> Editing unsent mail

- 1 **4**
· Editing sent mail : **5**
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Select a mail
· Editing sent mail : Select a mail
- 4 Edit

✦ Check new message (mail)

- 1

Activating/Operating 1Seg

- 1 (1 sec. or more)

Operations available while watching 1Seg

- (without data broadcasting display area) : Adjust volume
- : Select previous or next channel on TV station list

12

*2 If playing time is within 3 seconds/less than 3 seconds, move to the previous chapter/tune.

Network Service

✦ Voice Mail service

Application : Required Monthly fee : Charged

Activating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **1** **1** **1** "Yes" "Yes" Enter ring time

Deactivating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **1** **1** **3** "Yes"

Playing voice messages

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **1** **1** **5** **1** or **2** "Yes" Follow the voice prompts to operate

15

- (1 sec. or more) : Search for previous or next frequency available
- (with data broadcasting display area) : Move the cursor
- (1 sec. or more without data broadcasting display area), (1 sec. or more) : Silent
- 1** - **9**, , **0**, : One-key channel selection (13ch and up can be selected from TV station list)
- 8** **7** : 1Seg ECO mode ON/OFF
- : Switch the standard screen/data broadcasting full-screen
- : Switch display/hide subtitle
- (1 sec. or more) : Start/Stop video recording
- : Save still image
- : Activate Program guide i-appli
- "Yes" : End

13

✦ Call Waiting Service

Application : Required Monthly fee : Charged

Activating/Deactivating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **2** **1** **1**
[Activate] or **2** [Deactivate] "Yes"

Answering another call

- during a call
- Switching to another party to talk :

Making another call

- During a call, **0** Enter a phone number
- Switching to another party to talk :

Ending a call

- When ending the call,
- Switching to the other party on-hold : or

16

Activating/Operating Music&Video Channel/MUSIC Player

Activating Music&Video Channel

- 1 [MUSIC] **2**

Activating MUSIC Player

- 1 (1 sec. or more)

Operations available after activation

- , : Play/Pause
- , : Adjust volume
- (1 sec. or more)/ (1 sec. or more) : Rewind/Fast forward
- , (1 sec. or more) : Move to the beginning of the current chapter/tune*2
- , (1 sec. or more) : Move to the next chapter/tune
- (quickly twice)*1 : Save to Quick playlist
- (1 sec. or more)*1 : Stop

*1 Only valid for MUSIC Player.

14

✦ Call Forwarding Service

Application : Required Monthly fee : Free

Activating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **2** **2** **1** "Yes" "Yes"
- 2 Enter a phone number of the forwarding destination
· Entering the forwarding destination in the phonebook :
- 3 "Yes" Enter ring time

Deactivating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **2** **2** **2** "Yes"

✦ Caller ID Display Request Service

Application : Not required Monthly fee : Free

Activating/Deactivating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **4** **2** **1**
[Activate] or **2** [Deactivate] "Yes"

17

Viewing display

Top of the display



- ① : Battery icon
- ② : Signal level icon
 : Out of service area
 : Self mode ON
 : In data transfer mode
- ③ : In i-mode communication (i-mode site)/(packet communication)

18

- ④ : In infrared communication etc.
 : Bluetooth power ON/Power saving mode activated
 : The total calls cost exceeds the limit
- ⑤ : Bluetooth connection being established
 : Communication using handsfree-compatible device in progress
 : Communication using a Bluetooth handsfree device in progress
 : Communication using a Bluetooth headset in progress
 : Speakerphone function in use
 : Power saving mode activated
- ⑥ : Positioning with GPS
 : Location request setting with GPS/Out of Permission period
- ⑦ : A phonebook entry or schedule has secret attribute

19

- ⑧ : Unread Area Mail
 : Unread i-mode mail, SMS and SMS in UIM are full
 : Arrival i-concier information exists
- ⑨ : During PushTalk session
 : Storage state in i-mode Center
- ⑩ : Displaying SSL page etc.
 : Mail failed to Auto-send exists
 : Auto-send mail exists
- ⑪ : i-appli/i-appliDX is running
 : i-appli stand-by display ON
 : Receiving i-appli call
- ⑫ : Alarm clock ON
 : Schedule reminder ON
 : Alarm clock and Schedule reminder are set together
- ⑬ : Inside OFFICEED area

20

Bottom of the display



- ① : Missed calls
- ② : Recorded messages
- ③ : Voice messages in Voice Mail service
- ④ : Unread messages
- ⑤ : Unread ToruCa
- ⑥ : i-appli call
- ⑦ : Shortcut icons
- ⑧ : Silent mode ON
 : Personalized silent mode ON

21

- ⑨ : Call alert volume OFF
 : Vibrator for voice call ON
 : Call alert volume OFF & vibrator for voice call ON
- ⑩ : In Public mode (Drive mode)
- ⑪ : Answer machine ON/recorded messages full
- ⑫ : Keypad dial lock ON
 : Side key hold ON
- ⑬ : Location request success/failure/end as unanswered
 : Personal data lock ON
- ⑭ : Reading UIM
 : IC card lock ON
- ⑮ : Available multi-cursor key
 : Lock on close ON

22

- ⑯ : Performing 1Seg recording reservation/1Seg recording (only watching stopped)
 : i-appli Auto start failed
- ⑰ : USB mode settings & microSD card inserted
- ⑱ : Connected to external device using USB cable
- ⑲ : Pedometer ON
 : Software update pre-specified/Update notification icon
 : Failed to Auto-update of latest pattern definition/Successful

23

Menu list

Menu list for the case Select startup menu is set to "Basic menu" is described.

Mail

- 1 1 Inbox
- 1 2 Compose message
- 1 3 Compose Decome-Anime
- 1 4 Unsent messages
- 1 5 Outbox
- 1 6 Check new message
- 1 7 WEBmail
- 1 8 SMS/Area Mail
- 1 9 Receive option
- 1 * Template
- 1 0 Mail settings

24

i-mode

- 2 1 iMenu
- 2 2 Bookmark
- 2 3 Screen memo
- 2 4 Browser history
- 2 5 Go to location
- 2 6 MessageR&F
- 2 7 i-Channel
- 2 8 i-mode settings
- 2 9 Full Browser

i-appli

- 3 1 Software list
- 3 2 i-appli call logs
- 3 3 i-appli settings

25

3 4 Display history

3 5 About i-appli

Phonebook & Logs

- 4 1 Phonebook
- 4 2 Phonebook new entry
- 4 3 Add group
- 4 4 Phonebook(UIM) new entry
- 4 5 PushTalk phonebook
- 4 6 Received calls
- 4 7 Redial
- 4 8 Ans.Machine&Voice memo
- 4 9 Mail logs
- 4 * User information

26

Data Box

- 5 1 My Picture
- 5 2 MUSIC
- 5 3 Music&Video Channel
- 5 4 i-motion
- 5 5 Melody
- 5 6 My Document
- 5 7 Kisekae Tool
- 5 8 Machi-chara
- 5 9 Chara-den
- 5 * 1Seg
- 5 0 Other

Life Kit

- 6 1 Bar code reader

27

- 6 2 Ir/iC/PC connection
- 6 3 microSD
- 6 4 Camera
- 6 5 Sound recorder
- 6 6 Data Center
- 6 7 Map/GPS
- 6 8 Pedometer
- 6 9 1Seg
- 6 * Bluetooth

Accessory

- 7 1 Scheduler
- 7 2 Notepad
- 7 3 Alarm clock
- 7 4 Calculator
- 7 5 Dictionaries

28

7 6 Countdown timer

7 7 Fake call

Settings & NW services

- 8 1 Alerts & Sounds
- 8 2 Display
- 8 3 Kisekae/Themes
- 8 4 Security & Locks
 - Locks
 - Privacy mode
 - Security indicator
 - Receive display option
 - UIM
 - Code & Fingerprint
 - Scanning function
 - Password manager

29

[8][5] Call & Answer	Sound & Image Anonymous caller Any key answer Headset Reject/Accept call Make/Receive call Call session Self mode
[8][6] V-phone/P-Talk	
[8][7] Clock & Other	Clock Text input Font size Software update Info & Reset Side key shortcut Pointing device

30

Other Main Functions

Function	Operating procedure
Start/Cancel Side key hold	(1 sec. or more)
Start/Cancel Self mode	(1 sec. or more)
Start/Cancel Public mode	(1 sec. or more)
Display i-mode Menu	
Display i-appli folder list	(1 sec. or more)
Display Received calls/Redial	/
Start/Cancel IC card lock	(1 sec. or more)*
Display Scheduler	
Display alarm list	(1 sec. or more)
Start/Cancel Silent mode	(1 sec. or more)
Start i-Widget	
Start quick search	
New Task start menu	

* Authentication is required to cancel.

33

	Motion sensor
[8][8] NW Services	Voice Mail Call waiting/forward Chaku-moji Caller ID Roaming guidance OFFICEED 2in1 setting Melody Call Other
[8][9] Roaming/Call assist	
MUSIC	
[9][1] MUSIC Player	
[9][2] Music&Video Channel	

31

Services available

Services	Phone No.
Directory assistance service (charged : service fee + call fee) (not provided for those who do not require the service)	104 (no area code)
Sending telegrams (charged : telegram)	115 (no area code)
Time (charged)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charged)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster recorded message service (charged)	171 (no area code)
Collect call (charged : service + call)	106 (no area code)

34

Osaifu-Keitai	
*[1] IC card content	
*[2] DCMX	
*[3] ToruCa content	
*[4] IC card settings	
*[5] ToruCa setting	
*[6] Check IC owner	
*[7] Change IC owner	
*[8] Search by i-mode	

User information

i-concier

32

Emergency number for misplacement

❖ Omakase Lock

* Omakase Lock is a charged service. If you subscribe to this service at the same time as service interruption or during interruption, or if you are the member of docomo Premier Club, no charges occur. And, if you subscribe to Keitai Anshin Pack, you can use the service within the fixed charge of Keitai Anshin Pack.

Setting/Canceling Omakase Lock (24 hours)

0120-524-360

❖ Other emergency contact numbers

Contact : _____

Contact : _____

· Please check on the number before dialing.

35

Quick Manual (Overseas Use)

❖ Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas

<docomo Information Center>

(24 hours) (in Japanese only)

● From DOCOMO mobile phone

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** (toll free)

* Call to Japan is charged when calling from a land-line phone.
* When calling from an F-01A, dial +81-3-5366-3114 to contact the docomo Information Center. (Press **[0]** for 1 sec. or more to enter "+".)

● From land-line phone <Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

* Local call charges may be required.

* For the latest information about international call access codes for major countries (table 1)/international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2), refer to DOCOMO's "International service web page".

❖ Failures encountered overseas

<Network Technical Operation Center>

(24 hours)

● From DOCOMO mobile phone

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** (toll free)

* Call to Japan is charged when calling from a land-line phone.
* When calling from an F-01A, dial +81-3-6718-1414 to contact the docomo Information Center. (Press **[0]** for 1 sec. or more to enter "+".)

● From land-line phone <Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

* Local call charges may be required.
* For the latest information about international call access codes for major countries (table 1)/international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2), refer to DOCOMO's "International service web page".

1

Network and available communication services

A packet communication fee overseas differs from the one in Japan.

Communication services	Network		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
Voice call	 *1		
Videophone call			
i-mode connection			
i-mode mail			
SMS			
i-Channel			
Position location of GPS			
Data communication (Packet communication)*2			

*1 When  (red) appears, sending/receiving a voice call/SMS and position location of GPS are available.

3

*2 64K data communication by connecting with a PC etc. is unavailable overseas.

Network search mode

[ME] [Settings & NW services] **[9][2][1] ▶ [1]-[3]**

PLMN setting

[ME] [Settings & NW services] **[9][2][1][4] ▶** Move the cursor to the network ▶ **[ME]** **[2] ▶** Select the priority ▶ 

Disp. operator name

You can display an operator name at the top of the display.



[ME] [Settings & NW services] **[9][2][3] ▶ [1]**
[Display on] or **[2]** [Display off]

4

Preparing for using overseas

❖ i-mode settings

Setting in Japan : iMenu → "English" → "Options" → "International Settings" → "i-mode services Settings"
Setting overseas : iMenu → "International Settings" → "i-mode services Settings"

❖ Activate Remote control

Setting in Japan : **[ME]** [Settings & NW services]

[8][9][2][1] ▶ "Yes"

Setting overseas : **[ME]** [Settings & NW services]

[9][1][3] ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

❖ Two time zone clocks

[ME] [Settings & NW services] **[9][4] ▶ [1]** [ON] or **[2]** [OFF]

2

Setting after returned to Japan

When FOMA terminal is turned ON after you return to Japan, it is automatically connected to FOMA network. If not connected to FOMA network, set Network search mode to "Auto" and reset 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO".

Making a call/videophone call

When making a call to a WORLD WING user staying overseas, enter "+" and Japan's country code "81" even if you are in the same country as the party to be called.

❖ International call (including to Japan)

[0] (1 sec. or more) ▶ Country code ▶ Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶  or 

❖ Call inside the country you stay

Enter a phone number ▶  or  ▶ "No, use original"

5

Receiving a call/videophone call

A call is received ►  or 

Roaming guidance

· Set before leaving Japan.

[ME] [Settings & NW services] **[8]** **[5]** ► **[1]** [Activate]
or **[2]** [Deactivate] ► "Yes"

Restricting incoming calls during international roaming

· Some may not be set depending on the overseas telecommunications carriers.

- [ME]** [Settings & NW services] **[9]** **[2]** **[4]**
- [1]** ► **[1]** or **[2]**
· Canceling Bar calls at roaming : **[2]**
- "Yes" ► Enter the network security code

6

Area	Code	Area	Code
Italy	39	USA	1
Japan	81	Viet Nam	84
Korea	82		

· For other country code and details, refer to DOCOMO's international service web page.

International call access codes for major countries (table 1)

Area	No.	Area	No.
Australia	0011	Macau	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021/0014	Monaco	00
Canada	011	New Zealand	00
China	00	Norway	00
Czech	00	Philippines	00
Denmark	00	Poland	00
Finland	00/990	Portugal	00
France	00	Russia	810
Germany	00	Singapore	001
Greece	00	Spain	00
Holland	00	Sweden	00

9

Network Services

· To use overseas, Remote control must be set in advance.

◆ Voice Mail service

[ME] [Settings & NW services] **[9]** **[1]** **[1]** ► **[1]**
[Activate] or **[2]** [Deactivate] ► "Yes" ► Follow the voice prompts to operate

◆ Call Forwarding Service

[ME] [Settings & NW services] **[9]** **[1]** **[2]** ► **[1]**
[Activate] or **[2]** [Deactivate] ► "Yes" ► Follow the voice prompts to operate

◆ Roaming guidance

[ME] [Settings & NW services]
[9] **[1]** **[5]** ► "Yes" ► Follow the voice prompts to operate

7

Area	No.	Area	No.
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	002
India	00	Thailand	001
Indonesia	001	Turkey	00
Ireland	00	UAE	00
Italy	00	United Kingdom	00
Korea	001	USA	011
Luxembourg	00	Viet Nam	00

International prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2)

Area	Code	Area	Code
Argentina	00	Italy	00
Australia	0011	Korea	001
Austria	00	Luxembourg	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021	New Zealand	00
Canada	011	Norway	00
China	00	Philippines	00
Columbia	009	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Singapore	001
Finland	990	South Africa	09

10

Country code of major countries

For international calls or Int'l call assist, use country code listed below.

Area	Code	Area	Code
Australia	61	Macau	853
Austria	43	Malaysia	60
Belgium	32	Maldives	960
Brazil	55	New Caledonia	687
Canada	1	New Zealand	64
China	86	Norway	47
Czech	420	Peru	51
Egypt	20	Philippines	63
Finland	358	Russia	7
France	33	Singapore	65
Fiji	679	Spain	34
Germany	49	Sweden	46
Greece	30	Switzerland	41
Holland	31	Tahtiti (French Polynesia)	689
Hong Kong	852	Taiwan	886
Hungary	36	Thailand	66
India	91	Turkey	90
Indonesia	62	United Kingdom	44

8

Area	Code	Area	Code
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Holland	00	Switzerland	00
Hong Kong	001	Taiwan	00
Hungary	00	Thailand	001
Ireland	00	United Kingdom	00
Israel	014	USA	011

Service inquiries

For loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas, see "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" on the cover of Quick Manual (Overseas Use) or "Failures encountered overseas" on P1.

· Each inquiry number must be prefixed with
"International call access codes (table 1)" or
"International prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2)" assigned to the country you stay.

11

Please ask checking/changing subscription detail, application of various services and request of various information materials online.

From i-mode iMenu ⇒ お客様サポート (Support) ⇒ お申込・お手続き (Application/Procedures) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)

No packet communication charges

From PCs My docomo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)

- * You need your "Network security code" to use the site from i-mode.
- * No packet communication charge applies to access the site from i-mode. Packet communication charge applies to access from overseas.
- * You need "docomo ID/Password" to access the site from your PC.
- * If you do not have or forget "Network security code" or "docomo ID/Password", contact to the numbers for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
- * You may not use the services depending on your subscription.
- * There are cases where the site may not be available to system maintenance, etc.

About Proper Telephone Etiquette

Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in cases below

- In a place where use of mobile phones is prohibited
Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in an aircraft or hospital.
 - * Be aware that patients using electronic medical equipment are in many areas in hospitals. Your FOMA terminal must be turned OFF even in lobbies or waiting rooms.
- When you are in crowded train and near by someone using pacemakers, defibrillators or other devices
FOMA terminal's signals may negatively affect the operation of implanted pacemakers, defibrillators or other devices.

Always set Public mode in cases below

- When driving
Using a mobile phone by holding it with the hand while driving is subject to penalty.
 - * If you inevitably receive a call, tell the caller that you will "call back" by handsfree, then park in a safe place and call back.

- In public places such as a theater, movie theater or art museum
Using your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will likely bother other people.

Match the volume of voice and ring alert to your location

- In a quiet place like a restaurant or hotel lobby, pay attention to the volume of your voice etc. when using your FOMA terminal.
- In town areas, while using your FOMA terminal, be sure not to block foot or car traffic.

Consider privacy

- ! Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions designed for public use

Your FOMA terminal has a number of useful functions designed for public use, such as a setting that instructs your terminal not to answer incoming calls and the ability to set the terminal for silent operation.

- Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF)
The caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is driving a car or in a place (electric train, bus, movie theater, etc.) requiring control of calling, and the call is disconnected. → P69
- Recorded messages
Allows the caller to leave a message/video message when you cannot answer the call. → P70
- Vibrate alert
Vibrates when there is an incoming call. → P93
- Silent mode/Personalized silent mode
Eliminates all sounds your FOMA terminal makes, such as keypad sound and ring alert (Silent mode). → P95
Allows the user to change Silent mode operations (Personalized silent mode). → P95

This printed matter is recyclable. Please recycle this manual when you no longer need it.

General Inquiries <docomo Information Center>

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish, Korean.

* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones**
(In Japanese only)

■ **From land-line phones**
(In Japanese only)

☎ (No prefix) 151 (toll free) **☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)**

* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc. * Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

● For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo shop etc. near you on the NTT DOCOMO website or the i-mode site

▶ NTT DOCOMO website <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/>

▶ i-mode site iMenu⇒お客様サポート (user support)⇒ドコモショップ (docomo Shop) * In Japanese only

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas <docomo Information Center>

(available 24 hours a day)

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones**

**International call access code for
the country you stay (table 1)**

-81-3-5366-3114* (toll free)

* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.

※ If you use F-01A, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to enter '+', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

■ **From land-line phones <Universal number>**

**International prefix number for
the universal number (table 2)**

-800-0120-0151*

* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※ See page 375 for international call access codes for major countries (table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2).

● **If you lose your FOMA terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the FOMA terminal.**

● **If the FOMA terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.**



Li-ion 00

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to a docomo service counter, a docomo agent or a recycle center.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Repairs

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones**
(In Japanese only)

■ **From land-line phones**
(In Japanese only)

☎ (No prefix) 113 (toll free)

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

Failures encountered overseas <Network Technical Operation Center>

(available 24 hours a day)

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones**

**International call access code for
the country you stay (table 1)**

-81-3-6718-1414* (toll free)

* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.

※ If you use F-01A, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to enter '+', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

■ **From land-line phones <Universal number>**

**International prefix number for
the universal number (table 2)**

-800-5931-8600*

* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※ See page 375 for international call access codes for major countries (table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2).

Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.
Manufacturer: FUJITSU LIMITED

F-01A

Manual for PC Connection

Data Communication.....	1
Before use.....	2
Flow of setup for data transfer (OBEX™ communication) ...	4
Flow of setup for data communication.....	4
Connecting up PC to the FOMA terminal	5
Installing FOMA communication configuration file.....	7
Preparing for Bluetooth® connection ... Dialup communication service	10
Using DOCOMO Connection Manager.....	12
Setting communications without using DOCOMO Connection Manager	18
AT command	36

■ **About Manual for PC Connection**

This manual describes about data communications using FOMA F-01A and how to install "FOMA communication configuration file" and "DOCOMO Connection Manager" contained in CD-ROM.
Depending on the environment of your PC, some of operation procedures and/or screens may be different.

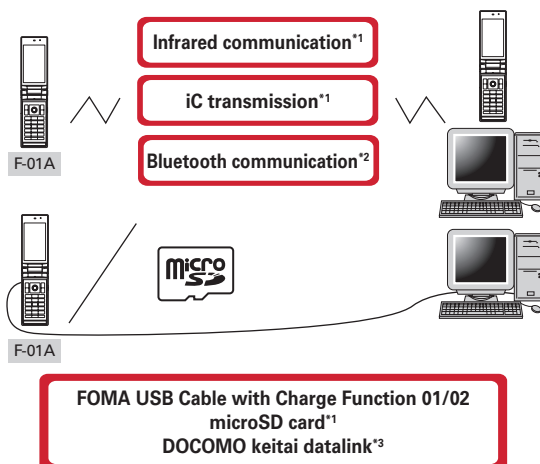
Data Communication

There are 3 communication modes available by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC : packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX™ communication).

- To make packet communications or 64K data communications or edit data such as the phonebook using a PC connected, installation of the software in the attached CD-ROM and various settings are required.
- When performing packet communication overseas, use IP connection (packet communication is unavailable with PPP connection). 64K data communication can not be used overseas.
- FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication or Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be performed connecting with PDA of DOCOMO, musea or sigmarion III. Note that update of musea is required for use. For details on update such as method, refer to DOCOMO website.

Data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

You can send and receive data such as image, music, phonebook or mail etc. to/from other FOMA terminals or PCs etc.



*1 For details, see "Data Management" in "F-01A INSTRUCTION MANUAL".

*2 For details, refer to "Convenient Functions" of "F-01A INSTRUCTION MANUAL".

*3 For details, see "PC Connection" in "F-01A INSTRUCTION MANUAL".

Packet communication

You can use packet communication by connecting FOMA terminal to a PC etc. with USB cable or Bluetooth function and making various settings.

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication can be performed at a maximum reception speed of 7.2Mbps and a maximum transmission speed of 384kbps by using access points that support FOMA packet communication such as mopera U of DOCOMO's Internet connection service. Best effort method which the actual communication speed varies with the environment and the rate of congestion offers.

Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images and downloading (example: updating of application, music, movie, OS or anti-virus software) will require high charges.

* Both the maximum transmission/reception speeds are 384kbps when connecting out of FOMA HIGH-SPEED area, connecting to access points incompatible with HIGH-SPEED, or using devices incompatible with HIGH-SPEED such as DOCOMO's PDA like musea or sigmarion III.

- * When performing data communication via Bluetooth function, though the communication speed of FOMA terminal is equal to HIGH-SPEED, communication may not be performed by maximum speed because the communication speed between Bluetooth devices has limits.
- * Maximum speed of reception 7.2Mbps and transmission 384kbps are the values in technical standards, thus they are not indicated actual communication speed. Actual communication speed varies by the network congestion or environment of communication.

64K data communication

You can use 64K data communication by connecting FOMA terminal to a PC etc. with USB cable or Bluetooth function and making various settings.

Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which makes it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents.

Data can be sent/received by using access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U of DOCOMO's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points. Please be careful that a high cost will be charged for long-time communications.

Before use

Operating environment

The operation environment for using data communication is as shown below. They may vary depending on the PC system configurations.

Item	Requirements
Computer	PC/AT compatible computer For USB cable connection : USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) For Bluetooth connection : Compatible with Bluetooth Standard Ver. 1.1, Ver. 1.2 or Ver. 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles) Recommended 800 x 600 dots in display resolution and High Color 16 bits or more
OS (Japanese version)*	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista
Memory requirements	Windows 2000 : 64MB or more Windows XP : 128MB or more Windows Vista : 512MB or more
Hard disk capacity*	5MB or more free disk space

* Recommended environment for operating DOCOMO Connection Manager is as follows.

OS : Windows 2000 SP4 or more, Windows XP SP2 or more (For details, refer to DOCOMO website).

Hard disk capacity : 15MB or more free disk space

- DOCOMO will not guarantee operations on upgraded OS.

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation under conditions other than that described above.

- Recommended environment for operating the menu is Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later (For Windows XP, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later). If no menu appears when CD-ROM is set, take actions given below.

① Click  (Start) → "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "アクセサリ (Accessories)" → "ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".

Under Windows XP, Windows 2000 : Click "スタート (Start)" → "ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".

② Enter as follows in "名前 (Name)" and click "OK".

<CD-ROM drive name> : index.html

* CD-ROM drive name varies depending on a PC to be used.

- When the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC's CD-ROM drive, the warning screen may be displayed. This warning is displayed according to the security settings of Internet Explorer but it is not a problem for use. Click "はい (Yes)".

* Depending on the environment of your PC, the screen may be different.

Devices required

The following devices are required in addition to FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for F-01A"

- * USB cable for PC is not available because the connector type is different.
- * When using USB HUB, it may not operate properly.
- * When performing Bluetooth connection, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 or FOMA USB Cable is not required.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet on a PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter referred to as Provider) is usually required. This charge is paid directly to the Provider, and is separated from the FOMA service charge. For details on usage charges, contact your Provider.

- DOCOMO's Internet connection service, mopera U is available.

mopera U is a charged service requiring subscription. You can also use a plan which charges monthly fee only for a month you use this service. For Internet connection with FOMA terminal, to use mopera U applicable to broadband connections is recommended.

Dialup connection (Provider etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- Connections to DoPa access points are unavailable.
- For service and connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.
<http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html>

User authentication

Some dialup connections require user authentication before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password and connect. Your ID and password will be assigned by the network administrator of the connection destination such as your provider or corporate LAN. For details, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication while using PC browser

If FirstPass (user certificate) is required for the access authentication during using PC browser, you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, refer to "簡易操作マニュアル" in the attached CD-ROM.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication in Japan, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64K.
- Bluetooth connection requires a PC compatible with Bluetooth Standard Ver. 1.1, Ver. 1.2 or Ver. 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles).
- * Note that even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy or the radio wave conditions are poor.

Flow of setup for data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional), install FOMA communication configuration file in advance.

Downloading and installing FOMA communication configuration file

- Installing from attached CD-ROM
- Downloading from DOCOMO website and installing

Data transfer

Flow of setup for data communication

This section describes the setup work needed to perform packet communication or 64K data communication.

For USB cable connection

- ① Downloading or installing FOMA communication configuration file→P7
 - Installing from attached CD-ROM
 - Downloading from DOCOMO website and installing
- ② Connecting FOMA terminal to a PC→P5
- ③ Checking FOMA communication configuration file→P8

For Bluetooth connection

- ① Preparing for Bluetooth connection→P10
- ② Checking modem→P11

Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager→P14

Setting data communication by DOCOMO Connection Manager*

Setting communications without using
DOCOMO Connection Manager→P18

Performing communication

* For setting of DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "DOCOMO Connection Manager operation manual".

FOMA communication configuration file

When performing Packet communication or 64K data communication by connecting to a PC with USB cable, install FOMA communication configuration file.

Using Bluetooth connection

You can make data communication by connecting a PC compatible with Bluetooth and FOMA terminal using Bluetooth.

- For details, refer to "Preparing for Bluetooth connection".→P10

DOCOMO Connection Manager

When DOCOMO Connection Manager (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication can be simply operated from a PC.

Precautions for installation/uninstallation

- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running and exit the program if any.
 - * Exit any resident programs on Windows including antivirus software.
- Example : Right-click the icon displayed in the task bar, click "閉じる (Close)" or "終了 (End)".
- For installing/uninstalling FOMA communication configuration file or DOCOMO Connection Manager, make sure that a user with administrator's privilege performs the operation. Installing/uninstalling the software by other users may produce an error. For Windows Vista, when the "ユーザーアカウント制御 (User Account Control)" screen appears, click "許可 (Permit)" or "続行 (Continue)", or enter the password and click "OK". For details on PC administrator privileges, contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- For operations of a PC, settings of administrator privileges etc., refer to the Instructions Manual of the PC.

Connecting up PC to the FOMA terminal

- The connection should be made with a PC and FOMA terminal both turned ON.
- Install FOMA communication configuration file before connecting with a PC for the first time.→P7

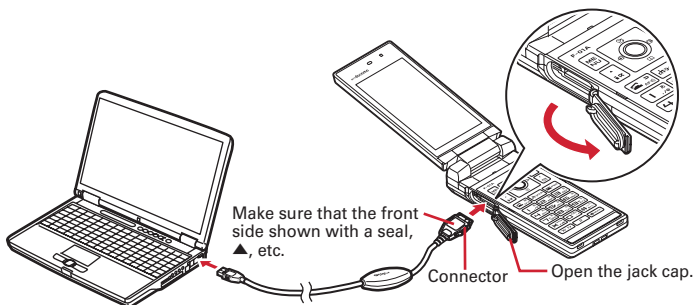
Connecting using USB cable

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 is optional.
- The description in this manual takes the case with FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 for example.

- 1 Insert the connector of the USB cable into FOMA terminal's external connection jack.**

2 Insert the other end of the USB cable connector into the PC USB port.

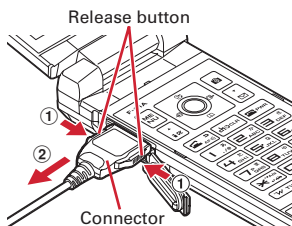
- If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC before installing FOMA communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that USB cable has been inserted and request the driver. In such a case, remove FOMA terminal and click "キャンセル (Cancel)" on the displayed screen to end.



- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected,  appears on the stand-by display of FOMA terminal.

Removing USB cable

- 1 Press the USB cable's release buttons on both sides of the connector (①) and remove the connector from FOMA terminal (②).



2 Remove the USB cable out from the PC.

INFORMATION

- Be careful not to give excessive force to the connector of the USB cable when connecting/disconnecting the cable to/from FOMA terminal. When disconnecting the connector, be sure to pull it straight while pressing the release button. Applying an excessive force to disconnect the connector may give damage to it.
- Do not remove the USB cable during data communication. The data communication is disconnected and it may cause data loss or malfunction.

Installing FOMA communication configuration file

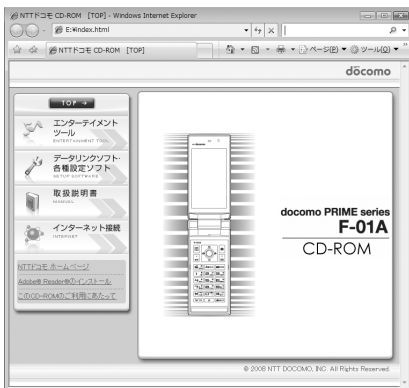
To make data communication by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC with USB cable, FOMA communication configuration file is required. Install the file before connecting FOMA terminal for the first time to the PC.

Installing FOMA communication configuration file

- Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation". → P5
- For Bluetooth connection, installing FOMA communication configuration file is not required.
- Do not connect FOMA terminal before Step 4.

<Example> Installing the driver under Windows Vista

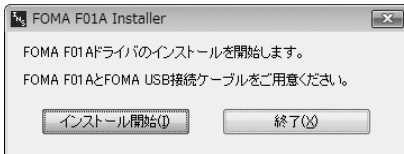
1 Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.



2 Click "データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Configuration software)" → "インストール (Install)" of "FOMA通信設定ファイル (USBドライバ) (FOMA communication configuration file (USB driver))" and double-click "F01Ast.exe" icon from a window displayed.



3 Click "インストール開始 (Start installation)".

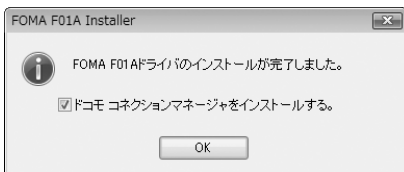


4 When a message indicating to connect FOMA terminal to the PC appears, connect FOMA terminal to the PC.



- Connect FOMA terminal while the power is ON.

5 On the "インストール完了画面 (Installation completion screen)", click "OK".



Subsequently, install DOCOMO Connection Manager and perform setting of data communication. Continue to install from Step 3 in "Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager".→P15

- For DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "Using DOCOMO Connection Manager".→P12

Checking FOMA communication configuration file

- When a PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

<Example> Checking the driver under Windows Vista

1 Click (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)"→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

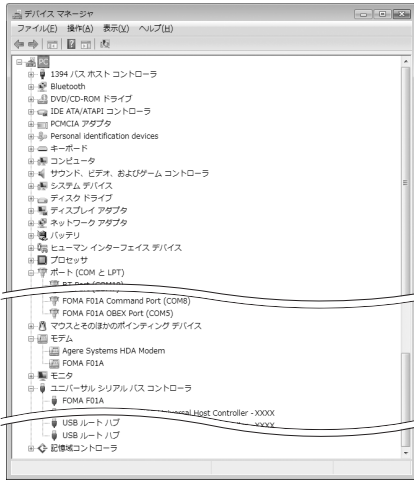
■ Under Windows XP

- ① Click "スタート (Start)"→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)"→"システム (System)".
- ② On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

■ Under Windows 2000

- ① Click "スタート (Start)"→Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)"→Double-click "システム (System)" icon.
- ② On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

2 Double-click the type of each device→Check that the name of the following devices are registered.



• Device types and names are shown as below.
The order to be displayed differs depending on OSs.

- ポート(COMとLPT) (Port (COM and LPT)) :
FOMA F01A Command Port (COMx)*
FOMA F01A OBEX Port (COMx)*
- モデム (Modem) : FOMA F01A
- ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ
(Universal Serial Bus Controller) or USB (Universal
Serial Bus) コントローラ (Controller) :
FOMA F01A

* Depending on the PC environment, x represents different numbers.

Uninstalling FOMA communication configuration file

- Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation".→P5
- Before operating, remove FOMA terminal from the PC.

<Example> Uninstalling the driver under Windows Vista

1 Click (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall programs)".

■ Under Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)"→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete Programs)".

■ Under Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)"→Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)"→Double-click "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)" icon.

2 Select "FOMA F01A USB" and click "アンインストールと変更 (Uninstall and change)" (for Windows XP or Windows 2000, "変更と削除 (Change and delete)").

3 Check that "FOMA F01A Uninstaller" is displayed and click "はい (Yes)". The uninstall process starts.



4 After the uninstallation in progress screen is displayed, click "OK".

INFORMATION

- When "FOMA F01A USB" is not displayed on the deletion screen, execute the operations in "Installing FOMA communication configuration file" again and uninstall.→P7

Dialup communication service

Preparing for Bluetooth® connection

You can make data communication by connecting a PC compatible with Bluetooth and FOMA terminal using Bluetooth.

- For details, refer to "Convenient Functions" of "F-01A INSTRUCTION MANUAL".
- For operations of a PC, refer to the instructions manual of the PC you use.

Registering a PC to the FOMA terminal

When connecting using Bluetooth for the first time, registering a PC to FOMA terminal is required.

- To register, entry of Bluetooth passkey is required. Decide Bluetooth passkey by 4-16 digits (one-byte alphanumeric characters) in advance.

1 On FOMA terminal, [LifeKit] 5.

FOMA terminal enters registering stand-by, and  (blue) appears on the screen of FOMA terminal.

- If connecting cannot be started within 5 minutes, registration is canceled automatically.

2 Search for FOMA terminal and register a device on a PC.

- Perform while FOMA terminal enters registering stand-by.
- By some PC instruction manual, "探索 (Quest)" or "サーチ (Search)" may be used instead of "検索 (Retrieve)" or "ペアリング (Pairing)" may be used instead of "機器登録 (Registering device)".

3 When the connecting confirmation screen appears on FOMA terminal, select "はい (Yes)".

4 Enter Bluetooth passkey by FOMA terminal and .

- Enter the same Bluetooth passkey on FOMA terminal and a PC.



After the PC is registered in FOMA terminal as a device and the registration is completed, return to accepting the dialup device and enter connecting stand-by state.

5 Operate for connecting on a PC.

- Operate data communication by using DOCOMO Connection Manager.
- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected,  (blue) blinks on the screen of FOMA terminal.
- For DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "Using DOCOMO Connection Manager".→P12

INFORMATION

- During dialup registering stand-by, connecting stand-by of headset service or handsfree-service is disabled.
- When registering FOMA terminal in a PC, distinguish FOMA terminal by the name of device if the PC recognizes plural devices. When the PC recognizes many devices of the same name, distinguish by the address of device.

Checking modem

- When a PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.
Check the name of modem used on a PC or COM port number set for dialup connection.

<Example> Checking on Windows Vista

1 Click  (Start) → "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" → "システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)" → "デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

■ Under Windows XP

- ① Click "スタート (Start)" → "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" → "パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)" → "システム (System)".
- ② On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab → "デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

■ Under Windows 2000

- ① Click "スタート (Start)" → Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)" → Double-click "システム (System)" icon.
- ② On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab → "デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

2 Double-click the type of each device → Check the modem name or COM port number.

- Name of Modem or COM port is shown under "モデム (Modem)", "ポート (COMとLPT) (Port (COM and LPT))".

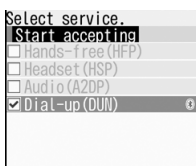
Connecting to a registered PC

When connecting a registered PC to FOMA terminal using Bluetooth, set FOMA terminal in connecting stand-by.

1 On FOMA terminal,  [LifeKit]  **4**  **1**.

2 Select "Dial-up" .

FOMA terminal enters connecting stand-by state, and returns to the stand-by display.



3 Operate for connecting on a PC.

- Operate data communication by using DOCOMO Connection Manager.
- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected,  (blue) blinks on the screen of FOMA terminal.
- For DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "Using DOCOMO Connection Manager". → P12

Stopping dialup communication service

1 On FOMA terminal,  [LifeKit]  **2**.

2 Select connecting stand-by PC from the registered device list  **2**.

3 Select "Dial-up" .

Dialup communication service stops.

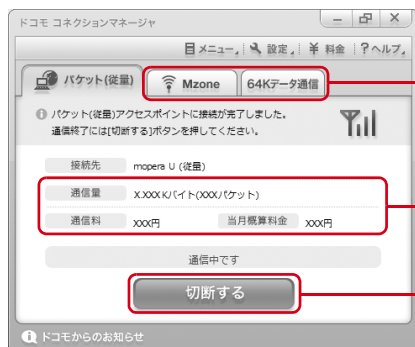
Using DOCOMO Connection Manager

The method of installing DOCOMO Connection Manager that connection rate vary by data volume is explained here.

DOCOMO Connection Manager

DOCOMO Connection Manager is the software to make data communication by the plan of connection rate varied by data volume. Using DOCOMO Connection Manager allows you to subscribe to mopera U or set for making data communication connecting FOMA terminal to a PC by simple operation.

You can also check approximate values of data communication volume or usage fees by charges counter function.



Not displayed in default setting.

For details, refer to Help of ドコモ コネクションマネージャ "DOCOMO Connection Manager".

Fee counter

Connect/Disconnect button

- For Internet connection with FOMA terminal, you need to subscribe to Internet service provider (mopera U etc.) applicable to services and data communication.
For details, refer to DOCOMO website.

INFORMATION

- Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images using packet communication and downloading (example: updating of application, music, movie, OS or anti-virus software) will require high charges.
Note that Pake-Houdai of packet flat-rate service, Pake-Houdai full, Pake-Houdai double, Biz-hodai or Biz-hodai double is not applicable to such as data communication connected to a PC.
- For using of flat-rate data plan, you need to subscribe to Internet service provider applicable to flat-rate data communication charging plan. For details, check to DOCOMO website.
- For using flat-rate data plan, be sure to use "定額データプラン接続ソフト (Connection software for flat-rate data plan)". You can download "定額データプラン接続ソフト (Connection software for flat-rate data plan)" from DOCOMO website.
- For connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.
<http://www.mopera.net/mopera/support/index.html>

Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager

Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager, check the items below and perform to change setting of software/uninstall as required.

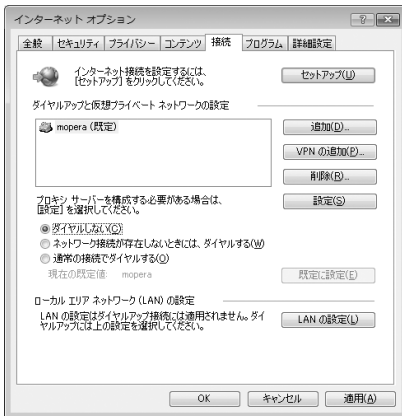
- Prepare FOMA terminal, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) in advance (For Bluetooth connection, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) is not required).
- Check the contents of subscription for services and Internet service provider.
- If installing connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager, change the setting not to be activated automatically as required. → P13 "Using connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager"

Changing setting of Internet Explorer

- Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager, set to "ダイヤルしない (No dialing)" for connection setting at "インターネットオプション (Internet option)" field of Internet Explorer in advance.

<Example> Changing under Windows XP

- 1 Click  (Start) → "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "Internet Explorer".
■ Under Windows XP, Windows 2000
Click "スタート (Start)" → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000) → Click "Internet Explorer".
- 2 Click "ツール (Tool)" → "インターネットオプション (Internet option)".
- 3 Click "接続 (Connection)" tab → Select "ダイヤルしない (No dialing)".



- 4 Click "OK".

Using connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager

DOCOMO Connection Manager includes same function as that of software below and using together is not required. Perform to change setting not to be activated or uninstall as required.

- mopera U start up tool
- mopera U connection & setting tool
- FOMA PC configuration software
- FOMA Byte counter

And, when using Mzone (Public wireless LAN connection) by DOCOMO Connection Manager, uninstall the following public wireless LAN connection software.

And, when installing all at once, Mzone connection cannot be used by DOCOMO Connection Manager.

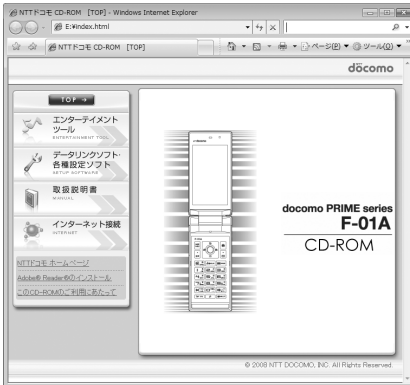
- U公衆無線LANユーティリティソフト (U public wireless LAN utility software)
- ドコモ公衆無線LANユーティリティソフト (DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility software)
- ドコモ公衆無線LANユーティリティプログラム (DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility program)

Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager

- After performing to install FOMA communication configuration file, when the screen for installation of DOCOMO Connection Manager appears, click "インストール (Install)" and start from Step 3.
- When FOMA communication configuration file is installed already or making data communication only by Bluetooth connection, start from Step 1.

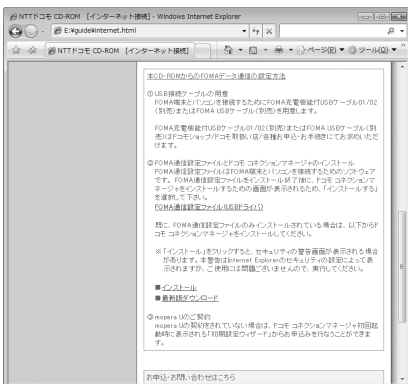
<Example> Installing under Windows Vista

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.



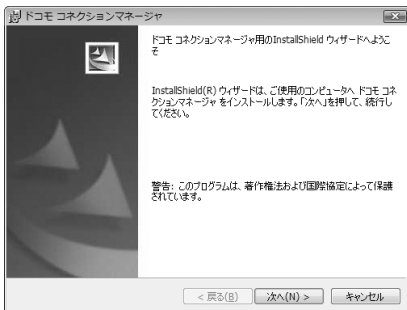
2 "インターネット接続 (Internet connection)" → Click "インストール (Install)" field in Step ② of "本CD-ROMからのFOMAデータ通信の設定方法 (Setting method of FOMA data communication from this CD-ROM)".

- When the warning screen of security is displayed, click "実行 (Execute)".

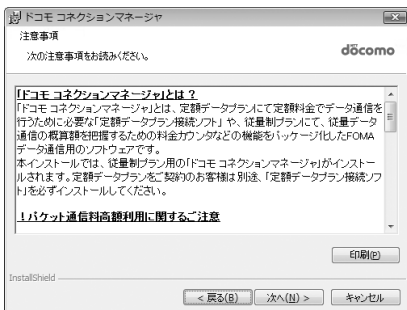


- For Windows XP, when the confirmation screen for installing of MSXML6/Wireless LAN API is displayed, click "Install" to install MSXML6/Wireless LAN API. After performing to install MSXML6/Wireless LAN API, reboot Windows to start installation of DOCOMO Connection Manager automatically.

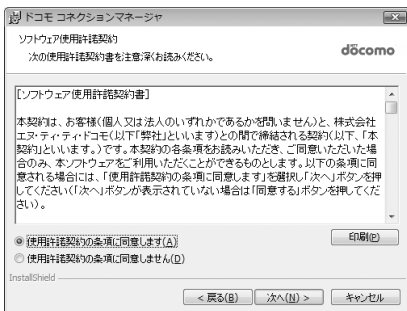
3 Click "次へ (Next)".



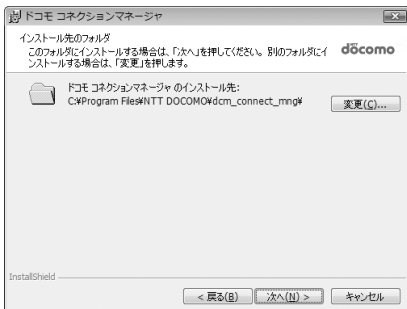
4 Check "注意事項 (Precautions)" and click "次へ (Next)".



5 Check the contents of ソフトウェア使用許諾契約 (Software license agreement) and if you agree to the agreement, select "使用許諾契約の条項に同意します (Agree to the clauses of the agreement)" and click "次へ (Next)".



6 Check the installing folder and click "次へ (Next)".



7 Click "インストール (Install)". Installation starts.



8 When the "InstallShieldウィザードを完了しました (Performed InstallShield wizard)" screen appears, click "完了 (Done)".

Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager is completed.



INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When a message notifying you to reboot Windows is displayed, follow the instruction of movie and reboot.
- Do not install during data communication.

Setting for communication using DOCOMO Connection Manager

- Before operating, make sure that a PC and FOMA terminal are properly connected.

<Example> Setting under Windows Vista

- 1 Click  (Start) → "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" → "NTT DOCOMO" → "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)" → "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

■ Under Windows XP, Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)" → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" (for Windows 2000, "プログラム (Program)" → "NTT DOCOMO" → "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)" → "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

DOCOMO Connection Manager starts.

When booting a PC at first time, the setting wizard screen appears automatically.

2 Setting for communication according to the setting wizard.

Perform to set for making data communication connecting to Internet.

After setting, you can perform communication using DOCOMO Connection Manager.

For details, refer to "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ操作マニュアル (DOCOMO Connection Manager operation manual)".



INFORMATION

- Just exiting the Internet browser or mail software may not disconnect communication. When you do not use communication, be sure to disconnect the communication from "切断する (Disconnect)" button of DOCOMO Connection Manager.
- Please note that if auto update is set for OS update etc., the software is updated automatically and high cost may be charged for the packet communication fee.



Connect/Disconnect button

Setting communications without using DOCOMO Connection Manager

The method of dialup connection setup without DOCOMO Connection Manager is explained.

- When using an access point compatible with HIGH-SPEED such as mopera for packet communication, make settings using DOCOMO Connection Manager.

Flow of dialup network setting

Flow of setup for data communication→P4

Setting the dialup connection (APN)*→P18

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to set.



Setting Show/Hide caller ID*→P20

- Set as required.



Setting Dialup Network

Operating system	Windows Vista	Windows XP	Windows 2000
Dialup connection	P22	P25	P29
TCP/IP settings	P24	P27	P32

* Set for packet communication.

Communication software to input AT commands is required for settings.

The method of setting using "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)" that comes with Windows 2000 and Windows XP is explained here. Windows Vista does not support "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)". For Windows Vista, set using the software supported by Windows Vista (Follow the method for the software to be used.).

Setting the dialup connection (APN)

The dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connections (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers (cid) between 1 and 10 in FOMA terminal. "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and "mopera.net" (APN) to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register APN for cid2 or 4-10.

- For the dialup connections (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- For USB cable connection and Bluetooth connection, setting each dialup connections (APN) is required.
- For packet communication, if switching between USB cable connection and Bluetooth connection, setting the dialup connections (APN) is required again.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook entries registered for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and FOMA terminal phonebook is as shown below.

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection number in the dialup connection numbers setting.

Setting the dialup connection (APN)

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

For USB cable connection→P5
For Bluetooth connection→P11

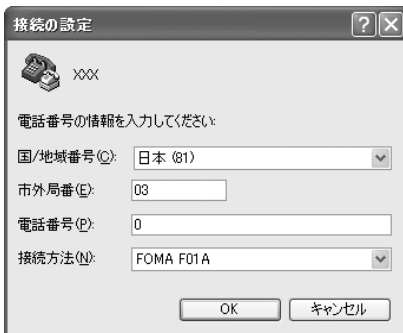
2 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000)→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)".

3 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "名前 (Name)"→Click "OK".



- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be used in "名前 (Name)".
¥/:*?<>|"

4 Enter a fictional phone number (such as "0") for "電話番号 (Phone number)"→Select "接続方法 (Connection method)"→Click "OK".



- "市外局番 (Area code)" differs depending on the PC environment. The code does not relate to Dialup connection (APN) setup. So no need to change.
- Set as follows at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
For USB cable connection : Select "FOMA F01A".
For Bluetooth connection : Select "ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use)" or "Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供しているBluetoothモデム (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer)".

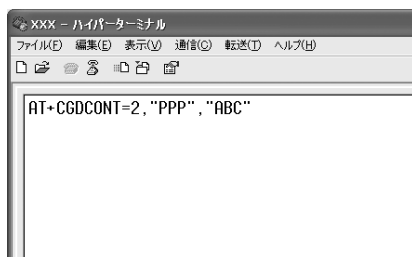
5 Click "キャンセル (Cancel)" on the "接続 (Connect)" screen.

6 Enter the dialup connection (APN) in the format "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, "<PDP_TYPE>", "<APN>" → .

<cid> : Enter any number between 2 or 4-10.

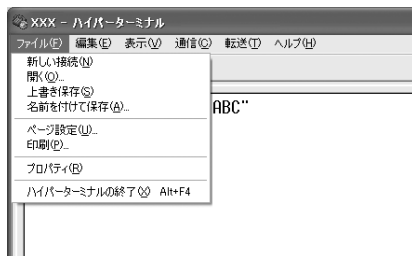
<PDP_TYPE> : IP or PPP

<APN> : Dialup connection (APN)



- +CGDCONT command → P43 "Supplement to AT command"
- If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press .

7 Check that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)" → Click "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".



8 When confirming disconnection, click "[はい (Yes)]" → When confirming saving, click "[いいえ (No)]".

Setting Show/Hide caller ID

You can set to show/hide call ID for packet communication at once.

Caller ID is your important information. Take care when deciding to disclose your caller ID.

- If "Not notify" is set when using mopera U or mopera, connection is unavailable.

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

For USB cable connection → P5

For Bluetooth connection → P11

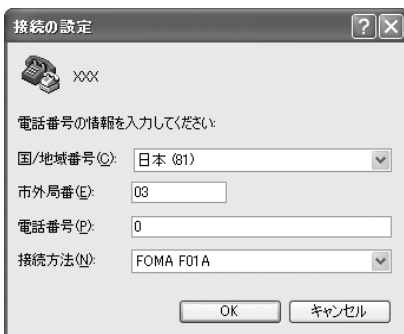
2 Click "スタート (Start)" → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000) → "アクセサリ (Accessories)" → "通信 (Communication)" and click "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)".

3 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "名前 (Name)"→Click "OK".



- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be used in "名前 (Name)".
¥/:*?<>|"

4 Enter a fictional phone number (such as "0") for "電話番号 (Phone number)" →Select "接続方法 (Connection method)"→Click "OK".



- "市外局番 (Area code)" differs depending on the PC environment. The code does not relate to Dialup connection (APN) setup. So no need to change.
- Set as follows at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
For USB cable connection : Select "FOMA F01A".
For Bluetooth connection : Select "ご使用の Bluetoothリンク経由標準モデム (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use)" or "Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供している Bluetoothモデム (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer)".

5 Click "キャンセル (Cancel)" on the "接続 (Connect)" screen.

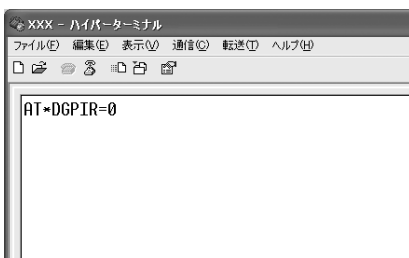
6 Enter notify/not notify of caller ID in the format "AT *DGPIR=<n>" → .

<n> : 0-2

0 : Connect directly (Default)

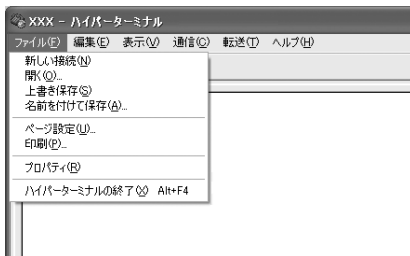
1 : Connect prefixing 184 (Not notify)

2 : Connect prefixing 186 (Notify)



- If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press .

7 Check that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".



8 When confirming disconnection, click "はい (Yes)"→When confirming saving, click "いいえ (No)".

Show/Hide caller ID function by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) to the dialup connection number.

- The Show/Hide of caller ID when both of the * DGPIR command and dialup network settings are set is as shown below.

Dialup network setting (<cid>=3)	Setting made by * DGPIR command	No setting	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
* 99 * * * 3#		Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 3#		Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 3#		Caller ID is sent.		

Setting dialup network for Windows Vista

Setting dialup connection

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

For USB cable connection→P5

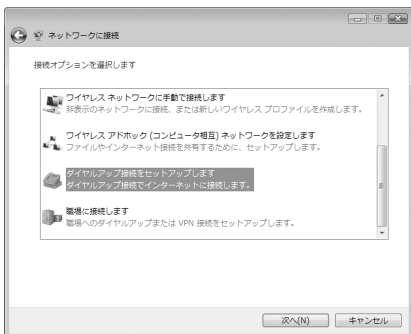
For Bluetooth connection→P11

2 Click (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)".

3 Click "接続またはネットワークをセットアップします (Set up connection or network)".



4 Select "ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします (Set up dialup connection)" and click "次へ (Next)".



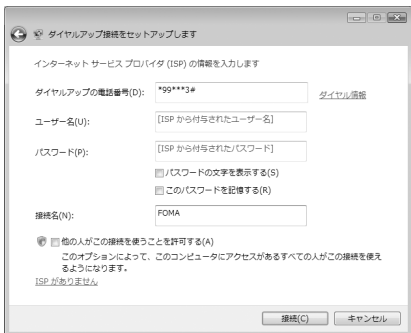
■ When the "どのモデムを使いますか？ (Which modem will you use?)" screen is displayed

For USB cable connection : Click "FOMA F01A".

For Bluetooth connection : Click "ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use)" or "Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供しているBluetoothモデム (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer)".

5 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "ダイヤルアップの電話番号 (Dialup phone number)" ("*99* ** <cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Enter "接続名 (Connection name)" and click "接続 (Connect)".

<cid> : P19 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"



- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	*99* ** 3#	*8701
mopera	*99* ** 1#	*9601

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used.

¥/:*?<>|

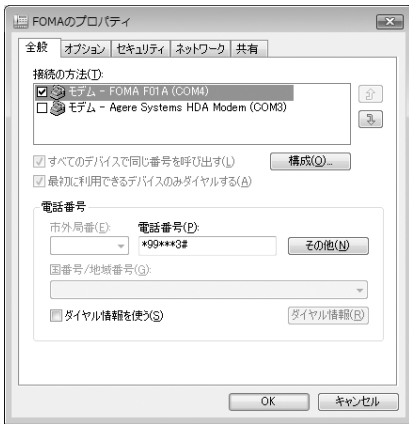
6 On the connecting screen, click "スキップ (Skip)".

- Only make settings without connecting to the Internet right away.

7 On the "インターネット接続テストに失敗しました (Failed in Internet connection test)" screen, click "接続をセットアップします (Set up connection)".

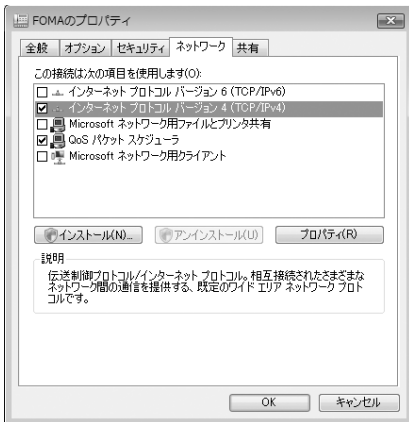
8 Click "閉じる (Close)".

- 1 Click  (Start) → "接続先 (Dialup connection)".
- 2 Right-click the dialup connection created and click "プロパティ (Property)".
- 3 Check the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.



- When multipul modems are connected to a PC, set as follows.
For USB cable connection : Select only "モデム-FOMA F01A (Modem-FOMA F01A)" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (☐) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

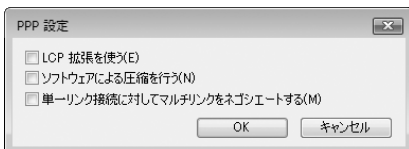
- 4 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab → Set each item as shown below.



- Uncheck (☐) "インターネットプロトコルバージョン6 (TCP/IPv6) (Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6))".
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコルバージョン4 (TCP/IPv4) (Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4))", click "プロパティ (Property)" and set various information.
- When settings of "QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" and other items have been requested from the provider, etc., check/uncheck as required.

- 5 Click "オプション (Option)" tab → Click "PPP設定 (PPP settings)".

- 6 Uncheck all items (☐) → Click "OK".



7 Click "OK".

Performing communication→P34

Setting dialup network for Windows XP

Setting dialup connection

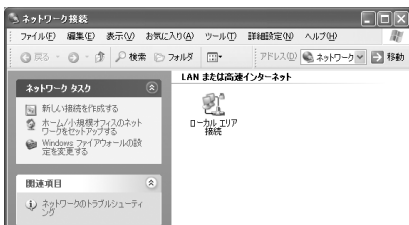
1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

For USB cable connection→P5

For Bluetooth connection→P11

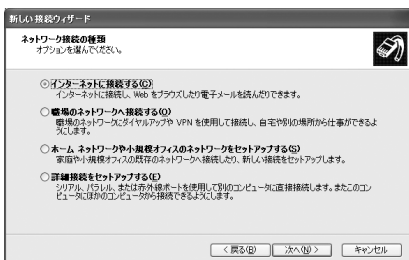
2 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)".

3 Click "新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection)" in "ネットワークタスク (Network task)".

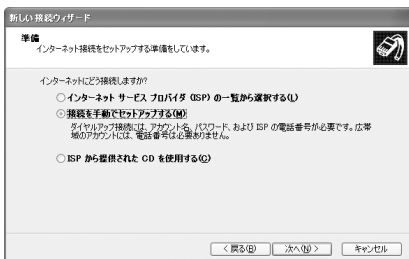


4 On the "新しい接続ウィザードの開始 (New connection wizard start)" screen, click "次へ (Next)".

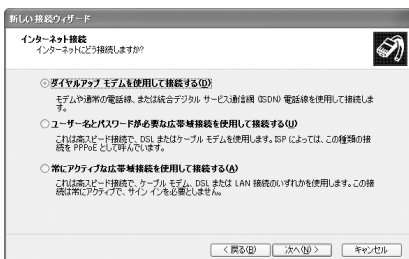
5 Select "インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet)" and click "次へ (Next)".



6 Select "接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually)" and click "次へ (Next)".



7 Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect)" and click "次へ (Next)".



■ When "デバイスの選択 (Device selection)" screen is displayed

For USB cable connection : Select "モデム-FOMA F01A (Modem-FOMA F01A)" and click "次へ (Next)".

For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム - (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム - (Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" and click "次へ (Next)".

8 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "ISP名 (ISP name)"→Click "次へ (Next)".



- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "ISP名 (ISP name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used.

¥/: * ? < > | "

9 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" (" * 99 * * * <cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte → Click "次へ (Next)".

<cid> : P19 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"

- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	* 99 * * * 3#	* 8701
mopera	* 99 * * * 1#	* 9601

10 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" → Enter "パスワード (Password)" → Enter "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)" → Select all items as shown below and click "次へ (Next)".

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)", "パスワード (Password)" or "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)".

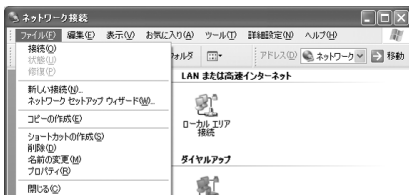
11 On the "新しい接続ウィザードの完了 (New connection wizard completion)" screen, click "完了 (Done)".

12 On the "(操作8で入力したISP名) へ接続 (Connect to (the ISP name entered in Step 8))" screen, check the settings and click "キャンセル (Cancel)".

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet right away.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click "ファイル (File)" → Click "プロパティ (Property)".

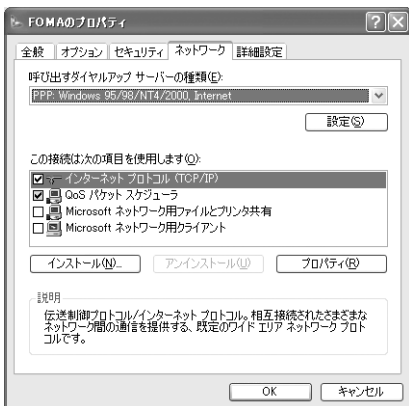


2 Check the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.



- When plural modems are connected to a PC, set as follows.
For USB cable connection : Select only "モデム-FOMA F01A (Modem-FOMA F01A)" at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (☐) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dialing information)".

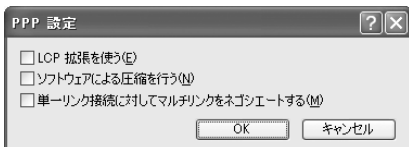
3 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below.



- Since "QoS/パケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" settings in "この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use these items for this connection)" can not be changed, leave it as is.
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))", click "プロパティ (Property)" and set necessary information.

4 Click "設定 (Set)".

5 Uncheck all items (☐)→Click "OK".



6 Click "OK".

Performing communication→P34

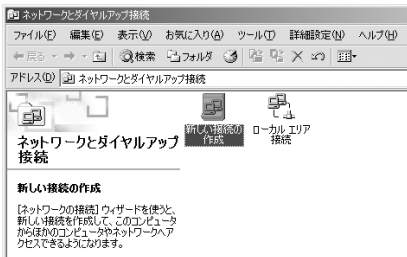
Setting dialup connection

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

For USB cable connection→P5

For Bluetooth connection→P11

2 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)"→Double-click "新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)" icon.

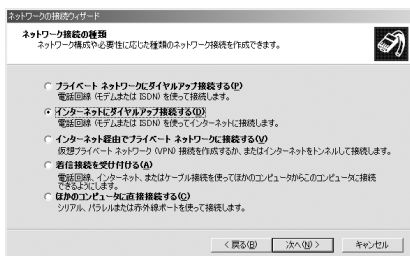


■ When "所在地情報 (Location information)" screen is displayed

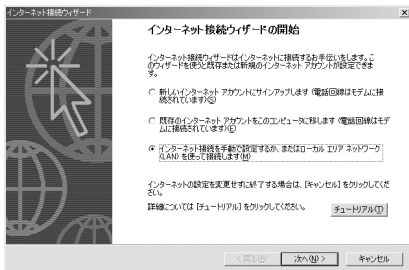
- ① Enter the area code in "市外局番／エリアコード (Area code)"→Click "OK"
- ② Click "OK" on the "電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)" screen.

3 On the "ネットワークの接続ウィザードの開始 (Network connection wizard start)" screen, click "次へ (Next)".

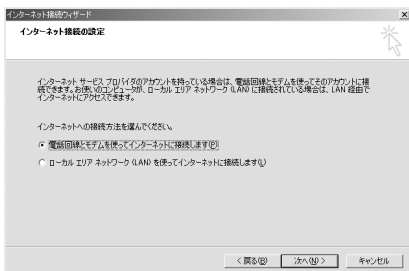
4 Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet)" and click "次へ (Next)".



- 5** Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN))" and click "次へ (Next)".



- 6** Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem)" and click "次へ (Next)".

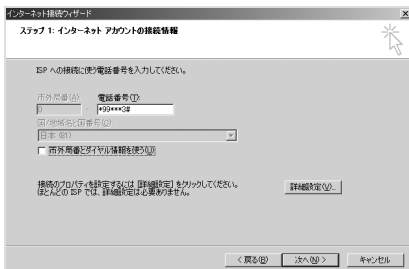


■ When "モデムの選択 (Modem selection)" screen is displayed

For USB cable connection : Select "FOMA F01A (Modem-FOMA F01A)" and click "次へ (Next)".
For Bluetooth connection : Select "(ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem-(Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "(Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" and click "次へ (Next)".

- 7** Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" (" *99 * * * <cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→ Click "詳細設定 (Detailed settings)".

<cid> : P19 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"

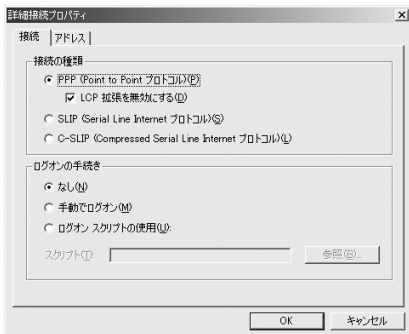


- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

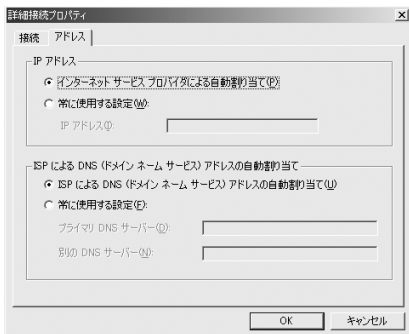
Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	* 99 * * * 3#	* 8701
mopera	* 99 * * * 1#	* 9601

- Uncheck (☐) "市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information)".

8 Set each item in "接続 (Connection)" tab as shown below.



9 Click "アドレス (Address)" tab → Set each item.

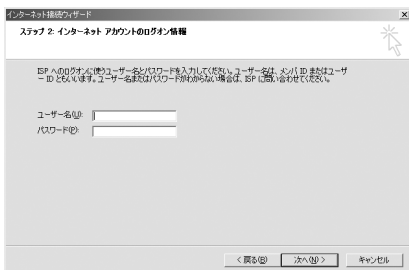


- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc., set various information.
- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to change the setting.

10 Click "OK".

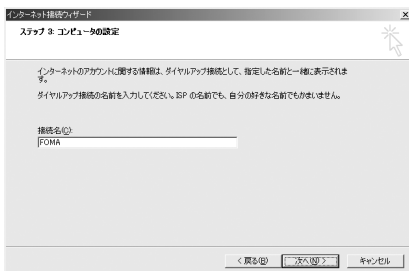
11 Click "次へ (Next)".

12 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" → Enter "パスワード (Password)" → Click "次へ (Next)".



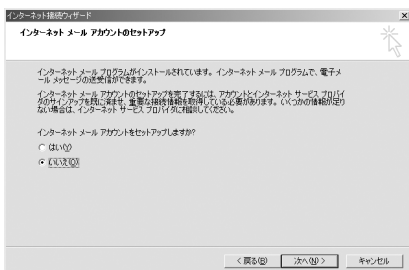
- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)". When you click "次へ (Next)" and the screen to confirm the blank entry appears, click "はい (Yes)".

13 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)"→ Click "次へ (Next)".



- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)".

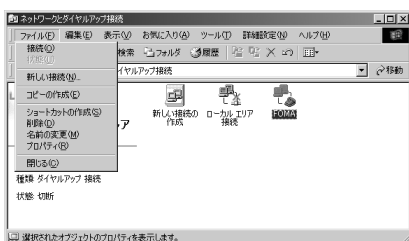
14 Select "いいえ (No)" and click "次へ (Next)".



15 Click "完了 (Done)".

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "プロパティ (Property)".



2 Check the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.



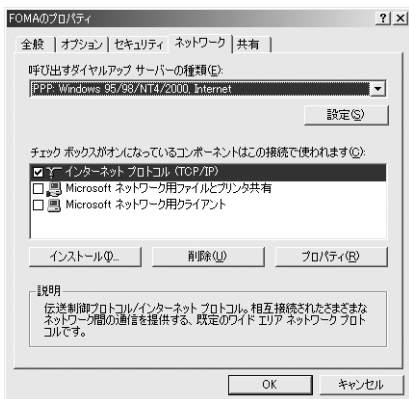
- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, set as follows.

For USB cable connection : Select only "モデム-FOMA F01A (Modem-FOMA F01A)" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.

For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.

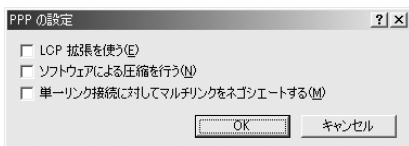
- Uncheck (☐) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- When the modem is changed, all items in "電話番号 (Phone number)" is initialized. Enter the dialup connection phone number again in that case.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

3 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below.



4 Click "設定 (Set)"

5 Uncheck all items (☐)→Click "OK".



6 Click "OK".

Performing communication→P34

Performing communication

Starting communication and disconnection are explained here.

<Example> Performing communication under Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

For USB cable connection→P5

For Bluetooth connection→P11

2 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)"→Double-click the connection icon.

■ Under Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)"→Double-click the connection icon

■ Under Windows Vista

Click  (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)"→Select the dialup connection and click "接続 (Connect)".

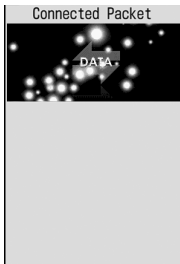
3 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Click "ダイヤル (Dial)".



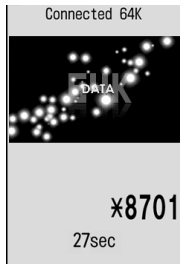
- When using mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- When "ユーザー名 (User name)" was entered or "パスワード (Password)" was saved while settings, these entries are no longer necessary.
- Click "OK" when the connection established screen is displayed.

INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet communication or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established.



For packet communication



For 64K data communication

- The communication speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- The transmission is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the connection icon was created.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the PC browser may not disconnect communication. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation.

<Example> Disconnecting communication under Windows XP

1 Click  in the task tray → Click "切断 (Disconnect)".

■ Under Windows Vista

Right-click  in the task tray → Select "切断 (Disconnect)" and click the dialup connection to disconnect.



AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

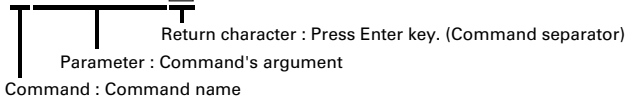
AT commands

AT command input format

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters.

<Example> Connecting to mopera U with ATD command

ATD * 99 * * * 3# 



AT commands and their parameters must be entered on a single line. All the characters from the first character until the character directly preceding  must be entered on a single line. Each line can be up to 256 characters including "AT".

AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, a PC must be in terminal mode. Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. When terminal mode is set, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate FOMA terminal.

● Offline mode

FOMA terminal is in stand-by. FOMA terminal must be in stand-by status to use AT commands to control it.

● Online data mode

FOMA terminal is communicating. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the sent characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.

● Online command mode

AT commands can be used even when FOMA terminal is in communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

■ Switching between online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures.

- Enter +++ command or code set in the S2 register.
- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal OFF when set in "AT&D1".

* The USB or Bluetooth interface emulates an RS-232C signal line so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO .

INFORMATION

- When making a call or sending an AT command from external device, it is sent from Number A with 2in1 in Dual mode or A mode, and from Number B in B mode.

List of AT command

- AT command that can be used via the FOMA F01A (Modem).
- Entering "¥" may cause "\" to appear depending on the font setting for a PC or communication software.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
A/ A/ OK	Execute the previously executed command again. When previous response is "ERROR", "ERROR" is returned.
AT AT OK	Use commands on this list by prefixing to commands other than A/ or +++. When using only this command, "OK" is returned with FOMA terminal enabled for using AT commands.
ATA RING ATA CONNECT	Perform the receiving process when entered while receiving a packet communication or 64K data communication. The following commands can be entered when receiving a packet communication. ATA184 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function OFF ATA186 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function ON
ATD ATD *99 * * * <cid># CONNECT 460800	ATD *99 * * * <cid># : Performs calling process for packet communication. If <cid> or * * * <cid> is omitted, <cid>=1 is set. ATD [parameter] [phone number] : Perform calling process for 64K data communication. Calling process is not permitted if phone number contains characters other than the following. 0-9, *, #, A, a, B, b, C, c The following characters and a space can be entered but are not recognized in dialing. ,(comma), !, -, @, D, d, P, p, T, t, W, w Setting Show/Hide caller ID is enabled by inserting 186 or 184 after ATD. ATDN or ATDL can be used for redial calling.
ATE<n> *1 ATE1 OK	Set whether FOMA terminal will return echo for command sent from a PC. n=0 : Echo OFF n=1 : Echo ON (default) Normal usage is n=1. If the PC has an echo function, setting this command to n=0 prevents double display of characters.
ATH ATH NO CARRIER	Disconnect line when entered during a communication. Execute in online command mode.→P36
ATI<n> ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK	Display the confirmation code. n=0 : "NTT DoCoMo" n=1 : Display model name of FOMA terminal n=2 : Display version of FOMA terminal n=3 : Display elements of ACMP signals n=4 : Display details of functions that can be communicated by FOMA terminal in numeric
ATO ATO CONNECT 460800	Return from online command mode to online data mode during communication.
ATQ<n> *1 ATQ0 OK	Set whether to display result code. n=0 : Display (default) n=1 : Not display When ATQ1 is executed, "OK" is not returned.
ATS0=<n> *1 ATS0=0 OK	Set number of rings until FOMA terminal receives communication automatically. n=0 : Not receive automatically (default) n=1-255 : Receive automatically with specified number of rings ATS0? : Display current settings
ATS2=<n> ATS2=43 OK	Set escape character. n=0-127 (default : n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is unavailable. ATS2? : Display current settings
ATS3=<n> ATS3=13 OK	Set the carriage return (CR) character that identifies the end of AT command character string. Appended to end of echoed command character string and result code. n=13 (fixed value) ATS3? : Display current settings

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
ATS4=<n> ATS4=10 OK	Set the line feed (LF) character. When result code is displayed as alphabetic characters, appends the character after the carriage return (CR) character. n=10 (fixed value) ATS4? : Display current settings
ATS5=<n> ATS5=8 OK	Set the back space (BS) character. When this character is detected during command input, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. n=8 (fixed value) ATS5? : Display current settings
ATS6=<n> ATS6=5 OK	Set pause time (seconds) until dialing commences but do not operate. n= : 2-10 (default : n=5) ATS6? : Display current settings
ATS8=<n> ATS8=3 OK	Set pause time (seconds) until commas are dialed but do not operate. n=0-255 (default : n=3) ATS8? : Display current settings
ATS10=<n> *1 ATS10=1 OK	Set the delay time (1/10 seconds) for automatic disconnection but do not operate. n=1-255 (default : n=1) ATS10? : Display current settings
ATS30=<n> ATS30=0 OK	Set a period of time (minutes) with no data transmission/reception to terminate the connection for 64K data communications. n=0-255 : (default : n=0, n=0 indicates that inactive timer is set to OFF.) ATS30? : Display current settings
ATS103=<n> ATS103=1 OK	Set the separator used to append and send received sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : * n=1 : / (default) n=2 : ¥ or \ ATS103? : Display current settings
ATS104=<n> ATS104=1 OK	Set the separator used to append and send outgoing sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : # n=1 : % (default) n=2 : & ATS104? : Display current settings
ATV<n> *1 ATV1 OK	Set result code display method. n=0 : Number display n=1 : Alphabetical display (default) When ATV0 is executed, "0" is not returned to the same line.
ATX<n> *1 ATX4 OK	Set whether to detect busy or dial tones and whether to display the speed in the "CONNECT" display for the connection. Busy tone detection : Send "BUSY" response when dialup connection is busy. Dial tone detection : Detect whether FOMA terminal is connected. n=0 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and no speed is displayed n=1 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=2 : No busy tone, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=3 : Busy tone detected, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=4 : Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed (default) When n=0 is set, AT&E and AT¥V command will be unavailable.
ATZ *3 ATZ OK (When in offline mode)	FOMA terminal AT command settings are reset to the status of nonvolatile memory. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT%V AT%V Ver1.00 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT&C<n> *1 AT&C1 OK	Set the operating conditions of the circuit CD (DCD) for DTE. n=0 : Always ON n=1 : Vary according to line connection status (default) When set to n=0, the CD signal is set to ON directly before sending "CONNECT" when ending connection. The CD signal is set to OFF directly before the line is disconnected and "NO CARRIER" is sent.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT&D<n> *1 AT&D2 [↵] OK	Set the operation performed when circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE is switched from ON to OFF while online data mode takes effect. n=0 : Ignore status (status is always considered to be ON) n=1 : Move to online command mode when status changes from ON to OFF n=2 : Disconnect line and move to offline mode when status changes from ON to OFF (default)
AT&E<n> *1 AT&E1 [↵] OK	Set type of speed display used when connection is made. n=0 : Display communication speed of wireless zone n=1 : Display communication speed between a PC and FOMA terminal (default)
AT&F AT&F [↵] OK (When in offline mode)	The AT command settings in FOMA terminal are reset to the default. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT&S<n> *1 AT&S0 [↵] OK	Set control of the data set ready (DR) signal to be output to DTE. n=0 : Always ON (default) n=1 : ON at time of connection
AT&W AT&W [↵] OK	Register the current settings in FOMA terminal.
AT * DANTE AT * DANTE [↵] * DANTE : 3 OK	Indicate FOMA terminal reception level in the " * DANTE : <n>" format. n=0 : Out of service area n=1 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 0 or 1 antenna. n=2 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 2 antennas. n=3 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 3 antennas. AT * DANTE=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT * DGANSM=<n> *2 AT * DGANSM=0 [↵] OK	Set to reject or permit incoming packet communications. n=0 : Reject setting = OFF, Accept setting = OFF (default) n=1 : Reject setting=ON n=2 : Accept setting=ON AT * DGANSM? : Display current settings AT * DGANSM=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT * DGAPL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT * DGAPL=0,1 [↵] OK	Set the dialup connections (APN) to permit incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Add to list of APN permitted for incoming communications n=1 : Delete from list of APN permitted for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to or deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT * DGAPL? : Display current settings AT * DGAPL=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT * DGARL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT * DGARL=0,1 [↵] OK	Set the dialup connections (APN) to refuse incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Add to list of APN rejected for incoming communications n=1 : Delete from list of APN rejected for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to or deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT * DGARL? : Display current settings AT * DGARL=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT * DGPIR=<n> *2 AT * DGPIR=0 [↵] OK	Set whether to send caller ID when packet communication connection is being established. This command is available when a communication is sent or received. n=0 : Connect to APN directly (default) n=1 : Connect to APN prefixing 184 n=2 : Connect to APN prefixing 186 When Show/Hide caller ID is specified by dialup network→P22 AT * DGPIR? : Display current settings AT * DGPIR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT * DRPW AT * DRPW [↵] * DRPW : 0 OK	Indicate an index for the reception power of the radio waves that FOMA terminal receive. AT * DRPW=? : Display a list of displayable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CAOC	Display last call cost.
AT+CAOC [↵] +CAOC : "000024" OK	
AT+CBC	Display FOMA terminal's battery level in the "+CBC : <bc>,<bcl>" format. bcs=0 : Powered by the battery pack bcs=1 : Not powered by the battery pack bcs=2 : Battery pack removed bcs=3 : Power-supply error bcl=0 : No battery remained or battery pack removed bcl=1-100 : Battery remained AT+CBC=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT+CBC [↵] +CBC : 0,100 OK	
AT+CBST=<n>,1,0 *1	Set the line to use (Setting of bearer service) n=116 : 64K data communication (default) n=134 : 64K videophone AT+CBST? : Display current settings AT+CBST=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CBST=116,1,0 [↵] OK	
AT+CDIP=<n> *1	Set whether to notify received sub address. And, subscription status of Multi Number can be confirmed. n=0 : The information of sub address is not displayed. (default) n=1 : The information of sub address is displayed. AT+CDIP? : Current settings are displayed by "+CDIP:<n>,<m>". m=0 : Multi Number not subscribed. m=1 : Multi Number subscribed. AT+CDIP=? : List of the settable values is displayed.
AT+CDIP=0 OK	
AT+CEER	Display reason for disconnection of immediately preceding communication. Disconnection reason list→P43
AT+CEER [↵] +CEER : 36 OK	
AT+CGDCONT *2	Set dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.→P43
→P43	
AT+CGEQMIN *2	Set the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.→P44
→P44	
AT+CGEQREQ *2	Set QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.→P44
→P44	
AT+CGMR	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT+CGMR [↵] 1234567890123456 OK	
AT+CGREG=<n> *1	Set whether to report network service registration status. The status reported is Within service area or Out of service area. n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CGREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of service area stat=1 : Within service area stat=4 : Unknown stat=5 : Within service area (during international roaming) AT+CGREG? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CGREG : <n>,<stat>" format AT+CGREG=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CGREG=0 [↵] OK	
AT+CGSN	Display FOMA terminal serial No.
AT+CGSN [↵] 123456789012345 OK	
AT+CLIP=<n> *1	Set whether to display sender's caller ID on a PC when receiving 64K data communication. n=0 : Not display result (default) n=1 : Display result AT+CLIP? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CLIP : <n>,<m>" format m=0 : Network setting not to send caller ID when sending data m=1 : Network setting to send caller ID when sending data m=2 : Unknown AT+CLIP=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CLIP=0 [↵] OK	

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CLIR=<n> *2 AT+CLIR=2 OK	Set whether to send phone number to the receiver when sending 64K data communication. n=0 : Use the setting in service agreement n=1 : Not send n=2 : Send (default) AT+CLIR? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CLIR : <n>,<m>" format m=0 : CLIR not operating (always sends) m=1 : CLIR operating (never sends) m=2 : Unknown m=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default=does not send) m=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default=sends) AT+CLIR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CMEE=<n> *1 AT+CMEE=0 OK	Set whether to display an error report at FOMA terminal. n=0 : Display "ERROR" and no result code (default) n=1 : Use result code, displaying reason as number n=2 : Use result code, displaying reason as alphabetic characters Display reasons in the "+CME ERROR : xxxx" format when n=1 or n=2 is set (xxxx = number or alphabetic characters).→P43 "Error messages list" AT+CMEE? : Display current settings AT+CMEE=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CNUM AT+CNUM +CNUM : ",090XXXXXXXX", 129 OK	Display FOMA terminal's own phone number in the "+CNUM : ",<numbers>",<type>" format. number : Own phone number (With 2in1, display Number A in Dual mode or A mode and Number B in B mode) type=129 : International access code + not included type=145 : International access code + included
AT+COPS=<n>,2,<oper> *2 AT+COPS=0 OK	Set search method for network operator to connect. n=0 : Auto (default) n=1 : Manual n=3 : No mapping When n=1 is set, set PLMN Number in hexadecimal value for <oper>. AT+COPS? : Display current settings AT+COPS=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CPAS AT+CPAS +CPAS : 0 OK	Display whether FOMA terminal can send and receive AT commands to external devices in "+CPAS : <n>" format. n=0 : Possible n=1 : Impossible n=2 : Status unknown n=3 : Possible and receiving n=4 : Possible and communicating AT+CPAS=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT+CPIN="<pin>","<newpin>" AT+CPIN="0000" OK	Enter these commands for entering PIN/PIN2 codes or PUK. To enter PUK, enter new PIN/ PIN2 code in <newpin>. Even if entering in <newpin> when entry of PIN/PIN2 code is request, PIN/PIN2 code cannot be changed. AT+CPIN? : Display the code currently requested in "+CPIN : <n>" format n=READY : Entry of code not requested n=SIM PIN : Entry of PIN code waited n=SIM PIN2 : Entry of PIN2 code waited n=SIM PUK : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN code n=SIM PUK2 : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN2 code
AT+CR=<n> *1 AT+CR=0 OK	Set whether to display the communication type before "CONNECT" is displayed during connection. n=0 : Not display (default) n=1 : Display the communication type in the "+CR : <serv>" format serv=GPRS : Packet communication serv=SYNC : 64K data communication serv=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CR? : Display current settings AT+CR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CRC=<n> *1 AT+CRC=0 OK	Set whether to use +CRING result codes when communication is received. n=0 : Not use (default) n=1 : Use "+CRING : <type>" result codes type=GPRS "PPP",,"<APN>" : Packet communication type=SYNC : 64K data communication type=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CRC? : Display current settings AT+CRC=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CREG=<n> *1 AT+CREG=0 OK	Set whether to display network information indicating Within service area or Out of service area. n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of service area stat=1 : Within service area stat=4 : Unknown stat=5 : Within service area (during international roaming) AT+CREG? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CREG : <n>,<stat>" format AT+CREG=? : Display a list of assignable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CUSD=<n>,"<str>" *1 AT+CUSD=0,"012345678" [↵] OK	Inquiry and set for Additional service (Register USSD) of Network Services. Enter Service code provided by DOCOMO in <str>. n=0 : Not answer mid result (default) n=1 : Answer mid result in "+CUSD : <m>,"<str>","0" format m=0 : Information not requested m=1 : Information requested AT+CUSD? : Display current settings AT+CUSD=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+FCLASS=<n> *1 AT+FCLASS=0 [↵] OK	Set communication type supported by FOMA terminal. n=0 : Only data supported (fixed value) AT+FCLASS? : Display current settings AT+FCLASS=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+GCAP AT+GCAP [↵] +GCAP : +CGSM,+FCLASS, +W OK	Display the range of AT commands supported by FOMA terminal in the "+GCAP : <n>" format. n=+CGSM : Support GSM commands (including the case for supporting a part) n=+FCLASS : Support +FCLASS commands n=+W : Support +W commands
AT+GMI AT+GMI [↵] FUJITSU OK	Display FOMA terminal manufacturer name.
AT+GMM AT+GMM [↵] FOMA F01A OK	Display model name of FOMA terminal.
AT+GMR AT+GMR [↵] Ver1.00 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT+IFC=<n,m> *1 AT+IFC=2,2 [↵] OK	Set how to control local flow between a PC and FOMA terminal. n : DCE by DTE m : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : Perform XON/XOFF flow control 2 : Perform RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default) AT+IFC? : Display current settings AT+IFC=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+WS46=<n> *1	Display wireless network used when sending communication in n number. When entering AT+WS46=<n>, ERROR is returned because it cannot be changed. n=12 : GSM network n=22 : 3G network (FOMA) n=25 : GSM or 3G network (FOMA) (default) AT+WS46? : Display current settings AT+WS46=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT¥S AT¥S [↵] E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 · · · (snip) · · · S104=001 OK	Display the currently set commands and S register settings.
AT¥V<n> *1 AT¥V0 [↵] OK	Set type of response codes used when connection is made. n=0 : Not use expanded result codes (default) n=1 : Use expanded result codes
+++ +++ (not displayed) OK	Move from online data mode to online command mode when entered during a communication. The escape guard interval is 1 second (fixed value).

*1 Registered in FOMA terminal by &W command.

*2 Not reset by &F and Z commands.

*3 When Z command is executed before the &W command, the terminal is reset to the last status registered in memory, and prior changes are erased.

Disconnection reason list

■ Packet communication

Value	Description
26	APN is not present or is incorrect.
27	
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Description
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	The remote device is called but no response.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Description
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM
15	SIM wrong	Other than DOCOMO SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

- <cid> is the number used to control dialup connection (APN) for packet communication to be registered in FOMA terminal. "1-10" can be registered in FOMA terminal. An APN "mopera.ne.jp" (PPP connection) to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and an APN "mopera.net" (IP connection) to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default.

<APN> is an optional string for each connection to indicate dialup connection.

■ Command name : +CGDCONT=[parameter]

- **Outline**
Sets dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.
- **Format**
+CGDCONT= [<cid> [,"<PDP_TYPE>" [,"<APN>"]]]
- **Parameter description**
 <cid> : 1-10
 <PDP_TYPE> : IP or PPP
 <APN> : Optional
- **Example of execution**
 The command used to register an APN named "abc" for PPP connection (when <cid> =2).
 AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc" 
 OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
 AT+CGDCONT= : Return all <cid> to the setting by default.
 AT+CGDCONT=<cid> : Return the specified <cid> to the setting by default.
 AT+CGDCONT? : Display current settings.
 AT+CGDCONT=? : Display a list of assignable values.

■ Command name : +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- **Outline**
 Set the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.
- **Format**
 AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid> [,<Maximum bitrate UL> [,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]
- **Parameter description**
 <cid> : 1-10
 <Maximum bitrate UL> : None (default) or 384
 <Maximum bitrate DL> : None (default) or 7232
 * For <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL>, the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. If "384" and "7232" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.
- **Example of execution**
 - (1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
 AT+CGEQMIN=2 
 OK
 - (2) Command used to permit only 384kbps upload and 7232kbps download (when <cid>=4)
 AT+CGEQMIN=4,,384,7232 
 OK
 - (3) Command used to permit only 384kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
 AT+CGEQMIN=5,,384 
 OK
 - (4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 7232kbps download (when <cid>=6)
 AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,7232 
 OK
- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
 AT+CGEQMIN= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.
 AT+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.
 AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays current settings.
 AT+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

■ Command name : +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

- **Outline**
 Set QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.
- **Format**
 AT+CGEQREQ= [<cid>]
- **Parameter description**
 Only commands that require connection at 64-384kbps upload, 64-7232kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each <cid>.
 <cid> : 1-10
- **Example of execution**
 (when <cid>=3)
 AT+CGEQREQ=3 
 OK
- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
 AT+CGEQREQ= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.
 AT+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.
 AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays current settings.
 AT+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

Result codes

- When ATV command is set to n=1 (default), the result code is displayed in alphabetic characters. When the command is set to n=0, the result code is displayed numerically.→P38

Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to other party
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completed connection Time-out
100	RESTRICTION	Network restriction in place (The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.)
101	DELAYED	Redial call restricted

Extended result code

- When AT&E is set to n=0

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and base station
122	CONNECT 64000	64000bps
125	CONNECT 384000	384000bps
133	CONNECT 3648000	3648000bps
135	CONNECT 7232000	7232000bps

- When AT&E is set to n=1

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and a PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1200bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2400bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4800bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7200bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9600bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14400bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19200bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38400bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57600bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115200bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230400bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460800bps

* To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to a PC with a USB cable or Bluetooth function.

■ Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connect via 64K data communication (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
3	AV64K	Connect via 64K videophone
5	PACKET	Connect via packet communication

■ Display example of result code

When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the settings of AT¥V command, only "CONNECT" is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example : ATD * 99 * * * 3#
CONNECT

Number display example : ATD * 99 * * * 3#
1

When ATX1 is set

- When ATX1, AT¥V0 (default) is set

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format : "CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>".

Text display example : ATD * 99 * * * 3#
CONNECT 460800

Number display example : ATD * 99 * * * 3#
1 21

- When ATX1, AT¥V1 is set^{*1}

The code is displayed upon completion of connection in the following format.

"CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal - PC> <Communication protocol> <dialup connection (APN)>/<upstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal→radio base station)>/<downstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal←radio base station)>"^{*2}

Text display example : ATD * 99 * * * 3#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/384/7232
(Indicates the terminal is connected to mopera.net providing a maximum upload speed of 384kbps and a maximum download speed of 7232kbps.)

Number display example : ATD * 99 * * * 3#
1 21 5

^{*1} When ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended that only AT¥V0 be used.

^{*2} When AT¥V1 is set, <dialup connection (APN)> and the following are displayed only when packet is used for connection.

Kuten Code List

For entering characters using code, see "Entering characters using code" in the attached manual.
Note that some characters in the code input list may look different from actual ones.

1st -3rd	4th digit of code									1st -3rd	4th digit of code									1st -3rd	4th digit of code								
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	!	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	081	上	十	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	203	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
011	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	082	上	十	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	204	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
012	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	083	上	十	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	205	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
013	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											206	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
014	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	130	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	207	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
015	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	208	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
016	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	132	X	I	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	209	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
017	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	133	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			210	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
018	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	134	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			211	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
019	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	135	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			212	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
020	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	136	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			213	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
021	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	137	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			214	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
022	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	138	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			215	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
023	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	139	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			216	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
024	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											217	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
026	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	160	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			218	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
027	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	161	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			219	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
028	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	162	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			220	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
029	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	163	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			221	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
031	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	164	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			222	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
032	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	165	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			223	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
033	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	166	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			224	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
034	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	167	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			225	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
035	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	168	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			226	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
036	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	169	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			227	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
037	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	170	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			228	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
038	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	171	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			229	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
039	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	172	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			230	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
040	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	173	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			231	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
041	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	174	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			232	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
042	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	175	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			233	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
043	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	176	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			234	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
044	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	177	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			235	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
045	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	178	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			236	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
046	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											237	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
047	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											238	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
048	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											239	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
050	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	179	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			240	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
051	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	180	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			241	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
052	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	181	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			242	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
053	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	182	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			243	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
054	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											244	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
055	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											245	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
056	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											246	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
057	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											247	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
058	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一											248	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
060	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	183	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			249	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
061	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	184	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			250	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
062	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	185	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			251	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
063	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	186	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			252	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
064	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	187	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			253	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
065	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	188	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			254	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
070	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	189	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			255	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
071	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	190	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			256	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
072	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	191	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			257	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
073	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	192	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			258	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
074	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	193	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			259	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
075	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	194	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			260	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
076	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	195	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm			261	款	飲	漢	潤	灌	環	監	看	
077	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	196	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm												
078	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	197	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm												
080	<	>	<	〃	全	々	〇	一	一	202	km	mg	kg	cc	ml	mm	cm												

1st 3rd	4th digit of code									1st 3rd	4th digit of code									1st 3rd	4th digit of code								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
261	さ									332	ぞ									391	祢								
262	左									333	そ									392	粘								
263	差									334	す									393	乃								
264	差									335	曾									394	乃								
265	差									336	曾									395	乃								
266	差									337	曾									396	乃								
267	差									338	曾									397	乃								
268	差									339	曾									398	乃								
269	差									340	曾									399	乃								
270	差									341	曾									400	乃								
271	差									342	曾									401	乃								
272	差									343	曾									402	乃								
273	差									344	曾									403	乃								
274	差									345	曾									404	乃								
275	差									346	曾									405	乃								
276	差									347	曾									406	乃								
277	差									348	曾									407	乃								
278	差									349	曾									408	乃								
279	差									350	曾									409	乃								
280	差									351	曾									410	乃								
281	差									352	曾									411	乃								
282	差									353	曾									412	乃								
283	差									354	曾									413	乃								
284	差									355	曾									414	乃								
285	差									356	曾									415	乃								
286	差									357	曾									416	乃								
287	差									358	曾									417	乃								
288	差									359	曾									418	乃								
289	差									360	曾									419	乃								
290	差									361	曾									420	乃								
291	差									362	曾									421	乃								
292	差									363	曾									422	乃								
293	差									364	曾									423	乃								
294	差									365	曾									424	乃								
295	差									366	曾									425	乃								
296	差									367	曾									426	乃								
297	差									368	曾									427	乃								
298	差									369	曾									428	乃								
299	差									370	曾									429	乃								
300	差									371	曾									430	乃								
301	差									372	曾									431	乃								
302	差									373	曾									432	乃								
303	差									374	曾									433	乃								
304	差									375	曾									434	乃								
305	差									376	曾									435	乃								
306	差									377	曾									436	乃								
307	差									378	曾									437	乃								
308	差									379	曾									438	乃								
309	差									380	曾									439	乃								
310	差									381	曾									440	乃								
311	差									382	曾									441	乃								
312	差									383	曾									442	乃								
313	差									384	曾									443	乃								
314	差									385	曾									444	乃								
315	差									386	曾									445	乃								
316	差									387	曾									446	乃								
317	差									388	曾									447	乃								
318	差									389	曾									448	乃								
319	差									390	曾									449	乃								
320	差									391	曾									450	乃								
321	差									392	曾									451	乃								
322	差									393	曾									452	乃								
323	差									394	曾									453	乃								
324	差									395	曾									454	乃								
325	差									396	曾									455	乃								
326	差									397	曾									456	乃								
327	差									398	曾									457	乃								
328	差									399	曾									458	乃								
329	差									400	曾									459	乃								
330	差									401	曾									460	乃								
331	差									402	曾									461	乃								
332	差									403	曾									462	乃								
333	差									404	曾									463	乃								
334	差									405	曾									464	乃								
335	差									406	曾									465	乃								
336	差									407	曾									466	乃								
337	差									408	曾									467	乃								
338	差									409	曾									468	乃								
339	差									410	曾									469	乃								
340	差									411	曾									470	乃								
341	差									412	曾									471	乃								
342	差									413	曾									472	乃								
343	差									414	曾									473	乃								
344	差									415	曾									474	乃								
345	差									416	曾									475	乃								
346	差									417	曾									476	乃								
347	差									418	曾									477	乃								
348	差									419	曾									478	乃								
349	差									420	曾									479	乃								
350	差									421	曾									480	乃								
351	差									422	曾									481	乃								
352	差									423	曾									482	乃								
353	差									424	曾									483	乃								
354	差									425	曾									484	乃								
355	差									426	曾									485	乃								
356	差									427	曾									486	乃								
357	差									428	曾									487	乃								
358	差									429	曾									488	乃								
359	差									430	曾									489	乃								
360	差									431	曾									490	乃								
361	差									432	曾									491	乃								
362	差									433	曾									492	乃								
363	差									434	曾									493	乃								
364	差									435	曾									494	乃								
365	差									436	曾									495	乃								
366	差									437	曾									496	乃								
367	差									438	曾									497	乃								
368	差									439	曾									498	乃								
369	差									440	曾									499	乃								
370	差									441	曾									500	乃								
371	差									442	曾									501	乃								
372	差									443	曾									502	乃								
373	差									444	曾									503	乃								
374	差									445	曾									504	乃								
375	差									446	曾									505	乃								
376	差									447	曾									506	乃								
377	差									448	曾									507	乃								
378	差									449	曾									508	乃								
379	差									450	曾									509	乃								
380	差									451	曾									510	乃								
381	差									452	曾									511	乃								
382	差									453	曾									512	乃								
383	差									454	曾									513	乃								
384	差									455	曾									514	乃								
385	差									456	曾									515	乃								
386	差									457	曾									516	乃								
387	差									458	曾									517	乃								
388	差									459	曾									518	乃								
389	差									460	曾									519	乃								
390	差									461	曾									520	乃								
391	差									462	曾									521	乃								
392	差									463	曾									522	乃								
393	差									464	曾									523	乃								
394	差									465	曾									524	乃								
395	差									466	曾									525	乃								
396	差									467	曾									526	乃								
397	差									468	曾									527	乃								
398	差									469	曾									528	乃								
399	差									470	曾									529	乃								
400	差									471	曾									530	乃								
401	差									472	曾									531	乃								
402	差									473	曾									532	乃								
403	差									474	曾									533	乃								
404	差									475	曾									534	乃								
405	差									476	曾									535	乃								
406	差									477	曾									536	乃								
407	差									478	曾									537	乃								
408	差									479	曾									538	乃								
409	差									480	曾									539	乃								
410	差									481	曾									540	乃								
411	差									482	曾									541	乃								
412	差									483	曾									542	乃								
413	差									484	曾									543	乃								
414	差									485	曾									544	乃								
415	差									486	曾									545	乃								
416	差									487	曾									546	乃								
417	差									488	曾									547	乃								
418	差									489	曾									548	乃								
419	差									490	曾									549	乃								
420	差									491	曾									550	乃								
421	差									492	曾									551	乃								
422	差									493	曾									552	乃								
423	差									494	曾									553	乃								
424	差									495	曾									554	乃								
425	差									496	曾									555	乃								
426	差									497	曾									556	乃								
427	差									498	曾									557	乃								
428	差									499	曾									558	乃								
429	差									500	曾									559	乃								
430	差									501	曾									560	乃								
431	差									502	曾									561	乃								
432	差									503	曾									562	乃								
433	差									504	曾									563	乃								
434	差									505	曾									564	乃								
435	差									506	曾									565	乃								
436	差									507	曾									566	乃								
437	差									508	曾									567	乃								
438	差									509	曾									568	乃								
439	差									510	曾									569	乃								
440	差									511	曾									570	乃								
441	差									512	曾									571	乃								
442	差									513	曾									572	乃								
443	差									514	曾									573	乃								
444	差									515	曾									574	乃								
445	差									516	曾									575	乃								
446	差									517	曾									576	乃								
447	差									518	曾									577	乃								
448	差									519	曾									578	乃								
449	差									520	曾									579	乃								
450	差									521	曾									580	乃								
451	差									522	曾									581	乃								
452	差									523	曾									582	乃								
453	差									524	曾									583	乃								
454	差									525	曾									584	乃								
455	差									526	曾									585	乃								
456	差									527	曾									586	乃								
457	差									528	曾									587	乃								
458	差									529	曾									588	乃								
459	差									530	曾									589	乃								
460	差									531	曾									590	乃								
461	差									532	曾									591	乃								
462	差									533	曾									592	乃								
463	差									534	曾									593	乃								
464	差									535	曾									594	乃								
465	差									536	曾									595	乃								
466	差									537	曾									596	乃								
467	差									538	曾									597	乃								
468	差									539	曾									598	乃								
469	差									540	曾									599	乃								
470	差									541	曾									600	乃								
471	差									542	曾									601	乃								
472	差									543	曾									602	乃								
473	差									544	曾									603	乃								
474	差									545	曾									604	乃								
475	差									546	曾									605	乃								
476	差									547	曾									606	乃								
477	差									548	曾									607	乃								
478	差									549	曾									608	乃								
479	差									550	曾									609	乃								
480	差									551	曾									610	乃								
481																													

[illegible]

4